MadCap Software

Styles Guide

Flare 10

Copyright 2014 MadCap Software. All rights reserved.

Information in this document is subject to change without notice. The software described in this document is furnished under a license agreement or nondisclosure agreement. The software may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms of those agreements. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or any means electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording for any purpose other than the purchaser's personal use without the written permission of MadCap Software.

MadCap Software
7777 Fay Avenue
La Jolla, California 92037
858-320-0387
www.madcapsoftware.com

THIS GUIDE WAS CREATED USING MADCAP FLARE.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1 Introduction 5

What are Styles? 6
The Basics of Styles 7
Regular Stylesheets and Table Stylesheets 8
Mediums 9
Skin Styles 10

CHAPTER 2 Basics of CSS 11

W3C and CSS Resources 12
What Can CSS Do? 14
CSS Styles and Page Structure 15
Ways to Use CSS 16
What is Meant by "Cascading"? 19
Style Tags, Classes, Properties, and Values 20
Inheritance 25

CHAPTER 3 Regular Stylesheets 27

Where Regular Stylesheets are Stored 28
Stylesheet Editor 29
Tasks Associated with Regular Stylesheets 32
More About Regular Stylesheets 33
Regular Stylesheets, Table Stylesheets, or Local Properties? 34
Master Stylesheets 37
MadCap-specific Styles and Properties 38
Types of Styles in Flare 39
Pseudo Classes 45
Where's My Style? 51
Creating New Styles and Stylesheets 52
Editing Styles in a Regular Stylesheet 58

Applying Styles and Stylesheets 476
More About Regular Stylesheets 489

CHAPTER 4 Table Stylesheets 513

Where Table Stylesheets are Stored 514
Example 515
Table Style Editor 517
Table Styles and RTL Languages 518
Steps for Using Table Stylesheets 519
Creating New Table Stylesheets 520
Applying Table Stylesheets to Tables 523
Editing Table Stylesheets 527
Setting Table Styles for Print Output 541

CHAPTER 5 Stylesheet Mediums 545

The Basics 546
Selecting Stylesheet Mediums 551
Creating Stylesheet Mediums 554
Associating a Medium with a Target 555

CHAPTER 6 Skin Styles 557

HTML5 Skin Styles 558
Standard Skin Styles 625
WebHelp Mobile Skin Styles 755

APPENDIX A MadCap-Specific Styles 797

APPENDIX B MadCap-Specific Properties 809

APPENDIX C PDF Guides 825

INDEX 827

CHAPTER 1

Introduction

One of the most important aspects of Flare is the use of styles and stylesheets. Quite simply, styles are the best, most efficient way to affect the look of your output.

This chapter discusses the following:

What are Styles? 6
The Basics of Styles 7
Regular Stylesheets and Table Stylesheets 8
Mediums 9
Skin Styles 10

What are Styles?

Styles are elements that contain formatting settings. You can apply styles to your content to change the way it looks. Flare works with cascading stylesheet (CSS) rules that are specified by the World Wide Web Consortium, or W3C (http://www.w3.org).

E X A M P L E

The heading above is using the <h2> style tag (which is short for a second-level heading). Properties have been assigned to this style to affect its look (such as Arial, 14 pt, bold). We can apply this style to any block type of content (e.g., headings or paragraphs). If we were to change the color to green in the style, every heading or paragraph in the project that uses that style would change to green immediately.

An important aspect of CSS is that it is based on community-wide standards set by the W3C. This means that CSS can be used for any XML-based tool, not just Flare. Tools such as Microsoft Word and Adobe FrameMaker also use styles, but they are proprietary, which means they can be used only within that application.

The Basics of Styles

See the following for more information about the basics of styles.

- **The W3C and CSS Resources** Learn about the organization behind cascading styles and other resources for learning more. See "Basics of CSS" on page 11.
- **What can CSS Do?** Learn about some of the different things CSS can be used to accomplish. See "What Can CSS Do?" on page 14.
- **CSS Styles and Page Structure** Learn about the different parts of an XML-based document and how they relate to corresponding style elements. See "CSS Styles and Page Structure" on page 15.
- **Ways to Use CSS** Learn about the three basic ways that you can use CSS—inline, embedded, external. See "Ways to Use CSS" on page 16.
- **Cascading** Learn what is meant by the term "cascading" in CSS. See "What is Meant by "Cascading"?" on page 19
- **Style Tags, Classes, Properties, and Values** Learn about the fundamental parts of styles. See "Style Tags, Classes, Properties, and Values" on page 20.
- **Inheritance** Learn about the concept of inheritance in CSS. See "Inheritance" on page 25.

Regular Stylesheets and Table Stylesheets

There are two basic kinds of stylesheets in Flare—regular stylesheets and special Flare table stylesheets. Each kind of stylesheet uses a different editor in Flare. See "Regular Stylesheets" on page 27 and "Table Stylesheets" on page 513.

For the differences between regular stylesheets, table stylesheets, and local properties—and when you should use one over the other—see "Regular Stylesheets, Table Stylesheets, or Local Properties?" on page 34

Note: If you would like to access the same stylesheet that is used for the Flare documentation, you can download it from this location:

http://docs.madcapsoftware.com/FlareV10/styles.css

After downloading this file, you can save it to any location you want. For example, if you already have a project where you want to use it, you can navigate to the folder where that project is stored in Windows and save the stylesheet in the Content\Resources\Stylesheets subfolder.

Mediums

A medium is an alternative set of styles in a stylesheet that you use for different outputs. They are intended to be an exception to the default style. Mediums can be used in both regular stylesheets and table stylesheets. See "Stylesheet Mediums" on page 545.

Skin Styles

In addition to regular and table stylesheets, you can use skin styles. These let you control the look of the online output window (e.g., navigation pane, TOC or browse sequence entries, index keywords). See "Skin Styles" on page 557.

CHAPTER 2

Basics of CSS

To understand how to use styles for maximum benefit in Flare, you should understand the basics of cascading stylesheets (CSS).

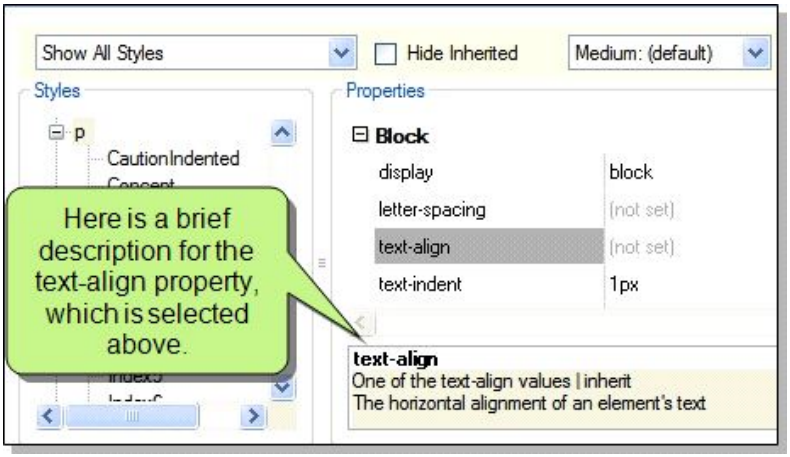
This chapter discusses the following:

W3C and CSS Resources 12
What Can CSS Do? 14
CSS Styles and Page Structure 15
Ways to Use CSS 16
What is Meant by "Cascading"? 19
Style Tags, Classes, Properties, and Values 20
Inheritance 25

W3C and CSS Resources

The vast majority of the styles and style properties in Flare were developed by the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C). For more thorough information about each W3C style and property, refer to http://www.w3.org and use the search feature on the website.

Another way to discover the meaning of a specific property is by using the Flare interface. When you select a property in the Stylesheet Editor, a short description of the property is displayed at the bottom of the editor.



The following resources are highly recommended for learning more about CSS.

ONLINE DEMOS BY MIKE HAMILTON (MADCAP SOFTWARE VICE PRESIDENT OF PRODUCT EVANGELISM)

- **Part 1** http://www.madcapsoftware.com/demos/player.aspx?v=a3e0859ed26f9
- **Part 2** http://www.madcapsoftware.com/demos/player.aspx?v=ae88411412d8c
- **Part 3** http://www.madcapsoftware.com/demos/player.aspx?v=299a29d3ed285

ONLINE SCHOOL

http://www.w3schools.com/css/css_intro.asp

BOOKS

- *Cascading Style Sheets: Designing for the Web* by Hakon Wium Lie and Bert Bos
- *HTML, XHTML, and CSS, Sixth Edition (Visual Quickstart Guide)* by Elizabeth Castro
- *CSS: The Definitive Guide* by Eric Meyer

In addition to the many standard styles from W3C, you might notice several unique-looking styles that begin with the word "MadCap" (e.g., MadCap|footnote, MadCap|toggler). There are also many MadCap-specific properties. You will recognize these properties because they always start with "mc" (e.g., mc-footnote-format, mc-hyphenate). See "MadCap-specific Styles and Properties" on page 38.

What Can CSS Do?

CSS is a lot more than simply a method for changing the look of text in your documentation. It can certainly be used to modify text in all kinds of ways (e.g., size, font type, color), but it can do a whole lot more, including changing the presentation and behavior of the following elements.

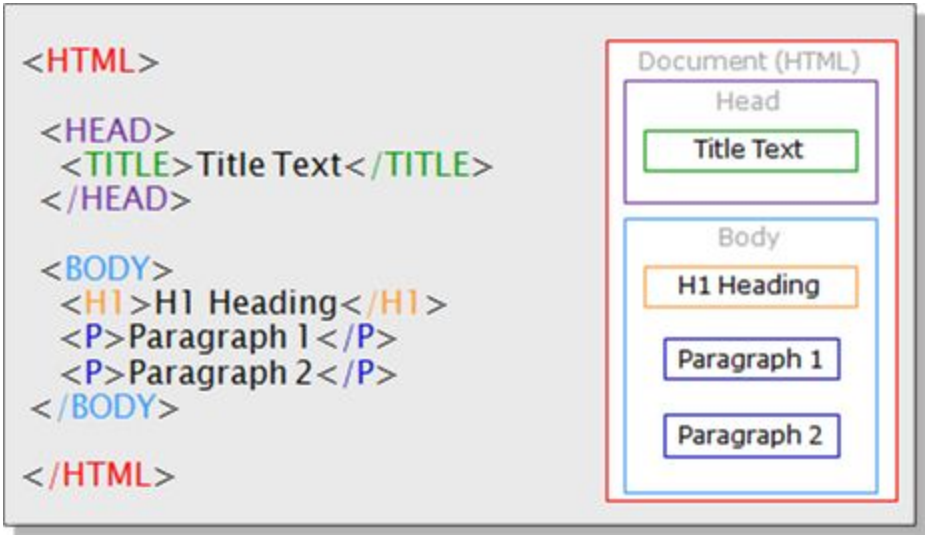
- Element sizing (e.g. put a maximum width on images)
- Element positioning (e.g., specify that a text box should display to the left of the regular flow of content)
- Link attributes (e.g., add page numbering for links in print-based output)
- Cursor manipulation
- And much more

One of the best ways to truly appreciate the power of CSS is to visit **http://www.csszengarden.com**. This website contains text and links that let you apply different CSS files to the content. Each time you select a different CSS file, the look and feel of the page changes dramatically.

CSS Styles and Page Structure

In order to truly understand CSS, you need to understand how different parts of an XML-based document relate to corresponding style elements.

As the following image shows, HTML and XHTML documents have certain style elements, usually with opening and closing tags (e.g., <HTML> and </HTML>).



- **<HTML>** This is the outermost style element, which represents the document as a whole. In the image the <HTML> tags are red, and the outside line of the box model to the right is also red.
- **<HEAD>** Within the <HTML> tags are two major areas, controlled by the <HEAD> and <BODY> elements. The first of these (<HEAD>) is used for storing metadata for the document, such as the properties title or other information that is not actually seen by the end user. In the image the <HEAD> tags are purple. Within the <HEAD> tags, this image example has just one sub-element, the document title, which is held within the <TITLE> tags.
- **<BODY>** The second major area within the <HTML> tags is the main body, which is indicated by the <BODY> tags. In the image the <BODY> tags are light blue. The <BODY> tags are the container that hold the various pieces of content that the end user sees in the output. Within the <BODY> tags, this image example has just three sub-elements, a document heading held within the <H1> tags, and two paragraphs held within two sets of <P> tags. There are many more kinds of tags and elements that can be added to the <BODY> section in addition to the three that you see in this example.

Ways to Use CSS

Following are the three main ways to use CSS rules—inline, embedded, external.

Inline CSS

With this method, you specify the formatting rule for the content at the spot where it exists in the document. Although this type of implementation is allowed, it is not recommended because changing the look of the text in the future might mean making changes in many files and many places instead of just one.

Embedded CSS

With this method, you specify formatting rules for elements within a file and they affect only that document.

E X A M P L E

You might decide to specify that every paragraph in the document should be 11 points. Therefore, in the XHTML document code, you specify between the <head> tags that all paragraphs (<p> tags) should be that size. As a result, every time a <p> tag is found in that document, the text will be 11 points. In the behind-the-scenes XHTML code, it might look like this:

```
<html xmlns:MadCap="http://www.madcapsoftware.
    <head>
        <STYLE>p{font-size:11pt}</STYLE>
    </head>
    <body>
        <h1>Embedded CSS Example</h1>
        <p>First sentence using a &lt;p&gt; tag.</p>
        <p>Second sentence using a &lt;p&gt; tag.</p>
    </body>
</html>
```

The properties for the <p> tag are specified here in the <head> section.

The content within <p> tags in that document are affected.

This method is a bit more powerful than the inline method, but it still does not allow you to control the look and feel of more than one document at a time, therefore it also is not recommended.

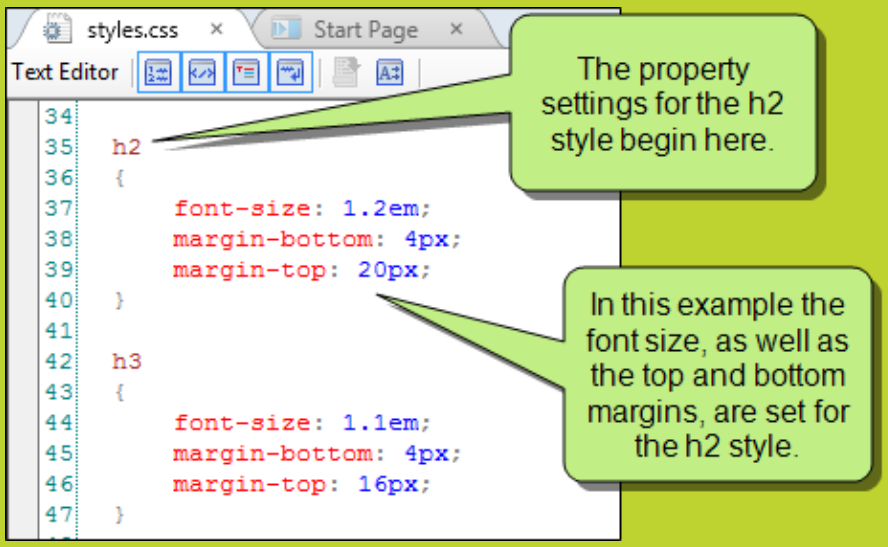
If you want to use embedded CSS in Flare, you would need to open the XHTML code (in the Internal Text Editor or in a third-party editor) and enter the embedded CSS rules manually.

External CSS

With this method, you *do not* specify formatting rules anywhere within the XHTML or HTML document. Instead, you specify the rules in a separate, external file that has a .css extension (see "Creating New Styles and Stylesheets" on page 52 and "Editing Styles in a Regular Stylesheet" on page 58). Then, in the XHTML document you provide a link to that external stylesheet (see "Applying Styles and Stylesheets" on page 476 and "Applying Regular Stylesheets to Topics" on page 478).

E X A M P L E

You might decide to specify that every paragraph in all of your documents should be 11 points. Therefore, you create an external stylesheet, name it something like styles.css, and specify within it that all paragraphs (<p> tags) should be that size. This work can be done in the Flare interface. If you look at the behind-the-scenes code in the CSS file, it might look like this:



Then you associate the external stylesheet with all of the XHTML files that you want to use that look and feel. Again, this can be done in the Flare project at multiple levels (topic, target, and project). If you look in the behind-the-scenes XHTML code of one of the document files, it might look like this:

A link to the external style sheet is added here, between the <head> tags.

```
<html xmlns:MadCap="http://www.madcapsoftware.com/Sc[illegible]as/MadCap.xsd" MadCap:lastBlockDeptl
    <head>
        <link href="Resources/Stylesheets/Styles.css" rel="stylesheet" type="text/css" />
    </head>
    <body>
        <h1>External CSS Example</h1>
        <p>First sentence using a &lt;p&gt; tag.</p>
        <p>Second sentence using a &lt;p&gt; tag.</p>
    </body>
</html>
```

The content within <p> tags in all documents linked to the external style sheet are affected.

External stylesheets are recommended over the other methods. They make it possible to truly separate the content from the presentation and allow you to apply formatting to multiple places at once.

What is Meant by "Cascading"?

Because there are multiple ways to implement CSS (inline, embedded, external), what happens if there is a conflict? For example, what if you use the inline method to set paragraphs to green, but then you use the external CSS method to set paragraphs to blue? "Cascading" is the concept that is used to decide which method "wins" when such a conflict occurs. It's all about order of precedence. Inline has precedence over embedded styles, and embedded styles have precedence over external stylesheets.

So if you make changes in an external stylesheet and notice that the look is not being changed, you might check to see if an inline or embedded style setting is overriding it.

Style Tags, Classes, Properties, and Values

Following are the fundamental parts of styles that you will encounter.

Tags

In the Stylesheet Editor, you will notice several elements in the Styles section that already exist for your use. These are called "tags." You also might hear them referred to simply as "styles" or as "selectors." A tag is an element to which you assign a look and feel. You can then apply that style to your content, so that the content takes on the look and feel associated with the style. Different kinds of tags are available in a stylesheet, to be used for various purposes in your content.

EXAMPLE

<p> is a tag, which can be used to affect the look of paragraphs in your content. Another tag is <h2>, which can be used to affect the look of second-level headings in your content. Yet another tag is , which can be used to affect the look of character-level content (e.g., a portion of a paragraph, but not the entire paragraph).

Note: Complex selectors are called "descendant selectors" in CSS. For more information, see w3.org.

Classes

You can think of tags as parent styles, because they can have children. A child of a tag is called a "class." Some of these classes might already be included in your stylesheet when you first add it to a project. You also have the option of creating classes of parent tags.

Note: Although you can create new style classes, you cannot create new parent tags.

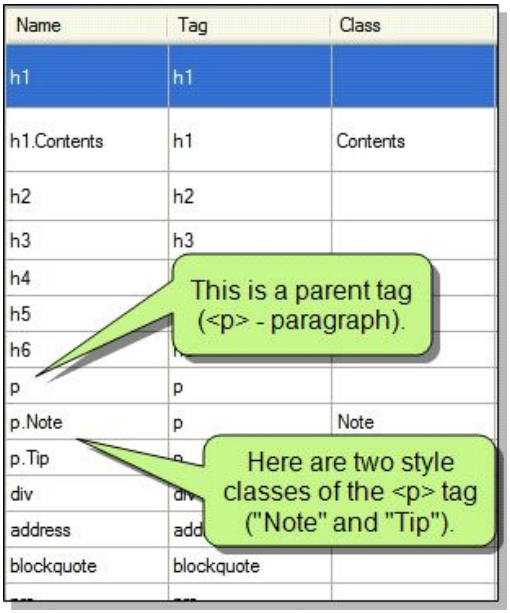
When you create a class, it automatically takes on all of the same qualities (or "attributes") from the parent tag (e.g., color, alignment, size). However, you can change some of those attributes for the class as necessary so that it is different from the parent tag in some ways.

E X A M P L E

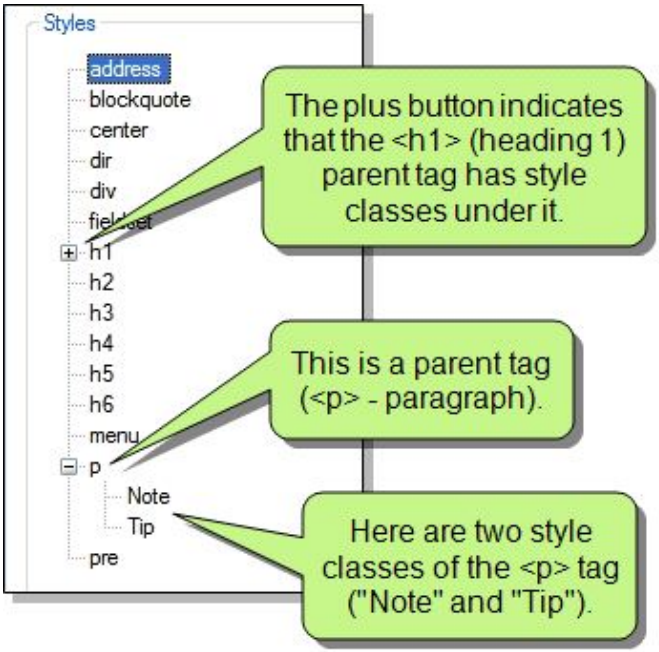
Let's say you want to create a special look for paragraph notes in order to provide additional information in a topic. In addition, you might want yet another special kind of paragraph to be used for tips. Perhaps you want a blue background for your note paragraphs, and you want a yellow background for your tip paragraphs. Meanwhile, for your regular paragraphs, you do not want any colored background.

Therefore, you could create a class of your parent <p> tag and name it "Note." Then you might create another class of your <p> tag and name it "Tip." For the Note class, you could change the background property to display in blue, and you could change the same property for the Tip class to display in yellow. But you would leave the background property for the parent <p> tag as it is, without a color. In the end, both the Note and Tip classes would take on all of the style settings from its parent tag—<p>—with the exception of the background color that you have specified for each.

How can you distinguish between parent tags and style classes? In the Simplified view of the Stylesheet Editor, style classes are listed after the parent tags, and a period is added between the name of the parent tag and the name of the class (e.g., p.Tip).



In the Advanced view of the Stylesheet editor, parent tags and style classes are shown in a tree view. You can expand a parent tag to see its style classes.



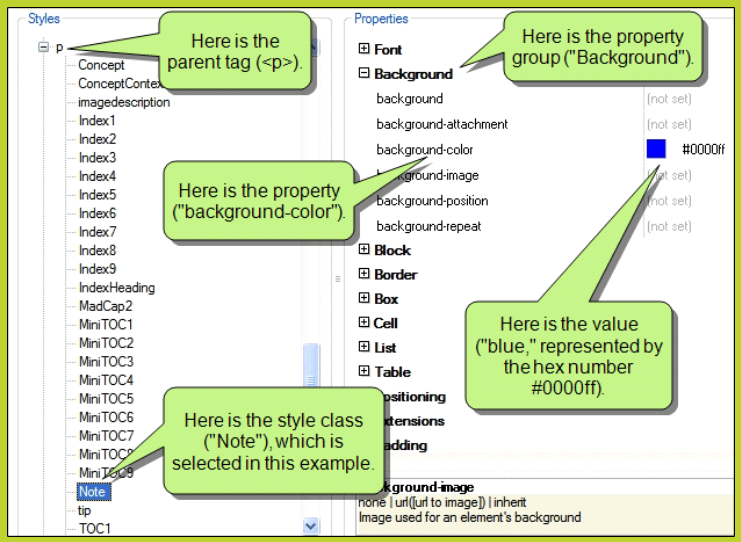
Properties and Values

Every tag and style class has certain attributes that contribute to its look and feel. The elements used to control these attributes are known as "properties," which can be organized into property groups (in the Advanced view of the Stylesheet Editor). The precise information within a property is known as a "value."

There are hundreds of basic properties that you can use to change various aspects of a style.

E X A M P L E

Returning to the example of a note for a paragraph tag (p.Note), let's say we want the background to be blue. That particular quality can be controlled in a property called "background-color." In the Advanced view of the Stylesheet Editor, this property can be found in the property group named "Background." For our p.Note style, we would assign a value of "blue" to that property.



Inheritance

One of the features of CSS that makes it much more powerful than other style systems is inheritance. This is simply the idea that elements in your document can inherit the style settings from other elements. This occurs when one style element is added within another element, therefore creating a parent-child relationship. The child inherits all of the style settings that the parent has, unless you override those settings on the child element. This can be a very powerful feature because it allows you to set properties on a parent element once rather than setting the same thing on all of its children elements.

EXAMPLE

Let's say you want all of your block-level elements to use Arial as the font type. Rather than setting Arial on all of the various tags (h1, p, div, ul, li), you can set it on the <body> tag. That way, the setting will "trickle down" automatically to all of the child elements.

After some time you might decide that you want to continue using Arial for all of those elements except the <p> tags. In that case, you can simply set the other font type on the <p> style. The rest of the elements will continue to use Arial.

What happens if a value is not set on the <body> tag in the stylesheet? In that case, the value is inherited from the element's setting in the end user's browser.

CHAPTER 3

Regular Stylesheets

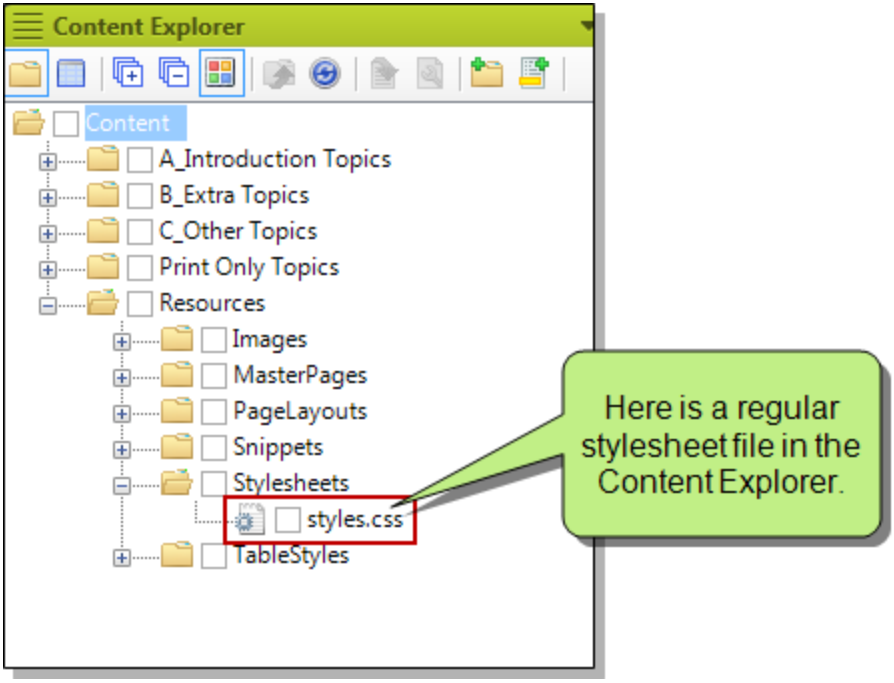
A regular stylesheet lets you store styles for general content in your project, including tables, to control how that content looks. A table stylesheet, on the other hand, is used *only* for tables. See "Table Stylesheets" on page 513.

This chapter discusses the following:

Where Regular Stylesheets are Stored 28
Stylesheet Editor 29
Tasks Associated with Regular Stylesheets 32
More About Regular Stylesheets 33
Regular Stylesheets, Table Stylesheets, or Local Properties? 34
Master Stylesheets 37
MadCap-specific Styles and Properties 38
Types of Styles in Flare 39
Pseudo Classes 45
Where's My Style? 51
Creating New Styles and Stylesheets 52
Editing Styles in a Regular Stylesheet 58
Applying Styles and Stylesheets 476
More About Regular Stylesheets 489

Where Regular Stylesheets are Stored

You can have as many styles as you want within one regular stylesheet, and you can create as many stylesheets as you need (although one stylesheet is often sufficient for most authors and most projects). The traditional location to store a regular CSS stylesheet in the Content Explorer is in the Resources\Stylesheets folder. However, you can store it anywhere in the Content Explorer that you like.



The exception to this is when you import source files that already include a stylesheet. In that case, Flare retains the structure of the imported files, storing the stylesheet in the same location where it resided in the source files.

Stylesheet Editor

When you open a regular stylesheet, it is displayed in the Stylesheet Editor, which allows you to use either an "Advanced" view or a "Simplified" view when working with topic styles.

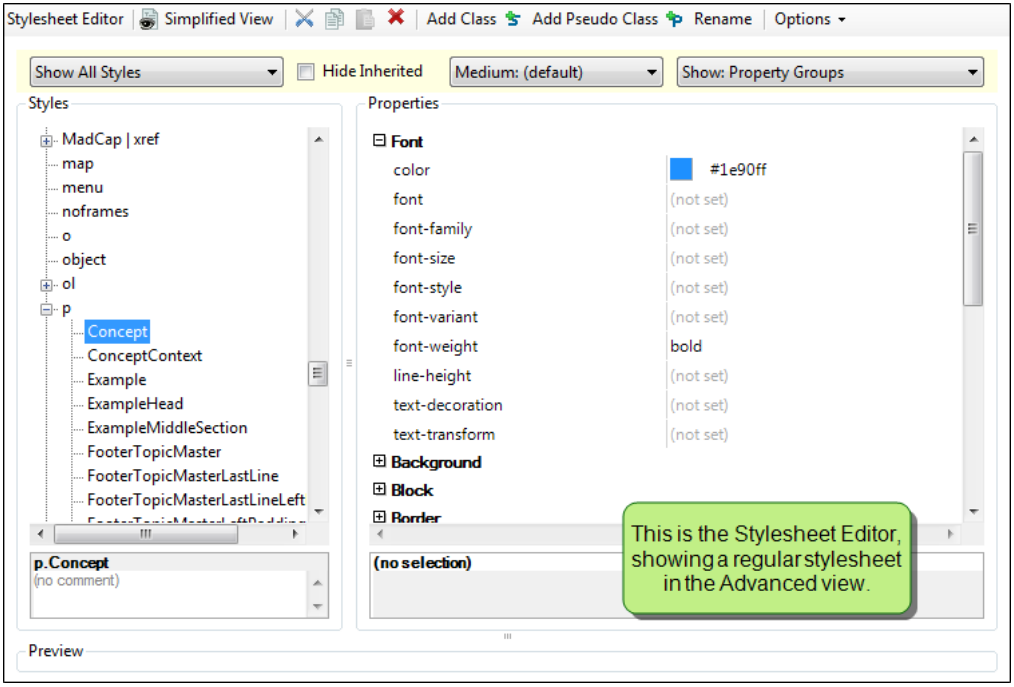
- **Simplified** The Simplified view is often best for newer users. It provides an easier way to apply properties to styles, with format options available from a toolbar (similar to the way one would use the Text Format toolbar to change the look of topic content without a style). In some cases, only the most common property options are available in the Simplified view (e.g., font, letter/word spacing, paragraph alignment/indentation, autonumbering format, borders, background). One advantage of the Simplified view is that you can apply a property to multiple styles at the same time. You can also click a check box to hide the properties in the editor, allowing you to see only the styles.
- **Advanced** The Advanced view displays style classes and properties in hierarchical tree structures. For beginners, it is not as quick and easy to use as the Simplified view, but it allows you to edit more settings than are available in the Simplified view.

This is the Stylesheet Editor, showing a regular stylesheet in the Simplified view.

Stylesheet Editor | Advanced View | Add Class | Add Pseudo Class | Rename | Options

Show All Styles | Hide Inherited | Hide Properties | Medium: (default)

Name	Tag	Class	Pseudo Class	Preview	Comment
MadCap | xref.I...	MadCap | xref	IndexPageNum...		MadCap Softv	
MadCap | xref.L...	MadCap | xref	ListOfPageNu...		MadCap Softv	
MadCap | xref.T...	MadCap | xref	TOCPageNum...		MadCap Softv	
ol	ol			MadCap S	
ol.LowerAlpha	ol	LowerAlpha		MadCap Software	
ol.LowerRoman	ol	LowerRoman		MadCap Software	
p	p			MadCap Software	
p.Concept	p	Concept		MadCap Softwa	
p.ConceptCont...	p	ConceptContext		MadCap	
p.Example	p	Example		MadCap Software	
p.ExampleHead	p	ExampleHead		MadCap S	
p.ExampleMidd...	p	ExampleMiddle...		MadCap Software	
p.FooterTopic...	p	FooterTopicMa...		MadCap Software	
p.FooterTopic...	p	FooterTopicMa...		MadCap Software	
p.FooterTopic...	p	FooterTopicMa...		MadCap Software	
p.FooterTopic...	p	FooterTopicMa...		MadCap Software	
p.Index1	p	Index1		MadCap Software	
p.Index2	p	Index2		MadCap Softv	
p.Index3	p	Index3		MadCap S	



You can also work on a stylesheet in the Internal Text Editor.

Tasks Associated with Regular Stylesheets

Following are the primary tasks associated with regular stylesheets.

- **Create a New Stylesheet** The first step in using styles in your topics is to add a new stylesheet if necessary. However, if a stylesheet was already included in the template when you created the project, you can use that one instead of creating a new one. See "Creating New Styles and Stylesheets" on page 52.

  > **Note:** If you already have a stylesheet (CSS file) somewhere else and want to reuse it in your current project, you can import that stylesheet. You can also import individual styles from another stylesheet into one you've got in your project. See "Importing Stylesheets" on page 501 and "Importing Styles" on page 502.

- **Create Style Classes** After you create or import a stylesheet, you can create new classes of a parent tag (or selector). Think of new style classes as children of the parent tags, which are already provided in the existing stylesheet. You cannot create new parent tags using the Flare user interface. For example, <p> (which stand for a "paragraph") is a parent tag, as are <h1>, <a>, and . You can create a class under any of those parent tags to give you more variety and flexibility when using styles in your content (e.g., p.Tip, p.Note, h1.IndexHeading). But you cannot use the Stylesheet Editor to create a new parent tag called, say, "MyTag" at the same level as the other parent tags; instead, it must be created as a style class under one of the existing parent tags. See "Creating Styles" on page 55.
- **Edit Styles** You can edit styles contained in a regular stylesheet to quickly change the look of your content. This is one of the tasks you will perform most often when it comes to stylesheets. See "Editing Styles in a Regular Stylesheet" on page 58.
- **Apply a Stylesheet** To use the styles from a regular stylesheet, you must link the stylesheet to the appropriate file(s). You may want to apply a master stylesheet at the project or target level. The stylesheet then automatically becomes available for all topics in that project or target. See "Applying Styles and Stylesheets" on page 476.

  You also have the option of applying a stylesheet to a single topic or to multiple topics at the same time. See "Applying Regular Stylesheets to Topics" on page 478.
- **Apply a Style to Topic Content** The final step is to apply styles to the content in your project. This is the other task you will perform most often when it comes to stylesheets. See "Applying Styles to Content" on page 482.

More About Regular Stylesheets

See the following for more information about regular stylesheets.

- **MadCap-specific Styles and Properties** Learn about the many different styles and properties that were created just for use in MadCap products. See "MadCap-specific Styles and Properties" on page 38.
- **Types of Styles** Learn about the different kinds of styles that you can use in Flare. See "Types of Styles in Flare" on page 39.
- **Pseudo Classes** Learn about how to use pseudo classes in Flare, such as special settings for links in a certain state (e.g., link already clicked), as well as first-letter, before, and after effects. See "Pseudo Classes" on page 45.
- **Where's My Style?** Learn about reasons why your style not always be available for use when you are editing content. See "Where's My Style?" on page 51

Regular Stylesheets, Table Stylesheets, or Local Properties?

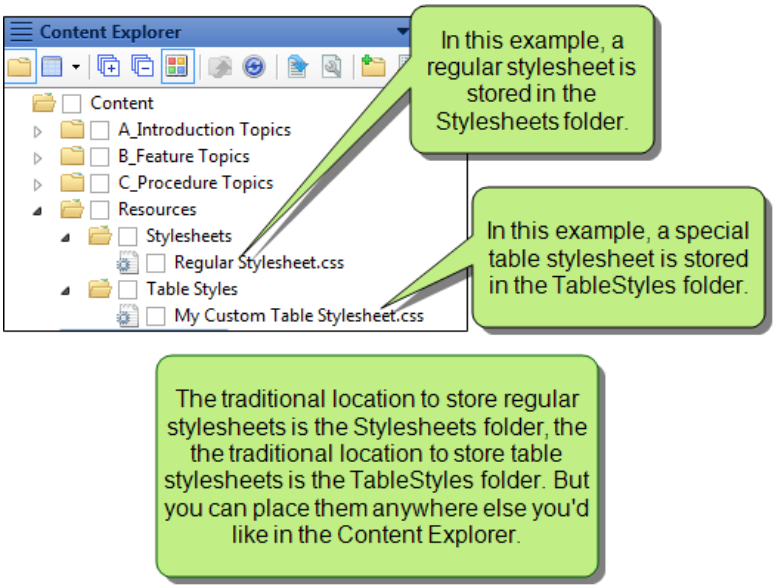
You can control the look of tables in the following ways.

- **Regular Stylesheet** This lets you store styles for general content in your project, including tables, to control how that content looks. See "Regular Stylesheets" on page 27 and "Editing Table Styles in Regular Stylesheets" on page 369.
- **Table Stylesheet** This lets you control the look for tables only, creating customizable patterns. See "Table Stylesheets" on page 513 and "Editing Table Stylesheets" on page 527.
- **Table Properties Dialog** This lets you control the look for a specific table only, by setting options locally. For more information see the online Help or the Flare *Tables Guide*.
- **Other Local Formatting Tools** For virtually any kind of content you add to a topic or snippet, you can use a variety of local formatting tools to control the look. For example, you can highlight text in a table and use the Home ribbon to change the color. For more information see the Flare online Help.

Which Should I Use?

Using a stylesheet is always preferred over local formatting (i.e., controlling the look of content only at the place where it has been inserted). The good thing about stylesheets is that they let you separate the look of the content from the content itself. That way, you can manage the look from one place, which can save you a lot of time and effort. For example, you can change the padding in 84 tables by changing a setting in a single stylesheet, as opposed to opening each of those 84 tables and changing the padding in each one. Of course, there may be times when you need to make a change in the properties for a single table only, but for the most part, you should try to use stylesheets.

So why are there two kinds of stylesheets for tables? Why do you need to use a *table* stylesheet when you've already got a *regular* stylesheet? You actually do not need to. You can produce a look for tables entirely by using a regular stylesheet. But if you want to create tables that have different patterns (e.g., every other row might have a green background), it can be very difficult to do this in a regular stylesheet. So Flare lets you use these special table stylesheets to accomplish this task much more easily. You might even use both types of stylesheets to control different aspects of your tables.


Content Explorer
Content
A_Introduction Topics
B_Feature Topics
C_Procedure Topics
Resources
Stylesheets
Regular Stylesheet.css
Table Styles
My Custom Table Stylesheet.css
In this example, a regular stylesheet is stored in the Stylesheets folder.
In this example, a special table stylesheet is stored in the TableStyles folder.
The traditional location to store regular stylesheets is the Stylesheets folder, the the traditional location to store table stylesheets is the TableStyles folder. But you can place them anywhere else you'd like in the Content Explorer.

What About Conflicts/Order of Precedence?

Because you can often control the look of a table in multiple ways—(1) using local table properties, (2) using other local formatting tools, (3) a table stylesheet, or (4) a regular stylesheet—it's possible that you might encounter conflicting settings from time to time. When it comes to situations like this, the settings closest to the content typically has precedence. So any explicit setting in the Table Properties dialog (or other local formatting) has precedence over both stylesheet options, and the table stylesheet setting has precedence over the regular stylesheet setting. For example, let's say you open a regular stylesheet and specify that the outer borders of the table should be green. Then you open the table stylesheet and specify that the outer borders should be red. And then you open the Table Properties dialog and specify that the outer borders should be blue. You've told Flare to do three different things to the same table. So in this case, the table would display blue borders, because the local properties rule over the other settings. But if you remove that setting from the Table Properties dialog and use the default setting, the table would then display red borders, because the table stylesheet has precedence over the regular stylesheet. And finally, if you remove the settings from both the Table Properties dialog and table stylesheet, using the default setting in both, the table would take its command from the regular stylesheet and display green borders.

Master Stylesheets

When you want to use styles in your content, the stylesheet needs to be made available for the content in question. In Flare, you can associate regular stylesheets with a single topic (see "Applying Regular Stylesheets to Topics" on page 478). However, you also have the option of using a regular stylesheet as a "master," applying it at either the project or target level, or both. See "Applying Styles and Stylesheets" on page 476.

- **Master Stylesheets at the Project Level** You can associate a master stylesheet with an entire Flare project. The styles will therefore be available to all content in the project. You can set the project-level master stylesheet in the Project Properties dialog (select **Project>Project Properties**).
- **Master Stylesheets at the Target Level** You can associate a master stylesheet with an entire Flare target. The styles will therefore be used for the content in the target. If you have specified a master stylesheet at the project level and another at a target level, the stylesheet at the target will take precedence. If you are using different master stylesheets for different targets, the stylesheet associated with the primary target determines what you see in the XML Editor. You can set the target-level master stylesheet on the General tab of the Target Editor.

Note: If you apply a master stylesheet at either the target or project level, you will no longer be able to associate stylesheets at the topic level (unless you remove the master stylesheet associations at the project and/or target level). If you have previously applied multiple stylesheets to a single topic and then switch to using a master stylesheet, you should make sure that all of the styles you need from the various stylesheets are all included in your master stylesheet.

MadCap-specific Styles and Properties

In addition to the many standard styles from W3C, you might notice several unique-looking tags that begin with the word "MadCap" (e.g., MadCap|footnote, MadCap|toggler). There are also many MadCap-specific properties. You will recognize these properties because they always start with "mc" (e.g., mc-footnote-format, mc-hyphenate).

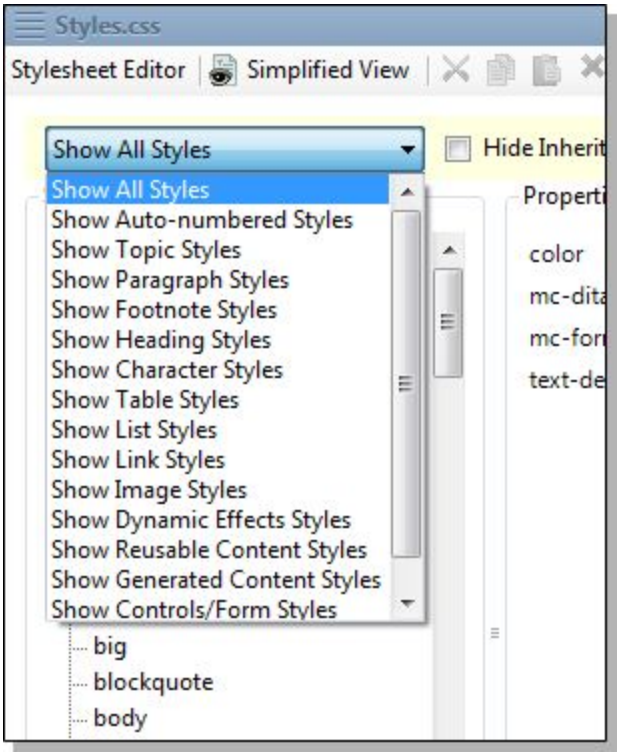
These special styles and properties have been added to the Flare user interface in order to support some of the unique features available only in MadCap Software products.

You can also use these special tags to create a transformation process between your XML files and Flare topic files.

See "MadCap-Specific Styles" on page 797 and "MadCap-Specific Properties" on page 809.

Types of Styles in Flare

There are several categories of styles that you can apply to content. To filter the list of styles shown, use the drop-down list in the **Show Styles** section of the Stylesheet Editor.



For steps on applying each type of style to content in your project, see "Applying Styles to Content" on page 482. Following are explanations of the basic types of styles.

- **Autonumbered Styles** These are styles to which an autonumber format has been applied. Therefore, an autonumber format style is not technically a unique type of style, because an autonumber format can actually be applied to other types of styles (such as paragraphs and headings). If you apply an autonumber format to a style, that style will be listed in the Stylesheet Editor if you select **Show Autonumbered Styles**.

  EXAMPLE

  You might select the <h1> style tag and modify its "mc-autonumber-format" property, choosing a format such as {n+}. If you then select **Show Autonumbered Styles** in the Stylesheet Editor, the <h1> style will be listed.

- **Topic Styles** This lists the <html> style and its classes, which are used to affect entire topics.
- **Paragraph Styles** These are styles applied to an entire paragraph.

  EXAMPLE

  You might select a style class called "p.Body" that you have created and modify its "font-size" property to enlarge the body text in your topics.

- **Footnote Styles** These are styles that are applied to footnotes inserted into content. Footnotes are commonly used if you are producing print-based output. The <MadCap|footnotesBlock> style affects the area that holds a collection of footnotes.

  EXAMPLE

  You might select the <MadCap|footnote> style and modify its "mc-footnote-number" in order to restart the numbering for footnotes at each chapter (as opposed to each book, page, or section). You might select the <MadCap|footnoteBlock> style and modify its "color" property in order to show the footnote text in blue.

» **Heading Styles** These are styles that are applied to content intended to serve as headings above sections of content.

E X A M P L E

You might select the <h2> style and modify its "font-family" property in order to display second-level headings in an Arial font.

» **Character Styles** These are styles that are applied to selected text within a paragraph, rather than the entire paragraph.

E X A M P L E

You might select the style and create a class under it named "code" (span.code). Then you might set its "font-family" property to "Courier New" in order to display text that represents programming code.

» **Table Styles** These are styles that are applied to tables and the content within them.

E X A M P L E

You might select the <th> style and modify its "color" property in order to display table header row text in green.

Note: These styles are not to be confused with the separate special table stylesheets that you can create. However, you can use both table stylesheets and these standard table styles from a regular stylesheet in order to design the look of your tables and their content.

Tip: When controlling the look of tables, it is a good idea to choose just one method for styling them. You should use either (A) table stylesheets and perhaps classes of the <p> style (e.g., p.TableText) for table content (see "Selecting Styles for Table Cell Contents" on page 371), or (B) standard table styles from a regular stylesheet.

If you use standard table tags at the parent level (e.g., tr, td), you may run into trouble if you also use proxies in your project. The reason for this is that when proxies are generated, they also use standard parent-level table styles. So any style changes you make to the standard table styles may be seen not only in tables, but also in generated content created via proxies (e.g., TOCs, indexes). In this case, it would be wiser to use classes of the standard table styles (e.g., tr.myclass, td.myclass), instead of table styles at the parent level.

However, if you decide to use classes of standard table styles (e.g., tr.myclass, td.myclass), you may be faced with a different dilemma. This issue occurs when you also use table stylesheets. That's because the table stylesheet settings will overwrite settings on the classes.

- **List Styles** These are styles that are applied to content displayed in a list, such as a bulleted list or numbered procedures.

EXAMPLE

You might select the <ul> style and create a class under it named "indented." Then you might set its "margin-left" property to "0.5 in" so that bulleted lists using that style are indented one-half inch from the left edge.

- **Link Styles** These are styles that are applied to content that contains a link, such as a cross-reference or a related topics link.

EXAMPLE

You might select the <MadCap|xref> style and modify its "mc-format" property to change the text displayed in cross-references (e.g., "see page…").

» **Image Styles** These are styles that are applied to images and objects that you inserted into topics.

> **EXAMPLE**
>
> You might create a class under the <img> tag, name it "Thumbnail" (img.Thumbnail), and modify its "mc-thumbnail" property. This lets you specify that images using that tag should be shown as small thumbnails until the end user either clicks or hovers over the thumbnail to see the large version.

» **Dynamic Effects Styles** These are styles that are applied to content used in Dynamic HTML effects, such as drop-down text or popups.

> **EXAMPLE**
>
> You might select the <MadCap|dropDown> style and modify its "mc-open-image" and "mc-closed-image" properties in order to change or remove the image, such as an arrow, displayed next to drop-down effects.

» **Reusable Content Styles** These are styles that are applied to reusable content, such as snippets, variables, or proxies.

> **EXAMPLE**
>
> You might select the <MadCap|breadcrumbsProxy> style and modify its "border-bottom" property. This lets you set the color and width of the bottom border for the "You are here" breadcrumbs feature that can be displayed at the top of topics.

» **Generated Content Styles** These are styles that are applied to content that is created when you generate output, such as glossaries, indexes, or tables of contents (TOCs).

> **EXAMPLE**
>
> You might select the "TOC1" class under the <p> tag (p.TOC1) and modify its "mc-leader-format" property. This lets you set the leader format, such as dots, to be displayed after the first-level headings in the generated TOC for print-based output.

» **Controls/Form Styles** These are styles that are applied to content within controls, such as buttons, or forms.

E X A M P L E

You might select the <form> style tag and modify its "text-align" property in order to center a form that you add in a topic.

Pseudo Classes

Pseudo classes are a special group of style classes in cascading stylesheets that pertain to elements when they're in a certain state. They are most often used for styles associated with hyperlinks.

Link Pseudo Classes

Link pseudo classes include the following.

- **Active** This class is used when the person activates the element (mouse is clicked).
- **Focus** This class is used if the element has the focus.
- **Hover** This class is used when the person hovers the mouse over the element.
- **Link** This class is used for links that have not yet been clicked.
- **Visited** This class is used for links that have already been clicked.

E X A M P L E

Let's say you want the text to display in green for links that have not yet been clicked. But after a link is clicked, you want it to display as gray text. Therefore, under the <a> style tag, you modify the "link" pseudo class and change the font color to green. Then you modify the "visited" pseudo class under the <a> tag so that the font color is gray.

Note: In order for <a> link pseudo classes to function properly, they must appear in the following order in the stylesheet (you can see this by opening the stylesheet in Notepad).

a:link

a:visited

a:hover

a:focus

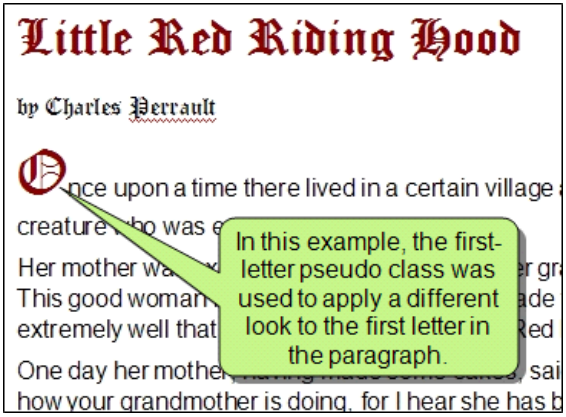
a:active

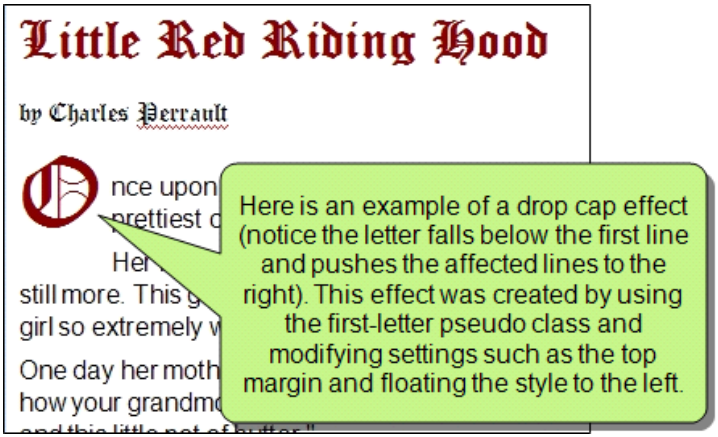
In order to avoid issues with this, and to ensure that your pseudo classes are working, you should explicitly set values on those pseudo classes, rather than expecting them to inherit settings from other tags.

First-Letter and First-Child Pseudo Classes

There are a couple of additional kinds of pseudo classes that you can create from the Stylesheet Editor. These are called "first-letter" and "first-child" pseudo classes.

The first-letter class lets you apply style settings to the first letter in a block (such as a paragraph), if it is not preceded by any other content (such as an image). This pseudo class is useful for creating drop caps and initial caps effects. See "Creating Drop Caps Effects" on page 275.





The first-child class lets you apply style settings to the first child of another element (e.g., the first <p> tag that occurs within a tag).

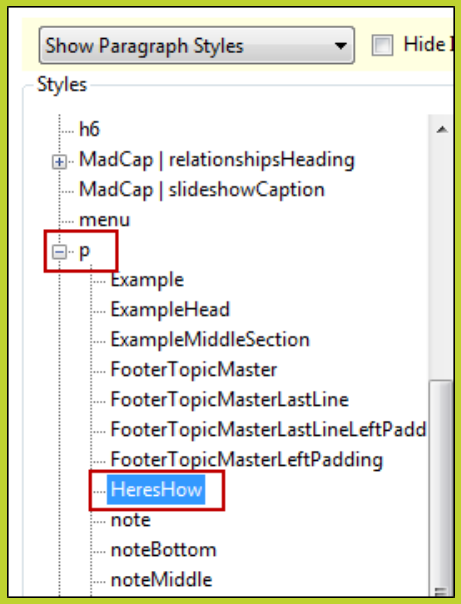
Before and After Pseudo Classes

You can use "before" and "after" pseudo classes on a style to insert content before or after an element.

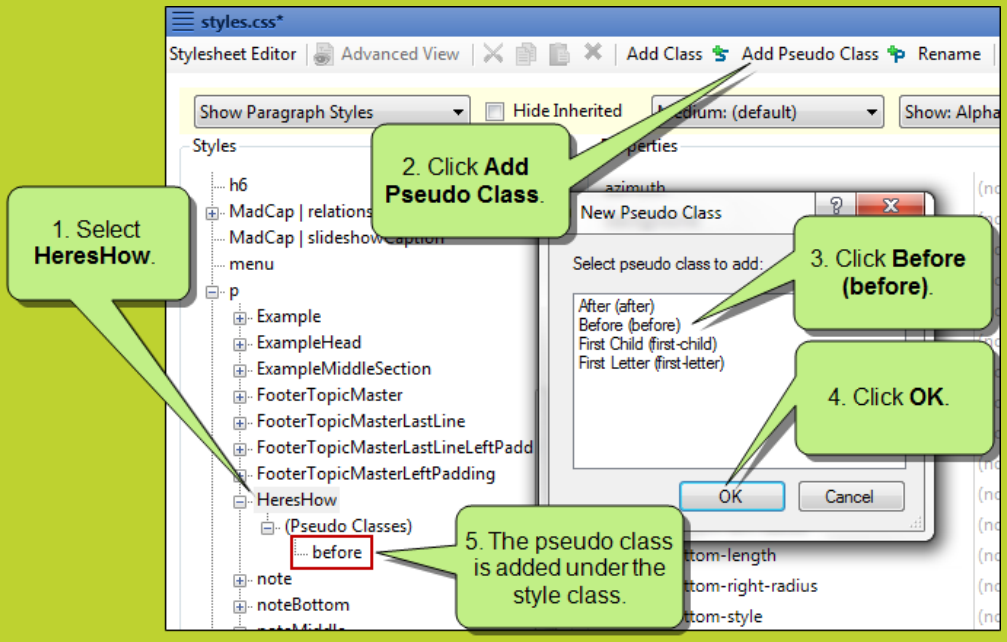
E X A M P L E

Let's say you frequently enter the text "Here's How:" followed by different content. Instead of typing the words "Here's How:" each time, you can set them in a "before" pseudo class in a style.

For example, you might create a paragraph style class and name it "HeresHow" (p.HeresHow).

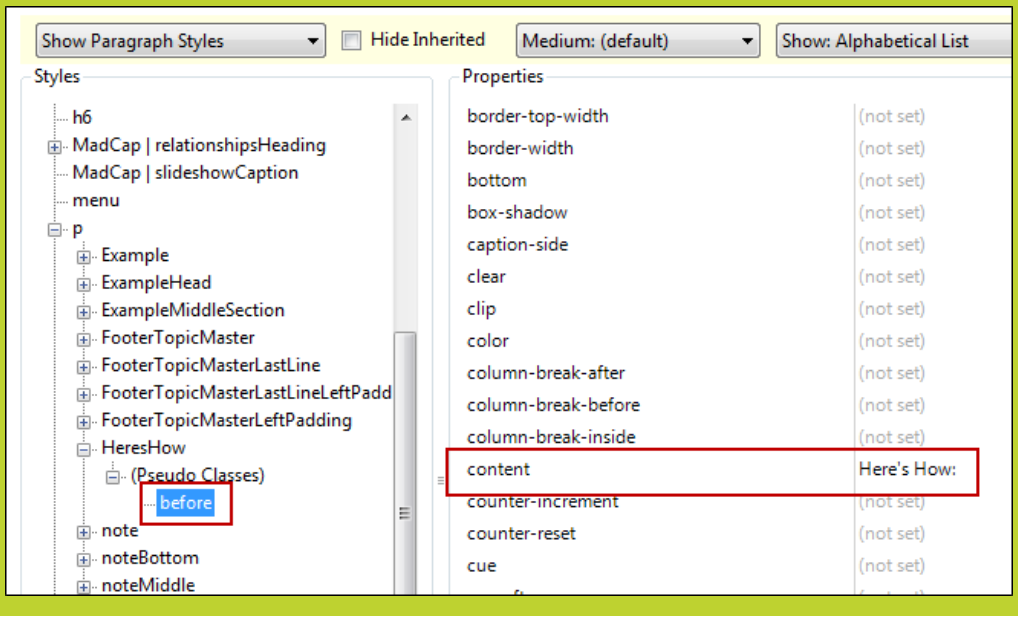


You select that style in the Advanced View of the Stylesheet Editor. Then in the local toolbar of the Stylesheet Editor, you select **Add Pseudo Class** and you choose **Before**. This adds the pseudo class below that style.

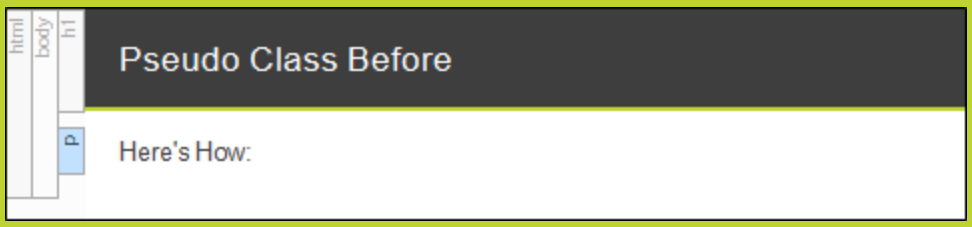


Next, you select that pseudo class. On the right side of the editor you choose to list the properties alphabetically, and you locate the **Content** property. In that field, you type the following:

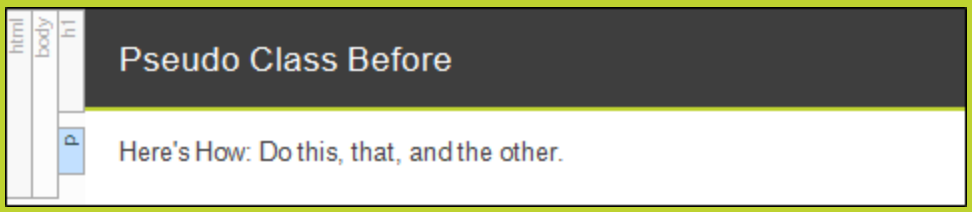
```
Here's How:
```



Now when you apply that style to a paragraph, those words appear at the beginning.



You can then enter any additional text after it.



Where's My Style?

When applying styles to content, you may notice from time to time that the style you are looking for is not available from the drop-down list or Styles window pane when you try to select it.

This can occur if the style exists in a particular medium (e.g., print) but not in the default medium. So if you are working in the XML Editor with the medium set to default and you attempt to apply that style to content, you won't see it in the selection list with all of the other styles. To correct this, make sure the style exists in the default medium as well.

Another possible reason for this has to do with the location of the cursor in the topic. Flare realizes where the cursor is placed and knows that only certain styles should be applied at that location.

EXAMPLES

Let's say that you have your cursor on a regular paragraph and you want to apply a list <li> style to it in order to turn it into the beginning of a bulleted list. Because it is not yet a list item, but rather a simple paragraph, you will not see your <li> style when you try to select it. Instead, you will see several paragraph styles in the list. In order to use the list style, you first need to turn the paragraph into a bulleted list item, by clicking the bullet button in the Home ribbon or Text Format toolbar.

You also might notice that if you have your cursor in a list, you only see <li> styles in the window pane, but not the broader <ol> and <ul> styles. To see these other styles, click at the very beginning of a list item. Then press the left arrow key. This should switch the Style window pane from showing <li> styles to the <ol> and <ul> tags. If you have your structure bars on, you'll see why this happens. When you initially click in a list, you'll see that the <li> block bar is highlighted, so Flare assumes you want to do something with that style level. After you press your left arrow key enough, you'll see the next level up (<ol> or <ul>) become highlighted. And if you keep pressing the left arrow key, Flare will highlight then next level of style (e.g., <body>). And whatever is highlighted in the structure bar should become available as styles in the Style window pane.

Here is another example. If multiple paragraphs are selected or if the cursor is simply placed somewhere within a paragraph, the paragraph styles are shown in the Styles window pane. If only a portion of a paragraph is selected, the character styles are shown.

If you still do not see your style available for selection, try closing and re-launching Flare.

Creating New Styles and Stylesheets

You can create new regular stylesheets, although you may only need to use just one for your project, or even for all of your projects. In addition, you can create new classes of existing parent styles.

Creating New Regular Stylesheets

The first step in using styles in your topics is to add a new stylesheet. However, if a stylesheet was included in the template when you created the project, you can use that one instead of creating a new one. The traditional location to store a regular CSS stylesheet in the Content Explorer is in the Resources\Stylesheets folder. However, you can store it anywhere in the Content Explorer that you like.

HOW TO CREATE A NEW REGULAR STYLESHEET

1. Do one of the following, depending on the part of the user interface you are using:
   - **(Recommended) Right-click** In the Content Explorer, right-click on a folder and from the context menu select **New>Stylesheet**.

     > **Tip:** When adding a new file to the Content Explorer, the recommended method is to right-click on the folder in the Content Explorer and use the New menu option. This is the most efficient way to direct the new file to the folder where you want to store it. That's because the Add File dialog opens when you add a new content file, and this method ensures that the folder you want is already selected in that dialog.

   - **Ribbon** Select the **Project** ribbon. In the **Content** section select **New>Stylesheet**.

     You can use the Options dialog to switch between ribbons and the classic tool strip layout. For more information see the online Help.

     Keep in mind that the smaller the application window becomes, the more the options in a ribbon shrink. Therefore, you might only see a small icon instead of text, or you might see only a section name displayed with a down arrow to access the options in it. You can hover over small icons to see tooltips that describe them. You can also enlarge the application window or click one of the section drop-downs in the ribbon to locate a hidden feature.

   - **Menu** Select **Project>Add Stylesheet**.

   The Add File dialog opens.

2. In the **File Type** field at the top, make sure **Stylesheet** is selected.

3. In the **Source** area select one of the following:

   - **New from template** This lets you choose either the factory template file or one of your own customized template files as a starting point. The new file will take on all of the settings contained in the template. If you want to use the factory template provided by Flare, expand the **Factory Templates** folder and click on a template file. If you want to use your own customized template file, expand the appropriate folder and click on a file. For more information about templates, see the online Help.

     Note: In some dialogs and wizards you can click the **Manage Templates** button if you want to open the Template Manager. This lets you manage any of your template files (e.g., add new templates, enter descriptions for templates). For more information see the online Help.

   - **New from existing** This lets you choose an existing file of the same type as a starting point for your new file. As with template files, your new file will take on all of the settings contained in the file you select. To use this option, click the browse button ..., use the Open File dialog to find a file, and double-click it.

Note: Each factory template has different style settings in it. You might want to try different ones to see which suits you best.

For example, one of the factory templates is called "Modern." This template includes special custom properties that let you set the border radius on a paragraph style (i.e., to create rounded corners).

You will also see a factory template called "SearchHighlight." This template has a very specific purpose—to let you change how highlighted terms look when users perform a search.

4. (Optional) The Folder field is automatically populated with the folder that has focus in the Content Explorer. If you want to place the file into a folder that you previously created in the Content Explorer, in the **Folder** field click ... and select the subfolder. Otherwise, keep the default location.

> **Note:** If you want to place non-topic files in a traditional default folder, you must first make sure that folder exists in the Content Explorer. If it does not exist, you can easily add it.

Non-Topic File Type	Traditional Default Folder in Content Explorer
Image	Resources\Images
Master Page	Resources\MasterPages
Multimedia	Resources\Multimedia
Page Layout	Resources\PageLayouts
Snippet	Resources\Snippets
Stylesheet	Resources\Stylesheets
Table Stylesheet	Resources\TableStyles

5. In the **File Name** field, type a new name for the stylesheet.
6. Click **Add**. The stylesheet is added to the Content Explorer and opens in its own page in the Stylesheet Editor.

Creating Styles

After you create or import a stylesheet, you can create new classes of a parent tag (or selector). Think of new style classes as children of the parent tags, which are already provided in the existing stylesheet. You cannot create new parent tags using the Flare user interface. For example, <p> (which stand for a "paragraph") is a parent tag, as are <h1>, <a>, and . You can create a class under any of those parent tags to give you more variety and flexibility when using styles in your content (e.g., p.Tip, p.Note, h1.IndexHeading). But you cannot use the Stylesheet Editor to create a new parent tag called, say, "MyTag" at the same level as the other parent tags; instead, it must be created as a style class under one of the existing parent tags.

There are multiple ways to create new style classes.

HOW TO CREATE A NEW STYLE CLASS FROM THE STYLESHEET EDITOR

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
3. In the editor, find and click on a tag (such as <p> or <li>).

   Your new style will start out with the same properties as the tag that you choose. For example, if you are creating a style class for text to be used as a note of caution for your readers, you might decide that the <p> (paragraph) tag is most appropriate.
4. In the local toolbar, click Add Class. The New Style dialog opens.
5. Type a name for the new style class, without using spaces (e.g., CautionIndented).
6. Click **OK**. The new style class is added under the tag you selected.
7. Click to save your work.

HOW TO CREATE A NEW STYLE CLASS FROM THE STYLES WINDOW PANE

1. Open the content file (e.g., topic, snippet).
2. Place your cursor on the content that you want to use as a foundation for your new style.

> **E X A M P L E**
>
> If you place your cursor on content that currently has the <p> tag applied to it, the new style will start out with the same property values as the <p> tag.

3. Do one of the following, depending on the part of the user interface you are using:
   - **Ribbon** Select the **Home** ribbon. In the **Styles** section select **Style Window**.
   - **Menu** Select **View>Style Window**.
   - **Keyboard Shortcut** Press **F12**

   The Styles window pane opens on the right side of the interface.
4. Click the **Create Style** button. The Create Style dialog opens.
5. In the **Name** field, type a name for the new style class, without using spaces.
6. Select the appropriate stylesheet(s) on the right side of the dialog.
7. The property values already applied to the content selected in the topic are shown (if any). If you do not want to include certain property values in the new style, click the check box next to the value (in the **Include** column) to remove the check mark.
8. If you want the new style to immediately be applied to the content selected in the topic, select **Create style and update the source element**. If you do not want the new style to immediately be applied to the content selected in the topic, select **Create style without updating the source element**.
9. Click **OK**.
10. Click to save your work.

HOW TO CREATE A NEW STYLE CLASS FROM THE TOPIC CONTENT

1. Open the content file (e.g., topic, snippet).
2. If the tag block bars are not already shown, click at the bottom of the editor to display them to the left of the content.
3. Right-click the appropriate tag bar next to the content that you want to use as a foundation for your new style.

> **E X A M P L E**
>
> If you right-click the <li> tag bar next to content in the topic, the new style will start out with the same property values as the <li> tag.

4. In the context menu, select **Style Class>Create Style Class**. The Create Style dialog opens.
5. (Optional) Add an internal comment for the style (e.g., its purpose, when it should be used).
6. In the **Name** field, type a name for the new style class, without using spaces.
7. Select the appropriate stylesheet(s) on the right side of the dialog.
8. The property values already applied to the content selected in the topic are shown (if any). If you do not want to include certain property values in the new style, click the check box next to the value (in the **Include** column) to remove the check mark.
9. If you want the new style to immediately be applied to the content selected in the topic, select **Create style and update the source element**. If you do not want the new style to immediately be applied to the content selected in the topic, select **Create style without updating the source element**.
10. Click **OK**.
11. Click to save your work.

Editing Styles in a Regular Stylesheet

You can edit styles contained in a regular stylesheet to quickly change the look of your content.

General Steps for Editing Styles

Following are the general steps for editing styles in a regular stylesheet. Steps for specific tasks are given throughout the rest of this chapter.

HOW TO EDIT STYLES IN A REGULAR STYLESHEET

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Complete one of the following sets of steps, depending on whether you want to use the Simplified view or Advanced view in the Stylesheet Editor:

   - **Simplified** The Simplified view is often best for newer users. It provides an easier way to apply properties to styles, with format options available from a toolbar (similar to the way one would use the Text Format toolbar to change the look of topic content without a style). In some cases, only the most common property options are available in the Simplified view (e.g., font, letter/word spacing, paragraph alignment/indentation, autonumbering format, borders, background). One advantage of the Simplified view is that you can apply a property to multiple styles at the same time. You can also click a check box to hide the properties in the editor, allowing you to see only the styles.
   - **Advanced** The Advanced view displays style classes and properties in hierarchical tree structures. For beginners, it is not as quick and easy to use as the Simplified view, but it allows you to edit more settings than are available in the Simplified view.

Warning: When editing styles, make sure the proper medium is selected in the Stylesheet Editor before you begin (you can do this from the **Medium** drop-down list). Flare remembers the last medium that you used when working in the stylesheet, so it may or may not be the one that you want to use the next time around. If you want all mediums to use the same setting, select the default medium and the properties will then be used on the other mediums. If you are not using different mediums, you do not need to worry about selecting one when you edit styles. See "The Basics" on page 546.

IF USING SIMPLIFIED VIEW

a. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Advanced View (which means that the Simplified view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Simplified View instead, then click it.

b. (Optional) You can click in the **Show Styles** field in the upper-left corner of the Stylesheet Editor to limit which styles are shown in the editor. For example, if you select **Show All Styles**, then all styles will be displayed. If you select **Show Paragraph Styles**, only paragraph styles will be displayed. If you select **Show Table Styles**, only table styles will be displayed.

c. From the grid in the bottom portion of the Stylesheet Editor, select a style.

d. In the local toolbar of the editor, click . The Properties dialog opens.

e. Use the Properties dialog to change values for the style's properties.

f. In the Properties dialog, click **OK**.

IF USING ADVANCED VIEW

a. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

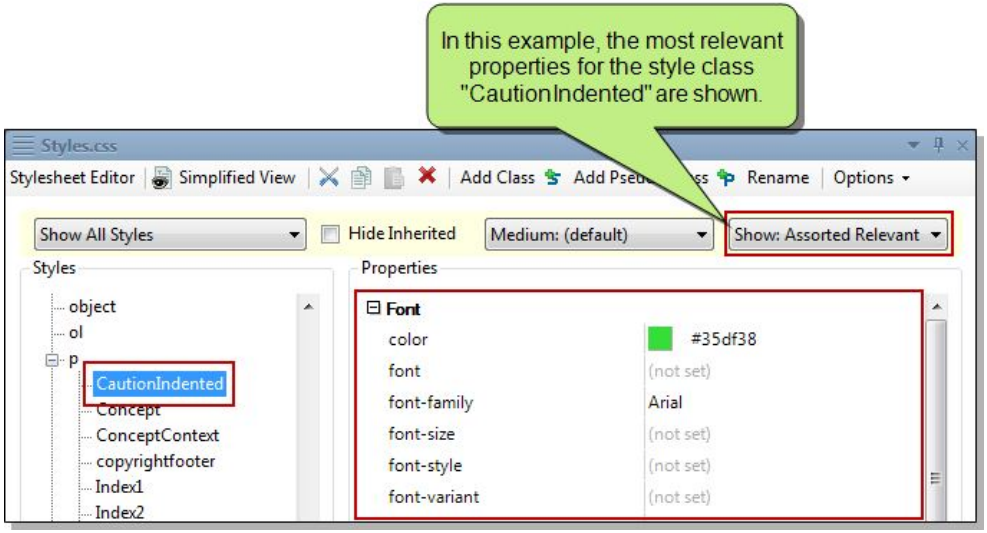
b. (Optional) You can click in the **Show Styles** drop-down list in the upper-left corner of the Stylesheet Editor to limit which styles are shown in the editor. For example, if you select **Show All Styles**, then all styles will be displayed. If you select **Show Paragraph Styles**, then only paragraph styles will be displayed. If you select **Show Table Styles**, then only table styles will be displayed.

c. In the **Styles** section of the editor, select the style that you want to edit.

> **Tip:** If you want to limit the list of styles to only those that you tend to use in your project, you can disable the styles that you do not want to see. This does not delete those styles; it merely hides them from view. See "Disabling Styles" on page 497.

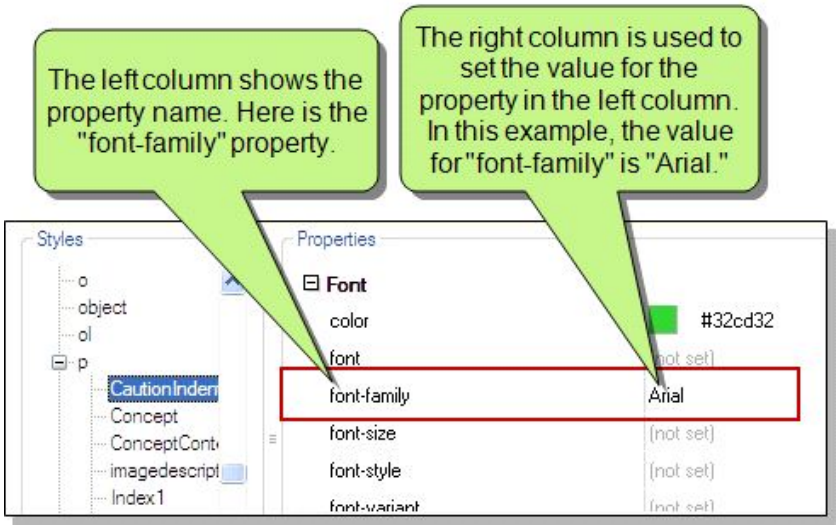
d. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select any of the options shown to determine which properties are displayed below. This is simply a way to find the appropriate property as quickly as possible.

- **Assorted Relevant Properties** Displays the property groups that are used most often for the selected style type.
- **Property Groups** Displays all the different groups holding the properties for the selected style. Property groups are simply a way to organize the properties so that they are easy for you to find. If you want to see the values for a given property group, expand the group.
- **Alphabetical List** Displays all of the properties in alphabetical order.
- **Set Properties** Displays all properties that have been set for the style.
- **Set (Locally) Properties** Displays properties that have been set for the selected style directly in one or more topics. In other words, the global setting for that particular style has been overruled in some topics within the project.



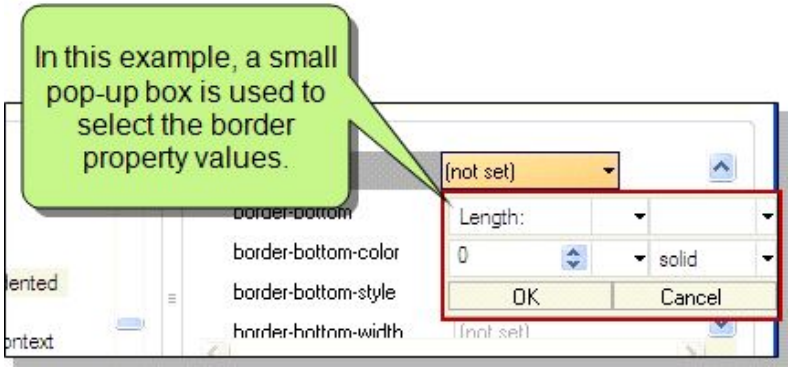
e. In the **Properties** section, locate the specific property that you want to change.

The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

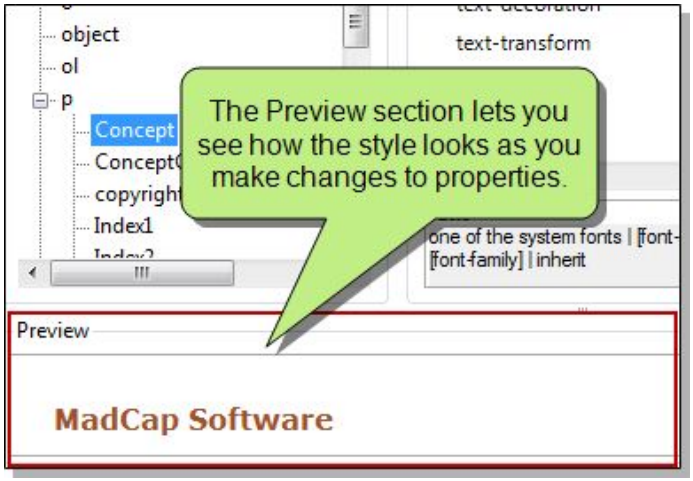


f. Click in the value column on the right side. Depending on the type of property, you can either type the value, select it from a drop-down list, or complete the values in a dialog or popup box.

If you completed values in a popup, click **OK** at the bottom of the box.



As you make changes to a property's values, you can see how the changes look in the Preview section at the bottom of the editor.



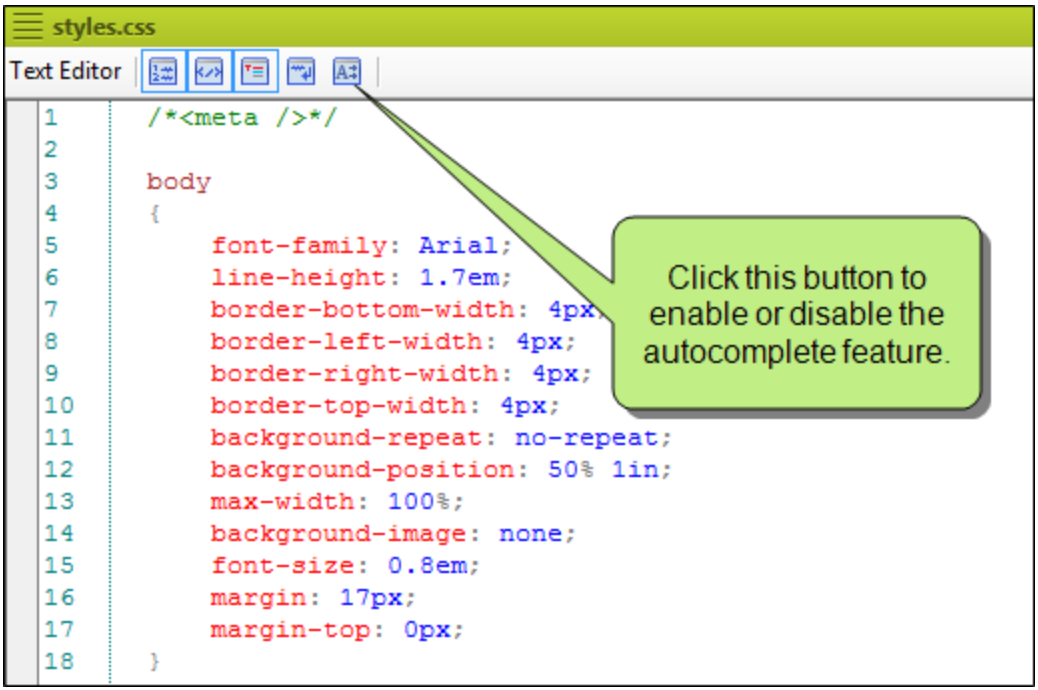
3. Click to save your work.

Editing Styles in the Text Editor

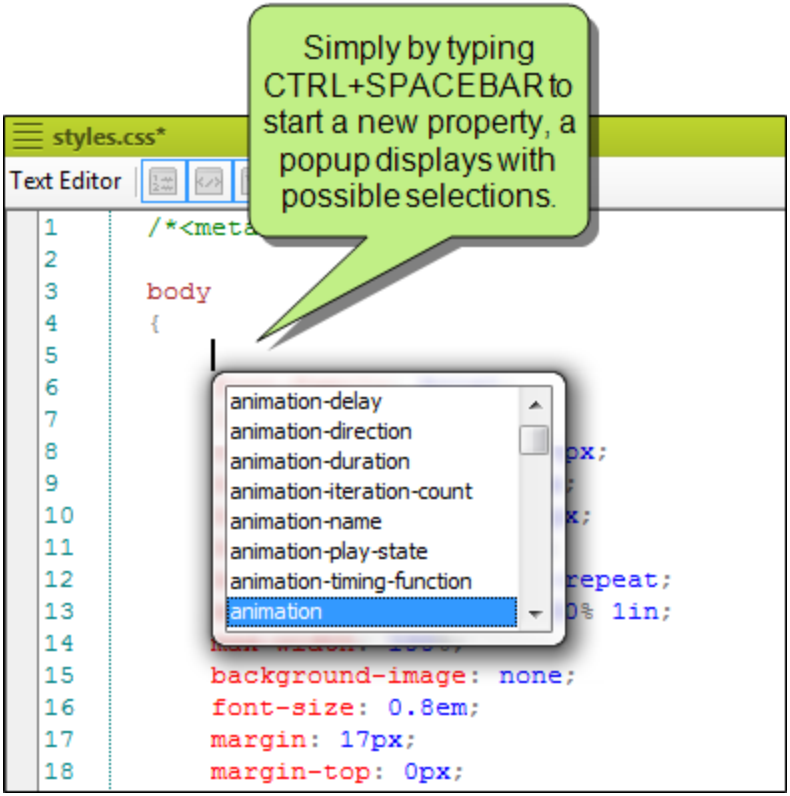
Most of the time, you will use the Stylesheet Editor to edit styles. However, if you are experienced with stylesheets, you can also open a stylesheet in the Text Editor to make changes. You can display a stylesheet in the Text Editor by right-clicking the CSS file in the Content Explorer and selecting **Open with>Internal Text Editor**.

AUTOCOMPLETE

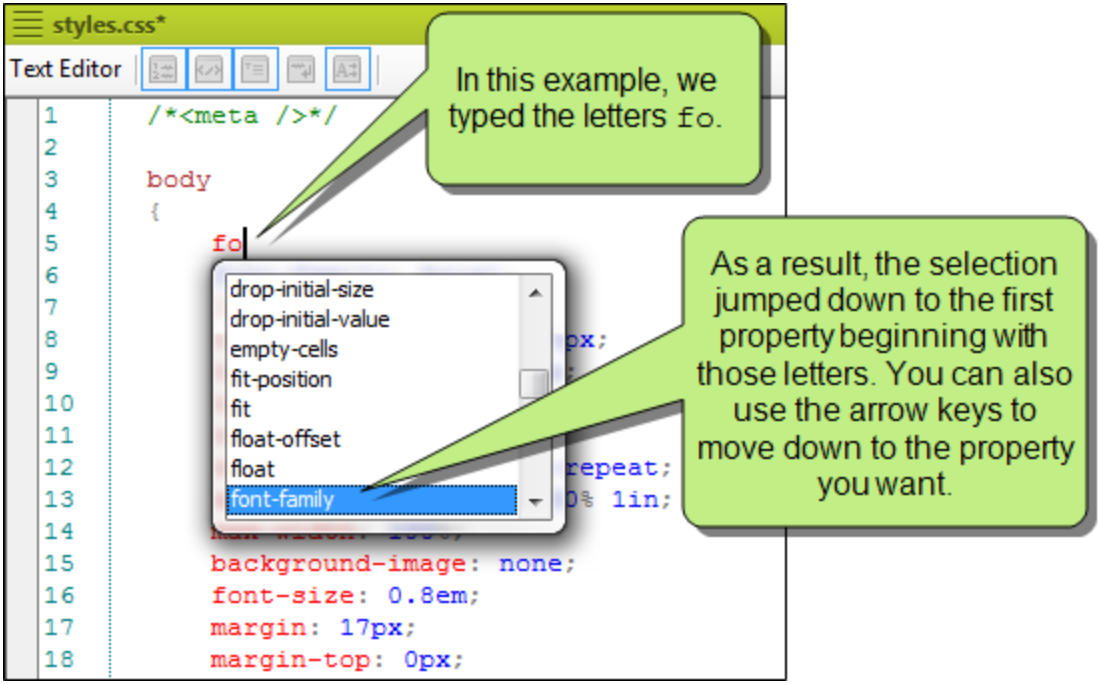
You can use autocomplete in the Text Editor to quickly select valid tags as you type CSS code. To use this feature, click in the local toolbar of the Text Editor.



If you press CTRL+SPACEBAR on your keyboard, a popup displays CSS3 (and earlier) properties.



As you type, the selected item in the list will jump to the property that begins with the text you are typing.



You can select a property by double-clicking it or by pressing the Enter key on your keyboard. Once a property is selected, the property text is completed and a colon (followed by a space) is added to the end of the text. The cursor is placed after the space so you can quickly type a value for the property.

styles.css*

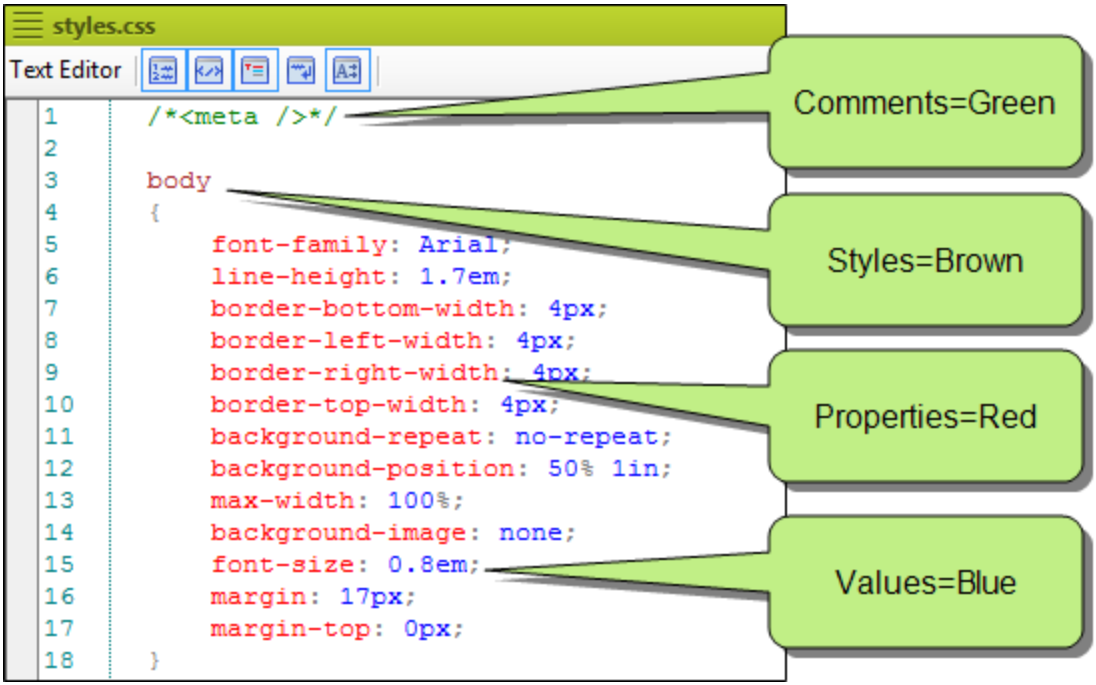
Text Editor

```
1   /*<meta />*/
2
3   body
4   {
5       font-weight:
6       font-family: Arial;
7       line-height: 1.7em;
8       border-bottom-width: 4px;
9       border-left-width: 4px;
10      border-right-width: 4px;
11      border-top-width: 4px;
12      background-repeat: no-repeat;
13      background-position: 50% 1in;
14      max-width: 100%;
15      background-image: none;
16      font-size: 0.8em;
17      margin: 17px;
18      margin-top: 0px;
```

In this example, we selected "font-weight" from the popup. Therefore, that text was added, plus a colon and a space.

SYNTAX COLORING

The syntax is colored to help you easily distinguish different parts of the syntax.



Autonumbers

This feature is supported in EPUB and in all print outputs (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML).

Autonumbering can be used when you want to create content where certain portions are numbered automatically.

When you incorporate autonumbering into content, you do so by creating an autonumbering format, which consists of one or more commands. Some examples of commands are: CH:, {n+}, {chapnum}, {b}, and {/b}. In addition, you can add text next to commands.

E X A M P L E

Let's say you want to apply autonumbering to figure captions. Furthermore, let's say you want the beginning of each caption to contain the word "Figure" followed by the chapter number, a dash, and the next incremented number (e.g., Figure 1-5, Figure 1-6, Figure 1-7). To accomplish this, you might create an autonumbering format that looks like this: CH:Figure {chapnum}-{n+}.

For several samples, see "Autonumber Format Examples" on page 77.

Creating Autonumber Formats for Styles

The following steps show you how to create an autonumber format for a style class. This is the recommended method. A style allows you to apply the same format to multiple paragraphs throughout your project, and any changes to the format are applied automatically to all the paragraphs using that style. Alternatively, you can create an autonumber format for a single paragraph. For steps see the online Help.

You can perform this task in the Stylesheet Editor, using either the Simplified view or the Advanced view. The following steps show you how to create autonumber formats with the Advanced view. For steps on using the Simplified view, see the online Help.

HOW TO CREATE AN AUTONUMBER FORMAT FOR A STYLE USING THE ADVANCED VIEW

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
4. On the left side of the Stylesheet Editor, select the style. Usually, it is a paragraph or heading style (e.g., h1, p.Figure). If you do not yet have a style that you want to use, you can create one. See "Creating Styles" on page 55.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **AutoNumber** group.
7. Click in the right column (the value column) next to **mc-autonumber-format**. The Autonumber Format dialog opens.

8. (Optional) From the **Available commands** drop-down list, you can filter the autonumber commands shown in the area below by selecting one of the options.
   - **Show All** Displays all of the commands in the area below.
   - **Show AutoNumber Commands** Displays only the autonumber commands in the area below. These include commands such as chapter, section, and volume numbers; counters; and series labels.
     - **Chapter, Section, and Volume Number Commands** These commands ({chapnum}, {secnum}, {volnum}) let you organize your output into different areas and apply number sequences to them (e.g., Chapter 1, Chapter 2, Chapter 3).
     - **Counters are Commands** These commands (such as {n}, {n=1}, {n+}, {r}, {A}, and {Gn}) provide information about what types of numbers should be used and how they should be incremented.
     - **Series Labels** These are prefixes to a format (composed of one or two letters and a colon) that provide a way to limit numbering sequences for different purposes. Although Flare includes H: in the list of available commands, that is simply one example of a series label. The letter that you use as a series label is arbitrary. You can replace H and choose any letter of the alphabet, followed by a colon. The exception to this is a two-letter series label, in which the first letter represents a series that encompasses more than just one topic. For example, CH is an example of a series label that applies across an entire chapter. The H can be replaced with another letter, but you must keep the C in order to use this command. Finally, it's important to note that a series label must always be the first element in an autonumber format.
   - **Show File Commands** Displays only the file commands in the area below. These include commands that let you incorporate different parts of a file (such as the file name, file path, and file extension) in an autonumber format.
   - **Show Format Commands** Displays only the format commands in the area below. These include commands such as {b}, {i}, {color red}, and {size 12pt}, which let you determine how an autonumber format will look. Many of these commands require a beginning command (e.g., {b}) and an ending command (e.g., {/b}). However, if you plan to generate FrameMaker output from your project, you should not use these format commands, since they are not supported in FrameMaker. Instead, create and apply a span class to the autonumber format to change its look. To create a span class, open the Stylesheet Editor, select the **span** tag on the left side of the editor, and follow the steps for creating a style (e.g., span.BoldGreen).
   - **Show Page Commands** Displays only the page commands in the area below. These let you include the page number and count in an autonumber format.
   - **Show Text Commands** Displays only the text commands in the area below. These commands let you incorporate text from an area of your output into the autonumber format.
9. In the **Enter format** field, provide the autonumber format for the style. This format can be a combination of text that you type and automated commands that you select. To add a command to the "Enter format" field, double-click it from the list in the area below.

E X A M P L E S

If you want the autonumber to include text (such as "Table" or "Figure"), simply type it in this field. You can also double-click any of the commands below to add them to this field. For example, you might want to add a counter that increments the autonumbers by one (e.g., Figure 1, Figure 2, Figure 3). The command for this is {n+}. Descriptions for each command are displayed in the list.

Some commands include a start tag and an end tag. For example, if you want a portion of the autonumber format be displayed in bold, you would place your cursor in the "Enter format" field where you want to start the bold font and double-click **b** in the list below. Then place your cursor where you want the bold font to end and double-click **/b** from the list.

So in the end, your autonumber format might include a combination of text and multiple commands, such as: {b}Table {n+} - {/b}.

Following are descriptions of the commands that are available.

AUTONUMBER COMMANDS

- **{n}** Retains the current counter value and displays it. You might use this command, for example, if you are applying autonumber formats to multi-level paragraphs, where one paragraph acts as the "parent" to another. Let's say the first-level paragraphs are numbered like this: 1.0, 2.0, 3.0. If you want the second level paragraphs to keep the first number of its parent paragraph and increment the second number (e.g., 1.1, 1.2, 1.3), you would enter the {n} command to continue displaying that first number, which represents the parent paragraph (in this case, 1).
- **{n=1}** Resets the counter value to 1 and displays it. You can replace the number 1 with any other number that you want to use.
- **{ =0}** Resets the counter value to 0 but does not display it. You can replace the number 0 with any other number that you want to use.
- **{n+}** Increments the counter value and displays it. You might use this command, for example, to increment a list of step-by-step procedures (e.g., 1., 2., 3.).
- **{}** Retains the current value and does not display it. You might use this command, for example, if you are creating an outline with Roman numerals at the first level and uppercase alpha numerals at the second level. If you are creating the format for the second level, you want the autonumber format to keep track of the fact that it is a "child" of the first level paragraph, but you do not want to display the Roman numeral from it (e.g., IV.A.). Instead, you only want to display the uppercase alpha letter (e.g., A). In order to do this, you would insert the { } command at the place where the Roman numeral would normally be displayed.

» **{secnum}** Displays the current section number. You can use this command if you are creating online output, or Word, XPS, PDF, or XHTML output. This command does not apply to FrameMaker output.

> **Note:** To generate *section* numbers, you need to create an autonumber format that includes the {secnum} command. Then you need to specify section breaks in the outline TOC.

> **Note:** You can also insert Section Number variables into page layout headers. By doing this, you can automatically display the correct section number at the top or bottom of pages in the output.

» **{chapnum}** Displays the current chapter number.

> **Note:** To generate *chapter* numbers, you need to create an autonumber format that includes the {chapnum} command. Then you need to specify chapter breaks in the outline TOC.

> **Note:** You can also insert Chapter Number variables into page layout headers. By doing this, you can automatically display the correct chapter number at the top or bottom of pages in the output.

- **{volnum}** Displays the current volume number.

> **Note:** To generate *volume* numbers, you need to create an autonumber format that includes the {volnum} command. Second, you need to specify chapter breaks in the outline TOC. Third, you need to specify the autonumber flow for each volume, resetting the volume number to a specific number.

> **Note:** You can also insert Volume Number variables into page layout headers. By doing this, you can automatically display the correct volume number at the top or bottom of pages in the output.

- **{r}** This is the same as the {n} command, except it displays the counter as a lowercase Roman numeral. You can replace the "n" with an "r" in any of the commands listed above.
- **{R}** This is the same as the {n} command, except it displays the counter as an uppercase Roman numeral. You can replace the "n" with an "R" in any of the commands listed above.
- **{a}** This is the same as the {n} command, except it displays the counter as a lowercase alpha letter. You can replace the "n" with an "a" in any of the commands listed above.
- **{A}** This is the same as the {n} command, except it displays the counter as an uppercase alpha letter. You can replace the "n" with an "A" in any of the commands listed above.
- **{Sn}** This is a counter to be used over the course of an entire section. This specific command retains the current counter value and displays it. However, you can modify it to create custom versions of any of the commands that you see above with {n}. For example, you might want to use {Sn+} or {Sn=1}.
- **{Cn}** This is a counter to be used over the course of an entire chapter. This specific command retains the current counter value and displays it. However, you can modify it to create custom versions of any of the commands that you see above with {n}. For example, you might want to use {Cn+} or {Cn=1}.
- **{Gn}** This is a counter to be used globally in your content. This specific command retains the current counter value and displays it. However, you can modify it to create custom versions of any of the commands that you see above with {n}. For example, you might want to use {Gn+} or {Gn=1}.
- **H:** Specifies a series labeled H. However, you can use any letter of the alphabet for a series label, and you can use several different series labels throughout your content. For example, you might want to use F: for a series of figure captions, or T: for a series of table captions. If you use a series label, it must be first in the autonumber format.

- **SH:** Specifies a section-wide series labeled H. However, you can use any letter of the alphabet as the second letter (replacing H). For example, you might want to use SF: for a section-wide series of figure captions, or ST: for a section-wide series of table captions. If you use a series label, it must be first in the autonumber format.
- **CH:** Specifies a chapter-wide series labeled H. However, you can use any letter of the alphabet as the second letter (replacing H). For example, you might want to use CF: for a chapter-wide series of figure captions, or CT: for a chapter-wide series of table captions. If you use a series label, it must be first in the autonumber format.
- **GH:** Specifies a global series labeled H. However, you can use any letter of the alphabet as the second letter (replacing H). For example, you might want to use GF: for a global series of figure captions, or GT: for a global series of table captions. If you use a series label, it must be first in the autonumber format.

FILE COMMANDS

- **{ext}** Displays the file extension.
- **{file}** Displays the file name, including the extension.
- **{filename}** Displays the file name, without the extension.
- **{path}** Displays the path of the file.
- **{url}** Displays the path of the file, URL syntax.

FORMAT COMMANDS

- **{b}** Starts bold text.
- **{/b}** Ends bold text.
- **{bg red}** Starts new background color. You can replace "red" with another color.
- **{/bg}** Ends the background color.
- **{color red}** Starts new text color. You can replace "red" with another color.
- **{/color}** Ends the text color.
- **{default}** Resets all font changes.
- **{family Courier New}** Starts a new font family. You can replace "Courier New" with another font family.
- **{/family}** Ends font family.
- **{i}** Starts italic text.
- **{/i}** Ends italic text.
- **{size 12pt}** Starts font size. You can replace "12pt" with another font size.
- **{/size}** Ends font size.

- **{sub}** Starts subscript text.
- **{/sub}** Ends subscript text.
- **{sup}** Starts superscript text.
- **{/sup}** Ends superscript text.
- **{u}** Starts underline text.
- **{/u}** Ends underline text.

PAGE COMMANDS

- **{page}** Displays the page number.
- **{pagecount}** Displays the page count.

TEXT COMMANDS

- **{title}** Displays the title of the document (from the Properties dialog).

10. Click **OK**. The dialog closes.
11. You can enter settings for the other autonumber format properties in the Stylesheet Editor.
    - **mc-autonumber-class** You can enter a span style class for the autonumber format. Use this field instead of format commands (such as {b} and {i}) if you are planning to create FrameMaker output. You can create and modify span classes in the Stylesheet Editor. To create a span class, open the Stylesheet Editor, select the **span** tag on the left side of the editor, and follow the steps for creating a style (e.g., span.BoldGreen).
    - **mc-autonumber-offset** You can specify the amount of space that you want to create between a format's content and the paragraph content. Select **Length** in the top drop-down list. You can then enter an amount and choose from several different units of measurement (points, pixels, centimeters, etc.). Click **OK** when you are done.

- **mc-autonumber-position** You can select the position for the autonumber format in the paragraph.
  - **float-left** The autonumber format is placed to the left of the paragraph content, in alignment with the left side of the page frame.
  - **float-right** The autonumber format is placed to the right of the paragraph content, in alignment with the right side of the page frame.
  - **inside-head** The autonumber format is placed before the paragraph content, inside the content area. Text that is wrapped to the next line will align under the autonumber format.
  - **inside-tail** The autonumber format is placed after the paragraph content, inside the content area. Text that is wrapped to the next line will align under the autonumber format.
  - **none** The autonumber functionality (autonumbers, counters, and formatting) are removed from the class, while the other class properties are preserved.
  - **outside-frame** The autonumber format is placed outside the page layout frame holding the paragraph.
  - **outside-head** The autonumber format is placed before the paragraph content, but outside of the content area. Therefore, text that is wrapped to the next line will align under the previous text (not under the autonumber format). You can provide space between the format and the content by using the "mc-autonumber-offset" property.
  - **outside-tail** The autonumber format is placed after the paragraph content, but outside of the content area. Therefore, text that is wrapped to the next line will align under the previous text (not under the autonumber format). You can provide space between the format and the content by using the "mc-autonumber-offset" property.

12. Click to save your work.

Autonumber Format Examples

Following are examples of some common uses of autonumbering and how you might create autonumber formats for them. For examples of autonumbers in action, you can create a test project using one of Flare's factory templates.

Autonumber Format	How It Will Look in Output	Where You Might Use It
GH:VOLUME {volnum}:	VOLUME 1: [My Volume Title]	A heading to display the volume number and title. **Note:** To generate **volume** numbers, you need to create an autonumber format that includes the {volnum} command. Second, you need to specify chapter breaks in the outline TOC. Third, you need to specify the autonumber flow for each volume, resetting the volume number to a specific number.
CH:Chapter {chapnum} -	Chapter 1 - [My Chapter Title]	A heading to display the chapter number and title. **Note:** To generate **chapter** numbers, you need to create an autonumber format that includes the {chapnum} command. Then you need to specify chapter breaks in the outline TOC.

Autonumber Format	How It Will Look in Output	Where You Might Use It
CH:{chapnum}.{n+}	1.1 [My Subheading]	A subheading within a chapter, where the first number reflects the chapter number. The second number is simply incremented. Additional subheadings using this same format would be numbered like this: 1.2 1.3 1.4
A:{n+}.0	1.0 [My Paragraph Text]	A paragraph at the first level of your content, where you are not concerned about using the chapter number. You simply want to begin counting at 1. The second number is simply 0 for each paragraph using the style. Additional paragraphs using this same format would be numbered like this: 2.0 3.0 4.0 In this example, "A" at the beginning of the format is arbitrary. You can use any letter you want.

Autonumber Format	How It Will Look in Output	Where You Might Use It
A:{n}.{n+}	1.1 [My Paragraph Text]	A paragraph at the second level of your content, where you are not concerned about using the chapter number. You might indent paragraphs (or styles) using this format. If so, paragraphs using this same format would be seen as "children" of first-level paragraphs and numbered like this: 1.0 1.1 1.2 2.0 2.1 2.2 2.3 In this example, "A" at the beginning of the format is arbitrary. You can use any letter you want.

Autonumber Format	How It Will Look in Output	Where You Might Use It
A:{n}.{n}.{n+}	1.1.1 [My Paragraph Text]	A paragraph at the third level of your content, where you are not concerned about using the chapter number. You might indent paragraphs (or styles) using this format. If so, paragraphs using this same format would be seen as "children" of first-level and second-level paragraphs and numbered like this: 1.0 1.1 1.1.1 1.1.2 2.0 2.1 2.1.1 2.1.2 2.1.3 In this example, "A" at the beginning of the format is arbitrary. You can use any letter you want.
O:{R+}.	I. [My Paragraph Text]	A paragraph at the first level of an outline. Additional paragraphs using this same format would be numbered like this: II. III. IV. In this example, "O" at the beginning of the format is arbitrary. You can use any letter you want.

Autonumber Format	How It Will Look in Output	Where You Might Use It
O:{ }{A+}.	A. [My Paragraph Text]	A paragraph at the second level of an outline. You might indent paragraphs (or styles) using this format. If so, paragraphs using this same format would be seen as "children" of first-level paragraphs and numbered like this: I. A. B. II. A. B. C. In this example, "O" at the beginning of the format is arbitrary. You can use any letter you want.

Autonumber Format	How It Will Look in Output	Where You Might Use It
CF: FIGURE {chapnum}-{n+}:	FIGURE 1-1: [My Figure Caption Text]	A paragraph below an image to describe the contents of the image. In this example, the first number refers to the chapter number where the image is included, and the second number simply increments by 1 each time the autonumber format is applied to content. So the first few figure captions of Chapter 1 would be numbered like this: FIGURE 1-1: FIGURE 1-2: FIGURE 1-3: And the first few figure captions of Chapter 2 would be numbered like this: FIGURE 2-1: FIGURE 2-2: FIGURE 2-3: In this example, the "C" at the beginning of the format is necessary to increment based on the chapter. The "F" that comes after it is arbitrary. You can use any letter you want (e.g., CP).
T:Table {n+} -	Table 1 - [My Table Caption Text]	A paragraph above a table to display the caption for the table, where you are not concerned about using the chapter number. The autonumbers would increment like this: Table 1 - Table 2 - Table 3 - In this example, "T" at the beginning of the format is arbitrary. You can use any letter you want.

Autonumber Format	How It Will Look in Output	Where You Might Use It
{n+}.	1. [My Paragraph Text]	A paragraph that is part of step-by-step procedures, which would look like this: 1. 2. 3.
{R+}.	I. [My Paragraph Text]	A paragraph that is the first level of an outline. In this example, we've used uppercase Roman numerals for the first level, so it would look like this: I. II. III.

Breadcrumbs

This feature is supported in DotNet Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, and WebHelp Plus output.

After you create breadcrumbs for online output by using the breadcrumbs proxy, you can modify the look of those breadcrumbs by using styles. There are numerous ways that you can change the look of breadcrumbs. The most common tasks are described in the following steps.

HOW TO USE STYLES TO DETERMINE THE LOOK OF BREADCRUMBS

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: Some of the necessary style properties can also be changed in the Simplified view in the Stylesheet Editor.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Reusable Content Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section of the editor, select **MadCap|breadcrumbsProxy**.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Assorted Relevant Properties. The most relevant properties for that style are shown on the right side of the editor.
6. In the **Properties** section to the right, you can change a variety of style settings for breadcrumbs. You may need to expand a property group (e.g., Font, Block, Box) to see the actual properties within it.
7. Locate the specific property that you want to change. The property name is shown in the left column. Use the right column to select and enter values for the property. Depending on the type of property, you can either type the value, select it from a drop-down list, or complete the value entries in a popup box. Here are some of the more common properties that you might change.

   - **Border Below** To change the border line that appears at the bottom of the breadcrumbs, expand the **Borders** property group. Then click in the right column next to **border-bottom**, set the border width, unit of measurement, color, and/or style in the small drop-down window. Click **OK**. You can also use the other cells in this property group to add borders above, to the left, or to the right of the breadcrumbs.

- **Breadcrumbs Count** To change the number of levels of topic links that are shown in the breadcrumbs, click in the right column next to **mc-breadcrumbs-count** and enter a number. The default setting is 3.
- **Breadcrumbs Divider** To change the divider that appears between topic links in breadcrumbs, click in the right column next to **mc-breadcrumbs-divider** and type a new character. The default setting is > (e.g., You are here: First Topic > Second Topic > Third Topic).
- **Breadcrumbs Prefix** To change the prefix text that appears before topic links in breadcrumbs, click in the right column next to **mc-breadcrumbs-prefix** and change the text. The default setting is "You are here:" (e.g., You are here: First Topic > Second Topic > Third Topic).
- **Font Family** To change the font family (e.g., Arial, Verdana), expand the **Font** property group. Click in the right column next to **font-family**, set the font family in the Font Family Picker dialog, and click **OK**.
- **Font Size** To change the font size (e.g., 10 pt, 11 pt),expand the **Font** property group. Then click in the right column next to **font-size**, set the font size in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**.
- **Padding Above** To change the amount of empty space (padding) above the text within the breadcrumbs container, expand the **Box** property group. Then click in the right column next to **padding-top**, set the padding value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**.
- **Padding Below** To change the amount of empty space (padding) below the text within the breadcrumbs container, expand the **Box** property group. Then click in the right column next to **padding-bottom**, set the padding value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**.
- **Space Above** To change the amount of space above the breadcrumbs container, expand the **Box** property group. Then click in the right column next to **margin-top**, set the margin value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**.
- **Space Below** To change the amount of space below the breadcrumbs container, expand the **Box** property group. Then click in the right column next to **margin-bottom**, set the margin value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**.

Note: Another task you might perform is to add a background to the breadcrumbs. Click in the **Show Properties** drop-down list Show: Property Groups on the upper-right side of the editor, and change the selection to **Show: Set Properties**. Then expand the **Background** property group and change any of the properties within it.

Note: Different browsers may treat margin and padding settings differently. For example, Internet Explorer 8 and Firefox honor padding settings more than they honor margin settings. If you were to

set a left margin at, say, 1 inch, Internet Explorer 7 would show it that way. However, in order to get the same results in Internet Explorer 8 or Firefox, you would also need to set the left padding at 1 inch.

8. Click to save your work.

Note: If you want breadcrumbs to be hyperlinked, the books in the TOC must be linked to topics. For more information see the online Help.

Cross-References

This feature is supported in all outputs.

After you insert cross-references into topics, you can edit them in the following ways.

- **Destination** You can change the file to which the cross-reference is pointing. See the online Help.
- **Style Format** You can change the style format used for cross-references. For example, instead of "See *My Topic*," you might want cross-references to display "For more information see **My Topic**." See "Editing Cross-Reference Style Formats" on the next page.
- **Context-sensitive Text** You can use language skins to localize the text used in your cross-references. In addition, even if you plan to create output in only one language, you can use a language skin to change the autotext that is displayed for context-sensitive cross-references. For example, instead of the text displaying "on next page," it can be customized to display "on the following page." See "Editing Text for Context-Sensitive Cross-References" on page 96.

Editing Cross-Reference Style Formats

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can edit cross-reference style formats at the point where a cross-reference is inserted, or from a stylesheet.

HOW TO EDIT A CROSS-REFERENCE STYLE FORMAT AT THE POINT OF INSERTION

1. Open the content file (e.g., topic, snippet).
2. In the XML Editor, click inside the link.
3. At the top of the XML Editor, right-click the span bar representing the link. For example, hyperlink span bars have an "a" label, and cross-reference span bars have a "MadCap:xref" label. When you click on the link in the topic, the appropriate span bar at the top of the XML Editor will change color to indicate that it goes with the link. If your span bars are not turned on, click in the local toolbar of the XML Editor.
4. Select **Edit Cross-Reference**. The Insert Cross-Reference dialog opens.
5. In the **Cross-Reference Properties** section, select the **MadCap:xref** style that you want to edit.

   <MadCap:xref> is the parent tag and default selection, but in the Stylesheet Editor you can create style classes under that tag if you want a variety of looks for cross-references.
6. Click **Edit**. The Edit Cross-Reference Style Class dialog opens.
7. (Optional) In the **Stylesheet to modify** field, you can select the appropriate stylesheet (if different from the one shown). If you are using a master stylesheet (recommended), only that stylesheet is shown in this field. If you are not using a master stylesheet, the stylesheet that you select needs to be applied to the topic in which you are inserting the cross-reference. See "Applying Styles and Stylesheets" on page 476 and "Applying Regular Stylesheets to Topics" on page 478
8. In the **Enter format** field, provide the format for the class. This format can be a combination of text that you type and automated commands that you select. You can select commands from the list by double-clicking them. They are then added to the "Enter format" field.

Command	Description
b	Start bold text
/b	End bold text
bg	Start new background color

Command	Description
/bg	End background color
color	Start new text color
/color	End text color
default	Reset all font changes
ext	File extension
family	Start new font family
/family	End font family
file	File name, including extension
filename	File name, without extension
h1	Text of first heading 1 paragraph
h2	Text of first heading 2 paragraph
h3	Text of first heading 3 paragraph
h4	Text of first heading 4 paragraph
h5	Text of first heading 5 paragraph
h6	Text of first heading 6 paragraph
i	Start italic text
/i	End italic text
page	Page number
pagecount	Page count
pageref	Context-sensitive page reference

Command	Description
paranum	The autonumber text of bookmarked paragraph.
paranumonly	The autonumber only of bookmarked paragraph
paratext	Text of bookmarked paragraph
paraxml	Text and markup of bookmarked paragraph
path	File path
size	Start new font size
/size	End font size
sub	Start subscript text
/sub	End subscript text
sup	Start superscript text
/sup	End superscript text
title	Title of document
u	Start underlined text
/u	End underlined text
url	File path, URL syntax

E X A M P L E

If you want the cross-reference to include text (such as "For more information see"), simply type it in this field. You can also double-click any of the commands to add them to this field. For example, you might want to add the text of the first paragraph in the destination file to the cross-reference format. The command for this is {paratext}. Descriptions for each command are displayed in the list.

Some commands include a start tag and an end tag. For example, if you want a portion of the cross-reference to be displayed in bold, you would place your cursor in the "Enter format" field where want to start the bold font and double-click **b** in the list below. Then place your cursor where you want the bold font to end and double-click **/b** from the list.

So in the end, your cross-reference format might include a combination of text and multiple commands, such as:

For more information see {b}{paratext}{/b}

A format such as this one might display a link in the output like this:

For more information see **My Destination Topic**

Note: For print-based and EPUB output you can create context-sensitive cross-references, which automatically change the text in the link based on the relationship of the cross-reference and the target location. See "Editing Text for Context-Sensitive Cross-References" on page 96.

9. Click **OK**.
10. Click to save your work.
11. (Optional) To make sure other cross-references in your project display the new format, you can update the cross-references in a topic (**Tools>Update Cross-References**). However, all of the cross-references in your project will be updated automatically when you generate the output, so this is not a mandatory task.

HOW TO EDIT A CROSS-REFERENCE STYLE FORMAT FROM A STYLESHEET

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Link Styles.
4. On the left side of the Stylesheet Editor, select the **MadCap|xref** tag (or a class of it) that you want to edit.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Assorted Relevant Properties. The most relevant properties for that style are shown on the right side of the editor.
6. Click in the value column on the right side of the **mc-format** property.
7. In the **Enter format** field, provide the format for the class. This can be a combination of text that you type and automated commands that you select. You can select commands from the list by double-clicking them, adding them to the "Enter format" field.

Command	Description
b	Start bold text
/b	End bold text
bg	Start new background color
/bg	End background color
color	Start new text color
/color	End text color
default	Reset all font changes
ext	File extension
family	Start new font family

Command	Description
/family	End font family
file	File name, including extension
filename	File name, without extension
h1	Text of first heading 1 paragraph
h2	Text of first heading 2 paragraph
h3	Text of first heading 3 paragraph
h4	Text of first heading 4 paragraph
h5	Text of first heading 5 paragraph
h6	Text of first heading 6 paragraph
i	Start italic text
/i	End italic text
page	Page number
pagecount	Page count
pageref	Context-sensitive page reference
paranum	The autonumber text of bookmarked paragraph.
paranumonly	The autonumber only of bookmarked paragraph
paratext	Text of bookmarked paragraph
paraxml	Text and markup of bookmarked paragraph
path	File path
size	Start new font size

Command	Description
/size	End font size
sub	Start subscript text
/sub	End subscript text
sup	Start superscript text
/sup	End superscript text
title	Title of document
u	Start underlined text
/u	End underlined text
url	File path, URL syntax

E X A M P L E

If you want the cross-reference to include text (such as "For more information see"), simply type it in this field. You can also double-click any of the commands to add them to this field. For example, you might want to add the text of the first paragraph in the destination file to the cross-reference format. The command for this is {paratext}. Descriptions for each command are displayed in the list.

Some commands include a start tag and an end tag. For example, if you want a portion of the cross-reference to be displayed in bold, you would place your cursor in the "Enter format" field where want to start the bold font and double-click **b** in the list below. Then place your cursor where you want the bold font to end and double-click **/b** from the list.

So in the end, your cross-reference format might include a combination of text and multiple commands, such as:

For more information see {b}{paratext}{/b}

A format such as this one might display a link in the output like this:

For more information see **My Destination Topic**

Note: For print-based and EPUB output you can create context-sensitive cross-references, which automatically change the text in the link based on the relationship of the cross-reference and the target location. See "Editing Text for Context-Sensitive Cross-References" on the next page.

8. Click **OK**.
9. Click to save your work.
10. (Optional) To make sure cross-references in your project display the new format, you can update the cross-references in a topic (select **Tools>Update Cross-References** in either the ribbon or menu interface). However, all of the cross-references in your project will be updated automatically when you generate the output, so this is not a mandatory task.

Editing Text for Context-Sensitive Cross-References

This feature is supported in EPUB and in all print outputs (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML).

The following steps show you how to edit the text within context-sensitive cross-references (in case you use that type of format). For more information about context-sensitive cross-references, see the online Help.

HOW TO EDIT TEXT FOR CONTEXT-SENSITIVE CROSS-REFERENCES

1. Do one of the following, depending on the part of the user interface you are using:
   - **Ribbon** Select the **Tools** ribbon. In the **Templates** section select **Manage Language Skins**.
   - **Menu** Select **Tools>Manage Language Skins**.

   The Language Skins dialog opens.
2. From the list, select a language in bold or italic font.
3. Click **Open File For Editing**. If you selected a language in bold, click **OK** in the message that displays. The Language Skin Editor opens.
4. On the left side of the editor, select **Formats**
5. On the right side of the editor, expand the **Cross-Reference** group.
6. Click in any of the cells on the right and change the text as necessary.

   Note: The "Format" and "Format for Print" fields not only contain text, but they also contain format commands in brackets—for example, {paratext} and {page}. For a list of commands that you can use, see "Editing Cross-Reference Style Formats" on page 88.
7. Click to save your work.

DITA

In this version of Flare, you cannot edit DITA files natively. However, you can edit style classes that result from imported DITA elements.

When you import content from DITA files, there is a one-to-one conversion that occurs. For each DITA element in your file, a style class is created in Flare as a result.

E X A M P L E

Let's say you have a paragraph-level DITA element called "topictitle," after you import the file content, a style class called "h1.topictitle" might be created as a result in Flare. Or if you have a character-level DITA element called "cmdname," after you import the file, a style class called "span.cmdname" might be created as a result in Flare. If necessary, you can edit those style classes in Flare. If you generate DITA output from your project, the style classes are converted back to DITA elements.

HOW TO EDIT DITA STYLES

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

   Note: In addition to the many properties that can be set in either the Simplified or Advanced view, there is a special "mc-dita-type" property that lets you change the default value for a DITA element when you generate output. This property can be changed only in the Advanced view.

   For example, DITA lets you specify two different kinds of tables—*table* and *simpletable*. *Table* is the default type. If you intend to generate DITA output from Flare and want to use the *simpletable* type instead of the *table*, you would use the following steps to select the appropriate style class, locate the mc-dita-type property, and type `simpletable` in the value field.

3. (Optional) You can click in the **Show Styles** drop-down list Show All Styles in the upper-left corner of the Stylesheet Editor to limit which styles are shown in the editor. For example, if you select **Show All Styles**, then all styles will be displayed. If you select **Show Paragraph Styles**, then only paragraph styles will be displayed. If you select **Show Table Styles**, then only table styles will be displayed.

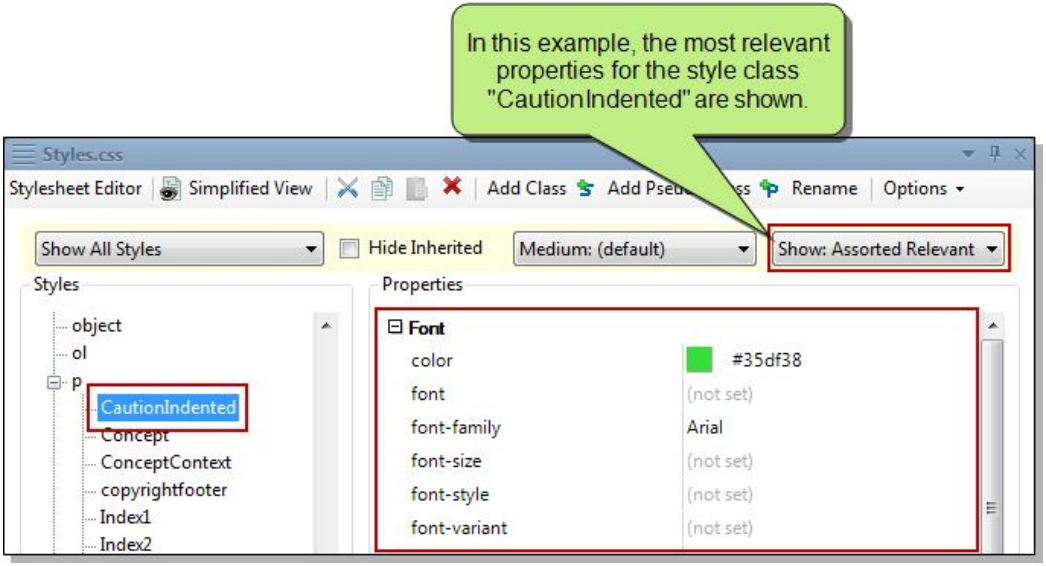
4. In the **Styles** section of the editor, select the style that you want to edit.

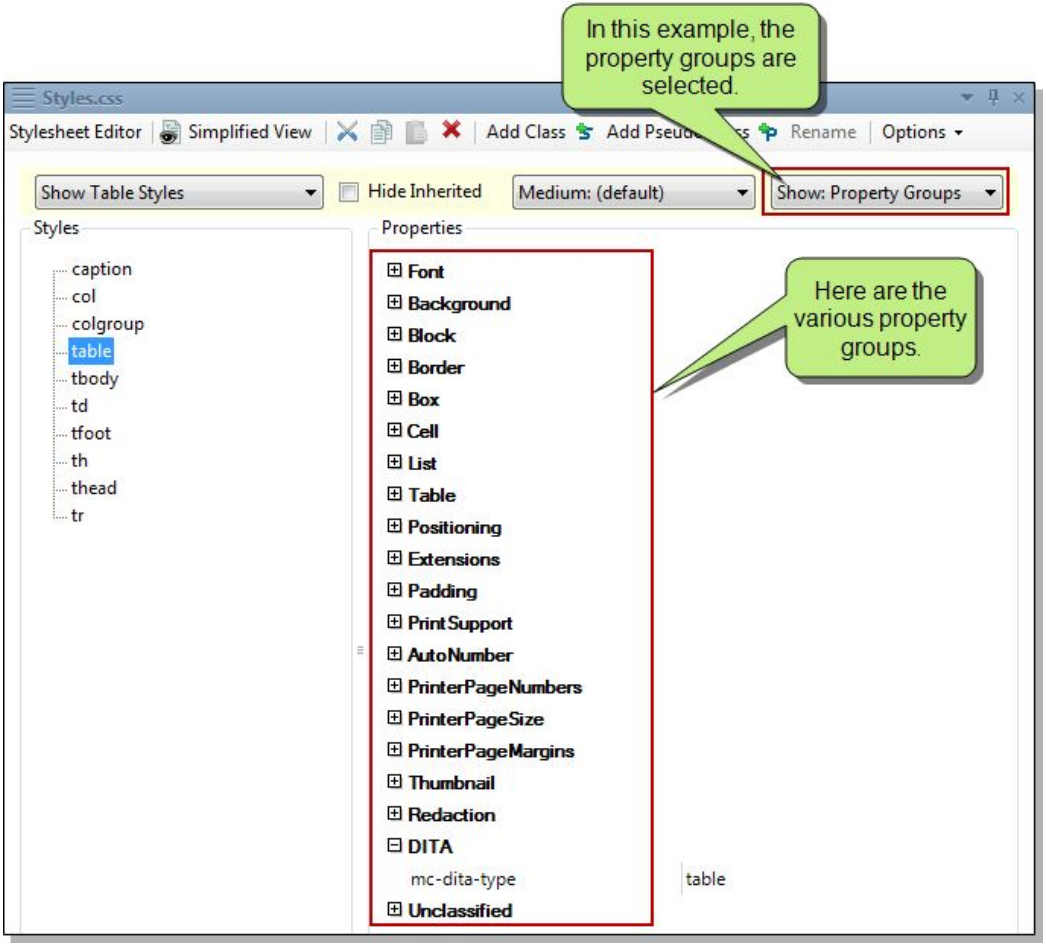
> **Note:** If you want to limit the list of styles to only those that you tend to use in your project, you can disable the styles that you do not want to see. This does not delete those styles; it merely hides them from view. See "Disabling Styles" on page 497.

5. From the **Show Properties** drop-down list

on the upper-right side of the editor, select any of the options shown to determine which properties are displayed below. This is simply a way to find the appropriate property as quickly as possible.
   - **Assorted Relevant Properties** Displays the property groups that are used most often for the selected style type.
   - **Property Groups** Displays all the different groups holding the properties for the selected style. Property groups are simply a way to organize the properties so that they are easy for you to find. If you want to see the values for a given property group, expand it.
   - **Alphabetical List** Displays all of the properties in alphabetical order.
   - **Set Properties** Displays all properties that have been set for the style.
   - **Set (Locally) Properties** Displays properties that have been set for the selected style directly in one or more topics. In other words, the global setting for that particular style has been overruled in some topic(s) within the project.

> **Note:** If you want to a edit the special "mc-dita-type" property for a style, it is probably easiest to select **Property Groups**.

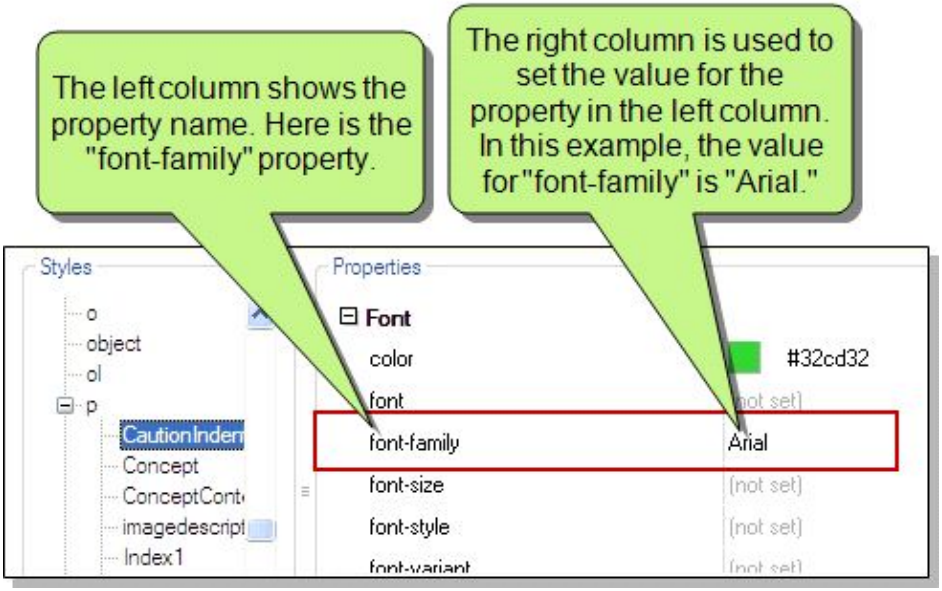

In this example, the most relevant properties for the style class "CautionIndented" are shown.
Styles.css
Stylesheet Editor
Simplified View
Add Class
Rename
Options
Show All Styles
Hide Inherited
Medium: (default)
Show: Assorted Relevant
Styles
object
ol
p
CautionIndented
Concept
ConceptContext
copyrightfooter
Index1
Index2
Properties
Font
color
#35df38
font
(not set)
font-family
Arial
font-size
(not set)
font-style
(not set)
font-variant
(not set)

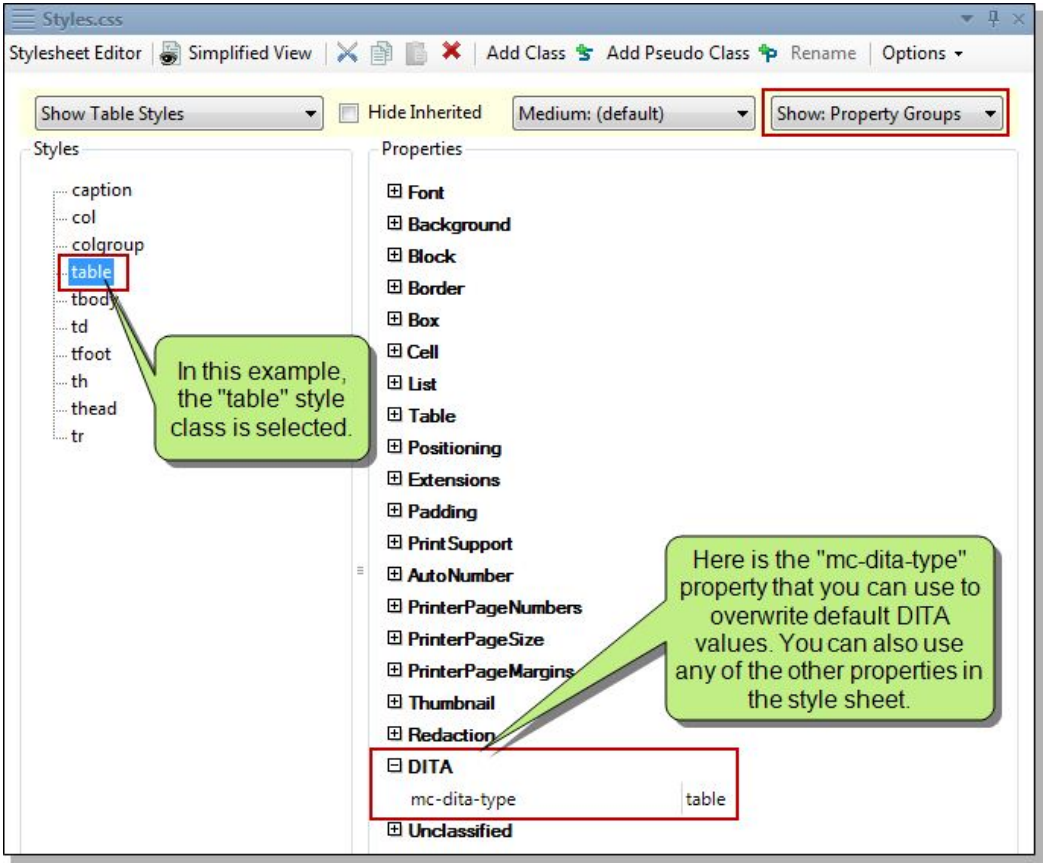


6. In the **Properties** section, locate the specific property that you want to change.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

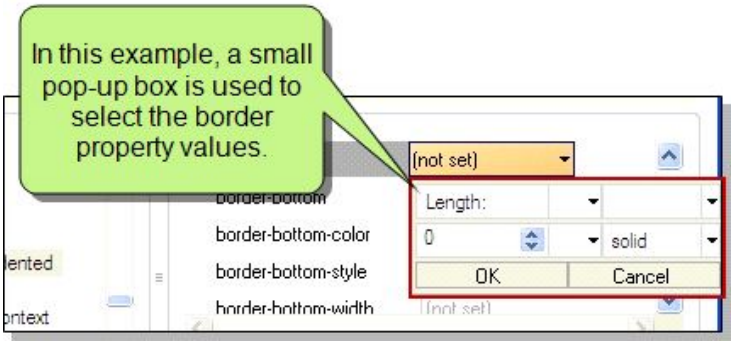
Note: If you want to a edit the special "mc-dita-type" property for a style, expand the **DITA** property group. The mc-dita-type property is shown under it.



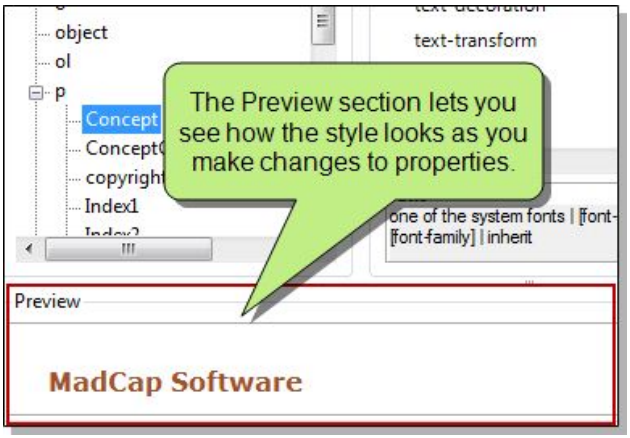

Styles.css
Stylesheet Editor
Simplified View
Add Class
Add Pseudo Class
Rename
Options
Show Table Styles
Hide Inherited
Medium: (default)
Show: Property Groups
Styles
caption
col
colgroup
table
tbody
td
tfoot
th
thead
tr
In this example, the "table" style class is selected.
Properties
Font
Background
Block
Border
Box
Cell
List
Table
Positioning
Extensions
Padding
PrintSupport
AutoNumber
PrinterPageNumbers
PrinterPageSize
PrinterPageMargins
Thumbnail
Redaction
DITA
mc-dita-type
table
Unclassified
Here is the "mc-dita-type" property that you can use to overwrite default DITA values. You can also use any of the other properties in the style sheet.

7. Click in the value column on the right side. Depending on the type of property, you can either type the value, select it from a drop-down list, or complete the values in a dialog or popup box.

   If you completed values in a popup, click **OK** at the bottom of the box.



   As you make changes to a property's values, you can see how the changes look in the Preview section at the bottom of the editor.



8. Click to save your work.

Drop-Down Text

This feature is supported in all online outputs (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, and WebHelp Plus).

HOW TO EDIT THE STYLE OF DROP-DOWN TEXT

You can edit the style (e.g., font, color) of a drop-down hotspot or body. When you do this, the style changes for all drop-down text in any topics in your project.

E X A M P L E

Let's say that you want to change the font for your drop-down hotspots to red and italic. The following steps show you how to accomplish this.

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Dynamic Effects Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section on the left side of the editor, find and select the appropriate style, depending on what you want to change.
   - **MadCap|dropDown** This style affects the entire container holding a drop-down effect, including the image that is shown when a drop-down effect is open or closed.
   - **MadCap|dropDownBody** This style affects the content that is shown when users open the drop-down effect.
   - **MadCap|dropDownHead** This style affects the text in the first paragraph of a drop-down effect (i.e., the paragraph where the drop-down link is located).

- **MadCap|dropDownHotSpot** This style affects the specific text that you select in the first paragraph of a drop-down effect to serve as the link for opening the drop-down body. If you do not select specific text in the first paragraph to serve as the hotspot, the entire first paragraph is used as the hotspot.

5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Assorted Relevant Properties. The most relevant properties for that style are shown on the right side of the editor.
6. From the **Properties** section, change values for any of the style's properties. Following are some of the more common properties that you might change.
   - **mc-closed-image** This style, located in the **Unclassified** property group, lets you select an image to be shown next to the drop-down effect when it is in a closed state. To use this property, first select the **MadCap|dropDown** style mentioned above.
   - **mc-closed-image-alt-text** This style, located in the **Unclassified** property group, lets you set alternate text for the drop-down effect when it is in a closed state.
   - **mc-open-image** This style, located in the **Unclassified** property group, lets you select an image to be shown next to the drop-down effect when it is in an open state. To use this property, first select the **MadCap|dropDown** style mentioned above.
   - **mc-open-image-alt-text** This style, located in the **Unclassified** property group, lets you set alternate text for the drop-down effect when it is in an open state.
7. Click to save your work.

Equations

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can edit an existing equation. This includes the ability to change the equation itself, as well as the way it looks. You can change the look of an individual equation from the Equation Editor (local formatting). However, you can also modify the appearance of all equations through the use of the <MadCap|equation> style tag.

HOW TO EDIT THE LOOK OF THE EQUATION USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

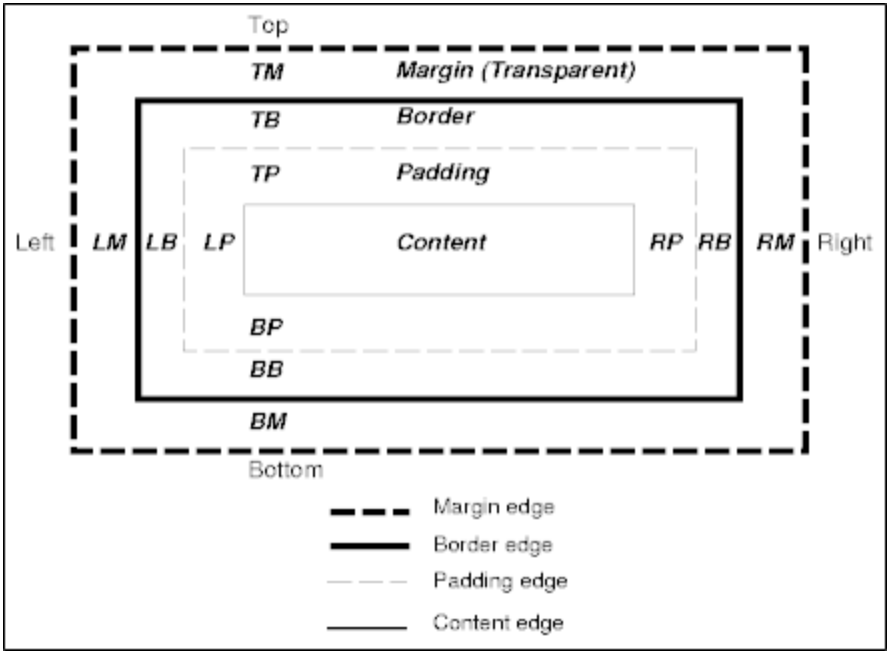
   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Character Styles.
4. Select **MadCap|equation**. If you want to use a class of that style (e.g., MadCap|equation.RedFont) that you created previously, then select it instead.
5. Use the properties section on the right side of the editor to apply settings for the style. Following are the most common settings.
   - **Border** See "Adding Borders to Equations" on the following page.
   - **Font Properties** See "Text" on page 417.
   - **Margins** See "Adding Margins to Equations" on page 109.
   - **Padding** See "Adding Padding to Equations" on page 110.
6. Click to save your work.

Note: In order to use the Equation Editor, you need to install the latest Java Runtime Environment (JRE). You can download the JRE from http://java.sun.com/javase/downloads/index.jsp.

Adding Borders to Equations

After you insert an equation, you can add borders around it, specifying the border size, color, and type.



HOW TO ADD A BORDER TO AN EQUATION USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Character Styles.
4. Select **MadCap|equation**. If you want to use a class of that style (e.g., MadCap|equation.RedFont) that you created previously, then select it instead.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Border** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Locate the border property that you want to change. Each side (bottom, left, right, top) has separate properties that you can set for the color, style, and width (e.g., border-bottom-style). You can set these properties individually, or you can set the main property for each side (e.g., border-bottom), which lets you specify the color, style, and width in one place. Even better, if you plan to have the same settings for all four sides, you can simply use the **border** property to set the color, style, and width all the way around.

   When you click in the cell to the right of one of the broad properties (e.g., border, border-bottom), a small popup displays.

   a. Use the lower-left area of the popup to enter a number for the border thickness.
   b. Use the lower-middle area to select a unit of measurement (e.g., point, pixel, centimeter) for the number you entered.
   c. Use the upper-right area to select a color for the border.
   d. Use the lower-right area to select a line type (e.g., solid, double, dashed) for the border.
   e. Click **OK**.
8. Click to save your work.

Adding Margins to Equations

After you insert an equation, you can adjust the margins around it so that there is extra space above, below, to the right, or to the left of it.

HOW TO ADD MARGINS TO AN EQUATION USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Character Styles.
4. Select **MadCap|equation**. If you want to use a class of that style (e.g., MadCap|equation.RedFont) that you created previously, then select it instead.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Box** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Locate the margin property that you want to change. Each side (bottom, left, right, top) has separate properties that you can set (e.g., margin-top). If you plan to have the same settings for all four sides, you can simply use the **margin** property.
8. Click to save your work.

Note: Different browsers may treat margin and padding settings differently. For example, Internet Explorer 8 and Firefox honor padding settings more than they honor margin settings. If you were to set a left margin at, say, 1 inch, Internet Explorer 7 would show it that way. However, in order to get the same results in Internet Explorer 8 or Firefox, you would also need to set the left padding at 1 inch.

Adding Padding to Equations

After you insert an equation, you can add padding (i.e., extra space) between the equation's border and the text within it.

HOW TO ADD PADDING TO AN EQUATION USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Character Styles.
4. Select **MadCap|equation**. If you want to use a class of that style (e.g., MadCap|equation.RedFont) that you created previously, then select it instead.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Box** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Locate the padding property that you want to change. Each side (bottom, left, right, top) has separate properties that you can set (e.g., padding-top). If you plan to have the same settings for all four sides, you can simply use the **padding** property.
8. Click to save your work.

Note: Different browsers may treat margin and padding settings differently. For example, Internet Explorer 8 and Firefox honor padding settings more than they honor margin settings. If you were to set a left margin at, say, 1 inch, Internet Explorer 7 would show it that way. However, in order to get the same results in Internet Explorer 8 or Firefox, you would also need to set the left padding at 1 inch.

Expanding Text

This feature is supported in all online outputs (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, and WebHelp Plus).

HOW TO EDIT THE STYLE IN EXPANDING TEXT

You can edit the style (e.g., font, color) of an expanding text hotspot or body. When you do this, the style changes for all expanding text in any topics in your project.

E X A M P L E

Let's say that you want to change the font for your expanding text hotspots to red and italic. The following steps show you how to accomplish this.

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Dynamic Effects Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section on the left side of the editor, find and select one of the expanding text styles:
   - **MadCap|expanding** This style affects the entire container holding an expanding text effect, including the image that is shown when an expanding text effect is open or closed.
   - **MadCap|expandingBody** This style affects the expanded text portion of an expanding text effect (i.e., the area that is displayed or hidden when users click the hotspot link).
   - **MadCap|expandingHead** This style affects the hotspot portion of an expanding text effect.

5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Assorted Relevant Properties. The most relevant properties for that style are shown on the right side of the editor.
6. From the **Properties** section, change values for any of the style's properties. Following are some of the more common properties that you might change.
   - **mc-closed-image** This style, located in the **Unclassified** property group, lets you select an image to be shown next to the expanding text effect when it is in a closed state. To use this property, first select the **MadCap|expanding** style mentioned above.
   - **mc-closed-image-alt-text** This style, located in the **Unclassified** property group, lets you set alternate text for the expanding text effect when it is in a closed state.
   - **mc-open-image** This style, located in the **Unclassified** property group, lets you select an image to be shown next to the expanding text effect when it is in an open state. To use this property, first select the **MadCap|expanding** style mentioned above.
   - **mc-open-image-alt-text** This style, located in the **Unclassified** property group, lets you set alternate text for the expanding text effect when it is in an open state.
7. Click to save your work.

Footnotes

This feature is supported in all outputs.

After inserting a footnote, you can edit the footnote number and the accompanying comment in many ways.

FOOTNOTE EDITING TASKS

Following are some of the more common footnote editing tasks.

- **Border** You can modify the default border that is added above footnote comments. You can change the border thickness, color, style, and other settings. You can also remove the border altogether. See "Editing the Border Above Footnotes" on page 115.
- **Comment Font Settings** You can modify the font in a footnote comment. This includes changing the font family, size, color, case, and more. See "Editing Footnote Comment Font Settings" on page 118.
- **Comment Position** You can change the location where a footnote comment is placed in the output (e.g., end of page, document, chapter, section, book). See "Editing Footnote Comment Position" on page 120.
- **Comment Spacing** You can modify the spacing for the footnote comment text. This includes the ability to change the spacing above or below the comment text, the white space between words or characters, or the indentation before the number and text. See "Editing Footnote Comment Spacing" on page 122.
- **Comment Text** You can modify the text and other content contained in the footnote comment. See the online Help.
- **Number Format or Symbol** By default, a decimal number (e.g., 1, 2, 3) is used when you insert a footnote. However, you can select a different format. For example, you can change the format to uppercase alpha (e.g., A, B, C) or lowercase Roman (e.g., i, ii, iii). You can also replace the number with a symbol, such as an asterisk. See "Editing Footnote Number Formats" on page 124.
- **Number—Look** You can change the look of the footnote numbers (both in-text and in-comment), by creating and modifying style classes. Alternatively, you can use the <MadCap|footnote> style or a class of it to modify the look of both the in-text and in-comment footnote numbers. The difference is that the style lets you change the look of one or the other, rather than both at the same time. See "Editing the Look of Footnote Numbers" on page 126.
- **Number Restart** When you insert footnotes, the numbers are incremented throughout your manual. However, you can restart the numbering at a certain location (e.g., at the beginning of the next chapter or section). See "Restarting Footnote Numbering" on page 128.

In many cases, you can use either styles or local formatting to make changes to footnotes. It is recommended that you use styles whenever possible.

FOOTNOTE STYLES

The following styles can be used for editing footnotes.

- **MadCap|footnote** This style is used for both the footnote number (or symbol) where it is inserted in the topic, as well as the number and accompanying comment text (at the bottom of the page, or wherever else you specify its location).
- **MadCap|footnoteBlock** This style is used for the container (or block) holding individual footnote comments. For example, if you want to add a border around each footnote comment on a page, you would use this style.
- **MadCap|footnotesBlocks** This style is used for the container (or block) holding all footnote comments. For example, if you want to add a border around the collection of all footnote comments on a page, you would use this style.
- **MadCap|endnoteBlock** This style is used for the container (or block) holding individual endnote comments. For example, if you want to add a border around each endnote comment created from an endnotes proxy, you would use this style.
- **MadCap|endnotesBlocks** This style is used for the container (or block) holding all endnote comments. For example, if you want to add a border around the collection of all endnote comments created from an endnotes proxy, you would use this style.

Editing the Border Above Footnotes

You can modify the default border that is added above footnote comments. You can change the border thickness, color, style, and other settings. You can also remove the border altogether.

HOW TO EDIT THE BORDER ABOVE FOOTNOTES

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Make sure the appropriate medium is selected. If you are not using stylesheet mediums for your different outputs or if you want all mediums to have the same settings, just leave the medium set to "default" and continue.

   Mediums can be used if you want to use one group of settings for online output types (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus) and another group of settings for print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). For example, you might use the "default" medium for your online outputs and you might use the "print" medium for your print outputs.
3. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
4. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Footnote Styles.
5. In the **Styles** section of the editor, select **MadCap|footnotesBlock**.
6. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
7. Do any of the following, depending on what you want to accomplish.

   CHANGE THE BORDER COLOR

   a. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Border** group.

      The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

   b. Locate the **border-top-color** property.

   c. In the value column on the right side of that property, click the down arrow and select a color from the popup. For advanced color options, select **More Colors** and use the fields in the Color Picker dialog.

CHANGE THE BORDER STYLE (E.G., DASHED, DOTTED, DOUBLE, SOLID)

a. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Border** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

b. Locate the **border-top-style** property.

c. Click in the value column on the right side of the property and select a style.

CHANGE THE BORDER THICKNESS

a. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Border** group. The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

b. Locate the **border-top-width** property.

c. Click in the value column on the right side of the property, enter a number and a unit of measurement, and click **OK**.

CHANGE THE BORDER ALIGNMENT

By default, the alignment of the border is set to "left," but you can change this setting.

a. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Unclassified** group. The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

b. Locate the **border-top-align** property.

c. Click in the value column on the right side of the property and select one of the other options.

CHANGE THE BORDER LENGTH

By default, the length of the border is set at 66% of the size of the "box" holding the footnotes. You can adjust this percentage.

a. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Unclassified** group. The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

b. Locate the **border-top-length** property.

c. Click in the value column on the right side of the property, enter a percentage number, and click **OK**. You can also use the drop-down on the right side of the popup to select a unit of measurement other than percentage.

REMOVE THE BORDER

a. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Border** group. The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

b. Locate the **border-top-width** property.

c. Click in the value column on the right side of the property, enter **0**, and click **OK**.

8. Click to save your work.

Editing Footnote Comment Font Settings

You can modify the font in a footnote comment. This includes changing the font family, size, color, case, and more.

HOW TO EDIT FOOTNOTE FONT SETTINGS USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Footnote Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section, select the appropriate footnote style. If you used the default style when inserting the footnotes, select **MadCap|footnote**. Otherwise, if you have used a class of that style (e.g., MadCap|-footnote.BeginnersManual) that you created previously, then select it instead.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Font** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Locate the font property that you want to change, depending on what you are trying to accomplish. Following are some of the more common elements that you might change.
   - **Bold** Use the **font-weight** property.
   - **Color** Use the **color** property.
   - **Font family (e.g., Arial)** Use the **font-family** property.
   - **Italic** Use the **font-style** property.
   - **Size** Use the **font-size** property.
   - **Small caps** Use the **font-variant** property.
   - **Underline** Use the **text-decoration** property. You need to type the word `underline` in the value column.
   - **Uppercase/lowercase** Use the **text-transform** property.

8. Click in the value column on the right side. Depending on the type of property, you can either type the value, select it from a drop-down list, or complete the values in a dialog or popup box.

   If you completed values in a popup, click **OK** at the bottom of the box.

9. Click to save your work.

Editing Footnote Comment Position

You can change the location where a footnote comment is placed in the output (e.g., end of page, document, chapter, section, book).

HOW TO EDIT FOOTNOTE COMMENT POSITIONS USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Footnote Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section, select the appropriate footnote style. If you used the default style when inserting the footnotes, select **MadCap|footnote**. Otherwise, if you have used a class of that style (e.g., MadCap|-footnote.BeginnersManual) that you created previously, then select it instead.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Unclassified** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Locate the **mc-footnote-position** property.
8. Click in the value column on the right side of that property, and select one of the following.
   - **chapter** This places the footnote comment at the end of the chapter where the in-text footnote number is inserted. You can create chapter breaks in the TOC Properties dialog.
   - **endnote** This is designed to place the footnote comment at a specific location in the output, such as at the end of the book. It works in conjunction with an endnotes proxy, which you create separately. The comment displays wherever you insert the endnotes proxy.
   - **page** This places the footnote comment at the end of the page where the in-text footnote number is inserted.
   - **section** This places the footnote comment at the end of the section where the in-text footnote number is inserted. You can create section breaks in the TOC Properties dialog.

» **topic** This places the footnote comment at the end of the topic where the in-text footnote number is inserted. This is similar to the previous option. However, a single topic may result in multiple pages in the output. This option ensures that the footnote is placed at the end of the topic, not necessarily on the same page where the corresponding number or symbol is placed.

9. Click to save your work.

Editing Footnote Comment Spacing

You can modify the spacing for the footnote comment text. This includes the ability to change the spacing above or below the comment text, the white space between words or characters, or the indentation before the number and text.

HOW TO EDIT FOOTNOTE COMMENT SPACING USING A STYLE (ADVANCED VIEW)

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Footnote Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section of the editor, select the appropriate style to be used for the footnote comment. If you used the default style when inserting the footnotes, then select **MadCap|footnote**. Otherwise, if you have used a class of that style (e.g., MadCap|footnote.BeginnersManual) that you created previously, then select it instead.
5. Do any of the following, depending on what you want to accomplish.

   ADD SPACE (INDENTATION) IN FRONT OF COMMENT NUMBER AND TEXT

   a. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
   b. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Box** (for indenting all lines in the comment) or **Block** (for indenting the first line in the comment) group. The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
   c. Locate the **margin-left** property in the "Box" group (for indenting all lines in the comment), or locate the **text-indent** property in the "Block" group (for indenting the first line in the comment).
   d. Click in the value column on the right side of that property, enter a number and a unit of measurement, and click **OK**.

ADJUST SPACE ABOVE AND/OR BELOW COMMENT

a. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.

b. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Box** group. The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

c. Locate the **margin-bottom** and **margin-top** properties (for setting the space below or the space above, respectively).

d. Click in the value column on the right side of the appropriate property, enter a number and a unit of measurement, and click **OK**.

ADJUST SPACE BETWEEN CHARACTERS OR WORDS IN COMMENT

a. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.

b. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Box** group. The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

c. Locate the **letter-spacing** and **word-spacing** properties (for setting the space between characters or words, respectively).

d. Click in the value column on the right side of the appropriate property, enter a number and a unit of measurement, and click **OK**.

6. Click to save your work.

Note: If you want to adjust the spacing between the number and text in the footnote comment, you can do so by modifying the number format. See "Editing Footnote Number Formats" on the next page.

Editing Footnote Number Formats

By default, a decimal number (e.g., 1, 2, 3) is used when you insert a footnote. However, you can select a different format. For example, you can change the format to uppercase alpha (e.g., A, B, C) or lowercase Roman (e.g., i, ii, iii). You can also replace the number with a symbol, such as an asterisk.

HOW TO EDIT A FOOTNOTE NUMBER FORMAT USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Advanced View (which means that the Simplified view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Simplified View instead, then click it.

   Note: One benefit of using the Simplified view is that you can set one format for the number that displays in the text and a different format for the number that displays next to the footnote comment. With the Advanced view, you can set only one format for both numbers.

   Note: For steps using the Advanced View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Footnote Styles.
4. Select the appropriate footnote style. If you used the default style when inserting the footnotes, then select **MadCap|footnote**. Otherwise, if you have used a class of that style (e.g., MadCap|footnote.BeginnersManual) that you created previously, then select it instead.
5. In the local toolbar of the editor, click . The Properties dialog opens.
6. Select the **Footnote** tab.
7. Use the **Format** field to select the format for the footnote number that is displayed in the text. If you want to use a different format for the number displayed next to the footnote comment, you can use the **Format for number in comment** field. If you complete only the "Format" field, your setting will be used for both footnote numbers in the content.
   - **{n}** This is the default format, which displays decimal numbering (e.g., 1, 2, 3, 4).
   - **{r}** This displays lowercase Roman numerals (e.g., i, ii, iii, iv).
   - **{R}** This displays uppercase Roman numerals (e.g., I, II, III, IV).
   - **{a}** This displays lowercase alpha numerals (e.g., a, b, c, d).

- **{A}** This displays uppercase alpha numerals (e.g., A, B, C, D).
- If you want to use a symbol such as an asterisk, instead of a number, simply type it in the field.

You can add extra characters, punctuation, formatting tags, and spacing around the number format to enhance it. Additional formats are available from the drop-down list for this reason.

E X A M P L E S

Let's say you want to see an extra space between the footnote number and the comment text that follows. If so, simply type a space after the format that you provide.

Let's say you want to see decimal numbers, followed by a period and then a closing parentheses. If so, simply type this:

{n}.)

Let's say you want to see lowercase Roman numerals in bold. If so, simply type this:

{b}{r}{/b}

8. In the Properties dialog, click **OK**.
9. Click to save your work.

Editing the Look of Footnote Numbers

You can change the look of the footnote numbers (both in-text and in-comment), by creating and modifying style classes. Alternatively, you can use the <MadCap|footnote> style or a class of it to modify the look of both the in-text and in-comment footnote numbers. The difference is that the style lets you change the look of one or the other, rather than both at the same time. First you need to create the span class and provide your settings (e.g., font color, size, and so on). After inserting a footnote, you can open its properties and select the span class to change the look.

HOW TO CREATE AND EDIT A SPAN CLASS FOR FOOTNOTE NUMBERS

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
3. On the left side of the editor, find and select the **span** tag.
4. In the local toolbar, click Add Class. The New Style dialog opens.
5. Type a name for the new style class, without using any spaces (e.g., MyInTextFootnoteNumber).
6. Click **OK**. The new style class is added under the tag you selected.
7. Edit the properties for the span class. The most common settings to change are those for the font. See "Editing Styles in a Regular Stylesheet" on page 58.
8. Click to save your work.
9. Complete the following steps for selecting the span class for the footnote.

HOW TO SELECT A SPAN CLASS FOR A FOOTNOTE

1. Open the content file (e.g., topic, snippet).
2. Make sure markers are turned on. (Click the down arrow next to the **Show tags** button in the XML Editor. Then select **Show Markers**.)
3. Right-click on the footnote marker icon where it is inserted in the topic, and from the menu select **Footnote Properties**. The Footnote Properties dialog opens.
4. Select the **Footnote** tab.
5. From one of the **Style** fields, select the appropriate span class. If you select a span class in the first Style field, it will affect the look of the footnote number that appears in the topic content. If you select a span class in the second Style field, it will affect the look of the footnote number that appears before the footnote comment wherever you have positioned it (e.g., end of page, end of chapter).

Note: The span class can also be set on a style in the Advanced view of the Stylesheet Editor using the **mc-footnote-style**and **mc-footnote-comment-style** properties. The mc-footnote-style property will select the span class for footnotes and the mc-footnote-comment-style will select the span class for footnote comments.

6. In the Properties dialog, click **OK**.
7. Click to save your work.

Note: This task lets you change the footnote number only (either the number in the topic text or the number in the footnote comment). If instead you want to change the look of both numbers, as well as the comment text, see "Editing Footnote Comment Font Settings" on page 118.

Restarting Footnote Numbering

When you insert footnotes, the numbers are incremented throughout your manual. However, you can restart the numbering at a certain location (e.g., at the beginning of the next chapter or section).

HOW TO RESTART FOOTNOTE NUMBERING USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Footnote Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section, select the appropriate footnote style. If you used the default style when inserting the footnotes, select **MadCap|footnote**. Otherwise, if you have used a class of that style (e.g., MadCap|-footnote.BeginnersManual) that you created previously, then select it instead.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Unclassified** group. The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Locate the **mc-footnote-number** property.
8. Click in the value column on the right side of that property, and select one of the following.
   - **chapter** This restarts the footnote numbering at each chapter of the output. You can create section breaks in the TOC Properties dialog.
   - **endnote** This is designed to maintain the numbering with a group of endnotes inserted at a specific location in the output, such as at the end of the book. It works in conjunction with an endnotes proxy, which you create separately. The endnote comments and their numbers are displayed wherever you insert the endnotes proxy.
   - **page** This restarts the footnote numbering on each page of the output.
   - **section** This restarts the footnote numbering at each section of the output. You can create section breaks in the TOC Properties dialog.
9. Click to save your work.

Glossaries

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can edit glossaries in the following ways.

- **Look** See "Using Styles to Change the Look of a Glossary" below.
- **Ignoring Glossary Terms** See "Ignoring Glossary Terms in Styles" on page 136.

Using Styles to Change the Look of a Glossary

You can use styles to change the appearance of a glossary. You can modify the look of individual elements within the glossary, as well as the entire container holding the glossary.

HOW TO CHANGE THE LOOK OF A GLOSSARY (INDIVIDUAL ELEMENTS)

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section on the left side of the editor, select the style that you want to edit.
   - **To Customize the Definition** Expand **div**. Then select **GlossaryPageDefinition** under it.
   - **To customize the container** Expand **div**. Then select **GlossaryPageEntry** under it. This style class affects the "container" that holds each glossary term/definition group.
   - **To Customize the Heading** Expand **div**. Then select **GlossaryPageHeading** under it. This style class affects the text for each alphabetical heading that is displayed above each section of the glossary.
   - **To Customize the Term (for Online Output)** Expand **a**. Select **GlossaryPageTerm**. You can also use one of the pseudo classes under it to change the look of the term, depending on its hyperlink behavior (focus, hover, link, visited). See "Pseudo Classes" on page 45.
   - **To Customize (for Print-Based Output)** Expand **div**. Then select **GlossaryPageTerm**.

» **To Customize the Glossary Term Link** Expand **MadCap|glossaryTerm**. This style affects the text for glossary term links that you have inserted into topics. You can also use one of the pseudo classes under it to change the look of the term, depending on its hyperlink behavior (focus, hover, link, visited). See "Pseudo Classes" on page 45.

» **To Customize the Glossary Term Link (Hyperlink Style)** Expand **MadCap|glossaryTerm**. Then select **Hyperlink** under it. This style class affects the hyperlink that displays in topics if you have converted glossary terms to links and selected the "Hyperlink" style when doing so.

» **To Customize the Glossary Term Link (Expanding Style)** Expand **MadCap|glossaryTerm**. Then select **Expanding** under it. This style class affects the hyperlink that displays in topics if you have converted glossary terms to links and selected the "Expanding" style when doing so.

> **Note:** You can also set this property on a style using the **mc-expandable** property.

» **To Customize the Glossary Term Link (Popup Style)** Expand **MadCap|glossaryTerm**. Then select **Popup** under it. This affects the hyperlink that displays in topics if you have converted glossary terms to links and selected the "Popup" style when doing so.

5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. Expand the appropriate property group, depending on what you want to accomplish.
7. Locate the specific property that you want to change. The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
8. Click in the value column on the right side. Depending on the type of property, you can either type the value, select it from a drop-down list, or complete the values in a dialog or popup box. If you completed values in a popup, click **OK** at the bottom of the box.

9. (Optional) If you want to change the actual characters (e.g., A, B, C, D) that are used for the glossary headings, do the following.
   a. Under the **div** tag on the left side of the editor, make sure **GlossaryPageHeading** is selected.
   b. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select **Property Groups**.
   c. In the **Properties** section to the right, expand the **Unclassified** property group.
   d. Click in the cell to the right of **mc-heading-format** and type the new format. Make sure you place the character within { and } brackets.

E X A M P L E

The default format is {A}. This means that the headings will simply look like this: A, B, C, D, and so on. If you change it to {a}, the headings will be lowercase: a, b, c, d, and so on. If you change it to -{A}-, the headings will look like this: -A-, -B-, -C-, -D-, and so on.

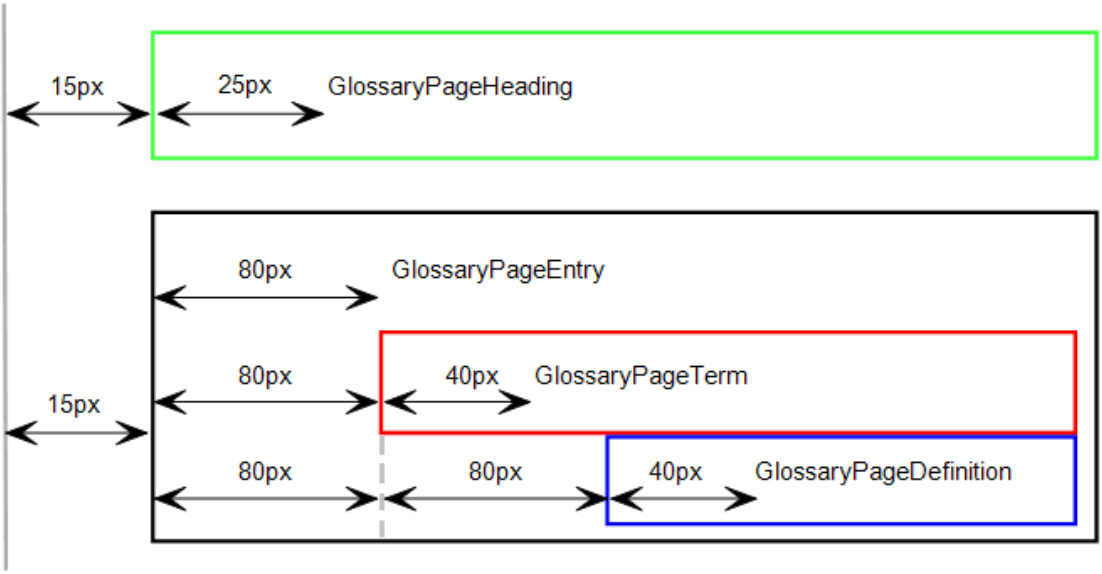
10. Click to save your work.

MORE ABOUT THE GLOSSARY <DIV> STYLES

If you use the glossary styles to change the look of a generated glossary, the following information and diagram may help to clarify the purpose of each style. Because these styles use tags, you can think of them as nested boxes. This is important to understand when you try to align the different glossary elements through the use of margin and padding settings.

- **Margins** Control space outside of the box.
- **Padding** Controls space inside the box.

As a result of the boxes being nested, the margin and padding settings compound the distances in the output, as the diagram shows.



LEGEND

GlossaryPageHeading

magin-left 15px, padding-left 25px = Margin moves green box 15px, and padding moves everything in box 25px

GlossaryPageEntry

magin-left 15px, padding-left 80px = Margin moves black box 15px, and padding moves everything in box 80px

GlossaryPageTerm

magin-left 0px, padding-left 40px = Padding moves everything in box 40px. Notice the margin is 0. Therefore, the padding of the black box is responsible for alignment.

GlossaryPageDefinition

magin-left 80px, padding-left 40px = Margin is added to black box's padding, which moves the box a total of 160px from the left.
padding-left 40px = Everything inside blue box is moved 40px to the right.

In the output, this type of collection of style settings might look like this.

HOW TO USE STYLES TO CHANGE THE LOOK OF A GLOSSARY (ENTIRE CONTAINER)

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: Some of the necessary style properties can also be changed in the Simplified view in the Stylesheet Editor.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section of the editor, scroll down and select the **MadCap|GlossaryProxy** style or a class that you have created under it (e.g., MadCap|GlossaryProxy.myclass).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section to the right, expand a property group (e.g., Font, Block, Box) to see the actual properties within it.
7. Locate the specific property that you want to change. The property name is shown in the left column. Use the right column to select and enter values for the property. Depending on the type of property, you can either type the value, select it from a drop-down list, or complete the value entries in a popup box.

   For example, if you want to change the width of the entire glossary, you would first expand the **Box** property group. Then you would click in the cell to the right of the **width** property and set the value.

8. Click to save your work.

Note: If you want to change the look of glossaries in online output, you can do so by modifying styles within your skin. See "Standard Skin Styles" on page 625, "HTML5 Skin Styles" on page 558, and "WebHelp Mobile Skin Styles" on page 755.

Note: You can change the heading text for an auto-generated glossary in the language skin.

Editing the Style of Glossary Term Links

You can edit the style for glossary term links that you have inserted into a content file (e.g., topic, snippet) .

HOW TO EDIT THE STYLE OF A GLOSSARY TERM LINK

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Dynamic Effects Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section on the left side of the editor, find and select the style called **MadCap|glossaryTerm** (or a glossary term style class you have created within it).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Assorted Relevant Properties. The most relevant properties for that style are shown on the right side of the editor.
6. From the **Properties** section, change values for any of the style's properties. Following are some of the more common properties that you might change.
   - **mc-closed-image** This style, located in the **Unclassified** property group, lets you select an image to be shown next to the glossary term link effect when it is in a closed state.
   - **mc-closed-image-alt-text** This style, located in the **Unclassified** property group, lets you set alternate text for the glossary term link effect when it is in a closed state.
   - **mc-open-image** This style, located in the **Unclassified** property group, lets you select an image to be shown next to the glossary term link effect when it is in an open state.
   - **mc-open-image-alt-text** This style, located in the **Unclassified** property group, lets you set alternate text for the glossary term link effect when it is in an open state.
7. Click to save your work.

Ignoring Glossary Terms in Styles

You can configure a target to convert glossary terms to links automatically when they are found in topics. In addition, there is a way to purposely ignore some terms so that they are not converted to links. This can be done by setting the mc-disable-glossary-terms property on a style. By default, this feature is turned on for <h1> through <h6> styles, as well as hyperlinks (i.e., content with the <a> tag). This means that if a glossary term is found in a heading or text hyperlink, it will not be converted to a link. However, if the same term is found in, say, a regular paragraph, the term will be converted to a link (as long as you do not turn this feature on for that paragraph style).

HOW TO SET A STYLE TO IGNORE CONVERSION OF GLOSSARY TERMS TO LINKS

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section on the left side of the editor, find and select the appropriate style class.

> **E X A M P L E**
>
> Let's say you want terms to be converted to glossary links automatically, unless those terms are found in a paragraph with the p.Tip style. In this case, you would select the p.Tip style class so that you can apply this feature to it.

5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Unclassified** group.
7. Click in the column to the right of **mc-disable-glossary-terms**, and select **true**.
8. Click to save your work.

Help Controls

You can use styles to modify the look of Help controls such as concept links, keyword links, and related topic links.

Editing Concept Links

> This feature is supported in all online outputs (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, and WebHelp Plus).

You can edit a concept link that you have inserted into a topic.

HOW TO EDIT THE STYLE OF A CONCEPT LINK

You can edit the style of a concept link. When you do this, the style changes for all concept links in any topics in your project. Also, keep in mind the various rules that pertain to concept links.

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

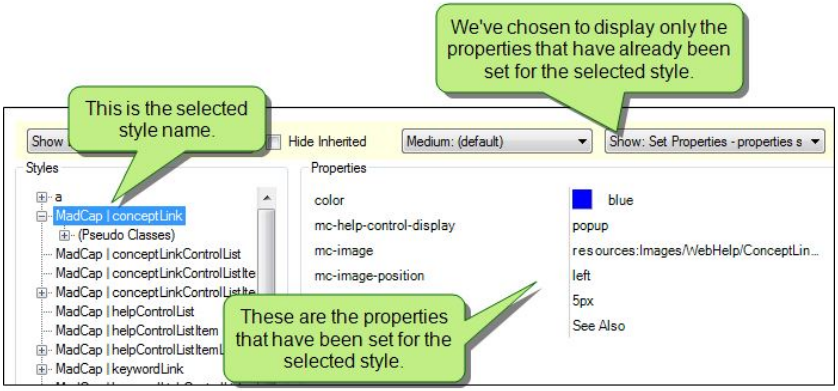
   > **Note:** For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Link Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section on the left side of the editor, find and select one of the following styles, depending on what you want to accomplish. You can use a general style (which starts with "helpControl") if you want to modify all types of Help control links (concept, keyword, and related topic links). Alternatively, you can use a specific style (which starts with "conceptLink") if you want to modify only concept links in your project.
   - **MadCap|helpControlList** Edit this style to change the look of the entire list (<ul> element) when links are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup.
   - **MadCap|helpControlListItem** Edit this style to change the look of individual items in the list (<li> elements) when links are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup.
   - **MadCap|helpControlListItemLink** Edit this style to change the look of links in the list (<a> elements) when links are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup.
   - **MadCap|helpControlMenu** Edit this style to change the look of links (i.e., menu items) when links are displayed in a popup, rather than in a list. This particular style controls the entire list.

- **MadCap|helpControlMenuItem** Edit this style to change the look of links (i.e., menu items) when links are displayed in a popup, rather than in a list. This particular style controls the individual list items.
- **MadCap|conceptLink** Edit this style to change the look of the heading for concept links. The following three concept link styles inherit properties from this style.
- **MadCap|conceptLinkControlList** Edit this style to change the look of the entire list (<ul> element) when concept links are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup.
- **MadCap|conceptLinkControlListItem** Edit this style to change the look of individual items in the list (<li> elements) when concept links are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup.
- **MadCap|conceptLinkControlListItemLink** Edit this style to change the look of links in the list (<a> elements) when concept links are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup.

> **Note:** You can also change a pseudo class of a link style (e.g., **MadCap|conceptLink.focus** or **MadCap|conceptLink.hover**) if you want to modify the look of the concept link when it is in a certain state (e.g., when it has focus or when the cursor is hovering over it).

5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Set Properties. This displays only the properties that have been set for that particular style. You can also select to display properties alphabetically, in groups, and according to the most relevant properties



6. From the **Properties** section, click in the cell on the right to change values for any of the style's properties.
7. Click to save your work.

RULES

Keep in mind the following rules when working with these types of styles.

FONT COLOR ON LINK STYLES ONLY

You can set many different properties on Help controls. However, font color can be set only on styles that deal specifically with links (e.g., <a>, helpControlListItemLink, conceptLinkControlListItemLink).

EXAMPLE

Let's say you want to use red on concept links. You can set that color on MadCap|conceptLinkControlListItemLink, because it controls the links specifically. But if you set the color on MadCap|conceptLinkControlList or MadCap|conceptLinkControlListItem, the color setting will have no effect because those styles deal with lists and list items, not links.

INHERITANCE FROM MAIN LIST AND LINK STYLES

Because these Help control styles are based on the main styles for unnumbered lists (<ul>), list items (<li>), and hyperlinks (<a>), they inherit properties from those standard styles.

EXAMPLE

Let's say you set a purple font on the <a> style. If you do not make any changes to your Help control styles, all of the links will use a purple font. But suppose you want concept links to use a green font instead. In that case, you can set the MadCap|conceptLinkControlListItemLink style to green. If you do that, regular text hyperlinks, keyword links, and related topic links will all display in purple, but concept links will display in green.

Note: If setting a property on the <a> style does not seem to have an effect on the Help control links, check the heading style. For example, if you set purple on the <a> style but MadCap|conceptLink has blue, then MadCap|conceptLinkControlListItemLink will use blue. That's because MadCap|conceptLink overrules <a>.

INHERITANCE FROM GENERAL HELP CONTROL STYLES

Because the general "helpControl" styles (helpControlList, helpControlListItem, helpControlListItemLink) are used to determine the look of all three types of Help control links, the more specific styles (e.g., conceptLinkControl, keyword-linkControl, relatedTopicsConrol) inherit properties from them.

E X A M P L E

Let's say you set a 12-pt font on the MadCap|helpControlListItem style. If you do not make changes to any of the more specific styles (MadCap|conceptLinkControlListItem, MadCap|keywordLinkControlListItem, MadCap|relatedTopicsControlListItem), all of them will use a 12-pt font. But suppose you want concept links to use a 14-pt font instead. In that case, you can set the MadCap|conceptLinkControlListItem style to 14 pt. If you do that, keyword links and related topic links will display in 12 pt, but concept links will display in 14 pt.

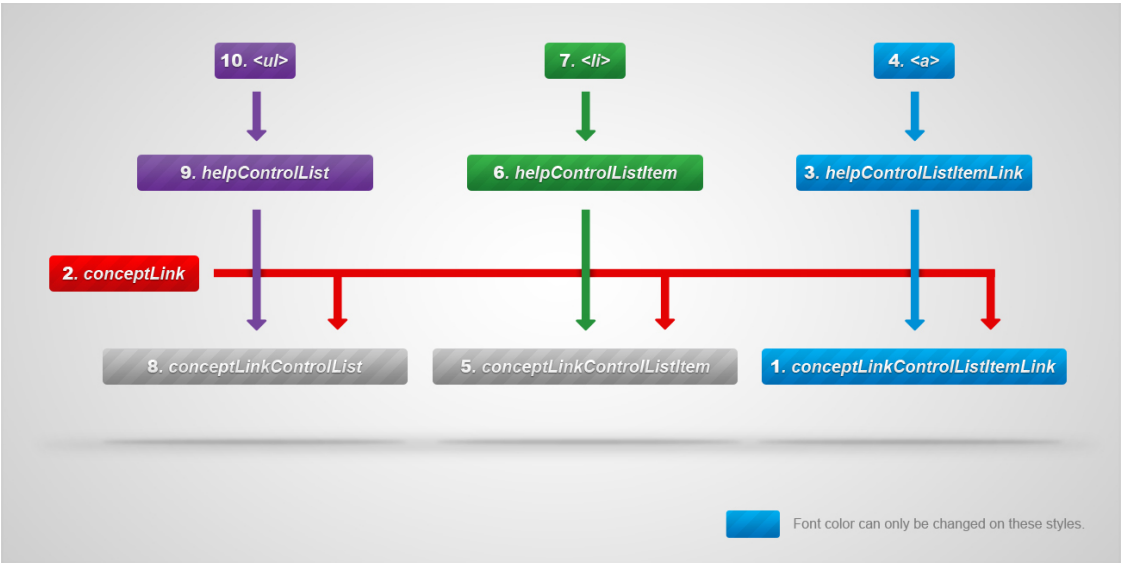
NO INHERITANCE BETWEEN SPECIFIC STYLES

As shown, there is inheritance from main styles (e.g., <a>, <li>) and from the general "helpControl" styles. That's because the main styles are at a higher level than all of the Help control link styles, and the general "helpControl" styles are at a higher level than the more specific styles. But all of the specific Help control styles are at the same level; therefore, none of them inherit properties from any of the others.

E X A M P L E

Let's say you set a 10-pt font on the MadCap|keywordLinkControlList style (which controls **entire lists for keyword links**). Neither the MadCap|keywordLinkControlListItem style nor the MadCap|keywordLinkControlListItemLink style will inherit that font size. Instead, the MadCap|keywordLinkControlListItem style (which controls **list items for keyword links**) will either inherit from <li> or MadCap|helpControlListItem. And MadCap|keywordLinkControlListItemLink (which controls the **actual links for keywords**) will either inherit from <a> or MadCap|helpControlListItemLink. Or you can set different colors on those styles specifically.

The following diagram shows how inheritance and precedence works with Help control styles. In this example, concept link styles are shown. But the same type of structure applies to keyword and related topic links as well. The arrows show inheritance. The numbers show precedence; in other words, if multiple styles have different settings for the same property, the style with a lower number has precedence over those with higher numbers.



Editing Keyword Links

This feature is supported in all online outputs (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, and WebHelp Plus).

You can edit a keyword link that you have inserted into a topic.

HOW TO EDIT THE STYLE OF A KEYWORD LINK

You can edit the style of a keyword link. When you do this, the style changes for all keyword links in any topics in your project. Also, keep in mind the various rules that pertain to keyword links.

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

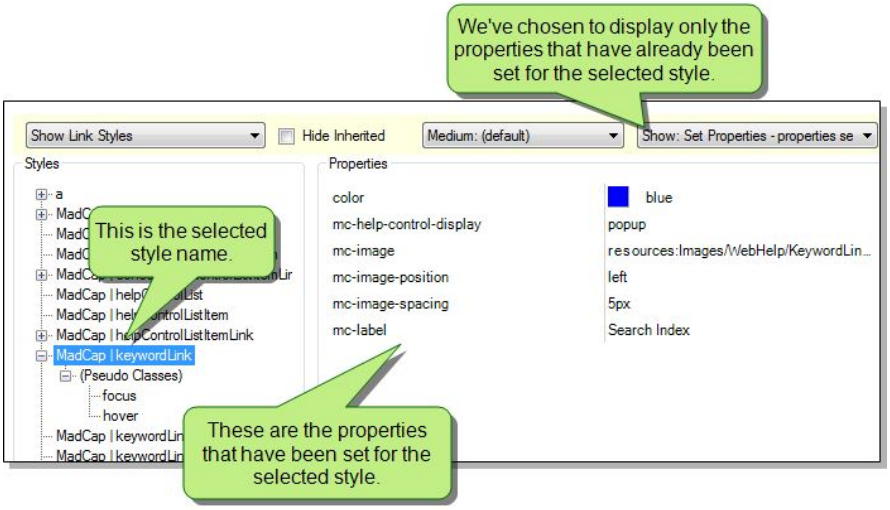
   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select **Show Link Styles** or **Show Dynamic Effects Styles**. Different styles are displayed with each filter.
4. In the **Styles** section on the left side of the editor, find and select one of the following styles, depending on what you want to accomplish. You can use a general style (which starts with "helpControl") if you want to modify all types of Help control links (concept, keyword, and related topic links). Alternatively, you can use a specific style (which starts with "keywordLink") if you want to modify only concept links in your project.
   - **MadCap|helpControlList** Edit this style to change the look of the entire list (<ul> element) when links are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup.
   - **MadCap|helpControlListItem** Edit this style to change the look of individual items in the list (<li> elements) when links are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup.
   - **MadCap|helpControlListItemLink** Edit this style to change the look of links in the list (<a> elements) when links are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup.
   - **MadCap|helpControlMenu** Edit this style to change the look of links (i.e., menu items) when links are displayed in a popup, rather than in a list. This particular style controls the entire list.
   - **MadCap|helpControlMenuItem** Edit this style to change the look of links (i.e., menu items) when links are displayed in a popup, rather than in a list. This particular style controls the individual list items.

- **MadCap|keywordLink** Edit this style to change the look of the heading for keyword links. The following three keyword link styles inherit properties from this style.
- **MadCap|keywordLinkControlList** Edit this style to change the look of the entire list (<ul> element) when keyword links are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup.
- **MadCap|keywordLinkControlListItem** Edit this style to change the look of individual items in the list (<li> elements) when keyword links are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup.
- **MadCap|keywordLinkControlListItemLink** Edit this style to change the look of links in the list (<a> elements) when keyword links are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup.

Note: You can also change a pseudo class of a link style (e.g., **MadCap|keywordLink.focus** or **MadCap|keywordLink.hover**) if you want to modify the look of the keyword link when it is in a certain state (e.g., when it has focus or when the cursor is hovering over it).

5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Set Properties. This displays only the properties that have been set for that particular style.



6. From the **Properties** section, change values for any of the style's properties. For example, to change the link label as described in the example above, you would edit the cell to the right of **mc-label**.

7. Click to save your work.

Editing Related Topics Links

This feature is supported in all online outputs (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, and WebHelp Plus).

You can edit a related topics link that you have inserted into a topic.

HOW TO EDIT THE STYLE OF A RELATED TOPICS CONTROL

You can edit the style of a related topics link. When you do this, the style changes for all related topics links in any topics in your project. Also, keep in mind the various rules that pertain to related topic links.

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select **Show Link Styles** or **Show Dynamic Effects Styles**. Different styles are displayed with each filter.
4. In the **Styles** section on the left side of the editor, find and select one of the following styles, depending on what you want to accomplish. You can use a general style (which starts with "helpControl") if you want to modify all types of Help control links (concept, keyword, and related topic links). Alternatively, you can use a specific style (which starts with "relatedTopics") if you want to modify only concept links in your project.
   - **MadCap|helpControlList** Edit this style to change the look of the entire list (<ul> element) when links are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup.
   - **MadCap|helpControlListItem** Edit this style to change the look of individual items in the list (<li> elements) when links are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup.
   - **MadCap|helpControlListItemLink** Edit this style to change the look of links in the list (<a> elements) when links are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup.
   - **MadCap|helpControlMenu** Edit this style to change the look of links (i.e., menu items) when links are displayed in a popup, rather than in a list. This particular style controls the entire list.
   - **MadCap|helpControlMenuItem** Edit this style to change the look of links (i.e., menu items) when links are displayed in a popup, rather than in a list. This particular style controls the individual list items.

- **MadCap|relatedTopics** Edit this style to change the look of the heading for related topic links. The following three related topic link styles inherit properties from this style.
- **MadCap|relatedTopicsControlList** Edit this style to change the look of the entire list (<ul> element) when related topics are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup.
- **MadCap|relatedTopicsControlListItem** Edit this style to change the look of individual items in the list (<li> elements) when related topics are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup.
- **MadCap|relatedTopicsControlListItemLink** Edit this style to change the look of links in the list (<a> elements) when related topics are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup.

> **Note:** You can also change a pseudo class of a link style (e.g., **MadCap|relatedTopics.focus** or **MadCap|relatedTopics.hover**) if you want to modify the look of the related topic link when it is in a certain state (e.g., when it has focus or when the cursor is hovering over it).

5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Assorted Relevant Properties. The most relevant properties for that style are shown on the right side of the editor.
6. From the **Properties** section, change values for any of the style's properties.
7. Click to save your work.

Using Styles to Determine the Display for Help Control Links

When you insert Help control links (concept links, index keyword links, related topics links), you can specify whether the default setting for Help control links should be "list" or "popup". This can be done at the time you insert the link, but you can also use the following steps to specify this setting on a style. Therefore, that Help control link will always be used as the default setting, unless you override it at the spot where you have inserted the link. By default this is already set to "popup" for all of the Help control link types, but you might want to change it to "list."

HOW TO USE STYLES TO DETERMINE THE DISPLAY FOR HELP CONTROL LINKS

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Reusable Content Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section on the left side of the editor, find and select one of the following, depending on the type of Help control link: **MadCap|conceptLink**, **MadCap|keywordLink**, or **MadCap|relatedTopics**.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Set Properties. This displays only the properties that have been set for that particular style.
6. From the **Properties** section, expand the **Unclassified** property group.
7. Click in the cell to the right of **mc-help-control-display** and select one of the options.
   - **list** Displays the related links in a simple list.
   - **popup** Displays the related links in a popup window.
8. Click to save your work.

Horizontal Rules

This feature is supported in Adobe PDF, EPUB, Microsoft XPS, and XHTML, as well as in all online outputs (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, and WebHelp Plus).

After you insert a rule ("horizontal line") in a topic, you can edit its settings (e.g., size, color, position) by modifying the <hr> style in the Stylesheet Editor.

HOW TO EDIT A HORIZONTAL RULE USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section on the left side of the Stylesheet Editor, find and select the **hr** tag (or the class of <hr> if you have created one).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section to the right, locate the specific property that you want to change. The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Click in the value column on the right side. Depending on the type of property, you can either type the value, select it from a drop-down list, or complete the values in a dialog or popup box. If you completed values in a popup, click **OK** at the bottom of the box.
8. Click to save your work.

Note: Although the **hr** tag is supported in all browsers, it may render differently from browser to browser. For a more consistent look across all browsers, it is a good idea to set both the **color** and the **background-color** properties of the **hr** tag.

Images

You can use styles to affect images in several ways:

- **Background** See "Adding Backgrounds to Images" on the following page.
- **Background Image on Topics** See "Creating Watermarks" on page 153.
- **Border** See "Adding Borders to Images" on page 155.
- **Margin** See "Adding Margins to Images" on page 157.
- **Padding** See "Adding Padding to Images" on page 158.
- **Position** See "Positioning Images" on page 159.
- **Resize** See "Resizing Images" on page 163.
- **Thumbnails** See "Showing Images as Thumbnails in Output" on page 166.

Adding Backgrounds to Images

You can add background settings to an image. This includes the ability to specify a color, another image, and a repeating pattern for the background image. Normally you would not see an image's background, but if you give the image a certain amount of padding, you would see the background around the edges of it.

The changes do not alter the actual image file; they simply modify the appearance of the image at that location.

This can be done through styles or by using local formatting. Using styles is usually recommended because the setting is automatically applied to any content using that style throughout the project, whereas local formatting affects only the particular content that you are working on.

HOW TO ADD A BACKGROUND TO IMAGES USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Image Styles.
4. From the area below, select the **img** tag. If you created classes of the tag, you can expand the img style and select the class instead.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Background** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Locate the background property that you want to change, depending on what you are trying to accomplish.

   SET A COLOR FOR THE BACKGROUND

   - To the right of **background-color**, click the down arrow and select a color from the popup. For advanced color options, select **More Colors** and use the fields in the Color Picker dialog.

ADD AN IMAGE TO THE BACKGROUND

a. To the right of **background-image**, click and select an image already contained in your project.

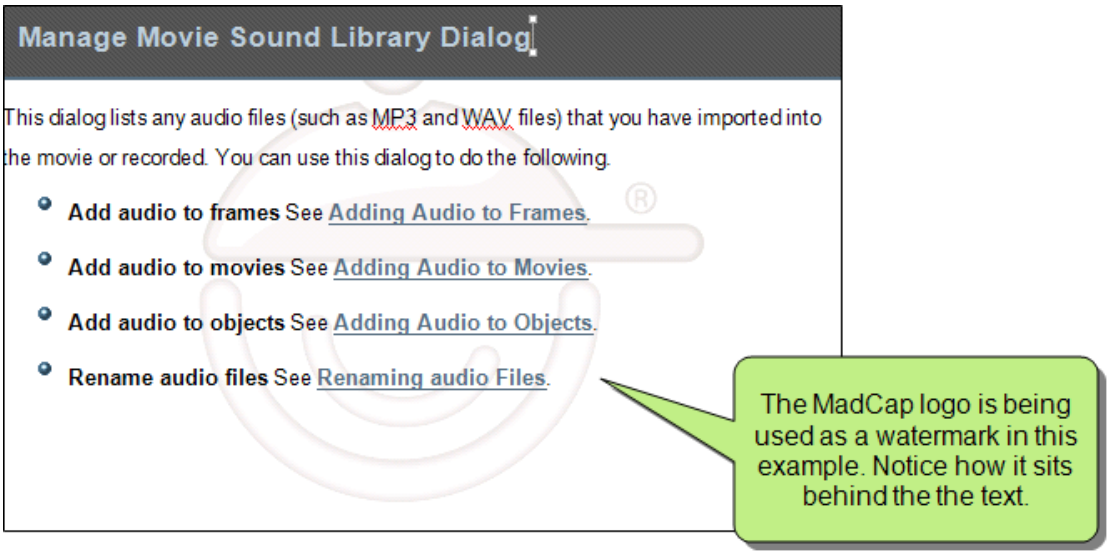
b. If you want the background image to repeat, click in the cell to the right of **background-repeat** and select one of the options (definitions from **http://www.w3.org**).

   - **no-repeat** The image is not repeated: only one copy of the image is drawn.
   - **repeat** The image is repeated both horizontally and vertically.
   - **repeat-x** The image is repeated horizontally only.
   - **repeat-y** The image is repeated vertically only.

8. Click to save your work.

Creating Watermarks

A watermark is an image that is set in the background behind all your other content. You can make watermarks for both online and print-based output.



HOW TO CREATE A WATERMARK

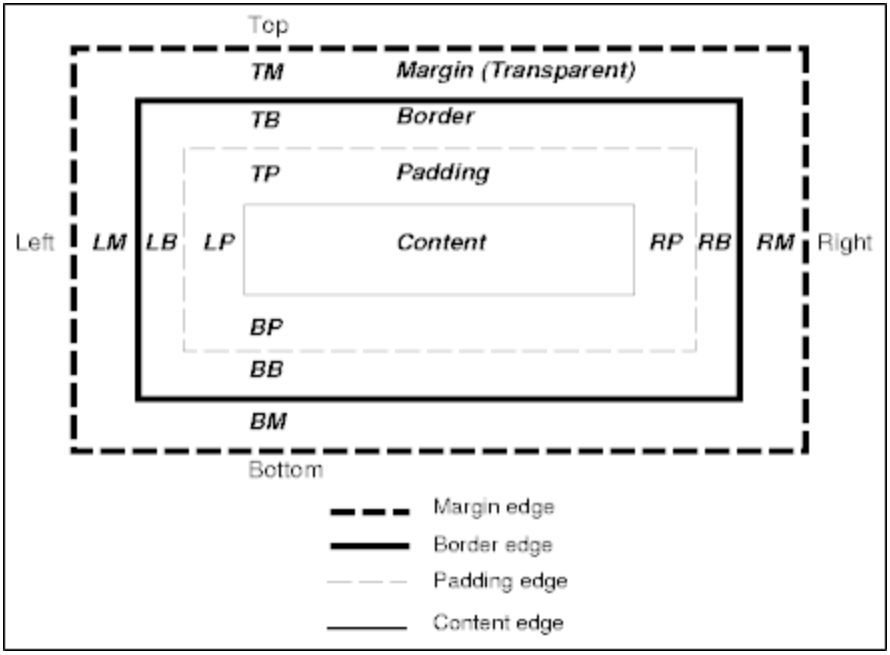
1. Create an image watermark with the watermark you want to use. Using your graphics software, you may need to edit the image to lighten appropriately for background use.
2. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
3. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
4. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
5. In the **Styles** section on the left side of the editor, find and select the **body** tag.
6. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
7. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Background** group.

8. To the right of **background-image**, click and select an image file.
9. If you want a specific position for the background image, click in the cell to the right of **background-position** and enter the appropriate command (definitions from **http://www.w3.org**).
   - **percentage** A percentage X aligns the point X% across (for horizontal) or down (for vertical) the image with the point X% across (for horizontal) or down (for vertical) the element's padding box. For example, with a value pair of '0% 0%',the upper left corner of the image is aligned with the upper left corner of the padding box. A value pair of '100% 100%' places the lower right corner of the image in the lower right corner of the padding box. With a value pair of '14% 84%', the point 14% across and 84% down the image is to be placed at the point 14% across and 84% down the padding box.
   - **length** A length L aligns the top left corner of the image a distance L to the right of (for horizontal) or below (for vertical) the top left corner of the element's padding box. For example, with a value pair of '2cm 1cm', the upper left corner of the image is placed 2cm to the right and 1cm below the upper left corner of the padding box.
   - **top** Equivalent to '0%' for the vertical position.
   - **right** Equivalent to '100%' for the horizontal position.
   - **bottom** Equivalent to '100%' for the vertical position.
   - **left** Equivalent to '0%' for the horizontal position.
   - **center** Equivalent to '50%' for the horizontal position if it is not otherwise given, or '50%' for the vertical position if it is.
10. If you want the background image to repeat, click in the cell to the right of **background-repeat** and select one of the options (definitions from **http://www.w3.org**).
    - **no-repeat** The image is not repeated. Only one copy of the image is drawn.
    - **repeat** The image is repeated both horizontally and vertically.
    - **repeat-x** The image is repeated horizontally only.
    - **repeat-y** The image is repeated vertically only.
11. Click to save your work.

Adding Borders to Images

You can add borders around an image, specifying the border size, color, and type.

The changes do not alter the actual image file; they simply modify the appearance of the image at that location.



This can be done through styles or by using local formatting. Using styles is usually recommended because the setting is automatically applied to any content using that style throughout the project, whereas local formatting affects only the particular content that you are working on.

HOW TO ADD A BORDER TO IMAGES USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.

2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Image Styles.

4. From the area below, select the **img** tag. If you created classes of the tag, you can expand the img style and select the class instead.

5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.

6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Border** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

7. Locate the border property that you want to change. Each side (bottom, left, right, top) has separate properties that you can set for the color, style, and width (e.g., border-bottom-style). You can set these properties individually, or you can set the main property for each side (e.g., border-bottom), which lets you specify the color, style, and width in one place. Even better, if you plan to have the same settings for all four sides, you can simply use the **border** property to set the color, style, and width all the way around.

   When you click in the cell to the right of one of the broad properties (e.g., border, border-bottom), a small popup displays.

   a. Use the lower-left area of the popup to enter a number for the border thickness.
   b. Use the lower-middle area to select a unit of measurement (e.g., point, pixel, centimeter) for the number you entered.
   c. Use the upper-right area to select a color for the border.
   d. Use the lower-right area to select a line type (e.g., solid, double, dashed) for the border.
   e. Click **OK**.

8. Click to save your work.

Adding Margins to Images

You can adjust the margins around an image so that there is extra space above, below, to the right, or to the left of it.

The changes do not alter the actual image file; they simply modify the appearance of the image at that location.

This can be done through styles or by using local formatting. Using styles is usually recommended because the setting is automatically applied to any content using that style throughout the project, whereas local formatting affects only the particular content that you are working on.

HOW TO ADD MARGINS TO IMAGES USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Image Styles.
4. From the area below, select the **img** tag. If you created classes of the tag, you can expand the img style and select the class instead.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Box** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Locate the margin property that you want to change. Each side (bottom, left, right, top) has separate properties that you can set (e.g., margin-top). If you plan to have the same settings for all four sides, you can simply use the **margin** property.
8. Click to save your work.

Note: Different browsers may treat margin and padding settings differently. For example, Internet Explorer 8 and Firefox honor padding settings more than they honor margin settings. If you were to set a left margin at, say, 1 inch, Internet Explorer 7 would show it that way. However, in order to get the same results in Internet Explorer 8 or Firefox, you would also need to set the left padding at 1 inch.

Adding Padding to Images

You can add padding (i.e., extra space) between an image's border and the image itself.

The changes do not alter the actual image file; they simply modify the appearance of the image at that location.

This can be done through styles or by using local formatting. Using styles is usually recommended because the setting is automatically applied to any content using that style throughout the project, whereas local formatting affects only the particular content that you are working on.

HOW TO ADD PADDING TO IMAGES USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Image Styles.
4. From the area below, select the **img** tag. If you created classes of the tag, you can expand the img style and select the class instead.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Box** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Locate the padding property that you want to change. Each side (bottom, left, right, top) has separate properties that you can set (e.g., padding-top). If you plan to have the same settings for all four sides, you can simply use the **padding** property.
8. Click to save your work.

Note: Different browsers may treat margin and padding settings differently. For example, Internet Explorer 8 and Firefox honor padding settings more than they honor margin settings. If you were to set a left margin at, say, 1 inch, Internet Explorer 7 would show it that way. However, in order to get the same results in Internet Explorer 8 or Firefox, you would also need to set the left padding at 1 inch.

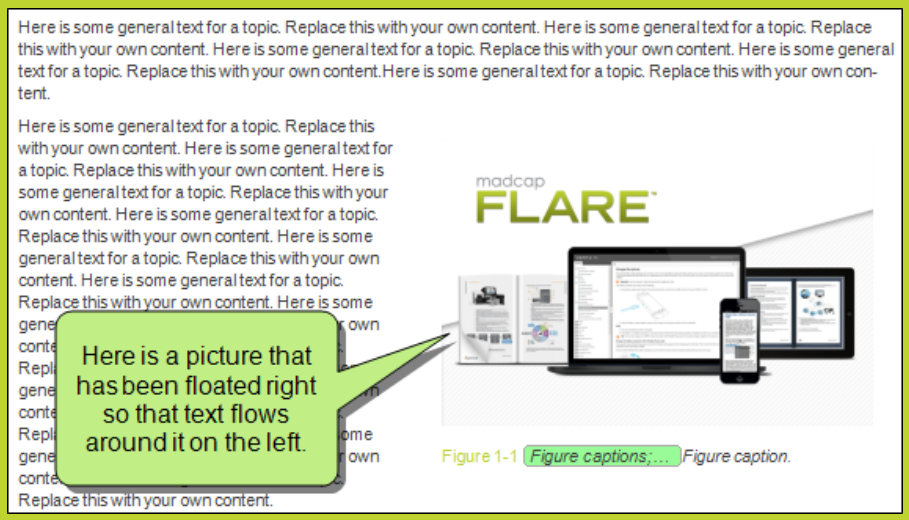
Positioning Images

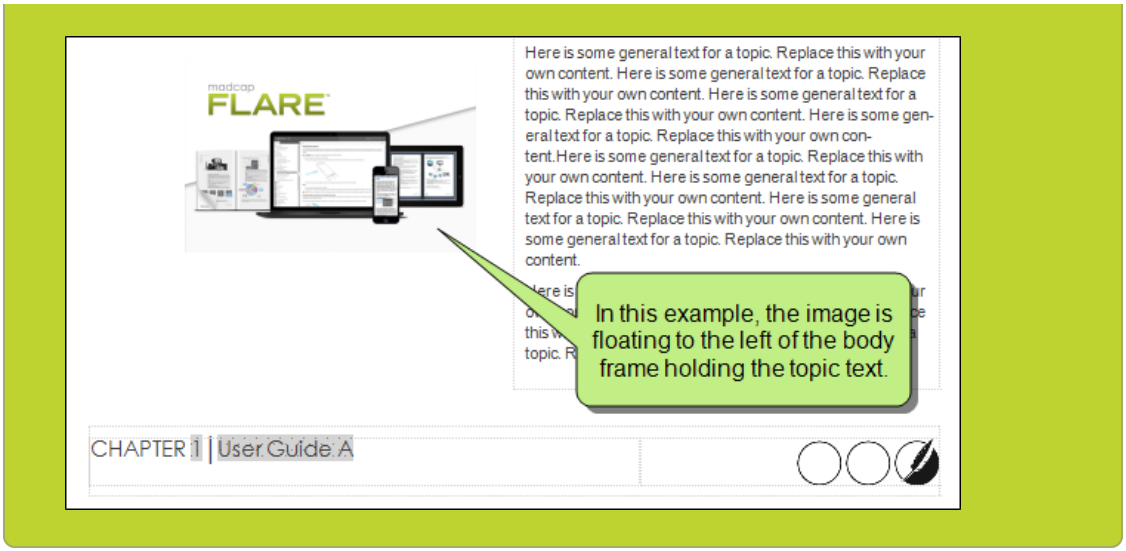
This feature is supported in Adobe PDF, EPUB, Microsoft XPS, and XHTML, as well as in all online outputs (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, and WebHelp Plus).

After you insert an image, you can adjust its positioning on the page. This includes the ability to wrap text around an image or float an image outside the frame holding the regular flow of text.

This can be done through styles or by using local formatting. If you want to position all images in the same place on the pages where they appear, use a style. If you want to position each image so that it is in a unique location on the page where it has been inserted, use local formatting.

EXAMPLE




madcap
FLARE
Here is some general text for a topic. Replace this with your own content. Here is some general text for a topic. Replace this with your own content. Here is some general text for a topic. Replace this with your own content. Here is some general text for a topic. Replace this with your own content.Here is some general text for a topic. Replace this with your own content. Here is some general text for a topic. Replace this with your own content. Here is some general text for a topic. Replace this with your own content. Here is some general text for a topic. Replace this with your own content.
In this example, the image is floating to the left of the body frame holding the topic text.
CHAPTER 1 | User Guide A

HOW TO POSITION IMAGES USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Make sure the appropriate medium is selected. If you are not using stylesheet mediums for your different outputs or if you want all mediums to have the same settings, just leave the medium set to "default" and continue.

   Mediums can be used if you want to use one group of settings for online output types (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus) and another group of settings for print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). For example, you might use the "default" medium for your online outputs and you might use the "print" medium for your print outputs.
3. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Advanced View (which means that the Simplified view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Simplified View instead, then click it.
4. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Image Styles.
5. From the area below, select the **img** tag. If you created classes of the tag, you select the class instead.
6. In the local toolbar of the editor, click . The Properties dialog opens.
7. Select the **Position** tab.
8. In the **Position** section, you can select a **Float** and a **Clear** setting. You can also set the **Vertical Alignment** of the text box.

   FLOAT

   Use this field to specify where to place the image on the page.

   - **None** Does not place the image in a specific location.
   - **Left** Positions the image on the left side of the page frame, allowing you to type text to the right of the image.
   - **Right** Positions the image on the right side of the page frame, allowing you to type text to the left of the image.
   - **Center of Column** Positions the image in the center of the column on the page.
   - **Outside Left Margin** Positions the image beyond the left margin of the topic text.
   - **Outside Right Margin** Positions the image beyond the right margin of the topic text.
   - **Outside Frame** Positions the image outside of the page frame.
   - **Outside Frame, Top Align** Positions the image outside of the page frame, as well as aligning it with the top of the frame.

- **Left of Frame** Positions the image to the left of the page frame.
- **Right of Frame** Positions the image to the right of the page frame.
- **Center of Frame** Positions the image both vertically and horizontally in the middle of the page frame.

CLEAR

Use this field to position an image so that it is "clear" of an adjacent image. For example, let's say you have already inserted an image and applied the float left property to it. If you then insert another image immediately after the first image, you want to make sure that the second image doesn't rest next to the first image. Instead, you want the second image to be placed completely below the first image. Therefore, you can apply a clear property to the second image.

- **None** Does not apply the clear property to the image.
- **Left Side** The image will be placed below the bottom outer edge of a previous image that is floating left.
- **Right Side** The image will be placed below the bottom outer edge of a previous image that is floating right.
- **Both Sides** The image will be placed below the a previous image, whether it is floating left or right.

VERTICAL ALIGNMENT

Use this field to adjust where the item is positioned vertically.

- **Baseline** The baseline of the box will be aligned with the baseline of the parent box.
- **Text Top** The top of the box will be aligned with the top of the parent element's font.
- **Text Bottom** The bottom of the box will be aligned with the bottom of the line box.
- **Top** The top of the box will be aligned with the top of the line box.
- **Middle** The vertical midpoint of the box will be aligned with the baseline of the parent box, plus half the x-height of the parent.
- **Bottom** The bottom of the box will be aligned with the bottom of the line box.

9. In the Properties dialog, click **OK**.
10. Click to save your work.

Note: If you want to adjust the space between the object and the text that flows next to it, you can modify the margins on the object (using the Borders & Margins tab in the dialog).

Note: For additional details on the rules for floating objects, see **http://www.w3c.org**.

Resizing Images

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can resize images with various methods.

Following are the tasks you can perform.

- **Resize With Styles** You can resize many images at once by using the <img> style tag in the Stylesheet Editor. Not only can you select a specific image size, but you can also set a maximum or minimum height or width. You can set either the width or height on the image tag and let Flare set the other property automatically, maintaining the aspect ratio (i.e., size proportion of the image). Using this method, you can take advantage of single-sourcing by also using a print medium in the stylesheet. Simply specify one group of settings for the medium used for the online output, and use another group of settings for the medium used for print-based output.

  You can also use styles to show images as small thumbnails in the output. End users can see the full size of the image by hovering over it or clicking it.

- **Resize Locally Using Properties** You can resize an image locally by setting its height and width properties, including maximum or minimum height or width. This is similar to the styles method, except that the properties are set only for a specific image, not on a style that can be applied to many images. This method also lets you take advantage of single-sourcing, because there is one group of settings that can be used for online output and another for print-based output (based on the medium that you are using for the target—e.g., default, print, non-print). See the online Help.

- **Resize Locally Dragging the Icon** You can resize an image locally by clicking and dragging the icon in the lower-right corner of the image. When you use this feature, Flare automatically sets the new height and width on the image tag. See the online Help.

- **Reset Size** If you resize an image and then decide you want it to be its original size (even after you save your work), you can easily reset it. See the online Help.

HOW TO RESIZE IMAGES BY USING STYLES

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Make sure the appropriate medium is selected. If you are not using stylesheet mediums for your different outputs or if you want all mediums to have the same settings, just leave the medium set to "default" and continue.

   Mediums can be used if you want to use one group of settings for online output types (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus) and another group of settings for print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). For example, you might use the "default" medium for your online outputs and you might use the "print" medium for your print outputs.
3. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
4. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Image Styles.
5. From the area below, select the **img** tag. If you created classes of the tag, you can expand the img style and select the class instead.

   E X A M P L E

   Let's say that you are creating a PDF manual that is 8 inches wide and you want to ensure that none of your largest images are wider than 6 inches. You can create a class of the <img> tag and name it "MaxWidth6Inches." For most of your images, you can use the parent <img> tag, but for the large ones, you can use the img.MaxWidth6Inches style class. The large images will automatically be resized if necessary so that they are no wider than 6 inches.
6. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
7. You can use the following steps to specify a precise width or height for the style. You can also specify a maximum or minimum width or height.

   TO SET A PRECISE WIDTH AND/OR HEIGHT

   a. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Box** group.

      The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

   b. To the right of **height** and/or **width**, click the down arrow and complete the fields in the popup. First you need to select **Length** in the top drop-down list. You can then enter a value in the lower-left area and

choose from several different units of measurement (points, pixels, centimeters, etc.) in the lower-right area. Click **OK** when you are finished.

TO SET THE MAXIMUM WIDTH AND/OR HEIGHT

If the original image is larger than the maximum width or height that is set, it will be reduced in size so that it is no greater than the maximum value. If the original image is smaller than the maximum width or height, it will not be resized.

a. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Unclassified** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

b. To the right of **max-height** and/or **max-width**, click the down arrow and complete the fields in the popup. First you need to select **Length** in the top drop-down list. You can then enter a value in the lower-left area and choose from several different units of measurement (points, pixels, centimeters, etc.) in the lower-right area. Click **OK** when you are finished.

TO SET THE MINIMUM WIDTH AND/OR HEIGHT

If the original image is smaller than the minimum width or height that is set, it will be enlarged so that it reaches the minimum value. If the original image is larger than the minimum width or height, it will not be resized.

a. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Unclassified** group.The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

b. To the right of **min-height** and/or **min-width**, click the down arrow and complete the fields in the popup. First you need to select **Length** in the top drop-down list. You can then enter a value in the lower-left area and choose from several different units of measurement (points, pixels, centimeters, etc.) in the lower-right area. Click **OK** when finished.

8. Click to save your work.

To apply a particular style class to an image (after you create it in the Stylesheet Editor), simply right-click the image where it is inserted. Then from the menu, select **Style Class** and choose the appropriate style.

Showing Images as Thumbnails in Output

This feature is supported in all online outputs (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, and WebHelp Plus).

When you insert images into Flare content, you can specify that the images should be displayed as thumbnails (i.e., much smaller versions of the image) in the output. This is a way to condense topics so that images are not taking up as much real estate. When you use this feature, you can specify ways that the user can enlarge the image to see its full size (e.g., by hovering over the thumbnail, by clicking the thumbnail).

HOW TO SHOW IMAGES AS THUMBNAILS BY USING STYLES

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Image Styles.
4. Select the appropriate image style. For example, you can select the parent **img** tag, or you can expand the img style select a class that you may have created.

   E X A M P L E

   Let's say that you are creating a WebHelp system that contains small images (e.g., less than 48 pixels high) as well as bigger images (e.g., larger than 48 pixels high). Suppose you want all of the bigger images to appear as thumbnails in the output. In that case, you might create a class of the <img> tag and name it "BigImages." For the smaller images, you can use the parent <img> tag (or even a style class), but for the larger ones, you can use the img.BigImages style class. The large images will automatically be displayed as thumbnails in the output, until the end user performs an action to see the image in its full size.

5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.

6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Thumbnail** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

7. To the right of **mc-thumbnail**, enter one of the following.

   - **hover** The end user can see the image in its full size by hovering the mouse over the thumbnail. As a result, the full size of the image will be shown in a popup window.
   - **link** The end user can see the image in its full size by clicking the thumbnail. As a result, the full size of the image will be shown.
   - **popup** The end user can see the image in its full size by clicking the thumbnail. As a result, the full size of the image will be shown in a popup window.

   Note: If you enter **none**, the image will not be shown as a thumbnail. If you enter **normal**, the image will be replaced with its thumbnail.

8. If you want to set a maximum height or width for thumbnail images, complete the **mc-thumbnail-max-height** or **mc-thumbnail-max-width** fields. You probably only need to complete one of these areas.

   The default setting is to show images as thumbnails if they are more than 48 pixels high. If that is the case, the image will be resized in the output to be 48 pixels high, and the width will be adjusted accordingly. The image will be shown in its full size when the user performs one of the actions you specified in the previous step.

   If you want to change either the maximum width or height settings, click to the right of either field and enter the appropriate width or height (e.g., 60px, 1in).

9. Click to save your work.

To apply a particular style class to an image (after you create it in the Stylesheet Editor), simply right-click the image where it is inserted. Then from the menu, select **Style Class** and choose the appropriate style.

Note: If you experience problems in the output with thumbnail images not opening to the full size, this might be caused by "Mark of the Web" being enabled on the Advanced tab of the Target Editor. You can try disabling Mark of the Web from your target to fix the issue.

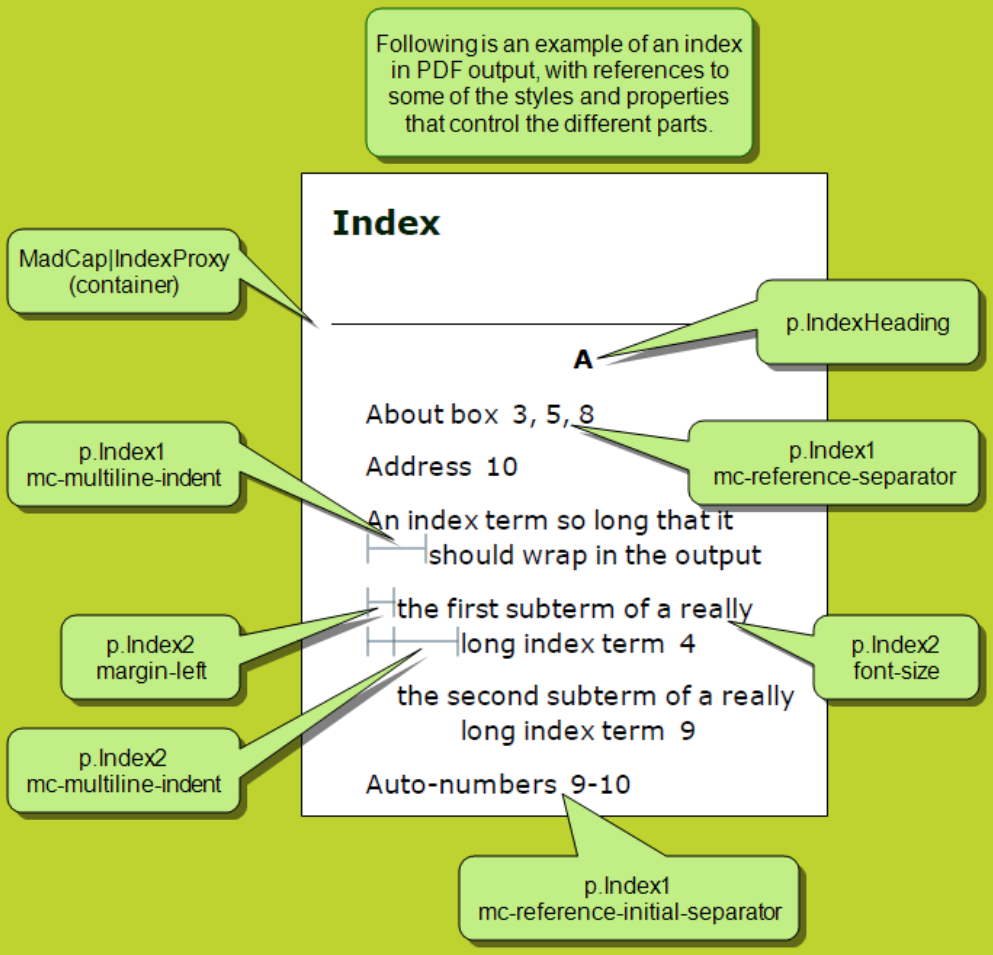
Indexes

This feature is supported in all print outputs (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, and XHTML).

If you incorporate a generated index into your printed output, you can customize the way the index entries look in the output. This includes adjusting properties such as font family and size, word space, space above/below, and more. You can also change the look of the entire container holding the generated index.

A style called "MadCap|IndexProxy" is used to control the look of the entire container. Other styles—such as p.IndexHeading, p.Index1, p.Index2, and p.Index3—are used to control the look of individual entries in the index. Style properties—such as margin-left, font-size, and mc-reference-initial-separator—are used to affect the look in different ways.

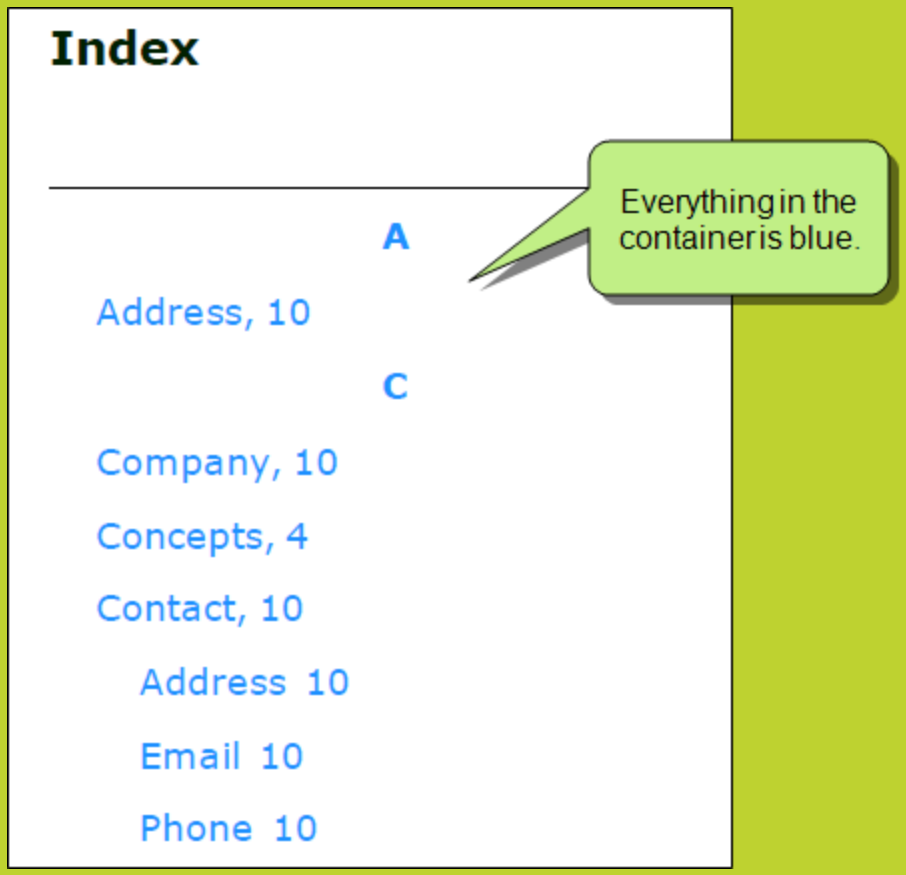
EXAMPLE


Following is an example of an index in PDF output, with references to some of the styles and properties that control the different parts.
Index
MadCap|IndexProxy (container)
p.IndexHeading
A
About box 3, 5, 8
Address 10
An index term so long that it should wrap in the output
the first subterm of a really long index term 4
the second subterm of a really long index term 9
Auto-numbers 9-10
p.Index1 mc-multiline-indent
p.Index1 mc-reference-separator
p.Index2 margin-left
p.Index2 mc-multiline-indent
p.Index2 font-size
p.Index1 mc-reference-initial-separator

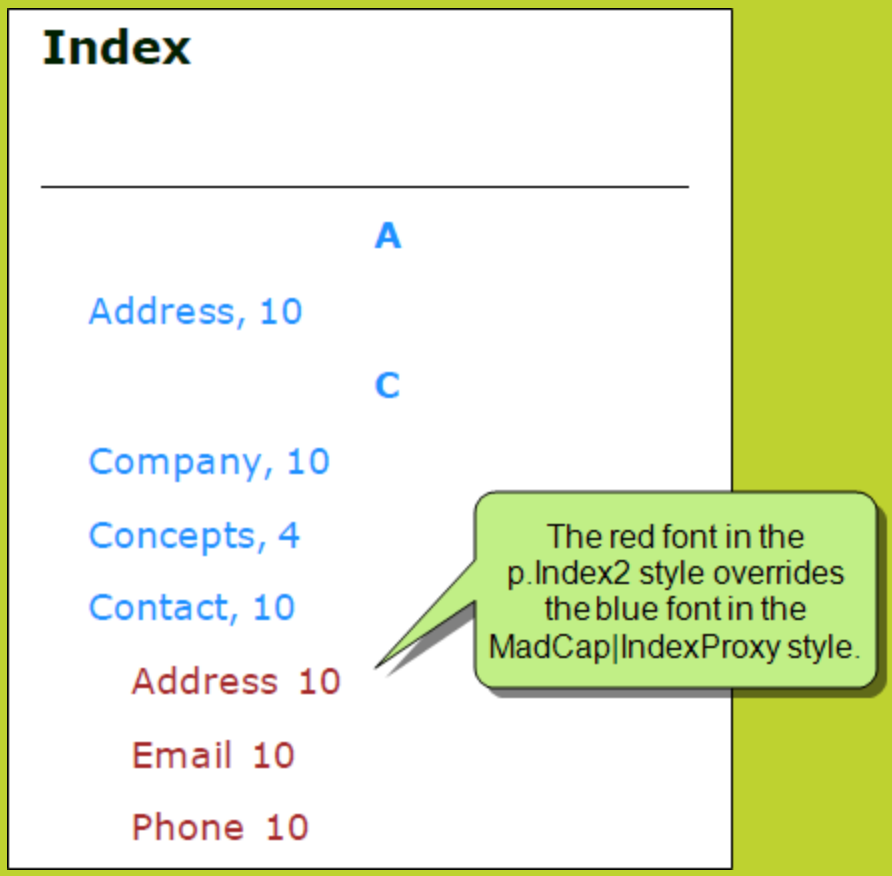
Settings for the individual entries (e.g., p.IndexHeading, p.Index1) override those from MadCap|IndexProxy.

E X A M P L E S

Let's say you set a blue font on MadCap|IndexProxy. Because this style controls the entire container, and everything within it, the index headings and all of the keywords and page numbers are blue. The top border of the container is black, 1 px.



However, if you set a red font on p.Index2, second-level index entries will have a red font while everything else remains blue.



HOW TO USE STYLES TO DETERMINE THE LOOK OF A PRINT INDEX (ENTIRE CONTAINER)

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: Some of the necessary style properties can also be changed in the Simplified view in the Stylesheet Editor.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section of the editor, scroll down and select the **MadCap|IndexProxy** style or a class that you have created under it (e.g., MadCap|IndexProxy.myclass).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.

   Note: If you want to see properties that are of particular importance for a style, you can select **Show: Assorted Relevant Properties**.

6. In the **Properties** section to the right, expand a property group (e.g., Font, Block, Box) to see the actual properties within it.
7. Locate the specific property that you want to change. The property name is shown in the left column. Use the right column to select and enter values for the property. Depending on the type of property, you can either type the value, select it from a drop-down list, or complete the value entries in a popup box.

   For example, if you want to change the width of the entire index you would first expand the **Box** property group. Then you would click in the cell to the right of the **width** property and set the value.

ABOUT COLUMN COUNT

By default, there are usually two columns used in a generated index. However, you can change this:

- **PDF, XPS, XHTML** For Adobe PDF, Microsoft XPS, and XHTML outputs, the column count is set in a page layout.
- **FrameMaker, Word** For Adobe FrameMaker and Microsoft Word outputs, the default setting for the index column count is modified in the stylesheet. With the **MadCap|IndexProxy** style selected, open the **Unclassified** property group and change the **mc-column-count** property. However, you can also override this default setting by right-clicking the actual index proxy wherever you have inserted it, selecting **Edit Index Proxy**, and editing the **Column Count** field.

8. Click to save your work.

HOW TO DETERMINE THE LOOK OF A PRINT INDEX (INDIVIDUAL ENTRIES)

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Generated Content Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section on the left side of the editor, expand the **p** style. Classes of the style are shown below it.
5. Find and select the p.Index class that you want to customize (e.g., **p.Index1**, **p.Index2**, **p.Index3**).

   The class p.Index1 is used for the first-level keyword in the print index, p.Index2 is used for the second-level keyword, and so on. The p.IndexHeading class is used for customizing the letter heading (e.g., A, B, C, D) displayed at the beginning of each section in the index.

   Note: The page numbers in the generated list inherit their style settings from the list items before them. However, if you want the page numbers to look differently, you can modify the MadCap|xref.IndexPageNumber style.

6. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.

   Note: If you want to see properties that are of particular importance for a style, you can select **Show: Assorted Relevant Properties**.

7. Expand a property group (e.g., Font, Block, Box, Unclassified) to see the actual properties within it.

   Note: Do not use the "PrintSupport" property for the Index1 through Index9 style classes.

8. Locate the specific property that you want to change. The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property. Depending on the type of property, you can either type the value, select it from a drop-down list, or complete the values in a popup box.

> **EXAMPLE**
>
> If you want to change the font size to 10 pt, you would expand **Font**. Then you would click in the right column next to **font-size**, set the font size in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**.

If you want to change the actual characters (e.g., A, B, C, D) that are used for the headings, do the following:

a. Under the **p** tag on the left side of the editor, make sure **IndexHeading** is selected.

b. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.

c. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Unclassified** group.

d. Click in the cell to the right of **mc-heading-format** and type the new format. Make sure you place the character within { and } brackets.

> **EXAMPLE**
>
> The default format is {A}. This means that the headings will simply look like this: A, B, C, D, and so on. If you change it to {a}, the headings will be lowercase: a, b, c, d, and so on. If you change it to -{A}-, the headings will look like this: -A-, -B-, -C-, -D-, and so on.

> **Note:** For more information about the style tasks that you can perform, see "Editing Styles in a Regular Stylesheet" on page 58.

9. Click to save your work.

> **Note:** By default, if your index contains entries with multiple pages in a row, this will be displayed as a range with the pages separated by a dash. For example, instead of showing 10, 11, 12, 13, the index entry will display 10-13.

Note: By default index page numbers are left-aligned next to the index keywords. If instead you want page numbers to be right-aligned on the other side of the column—you can edit the mc-leader-offset value (found in the Unclassified property group) for the index entry style (e.g., set it at 25 px).

Note: If you want to change the look of indexes in online output, you can do so by modifying styles within your skin. See "Standard Skin Styles" on page 625, "HTML5 Skin Styles" on page 558, and "WebHelp Mobile Skin Styles" on page 755.

Note: You can change the heading text for an auto-generated index in the language skin.

Using Styles to Include or Exclude Index Headings

This feature is supported in all print outputs (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, and XHTML).

When you insert an index proxy for print-based output, you can specify whether the generated index should include headings above the alphabetical groups of entries. The default setting is "True," meaning that index headings will be included. However, you can always override this setting at the spot where a particular index proxy is inserted. If you want all index proxies to not include headings by default, you can edit the mc-index-headings property, setting it to "False."

HOW TO USE STYLES TO INCLUDE OR EXCLUDE INDEX HEADINGS

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Reusable Content Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section on the left side of the editor, find and select the style called **MadCap|indexProxy** (or a style class you have created within that style).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. From the **Properties** section, expand the **Unclassified** property group.
7. Click in the cell to the right of **mc-index-headings** and select **true** (to include headings) or **false** (to exclude them).
8. Click to save your work.

Lists of Concepts

This feature is supported in all outputs.

After you use the concepts proxy to create a list of concepts, you can change the look of that list by using styles. You can modify the look of individual entries in the list, as well as the entire container.

HOW TO DETERMINE THE LOOK OF A LIST OF CONCEPTS (ENTIRE CONTAINER)

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section of the editor, scroll down and select the **MadCap|ConceptsProxy** style or a class that you have created under it (e.g., MadCap|ConceptsProxy.myclass).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section to the right, expand a property group (e.g., Font, Block, Box) to see the actual properties within it.
7. Locate the specific property that you want to change. The property name is shown in the left column. Use the right column to select and enter values for the property. Depending on the type of property, you can either type the value, select it from a drop-down list, or complete the value entries in a popup box.

   For example, if you want to change the width of the entire list of concepts, you would first expand the **Box** property group. Then you would click in the cell to the right of the **width** property and set the value.

   Another example would involve adding headings to a list of concepts. You would expand the **Unclassified** property group and click **the mc-concepts-list-headings** property to enable or disable concept list headings.
8. Click to save your work.

HOW TO DETERMINE THE LOOK OF A LIST OF CONCEPTS (INDIVIDUAL ENTRIES)

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section of the editor, expand the **p** style.
5. In the list of classes under the <p> tag, select either of the following:
   - **Concept** Select this class to control the look of the concept terms displayed in the generated list.
   - **ConceptContext** Select this class to control the look of the text associated with each concept term in the generated list.

   Note: The page numbers in the generated list inherit their style settings from the list items before them. However, if you want the page numbers to look differently, you can modify the MadCap|xref.ConceptPageNumber style.

6. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
7. In the **Properties** section to the right, expand a property group (e.g., Font, Block, Box) to see the actual properties within it.

8. Locate the specific property that you want to change. The property name is shown in the left column. Use the right column to select and enter values for the property. Depending on the type of property, you can either type the value, select it from a drop-down list, or complete the value entries in a popup box. Here are some of the more common properties that you might change:

   - **Alignment of Page Number (Print Output)** To change the alignment (left, right, center) of the page number, expand the **Unclassified** property group. Then click in the right column next to **mc-leader-align** and select the type of alignment.
   - **Font Family** To change the font family (e.g., Arial, Verdana), expand the **Font** property group. Click in the right column next to **font-family**, set the font family in the Font Family Picker dialog, and click **OK**.
   - **Font Size** To change the font size (e.g., 10 pt, 11 pt), expand the **Font** property group. Then click in the right column next to **font-size**, set the font size in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**.
   - **Leader Format (Print Output)** To change the format of the area between the item in the list and the page number, expand the **Unclassified** property group. Then click in the right column next to **mc-leader-format** and type the character to use. For example, if you want a series of dots, type a period. If you do not want to use a leader format, leave this field blank.

     > **Note:** For Word output, you can enter one character only (period, hyphen, or underscore). For FrameMaker, you can specify a combination of characters and spaces, which repeat between the text and page number.

   - **Leader Space Before/After (Print Output)** Expand the **Unclassified** property group. To change the *distance from the end of the list entry to the start of the leader*, click in the right column next to **mc-leader-indent**, set the margin value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**. To change the *distance between the end of the leader and the page number*, click in the right column next to **mc-leader-offset**, set the margin value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**.
   - **Padding Above** To change the amount of empty space (padding) above the item in the list, expand the **Box** property group. Then click in the right column next to **padding-top**, set the padding value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**. You can also use the other cells in this property group to add padding below, to the left, or to the right.
   - **Space in Front (Indentation)** To change the distance from the left page margin to the beginning of the item in the list, expand the **Box** property group. Then click in the right column next to **margin-left**, set the margin value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**. You can specify additional indentation for headings that wrap to more than one line. To do this, expand the **Unclassified** property group. Then click in the

right column next to **mc-multiline-indent**, set the margin value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**.

9. Click to save your work.

Lists of Elements

This feature is supported in all outputs.

When you use the list-of proxy to create a list of elements (such as a list of figures or tables), you have the option of selecting a couple of style classes in the List-Of Proxy dialog.

- In the field labeled **Stylesheet class for each generated entry**, you can select a style class for determining how each item in the generated list looks. You would use this style class, for example, if you want to change the font of the entries or add a leader (e.g., series of dots) between the entries and the page numbers. This should be a custom class of the <p> tag that you have created.
- In the field labeled **Stylesheet class for proxy**, you can select a class to affect the look of the entire list.

  You might create and use a proxy style class, for example, if you want to add a border around the generated list. If you do not select a class from this field, the generated list will use the style settings from the parent <MadCap|listOfProxy> style. You have the option of creating a class for this proxy style in the Stylesheet Editor. To do this, select the **MadCap|listOfProxy** style and click **Add Class** to create a class. The class will then be available from this field.

Therefore, when you want to change the way a list of elements looks (either each entry or the entire container), you simply need to adjust the properties for the appropriate style.

HOW TO USE STYLES TO DETERMINE THE LOOK OF A LIST OF ELEMENTS (ENTIRE CONTAINER)

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.

2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: Some of the necessary style properties can also be changed in the Simplified view in the Stylesheet Editor.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.

4. In the **Styles** section of the editor, scroll down and select the **MadCap|listOfProxy** style or a class that you have created under it (e.g., MadCap|listOfProxy.myclass).

   This is the same style that you selected in the field labeled **Stylesheet class for proxy** in the List-Of Proxy dialog (when you inserted the list-of proxy).

5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.

   Note: If you want to see properties that are of particular importance for a style, you can select **Show: Assorted Relevant Properties**.

6. In the **Properties** section to the right, expand a property group (e.g., Font, Block, Box) to see the actual properties within it.

7. Locate the specific property that you want to change. The property name is shown in the left column. Use the right column to select and enter values for the property. Depending on the type of property, you can either type the value, select it from a drop-down list, or complete the value entries in a popup box.

   For example, if you want to change the width of the entire list of elements, you would first expand the **Box** property group. Then you would click in the cell to the right of the **width** property and set the value.

8. Click to save your work.

HOW TO USE STYLES TO DETERMINE THE LOOK OF A LIST OF ELEMENTS (INDIVIDUAL ENTRIES)

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.

2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

> **Note:** For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.

4. In the **Styles** section of the editor, scroll down and select the style to be used for each generated item. This is the same style that you selected in the field labeled **Stylesheet class for each generated entry** in the List-Of Proxy dialog (when you inserted the list-of proxy).

> **Note:** The page numbers in the generated list inherit their style settings from the list items before them. However, if you want the page numbers to look differently, you can modify the MadCap|xref.ListOfPageNumber style.

5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.

> **Note:** If you want to see properties that are of particular importance for a style, you can select **Show: Assorted Relevant Properties**.

6. In the **Properties** section to the right, expand a property group (e.g., Font, Block, Box) to see the actual properties within it.

7. Locate the specific property that you want to change. The property name is shown in the left column. Use the right column to select and enter values for the property. Depending on the type of property, you can either type the value, select it from a drop-down list, or complete the value entries in a popup box. Here are some of the more common properties that you might change:

   - **Alignment of Page Number (Print Output)** To change the alignment (left, right, center) of the page number, expand the **Unclassified** property group. Then click in the right column next to **mc-leader-align** and select the type of alignment.
   - **Font Family** To change the font family (e.g., Arial, Verdana), expand the **Font** property group. Click in the right column next to **font-family**, set the font family in the Font Family Picker dialog, and click **OK**.
   - **Font Size** To change the font size (e.g., 10 pt, 11 pt), expand the **Font** property group. Then click in the right column next to **font-size**, set the font size in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**.
   - **Leader Format (Print Output)** To change the format of the area between the item in the list and the page number, expand the **Unclassified** property group. Then click in the right column next to **mc-leader-format** and type the character to use. For example, if you want a series of dots, type a period. If you do not want to use a leader format, leave this field blank.

     Note: For Word output, you can enter one character only (period, hyphen, or underscore). For FrameMaker, you can specify a combination of characters and spaces, which repeat between the text and page number.

   - **Leader Space Before/After (Print Output)** Expand the **Unclassified** property group. To change the *distance from the end of the list entry to the start of the leader*, click in the right column next to **mc-leader-indent**, set the margin value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**. To change the *distance between the end of the leader and the page number*, click in the right column next to **mc-leader-offset**, set the margin value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**.
   - **Padding Above** To change the amount of empty space (padding) above the item in the list, expand the **Box** property group. Then click in the right column next to **padding-top**, set the padding value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**. You can also use the other cells in this property group to add padding below, to the left, or to the right.
   - **Space in Front (Indentation)** To change the distance from the left page margin to the beginning of the item in the list, expand the **Box** property group. Then click in the right column next to **margin-left**, set the margin value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**. You can specify additional indentation for headings that wrap to more than one line. To do this, expand the **Unclassified** property group. Then click in the

right column next to **mc-multiline-indent**, set the margin value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**.

8. Click to save your work.

List Styles

You can modify the look of lists by making adjustments to the tags and style classes used for them.

List Style Tasks

By editing list styles, you can affect many things, such as the following.

- **Alignment** You can format lists or items within them so that the text is aligned right, left, centered, or justified. See "Aligning Lists" on page 195.
- **Background** You can set a background color and/or image on lists or items within them. See "Setting the Background for Lists" on page 207.
- **Borders** You can add borders around lists or items within them. Borders can be added on any side (left, right, top, bottom), or all around. See "Setting Borders for Lists" on page 200.
- **Images for Bullets** You can change the image used for bullets in lists. For example, if you have a small check mark icon that you want to use instead of round bullets, you can select your image. See "Selecting Images for List Bullets" on page 199.
- **Indentation** You can indent lists or items within them so that they start or end at a certain distance from the left or right side of the window or page frame. See "Indenting Lists" on page 196.
- **Line Spacing** You can specify the amount of spacing between lines of text in a list. See "Setting Line Spacing for Lists" on page 202.
- **Page and Column Breaks** You can apply a page or column break to lists or items within them. You might do this if you want a list to end with a particular item on one page and begin with another list item on the next page or column. For example, you could create a class of the <li> style tag and you could call it something like "PageBreakBefore" (li.PageBreakBefore). For most items in a list, you could use the parent <li> tag, but if you want a page break to occur on a particular list item, you could apply your li.PageBreakBefore style to it. This feature is used for print-based output. See "Setting Page and Column Breaks for Lists" on page 203.
- **Spacing Above/Below** You can specify the amount of spacing above and below lists or items within them. See "Setting Spacing Above and Below in Lists" on page 205.
- **Type** You can specify the type of list (e.g., circle, square, decimal, upper alpha) for a style. See "Specifying a List Type for a Style" on page 209.

List Style Tags

When you modify the look of lists that you create, you can modify any of the following kinds of tags in your stylesheet. Each of these tags is used to control a different aspect of a list. You can also create classes of these tags if you want to have multiple lists with different looks. For example, you could create one class of the <ul> tag and call it "Indent1Inch," and then create another class of that tag and call it "Indent2Inches."

- **li** You can use this tag to control the look of individual list items.
- **ol** You can use this tag to control the look of an entire numbered ("ordered") list, such as a set of steps in a procedure.

E X A M P L E

Here is a sample ordered list.

1. First do this.
2. Then do that.
3. Then do the other thing.

Here is how the tag structure for that ordered list would look behind the scenes.

```
<ol>
    <li>First do this.</li>
    <li>Then do that.</li>
    <li>Then do the other thing.</li>
</ol>
```

Therefore, if you applied a 1-pixel border to the <li> tag, each list item would have a border around it. But if you applied the border to the <ol> tag, the entire list would have a border around it.

» **ul** You can use this tag to control the look of an entire bulleted ("unordered") list.

E X A M P L E

Here is a sample unordered list.

- This is the first chore I have to do today.
- This is the second chore I have to do today.
- This is the third chore I have to do today.

Here is how the tag structure for that ordered list would look behind the scenes.

```
<ul>
    <li>This is the first chore I have to do today.</li>
    <li>This is the second chore I have to do today.</li>
    <li>This is the third chore I have to do today.</li>
</ul>
```

Therefore, if you applied a 1-pixel border to the <li> tag, each list item would have a border around it. But if you applied the border to the <ul> tag, the entire list would have a border around it.

» **dl** You can use this tag to control the look of a "definition" list.

» **dt** You can use this tag to control the look of terms in a definition list.

» **dd** You can use this tag to control the look of definitions in a definition list.

E X A M P L E

Here is a sample definition list.

Basketball

A game played with a hoop.

Football

A game with large men crashing into each other.

Olympic Curling

Nobody is exactly sure what this is.

Here is how the tag structure for that definition list might look behind the scenes.

```
<dl>
    <dt>Basketball</dt>
    <dd>A game played with a hoop.</dd>
    <dt>Football</dt>
    <dd>A game with large men crashing into each other.</dd>
    <dt>Olympic Curling</dt>
    <dd>Nobody is exactly sure what this is.</dd>
</dl>
```

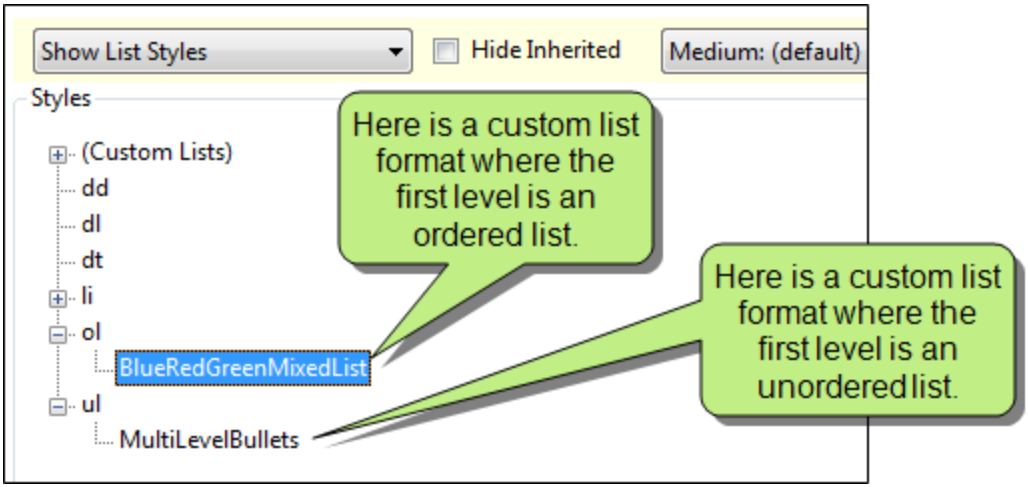
In this example, the font weight of the <dt> tag is bold, and the <dd> tag is indented by 40 pixels.

Custom List Format Styles

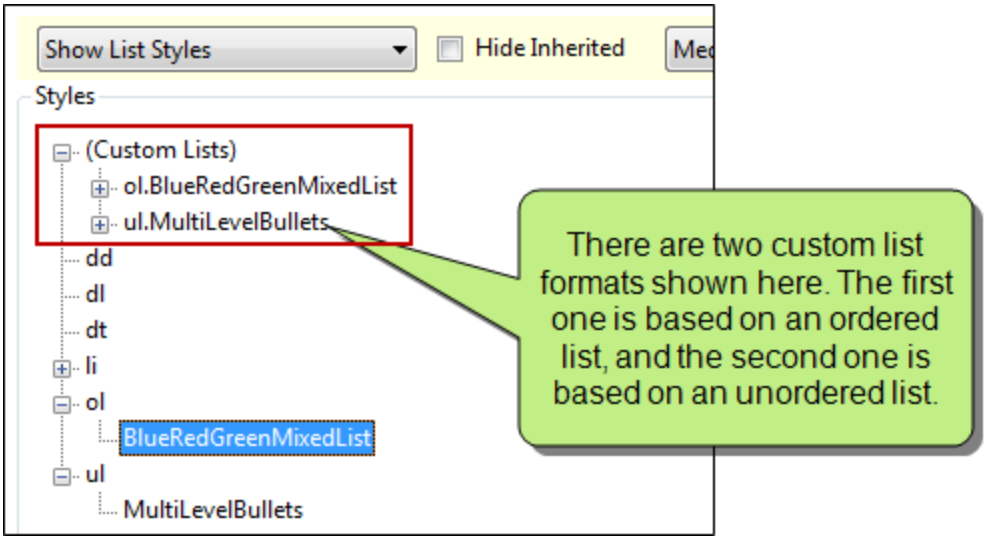
For some output types, you can create and edit lists with custom formats up to 10 levels deep. Custom formats allow you to quickly create lists (especially multi-level lists) that already have a certain look applied as you indent in the list to create new levels. For each level in a custom list format, you can specify whether to use an ordered (numbered) or unordered (bulleted) style, select a custom bullet image, insert characters or symbols, and choose formatting (e.g., bold, color, size). The formats that you create are written to your stylesheet. See "Creating Custom List Formats" on page 210 and "Editing Custom List Formats" on page 229.

Because custom list formats are written to your stylesheet as complex selectors, you can edit these formats in the Advanced view of the Stylesheet Editor.

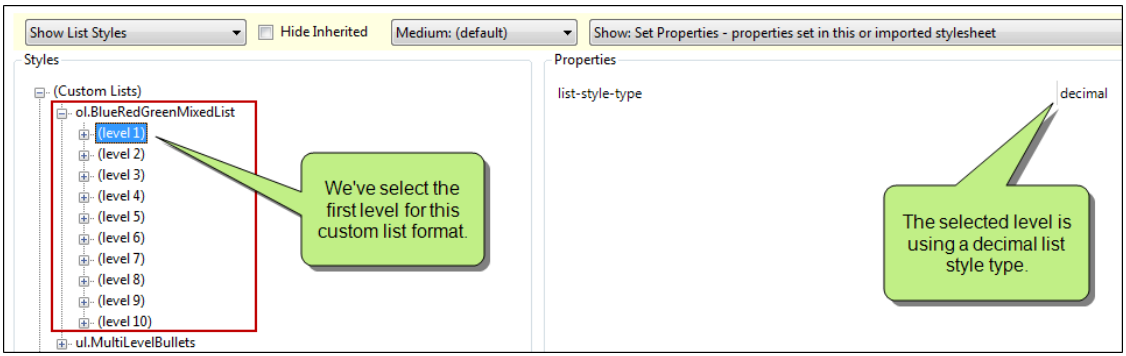
When you view list styles in the Stylesheet Editor, you will see custom formats displayed as classes under the respective <ol> and <ul> parent styles, depending on whether the first level of that format is an ordered or unordered list. However, these classes are really limited to the list style type for each.



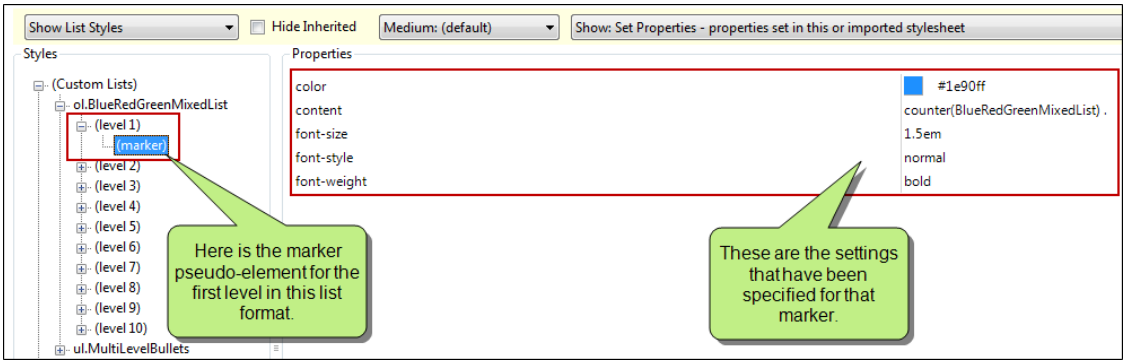
The real editing can take place in a special section called "(Custom Lists)," where all ordered and unordered custom list formats are grouped together.

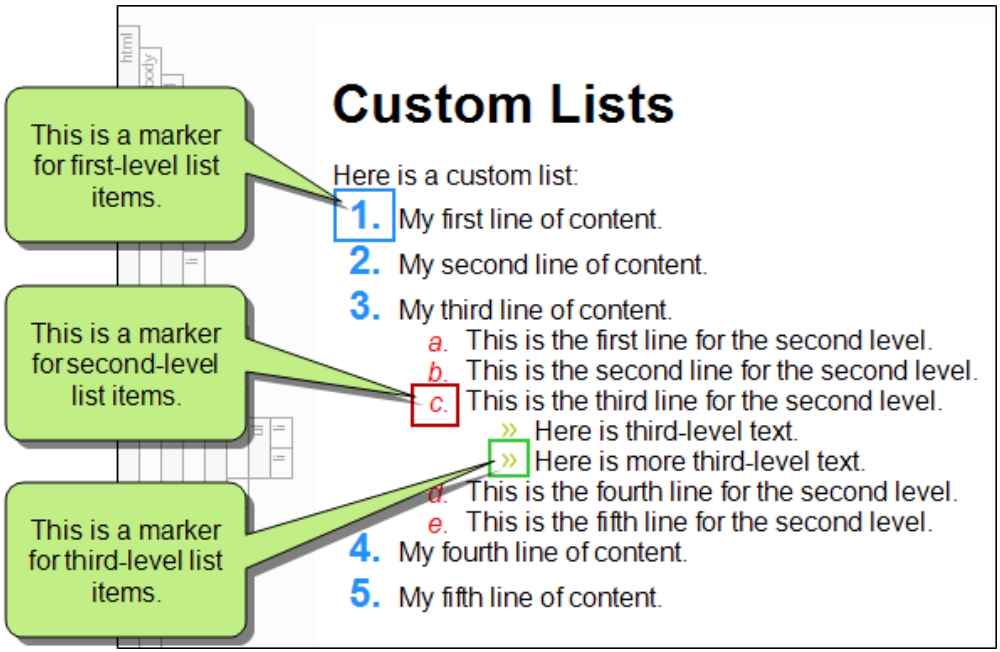


As you expand each custom list format, you will see nodes for each level that you have formatted. You can change the list style type (e.g., decimal, lower-alpha) or select a custom bullet image on these nodes.



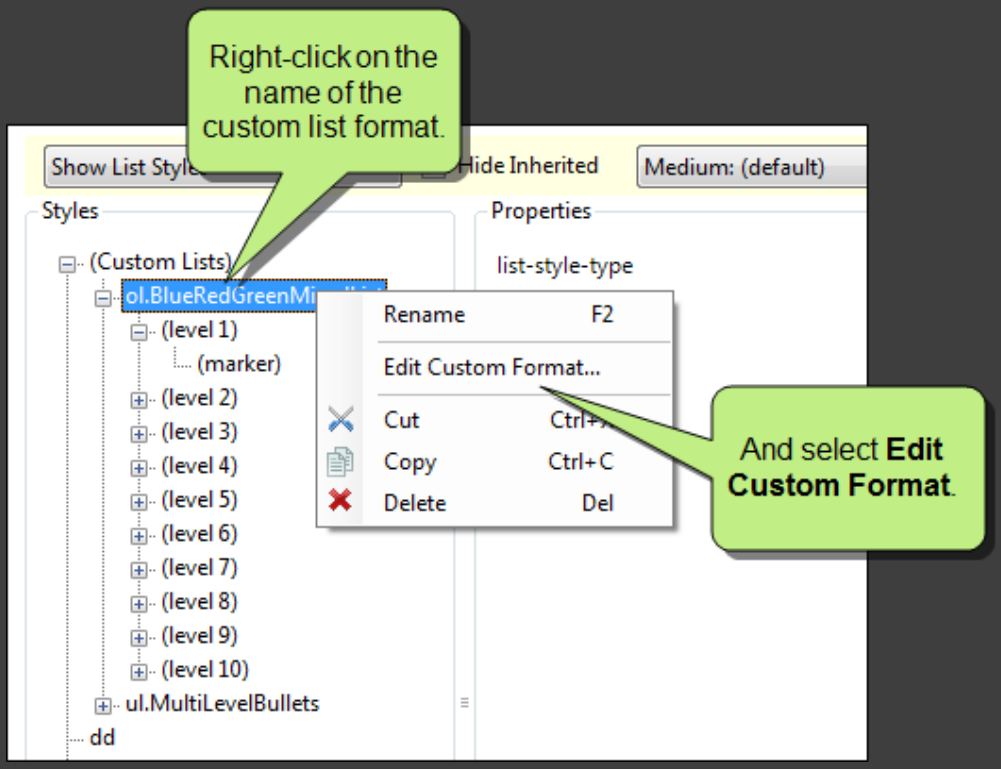
And under each level is a pseudo-element called "(marker)." A marker is the combination of the content and formatting for that level. It is usually a number, letter of the alphabet, symbol, or character, sometimes with punctuation, such as a period. This node is where the bulk of the editing takes place on a custom list format.





Note: For more information on the CSS specification for the marker pseudo-element, see http://dev.w3.org/csswg/css-lists/#marker-pseudo-element.

Note: By right-clicking on the name of a custom style and selecting **Edit Custom Format**, you can open the Edit List Format dialog and make your changes there instead.



Aligning Lists

You can format lists or items within them so that the text is aligned right, left, centered, or justified.

HOW TO ALIGN A LIST USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Make sure the appropriate medium is selected. If you are not using stylesheet mediums for your different outputs or if you want all mediums to have the same settings, just leave the medium set to "default" and continue.

   Mediums can be used if you want to use one group of settings for online output types (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus) and another group of settings for print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). For example, you might use the "default" medium for your online outputs and you might use the "print" medium for your print outputs.
3. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
4. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show List Styles.
5. Select the appropriate list style. For example, you can select **ol** for ordered (numbered) lists, **ul** for unordered (e.g., bullet) lists, or **li** for individual list items. You can select the parent tag (e.g., li), or you can select a class that you may have created for that tag (e.g., li.Bold, li.Italic). For more information about the <ol>, <ul>, and <li> tags for lists, see "List Style Tags" on page 188.
6. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
7. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Block** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
8. Click in the value column on the right side of the **text-align** property, and select one of the alignment options.
   - **center** Aligns the text on the center of the page or column.
   - **inherit** Uses the alignment setting of the parent tag.
   - **justify** Aligns the text so that it is flush with both the left and right side.
   - **left** Aligns the text on the left side of the page or column.
   - **right** Aligns the text on the right side of the page or column.
9. Click to save your work.

Indenting Lists

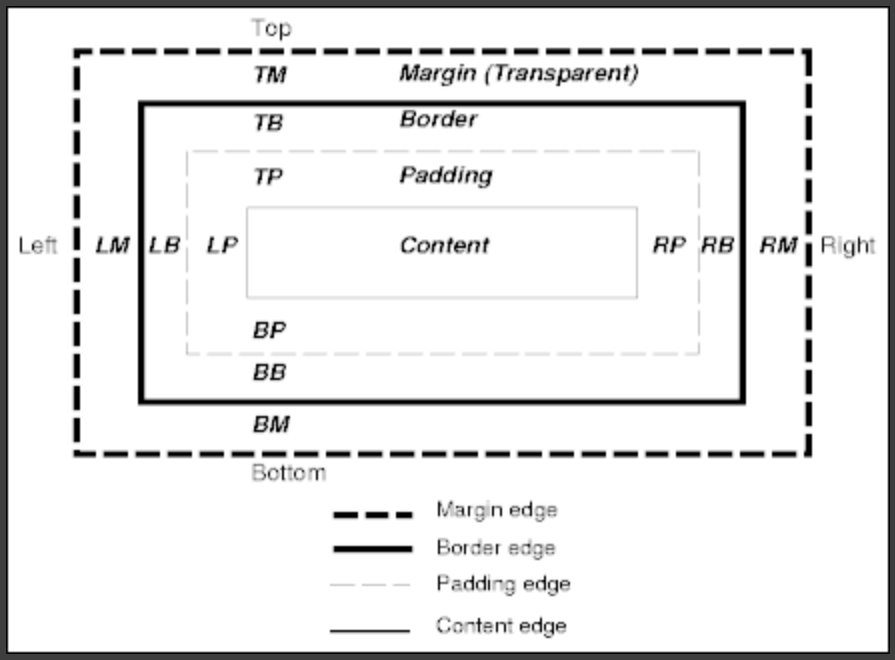
You can indent lists or items within them so that they start or end at a certain distance from the left or right side of the window or page frame.

HOW TO INDENT LISTS USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Make sure the appropriate medium is selected. If you are not using stylesheet mediums for your different outputs or if you want all mediums to have the same settings, just leave the medium set to "default" and continue.

   Mediums can be used if you want to use one group of settings for online output types (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus) and another group of settings for print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). For example, you might use the "default" medium for your online outputs and you might use the "print" medium for your print outputs.
3. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
4. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show List Styles.
5. Select the appropriate list style. For example, you can select **ol** for ordered (numbered) lists, **ul** for unordered (e.g., bullet) lists, or **li** for individual list items. You can select the parent tag (e.g., li), or you can select a class that you may have created for that tag (e.g., li.Bold, li.Italic). For more information about the <ol>, <ul>, and <li> tags for lists, see "List Style Tags" on page 188.
6. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
7. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Box** group. The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
8. To the right of **margin-left** or **padding-left**, click the down arrow and select the distance that the list or list item will be indented. Click **OK**.

Note: Both margins and padding can affect the space around elements. The margin controls the amount of space from the edge of the page or viewing device to the edge of the "container" holding the element. Padding controls the amount of space from the edge of the element itself and the container holding it. Therefore, if you seem to be experiencing more space than you expected, you might check to see if you have values entered for both the margin and padding.



9. To the right of **margin-right**, click the down arrow and select the distance that the list or list item will be indented from the right side of the page. When you are finished, click **OK**.
10. Click to save your work.

Note: Different browsers may treat margin and padding settings differently. For example, Internet Explorer 8 and Firefox honor padding settings more than they honor margin settings. If you were to set a left margin at, say, 1 inch, Internet Explorer 7 would show it that way. However, in order to get the same results in Internet Explorer 8 or Firefox, you would also need to set the left padding at 1 inch.

Note: A tag is a good way to indent lots of content. For example, you might have a section of content containing four paragraphs, a numbered list, and an image. Rather than creating special style classes for all of those different elements with an indentation setting (e.g., margin-left or padding-left) on each, you can place your indentation setting on the tag. That way, any content contained within that tag will be indented accordingly. For more information about tag groups, see the online Help.

Selecting Images for List Bullets

You can change the image used for bullets in lists. For example, if you have a small check mark icon that you want to use instead of round bullets, you can select your image.

HOW TO SELECT AN IMAGE FOR LIST BULLETS USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Make sure the appropriate medium is selected. If you are not using stylesheet mediums for your different outputs or if you want all mediums to have the same settings, just leave the medium set to "default" and continue.

   Mediums can be used if you want to use one group of settings for online output types (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus) and another group of settings for print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). For example, you might use the "default" medium for your online outputs and you might use the "print" medium for your print outputs.
3. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
4. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show List Styles.
5. Select the appropriate list style. For example, you can select **ol** for ordered (numbered) lists, **ul** for unordered (e.g., bullet) lists, or **li** for individual list items. You can select the parent tag (e.g., li), or you can select a class that you may have created for that tag (e.g., li.Bold, li.Italic). For more information about the <ol>, <ul>, and <li> tags for lists, see "List Style Tags" on page 188.
6. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
7. In the **Properties** section, expand the **List** group. The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
8. To the right of **list-style-image**, click and select an image already contained in your project.
9. Click to save your work.

Note: For PDF, XPS, and XHTML outputs, you can also select a bullet image when creating a custom list format. See "Creating Custom List Formats" on page 210.

Setting Borders for Lists

You can add borders around lists or items within them. Borders can be added on any side (left, right, top, bottom), or all around.

HOW TO ADD A BORDER TO A LIST USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Make sure the appropriate medium is selected. If you are not using stylesheet mediums for your different outputs or if you want all mediums to have the same settings, just leave the medium set to "default" and continue.

   Mediums can be used if you want to use one group of settings for online output types (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus) and another group of settings for print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). For example, you might use the "default" medium for your online outputs and you might use the "print" medium for your print outputs.
3. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
4. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show List Styles.
5. Select the appropriate list style. For example, you can select **ol** for ordered (numbered) lists, **ul** for unordered (e.g., bullet) lists, or **li** for individual list items. You can select the parent tag (e.g., li), or you can select a class that you may have created for that tag (e.g., li.Bold, li.Italic). For more information about the <ol>, <ul>, and <li> tags for lists, see "List Style Tags" on page 188.
6. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
7. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Border** group. The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
8. Locate the border property that you want to change. Each side (bottom, left, right, top) has separate properties that you can set for the color, style, and width (e.g., border-bottom-style). You can set these properties individually, or you can set the main property for each side (e.g., border-bottom), which lets you specify the color, style, and width in one place. Even better, if you plan to have the same settings for all four sides, you can simply use the **border** property to set the color, style, and width all the way around.When you click in the cell to the right of one of the broad properties (e.g., border, border-bottom), a small popup displays.
   a. Use the lower-left area of the popup to enter a number for the border thickness.
   b. Use the lower-middle area to select a unit of measurement (e.g., point, pixel, centimeter) for the number you entered.
   c. Use the upper-right area to select a color for the border.

d. Use the lower-right area to select a line type (e.g., solid, double, dashed) for the border.

e. Click **OK**.

9. Click to save your work.

Setting Line Spacing for Lists

You can specify the amount of spacing between lines of text in a list.

HOW TO SET LINE SPACING FOR LISTS USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Make sure the appropriate medium is selected. If you are not using stylesheet mediums for your different outputs or if you want all mediums to have the same settings, just leave the medium set to "default" and continue.

   Mediums can be used if you want to use one group of settings for online output types (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus) and another group of settings for print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). For example, you might use the "default" medium for your online outputs and you might use the "print" medium for your print outputs.
3. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
4. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show List Styles.
5. Select the appropriate list style. For example, you can select **ol** for ordered (numbered) lists, **ul** for unordered (e.g., bullet) lists, or **li** for individual list items. You can select the parent tag (e.g., li), or you can select a class that you may have created for that tag (e.g., li.Bold, li.Italic). For more information about the <ol>, <ul>, and <li> tags for lists, see "List Style Tags" on page 188.
6. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
7. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Font** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
8. To the right of **line-height**, click the down arrow and set the amount of space between lines. When you are finished, click **OK**.
9. Click to save your work.

Tip: Make sure the line height is equal to or greater than the font size.

Setting Page and Column Breaks for Lists

You can apply a page or column break to lists or items within them. You might do this if you want a list to end with a particular item on one page and begin with another list item on the next page or column. For example, you could create a class of the <li> style tag and you could call it something like "PageBreakBefore" (li.PageBreakBefore). For most items in a list, you could use the parent <li> tag, but if you want a page break to occur on a particular list item, you could apply your li.PageBreakBefore style to it. This feature is used for print-based output.

HOW TO SET A PAGE OR COLUMN BREAK FOR LISTS USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Make sure the appropriate medium is selected. If you are not using stylesheet mediums for your different outputs or if you want all mediums to have the same settings, just leave the medium set to "default" and continue.

   Mediums can be used if you want to use one group of settings for online output types (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus) and another group of settings for print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). For example, you might use the "default" medium for your online outputs and you might use the "print" medium for your print outputs.
3. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
4. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show List Styles.
5. Select the appropriate list style. For example, you can select **ol** for ordered (numbered) lists, **ul** for unordered (e.g., bullet) lists, or **li** for individual list items. You can select the parent tag (e.g., li), or you can select a class that you may have created for that tag (e.g., li.Bold, li.Italic). For more information about the <ol>, <ul>, and <li> tags for lists, see "List Style Tags" on page 188.
6. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
7. In the **Properties** section, expand the **PrintSupport** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
8. You can click to the right of **page-break-before**, and select one of the options for setting a page break before the list item:
   - **always** A page break will always occur before the list item.
   - **auto** A page break will neither be forced nor prevented before the list item.
   - **avoid** A page break will not occur before the list item.

- **inherit** The page break setting of the parent tag is used.
- **left** One or two page breaks will occur before the list item so that the next page is formatted as a left page.
- **right** One or two page breaks will occur before the list item so that the next page is formatted as a right page.

9. You can click to the right of **page-break-after**, and select one of the options for setting a page break after the list item:
   - **always** A page break will always occur after the list item.
   - **auto** A page break will neither be forced nor prevented after the list item.
   - **avoid** A page break will not occur after the list item.
   - **inherit** The page break setting of the parent tag is used.
   - **left** One or two page breaks will occur after the list item so that the next page is formatted as a left page.
   - **right** One or two page breaks will occur after the list item so that the next page is formatted as a right page.
10. You can click to the right of **page-break-inside**, and select one of the options for setting a page break inside the "rendering box" of the list item:
    - **auto** A page break will neither be forced nor prevented inside the rendering box of the list item.
    - **avoid** A page break will not occur inside the rendering box of the list item.
    - **inherit** The page break setting of the parent tag is used.
11. Click to save your work.

Note: Let's say you've created a class for the <li> tag (e.g., li.PageBreakBefore) and you've specified a page break for it. Suppose you want to apply that style class to an item in one of your lists so that it starts on the next page. However, you also want to add a paragraph tag to it (e.g., so that you can add a comment after the item without altering the overall sequence of the list). In that case, you should make sure to apply the list style class to the item first and then add the paragraph tag to it afterwards.

Setting Spacing Above and Below in Lists

You can specify the amount of spacing above and below lists or items within them.

HOW TO SET SPACING ABOVE AND BELOW IN LISTS USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Make sure the appropriate medium is selected. If you are not using stylesheet mediums for your different outputs or if you want all mediums to have the same settings, just leave the medium set to "default" and continue.

   Mediums can be used if you want to use one group of settings for online output types (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus) and another group of settings for print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). For example, you might use the "default" medium for your online outputs and you might use the "print" medium for your print outputs.
3. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
4. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show List Styles.
5. Select the appropriate list style. For example, you can select **ol** for ordered (numbered) lists, **ul** for unordered (e.g., bullet) lists, or **li** for individual list items. You can select the parent tag (e.g., li), or you can select a class that you may have created for that tag (e.g., li.Bold, li.Italic). For more information about the <ol>, <ul>, and <li> tags for lists, see "List Style Tags" on page 188.
6. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
7. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Box** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
8. To the right of **margin-bottom**, click the down arrow and set the amount of space below the list or list item. When you are finished, click **OK**.
9. To the right of **margin-top**, click the down arrow and set the amount of space above the list or list item. When you are finished, click **OK**.
10. Click to save your work.

Note: Different browsers may treat margin and padding settings differently. For example, Internet Explorer 8 and Firefox honor padding settings more than they honor margin settings. If you were to set a left margin at,

say, 1 inch, Internet Explorer 7 would show it that way. However, in order to get the same results in Internet Explorer 8 or Firefox, you would also need to set the left padding at 1 inch.

Setting the Background for Lists

You can set a background color and/or image on lists or items within them.

HOW TO ADD A BACKGROUND TO A LIST USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Make sure the appropriate medium is selected. If you are not using stylesheet mediums for your different outputs or if you want all mediums to have the same settings, just leave the medium set to "default" and continue.

   Mediums can be used if you want to use one group of settings for online output types (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus) and another group of settings for print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). For example, you might use the "default" medium for your online outputs and you might use the "print" medium for your print outputs.
3. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
4. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show List Styles.
5. Select the appropriate list style. For example, you can select **ol** for ordered (numbered) lists, **ul** for unordered (e.g., bullet) lists, or **li** for individual list items. You can select the parent tag (e.g., li), or you can select a class that you may have created for that tag (e.g., li.Bold, li.Italic). For more information about the <ol>, <ul>, and <li> tags for lists, see "List Style Tags" on page 188.
6. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
7. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Background** group. The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
8. Locate the background property that you want to change, depending on what you are trying to accomplish.

   SET A COLOR FOR THE BACKGROUND

   » To the right of **background-color**, click the down arrow and select a color from the popup. For advanced color options, select **More Colors** and use the fields in the Color Picker dialog.

ADD AN IMAGE TO THE BACKGROUND

a. To the right of **background-image**, click and select an image already contained in your project.

b. If you want the background image to repeat, click in the cell to the right of **background-repeat** and select one of the options (definitions from **http://www.w3.org**).

   - **no-repeat** The image is not repeated: only one copy of the image is drawn.
   - **repeat** The image is repeated both horizontally and vertically.
   - **repeat-x** The image is repeated horizontally only.
   - **repeat-y** The image is repeated vertically only.

9. Click to save your work.

Specifying a List Type for a Style

You can specify the type of list (e.g., circle, square, decimal, upper alpha) for a style.

HOW TO SELECT A LIST TYPE FOR A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Make sure the appropriate medium is selected. If you are not using stylesheet mediums for your different outputs or if you want all mediums to have the same settings, just leave the medium set to "default" and continue.

   Mediums can be used if you want to use one group of settings for online output types (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus) and another group of settings for print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). For example, you might use the "default" medium for your online outputs and you might use the "print" medium for your print outputs.
3. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
4. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show List Styles.
5. Select the appropriate list style. For example, you can select **ol** for ordered (numbered) lists, **ul** for unordered (e.g., bullet) lists, or **li** for individual list items. You can select the parent tag (e.g., li), or you can select a class that you may have created for that tag (e.g., li.Bold, li.Italic). For more information about the <ol>, <ul>, and <li> tags for lists, see "List Style Tags" on page 188.
6. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
7. In the **Properties** section, expand the **List** group. The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
8. To the right of **list-style-type**, click and select a list type. There are several from which to choose. You may want to select different ones and view the results before settling on the one you want.
9. Click to save your work.

Creating Custom List Formats

This feature is supported in Adobe PDF, Microsoft XPS, and XHTML output.

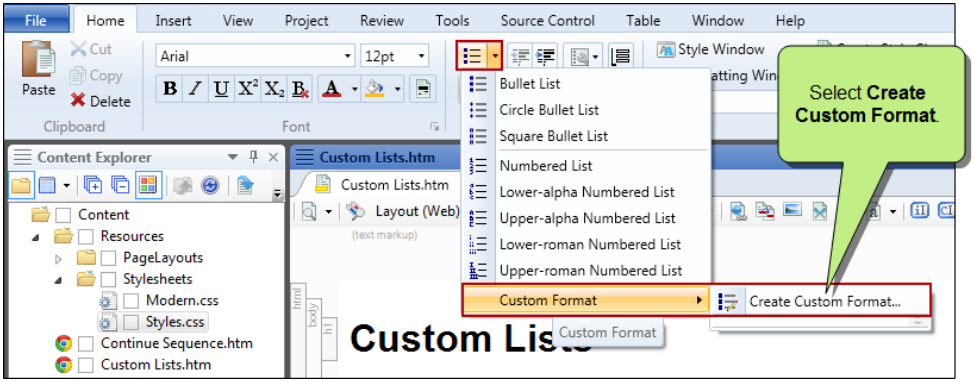
For some output types, you can create and edit lists with custom formats up to 10 levels deep. Custom formats allow you to quickly create lists (especially multi-level lists) that already have a certain look applied as you indent in the list to create new levels. For each level in a custom list format, you can specify whether to use an ordered (numbered) or unordered (bulleted) style, select a custom bullet image, insert characters or symbols, and choose formatting (e.g., bold, color, size). The formats that you create are written to your stylesheet.

Warning: At this time, custom list formats are supported only in PDF, XHTML, and XPS outputs. After browsers begin to support the CSS3 marker element that makes custom list formats possible, this feature will automatically be supported in browser-based outputs as well. Until then, if you want to generate a browser-based output, you should use the standard method for creating lists instead.

HOW TO CREATE A CUSTOM LIST FORMAT

1. Open the content file (e.g., topic, snippet).
2. Place your cursor in the document where you want to create a list.
3. Do one of the following, depending on the part of the user interface you are using:

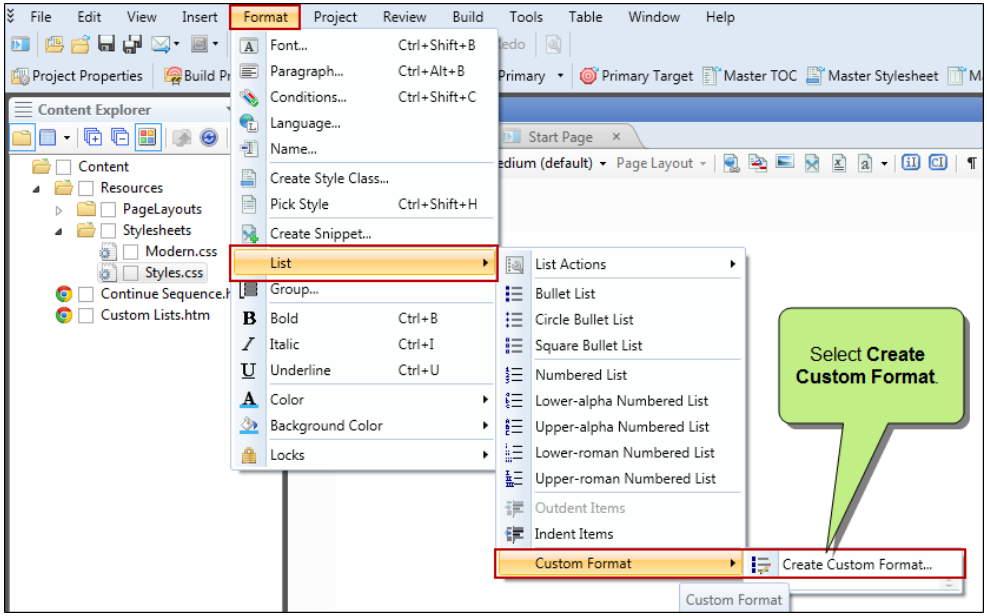
   » **Ribbon** Select the **Home** ribbon. In the **Paragraph** section click the down arrow on the list button and select **Custom Format>Create Custom Format**.



You can use the Options dialog to switch between ribbons and the classic tool strip layout. For more information see the online Help.

Keep in mind that the smaller the application window becomes, the more the options in a ribbon shrink. Therefore, you might only see a small icon instead of text, or you might see only a section name displayed with a down arrow to access the options in it. You can hover over small icons to see tooltips that describe them. You can also enlarge the application window or click one of the section drop-downs in the ribbon to locate a hidden feature.

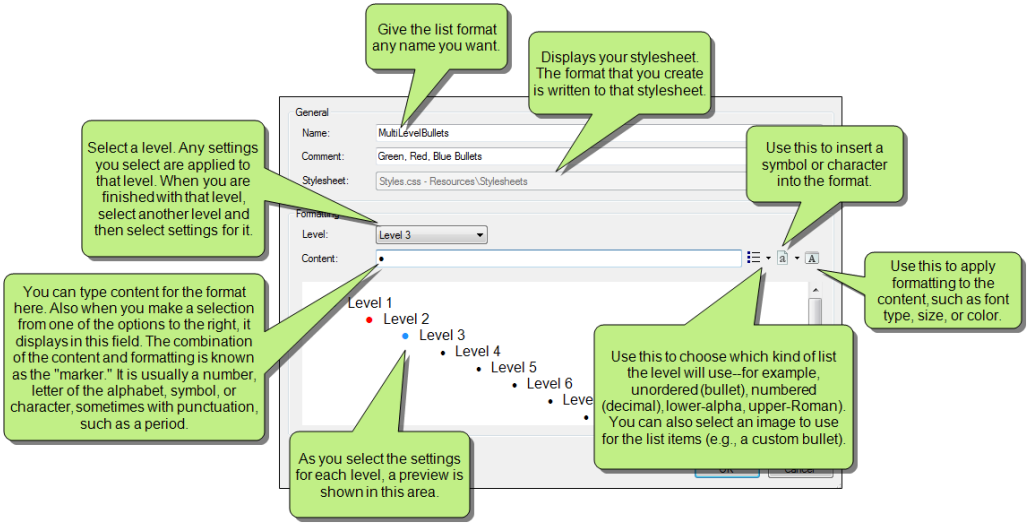
» **Menu** Select **Format>List>Custom Format>Create Custom Format**.



» **Text Format Toolbar** Click the down arrow on the list button and select **Custom Format>Create Custom Format**.

To open the Text Format toolbar from the menu view, select **View>Toolbars>Text Format**.

4. Use the Create New List Format dialog to specify the type of counter (e.g., decimals, upper-roman, lower-alpha), custom characters and images, and the look for each level of the list format. (You can use only one counter per level in the format.)



- **Name** Give your custom list format a name.
- **Comment** You can add an internal comment, such as the purpose of the list format.
- **Stylesheet** This displays the stylesheet associated with your primary target. Styles created as a result of your custom list format are added to this stylesheet.
- **Level** Select the level of the list that you want to work on. When a level is selected, any settings you choose are applied only to that level.
- **Content** This field becomes populated based on settings you choose using the buttons next to this field. It is a good idea to begin by clicking the first button to the right (e.g.,) and selecting a list type or image first (see below). Then use the other options as necessary.

  You can also type directly into this field.

Note: Any text typed directly in this field is supported only in PDF output. If you enter any text, the default list markers (e.g., bullets, numbers) are instead displayed in non-PDF outputs.

» The face of this button changes, depending on your most recent selection using it. The button might show bullets, as shown here, or it might show numbers, or even a small image. If you click the face of the button, the list type counter or image path populates the Content field (unless you select the bullet list type, in which case the Content field remains empty). If you click the down arrow, you can select any of the following:

	Description	What is Added to the Content Field?
	Uses a bullet list.	Nothing
	Uses a numbered list.	{n}.
	Inserts a lower-alpha numbered list.	{a}.
	Inserts an upper-alpha numbered list.	{A}.
	Inserts a lower-Roman numbered list.	{r}.
	Inserts an upper-Roman numbered list.	{R}.
	Lets you select a custom bullet image.	The path to the image file

» You can click this button to insert a special character or symbol.

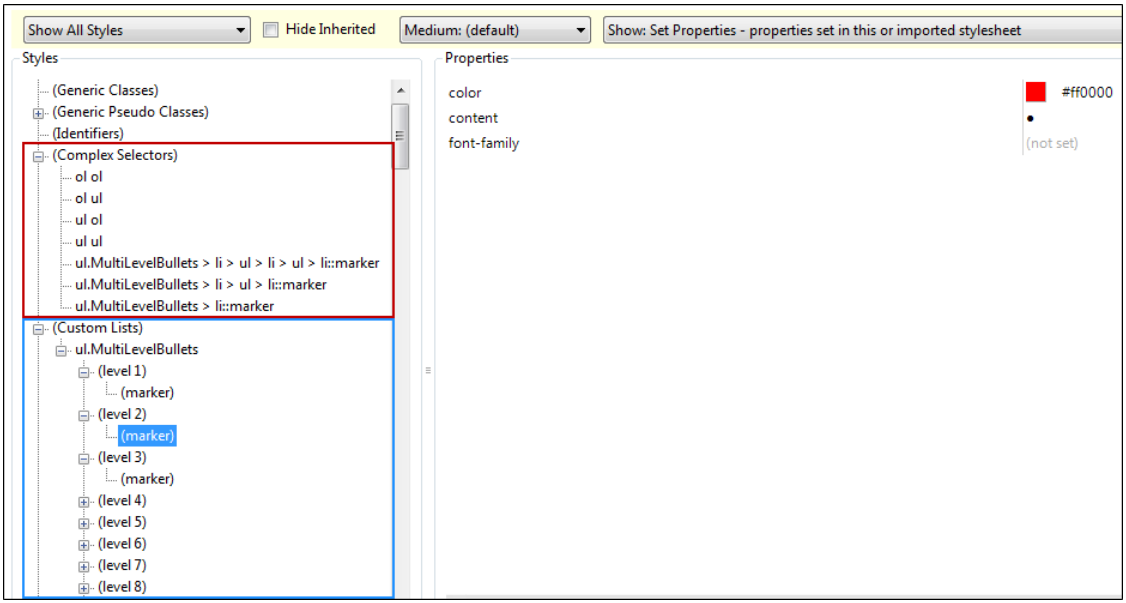
Note: Custom list characters are supported only in PDF output. If you add characters or symbols to the Content field, the default list markers (e.g., bullets, numbers) are instead displayed in non-PDF outputs. However, custom bullet images are supported in all output formats.

» You can click this button to open the Font Properties dialog. This lets you change the look of the list marker, such as the font size or type, color, and effects.

5. Click **OK**. The dialog closes and a list is started with the first level shown. Whenever you press **Tab** or click the indent button, the next level is created in the list. You can click the outdent button in the Home ribbon to move back out to higher levels in the list.
6. Click to save your work.

CUSTOM LIST FORMATS AND STYLES

When you create a custom list format, a complex selector (a special type of style) is added to your stylesheet. In the Stylesheet Editor, you can see your custom list formats under (Complex Selectors), as well as under (Custom Lists).



A custom list format might look something like the following when looking at the stylesheet in the Internal Text Editor.

```
ol.MixedList    /*(1) Blue Numbers, (2) Red Lower-Alpha, (3) Green Bullet Image*/
{
    list-style-type: decimal;
}

ol.MixedList > li::marker
{
    color: #1e90ff;
    content: counter(MixedList) '.';
}

ol.MixedList > li > ol
{
    list-style-type: lower-alpha;
}

ol.MixedList > li > ol > li::marker
{
    color: #ff0000;
    content: counter(MixedList) '.';
}

ol.MixedList > li > ol > li > ul
{
    list-style-image: url('../Images/Bullet1.png');
}
```

Settings for first level.

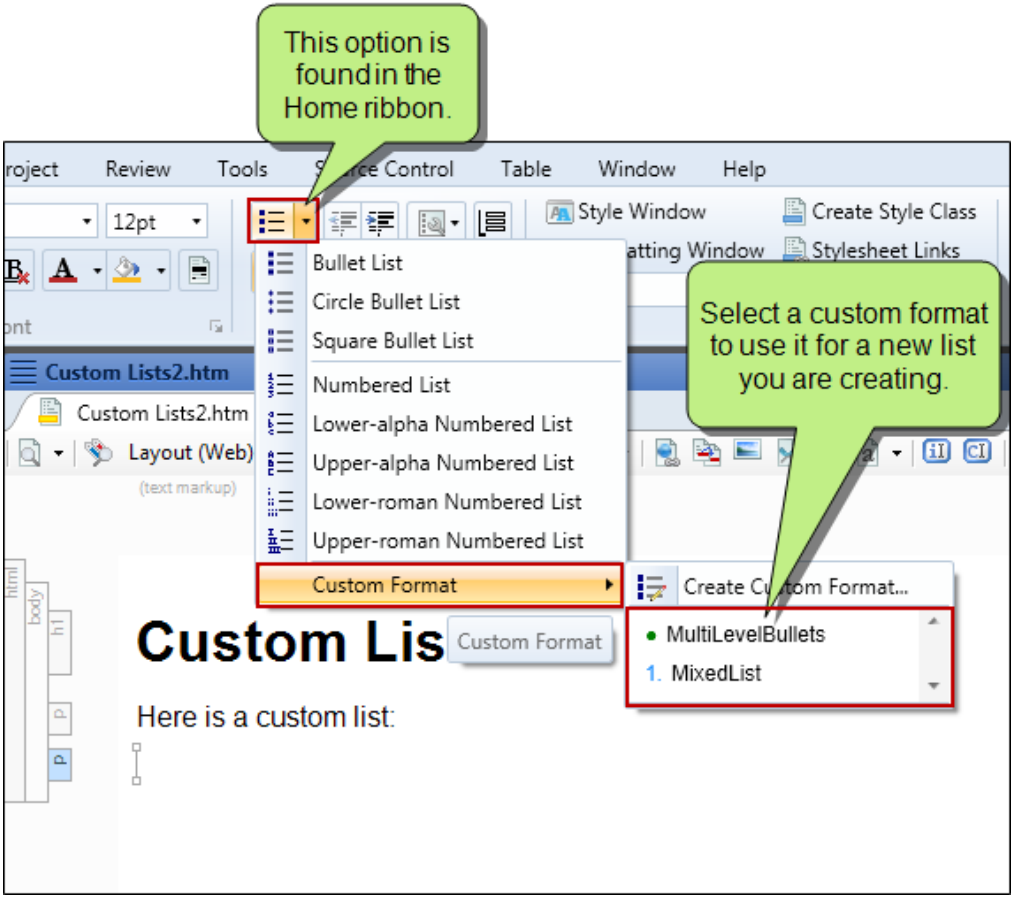
Settings for second level.

Settings for third level.

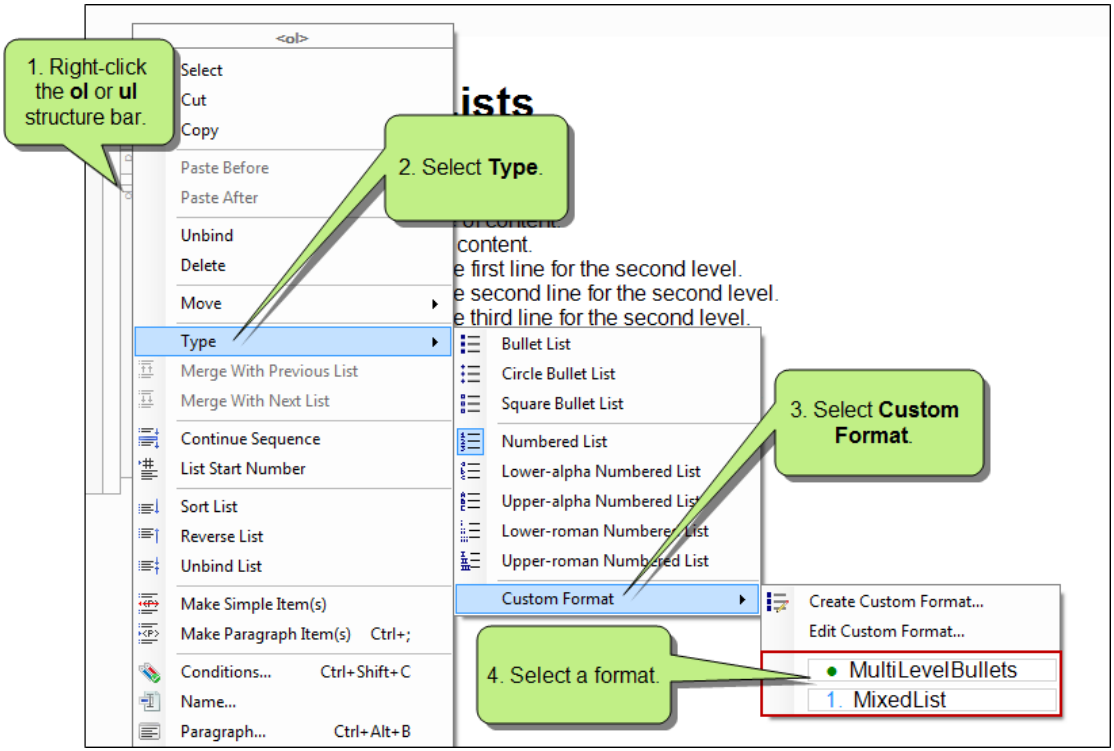
You can edit these styles whenever you like. See "Editing Custom List Formats" on page 229.

APPLYING CUSTOM LIST FORMATS

After you create a custom list format, you can open a topic or snippet in the XML Editor and select that format when creating a new list.



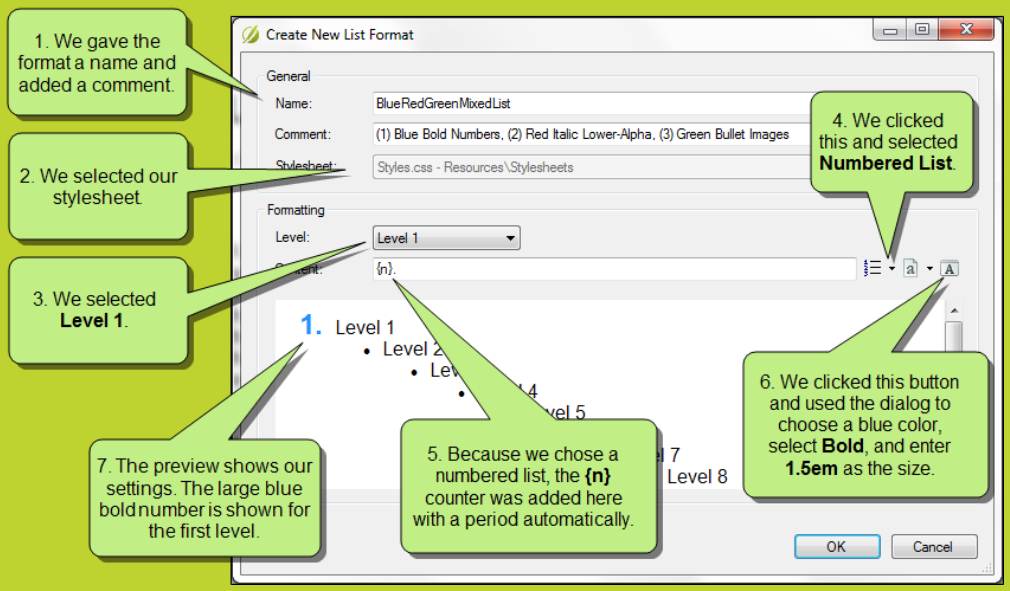
You can also change an existing list to another custom format by right-clicking the **ol** (ordered list) or **ul** (unordered) structure bar and choosing the format from the context menu. See "Applying Styles to Content" on page 482.



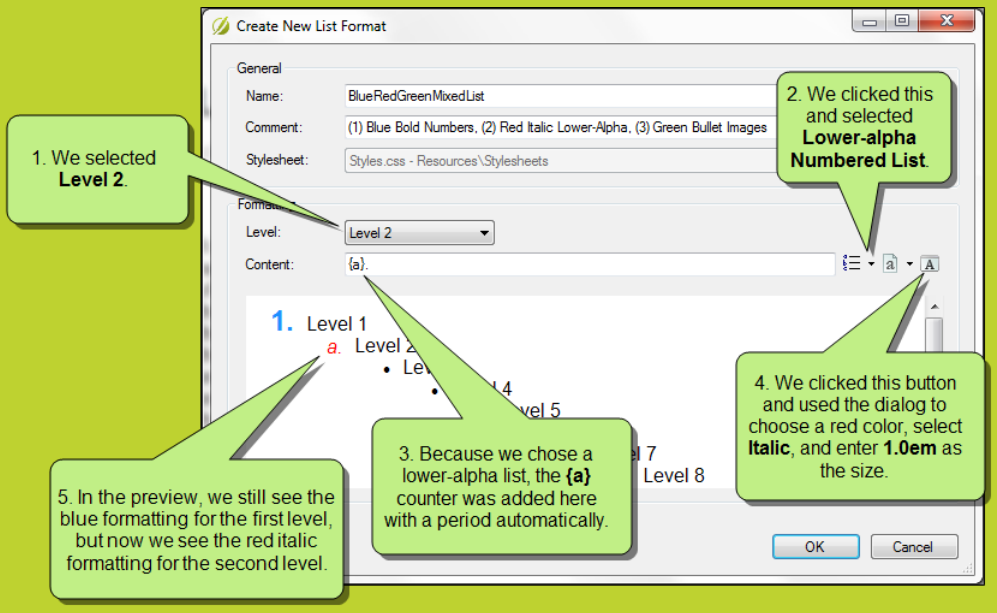
E X A M P L E

Let's say you want many of your lists to have a format where the first level of the list uses blue numbers in bold font with a size of 1.5 em (which is similar to 150%). The second level needs to be lower-alpha numbers in red italic font with a size of 1.0 em (which is similar to 100%). And the third level should be unordered format with a green image representing each bullet.

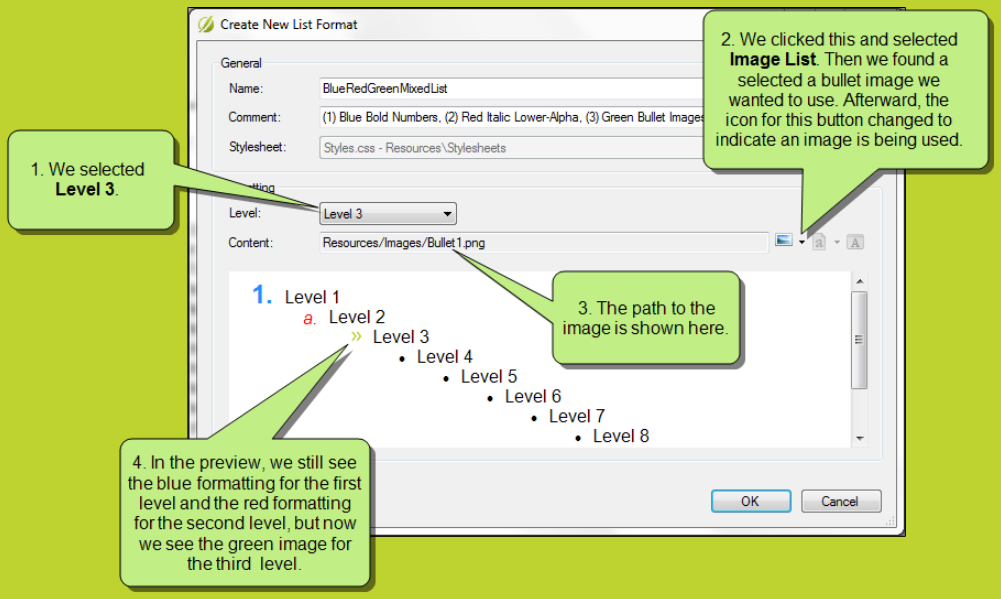
For the first level, you might do this:



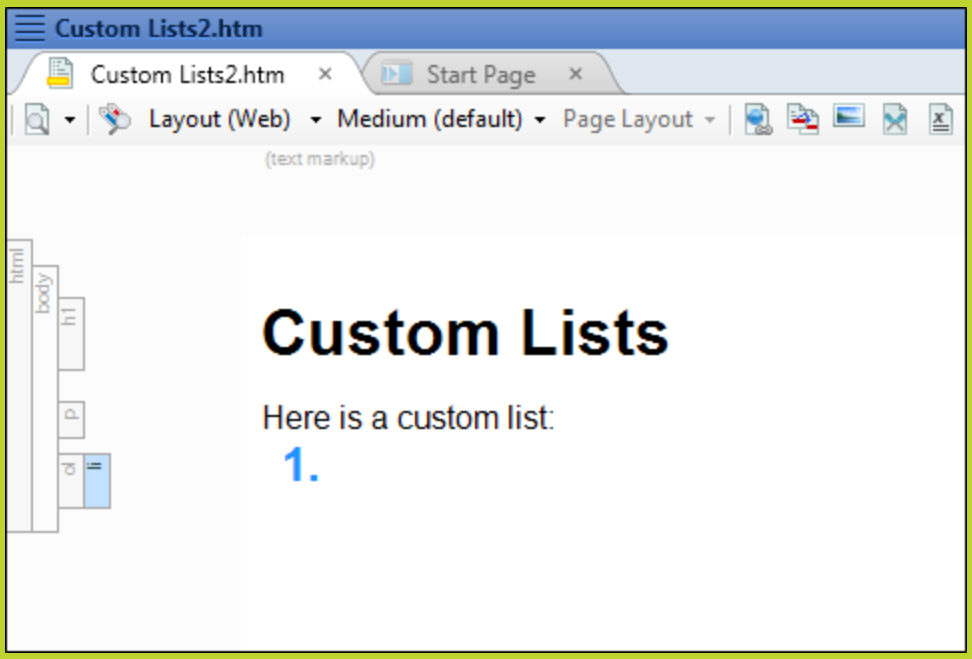
For the second level, you might do this:



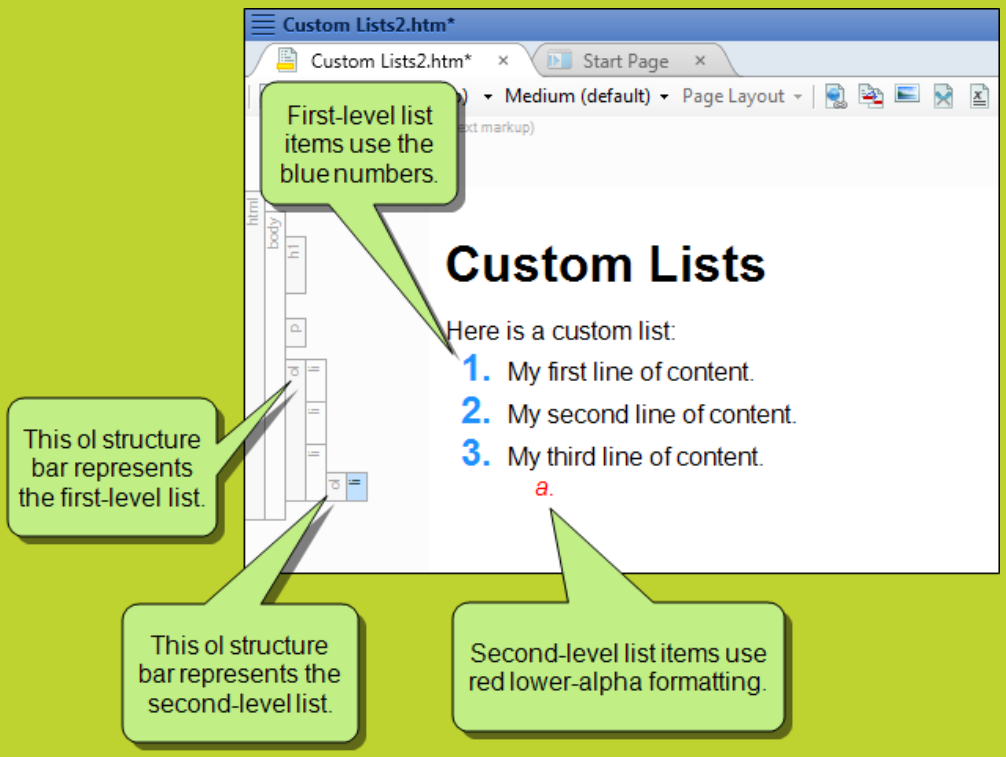
For the third level, you might do this:



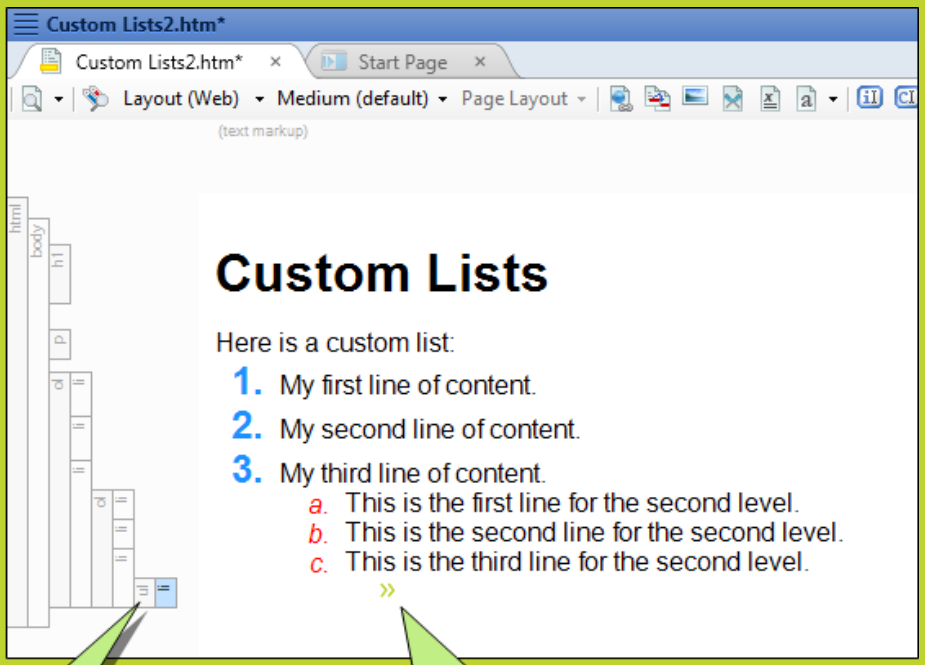
As soon as the format is created, the beginning of the list is seen in the XML Editor with the first level shown.



Type content and press **Enter**, just like you would for any other list. When you want to enter content for a second level in the list, press **Tab** on your keyboard. The formatting automatically changes to the red lower-alpha format.



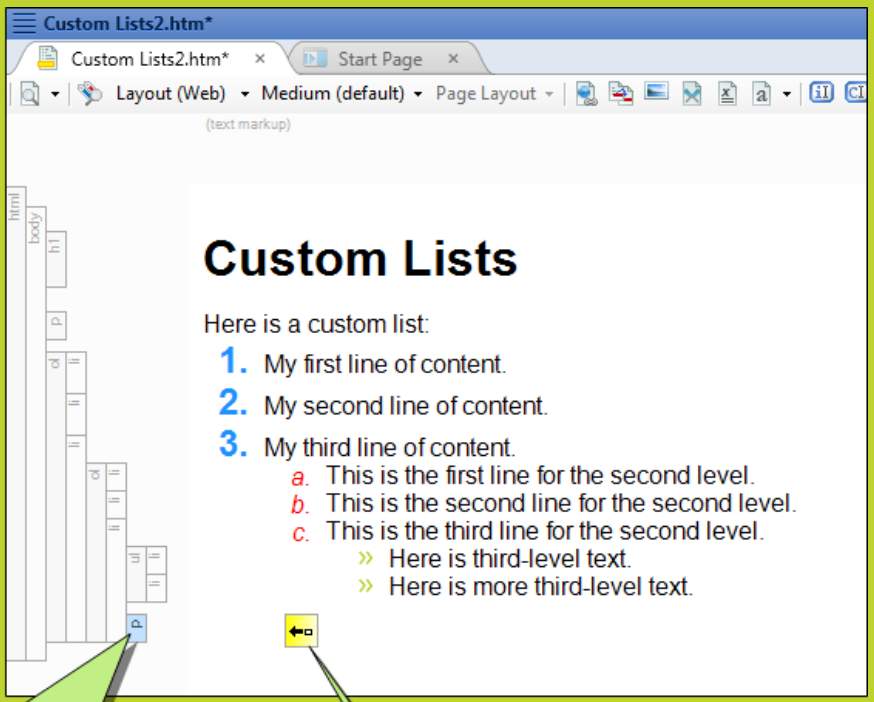
Type content for the second-level list items, pressing **Enter** after each line. When you want to enter content for a third level in the list, press **Tab** on your keyboard. Because you are moving from an ordered list to an unordered list at this point, the structure bar changes to a <ul> tag and the formatting for the third level changes to the green image.



This ul structure bar represents the third-level list.

Third-level list items use the green bullet image.

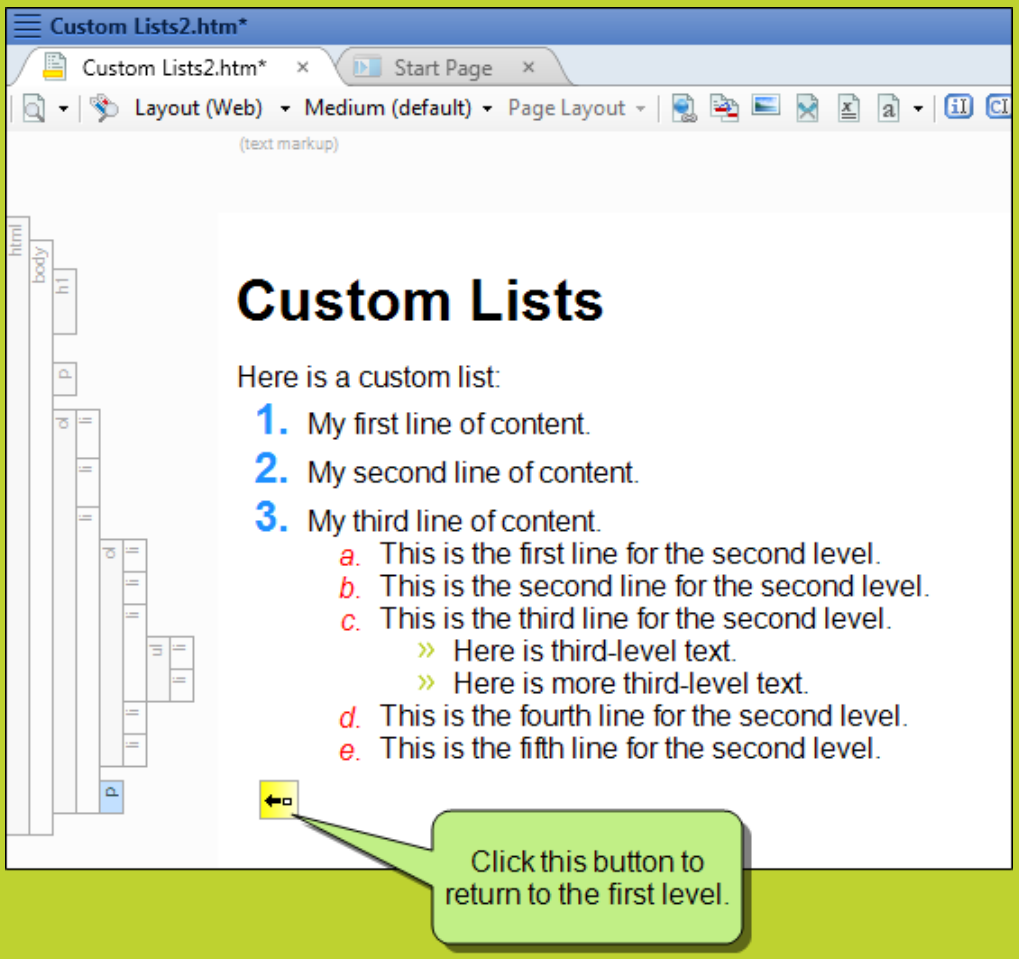
Type content for the third-level list items, pressing **Enter** after each line. When you want to return to the second-level list, click the **Outdent** button in the Home ribbon. This initially creates a <p> tag under the list, and a floating yellow arrow button is shown.



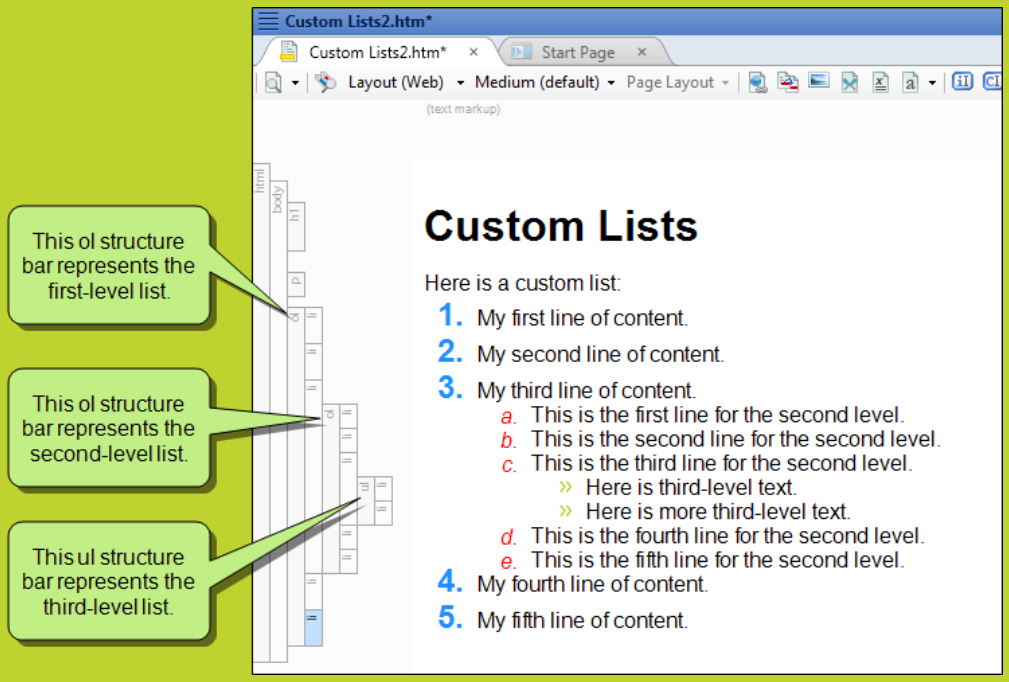
A <p> tag is initially added. This allows you to type text in a regular paragraph in the middle of the list. But if you don't want to add any paragraph text, click the yellow button.

Click this button.

Now you're back at the second level. Type content for any second-level list items. When you want to return to the first-level list, click the **Outdent** button in the Home ribbon. Again, click the yellow arrow button.



You should now be back at the first level, where you can continue the list content.



Editing Custom List Formats

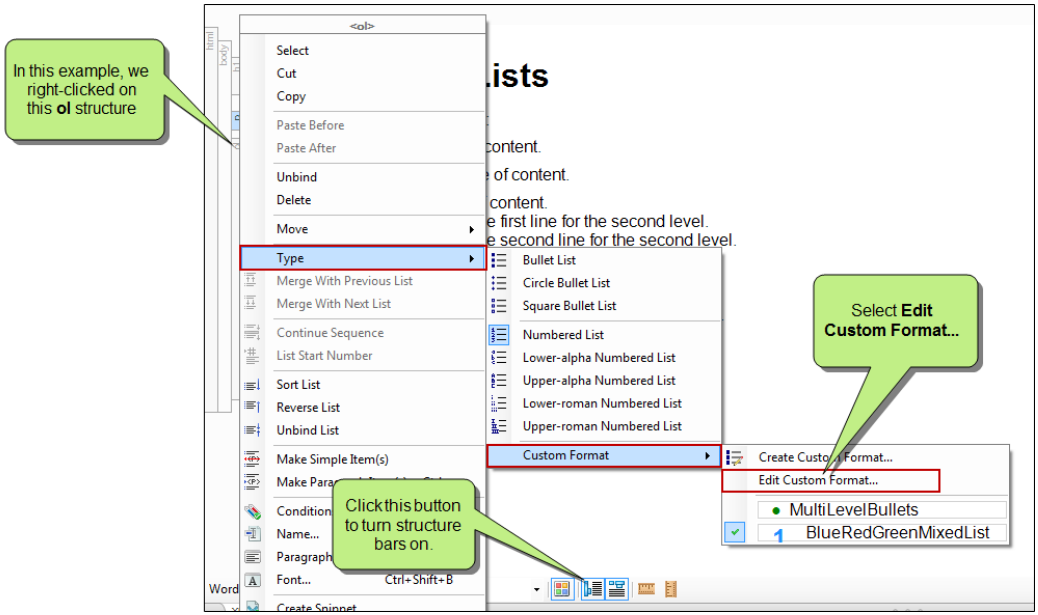
This feature is supported in Adobe PDF, Microsoft XPS, and XHTML output.

After you create custom list formats, you can edit them in a couple of ways:

- **Edit List Format Dialog** This is the easier option for users who are not as experienced with cascading stylesheets (CSS). It is essentially the same as the Create New List Format dialog, which is used when creating a custom list format. The only difference is that you are adjusting existing settings, rather than adding everything from scratch.
- **Styleshseet Editor** Because custom list formats are written to your stylesheet as complex selectors, you can edit these formats in the Advanced view of the Stylesheet Editor.

HOW TO USE THE EDIT LIST FORMAT DIALOG

1. Open the content file (e.g., topic, snippet) where you have added a list using the custom format.
2. Make sure the structure bars are turned on by clicking at the bottom of the XML Editor.
3. Right-click the outermost (i.e., first level) structure bar (**ol** or **ul**) for the list.
4. From the context menu, select **Type>Custom Format>Edit Custom Format**.



5. Use the Edit List Format make changes to the format.
   - **Name** Give your custom list format a name.
   - **Comment** You can add an internal comment, such as the purpose of the list format.
   - **Stylesheet** This displays the stylesheet associated with your primary target. Styles created as a result of your custom list format are added to this stylesheet.
   - **Level** Select the level of the list that you want to work on. When a level is selected, any settings you choose are applied only to that level.
   - **Content** This field becomes populated based on settings you choose using the buttons next to this field. It

is a good idea to begin by clicking the first button to the right (e.g.,) and selecting a list type or image first (see below). Then use the other options as necessary.

You can also type directly into this field.

Note: Any text typed directly in this field is supported only in PDF output. If you enter any text, the default list markers (e.g., bullets, numbers) are instead displayed in non-PDF outputs.

» The face of this button changes, depending on your most recent selection using it. The button might show bullets, as shown here, or it might show numbers, or even a small image. If you click the face of the button, the list type counter or image path populates the Content field (unless you select the bullet list type, in which case the Content field remains empty). If you click the down arrow, you can select any of the following:

	Description	What is Added to the Content Field?
	Uses a bullet list.	Nothing
	Uses a numbered list.	{n}.
	Inserts a lower-alpha numbered list.	{a}.
	Inserts an upper-alpha numbered list.	{A}.
	Inserts a lower-Roman numbered list.	{r}.
	Inserts an upper-Roman numbered list.	{R}.
	Lets you select a custom bullet image.	The path to the image file

» You can click this button to insert a special character or symbol.

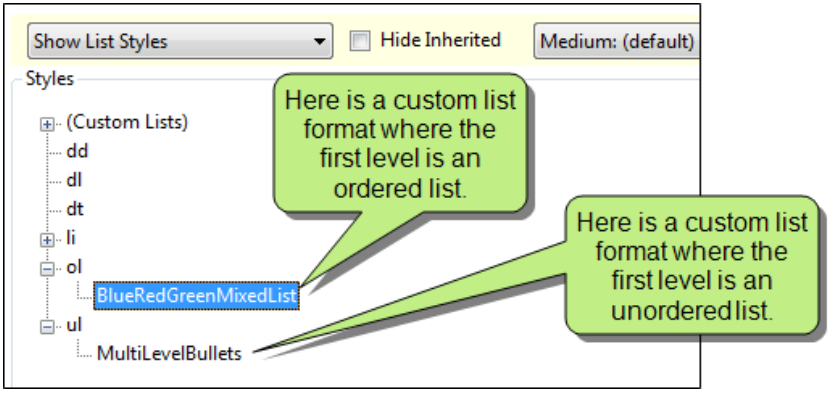
Note: Custom list characters are supported only in PDF output. If you add characters or symbols to the Content field, the default list markers (e.g., bullets, numbers) are instead displayed in non-PDF outputs. However, custom bullet images are supported in all output formats.

» You can click this button to open the Font Properties dialog. This lets you change the look of the list marker, such as the font size or type, color, and effects.

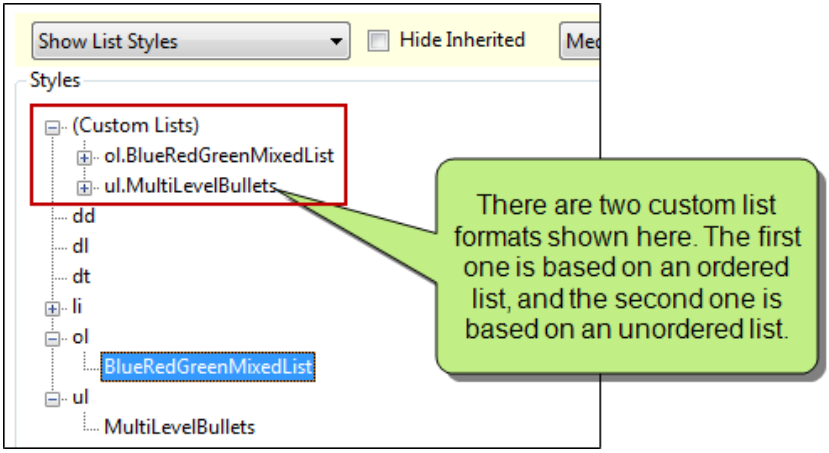
6. Click **OK**. The dialog closes and any lists associated in your project with that custom format are automatically changed.
7. Click to save your work.

HOW TO EDIT CUSTOM LIST FORMAT STYLES

When you view list styles in the Stylesheet Editor, you will see custom formats displayed as classes under the respective <ol> and <ul> parent styles, depending on whether the first level of that format is an ordered or unordered list. However, these classes are really limited to the list style type for each.

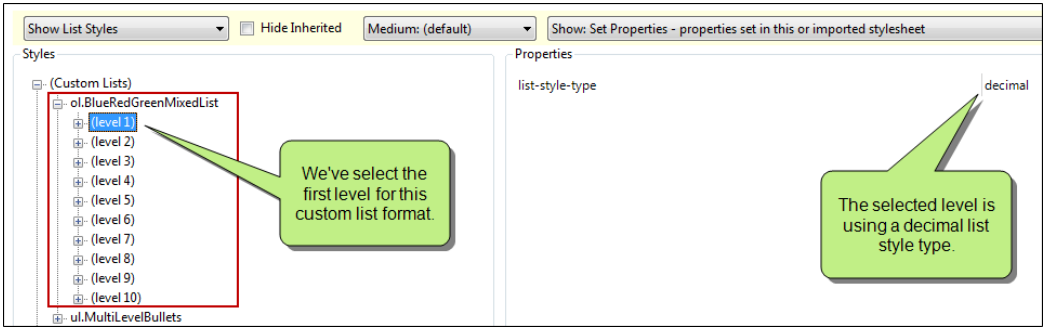


The real editing can take place in a special section called "(Custom Lists)," where all ordered and unordered custom list formats are grouped together.

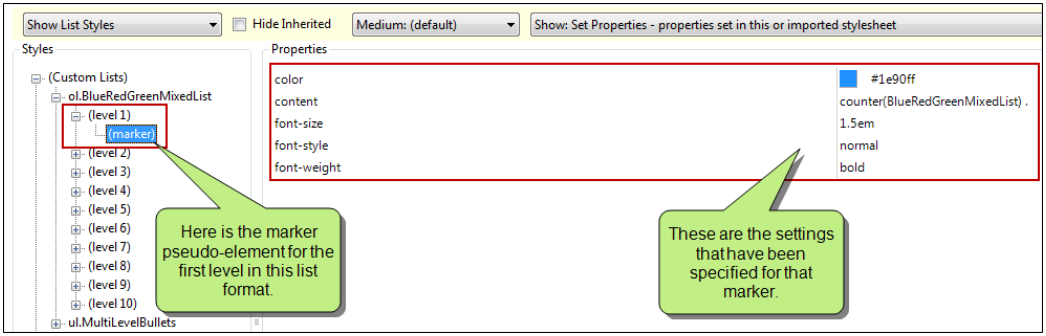


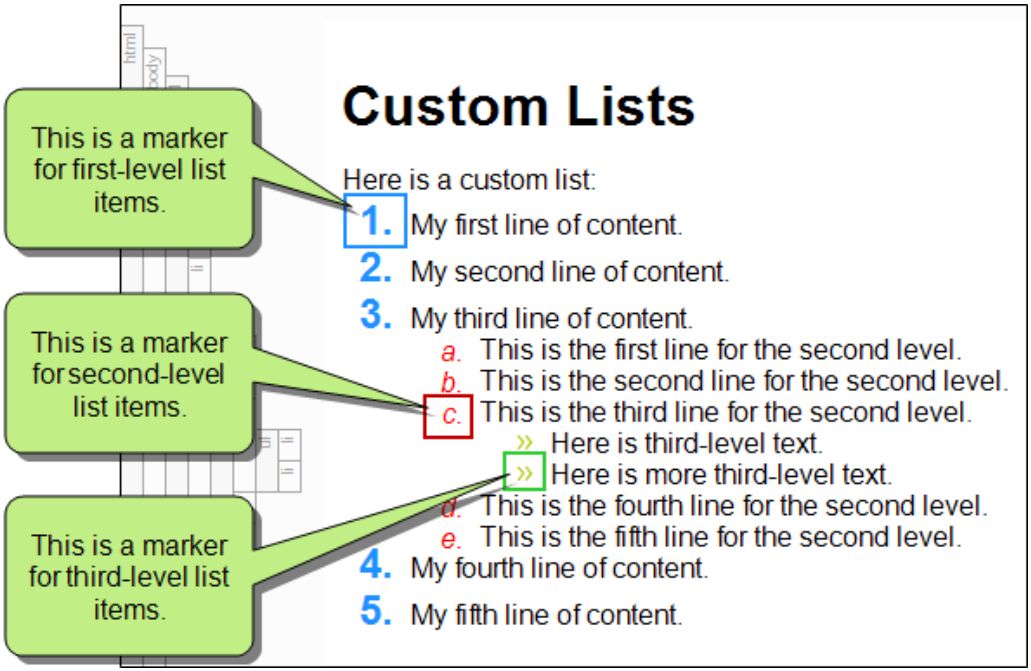
1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Make sure the appropriate medium is selected. If you are not using stylesheet mediums for your different outputs or if you want all mediums to have the same settings, just leave the medium set to "default" and continue.

   Mediums can be used if you want to use one group of settings for online output types (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus) and another group of settings for print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). For example, you might use the "default" medium for your online outputs and you might use the "print" medium for your print outputs.
3. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
4. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show List Styles.
5. Expand **(Custom Lists)**.
6. As you expand each custom list format, you will see nodes for each level that you have formatted. You can change the list style type (e.g., decimal, lower-alpha) or select a custom bullet image on these nodes.



And under each level is a pseudo-element called "(marker)." A marker is the combination of the content and formatting for that level. It is usually a number, letter of the alphabet, symbol, or character, sometimes with punctuation, such as a period. This node is where the bulk of the editing takes place on a custom list format.





7. Select the level or marker node that you want to edit.

8. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Assorted Relevant Properties. The most relevant properties for that style are shown on the right side of the editor.

9. Expand the property groups as necessary and change the values to the right. The way you change the values depends on the kind of property. For some properties, you simply click and type text in the field. For others, you click and select an option from the drop-down. And for others you might need to adjust settings in a small popup.

   The most common settings that you are likely to change include:

   - **color**
   - **content**
   - **font-size**
   - **font-style**
   - **font-weight**
   - **list-style-image**
   - **list-style-type**

   If you do not see the property listed that you want to change, click in the Show drop-down and choose another filter (e.g., Alphabetical List, Property Groups).

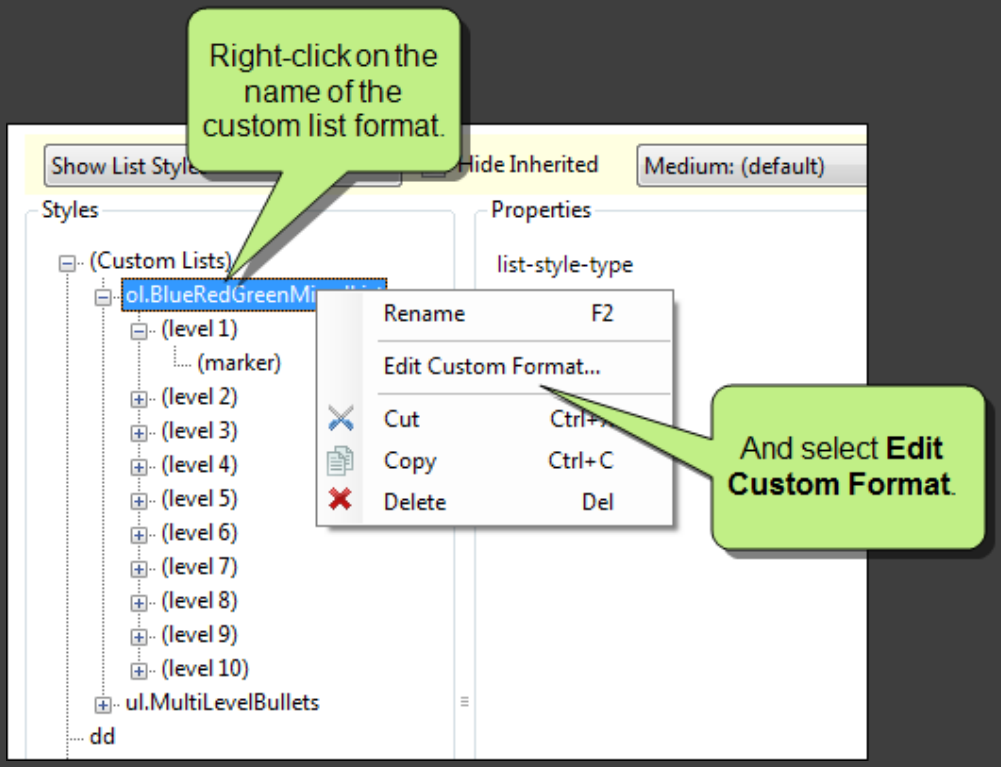
   For more information about common list properties, see "List Styles" on page 187.

   For more information about font style properties, see "Text" on page 417.

10. Click to save your work.

Note: For more information on the CSS specification for the marker pseudo-element, see **http://dev.w3.org/csswg/css-lists/#marker-pseudo-element**.

Note: By right-clicking on the name of a custom style and selecting **Edit Custom Format**, you can open the Edit List Format dialog and make your changes there instead.



HOW TO RESET THE STYLE CLASS

If you no longer want to use a custom list format and want to return to the default style settings for the list, you can reset the style class.

1. Click in the list.
2. Do one of the following, depending on the part of the user interface you are using:
   - **Home Ribbon** In the **Paragraph** section, click the down arrow on the list button. Then select **Custom Format>(reset class)**.
   - **Format Menu** Select **List>Custom Format>(reset class)**.
   - **Structure Bar** Make sure the structure bars are turned on. Right-click any of the list structure bars (**ol** or **ul**) representing levels of the list. From the context menu, select **Type>Custom Format>(reset class)**.

Warning: At this time, custom list formats are supported only in PDF, XHTML, and XPS outputs. After browsers begin to support the CSS3 marker element that makes custom list formats possible, this feature will automatically be supported in browser-based outputs as well. Until then, if you want to generate a browser-based output, you should use the standard method for creating lists instead.

Mini-TOCs

This feature is supported in all online (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, and WebHelp Plus) and print (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, and XHTML) outputs.

Using styles, you can affect the look and feel of generated mini-TOC in both online and print-based output.

Using Styles to Determine the Look of a Mini-TOC

For mini-TOCs, you can use styles to adjust properties such as font family and size, indentation, word spacing, spacing above/below, and TOC width. For mini-TOCs used in print output, you can also adjust the page number alignment and leader settings (e.g., the dots between the headings and the numbers).

A style called "MadCap|miniTocProxy" is used to control the look of the entire container. Other styles—such as p.MiniTOC1, p.MiniTOC2, and p.MiniTOC3—are used to control the look of individual entries in the mini-TOC. Style properties—such as margin-left, font-size, and mc-leader-indent, mc-leader-format—are used to affect the look in different ways. If you have different values set for the container than you do for an individual entry (e.g., different font families are specified), the value set for the individual entry takes precedence.

HOW TO USE STYLES TO DETERMINE THE LOOK OF A MINI-TOC (ENTIRE CONTAINER)

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Make sure the appropriate medium is selected. If you are not using stylesheet mediums for your different outputs or if you want all mediums to have the same settings, just leave the medium set to "default" and continue.

   Mediums can be used if you want to use one group of settings for online output types (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus) and another group of settings for print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). For example, you might use the "default" medium for your online outputs and you might use the "print" medium for your print outputs.
3. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

Note: Some of the necessary style properties can also be changed in the Simplified view in the Stylesheet Editor.

4. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
5. In the **Styles** section of the editor, scroll down and select the **MadCap|miniTOCProxy** style or a class that you have created under it (e.g., MadCap|miniTOCProxy.myclass).
6. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.

> **Note:** If you want to see properties that are of particular importance for a style, you can select **Show: Assorted Relevant Properties**.

7. In the **Properties** section to the right, expand a property group (e.g., Font, Block, Box) to see the actual properties within it.
8. Locate the specific property that you want to change. The property name is shown in the left column. Use the right column to select and enter values for the property. Depending on the type of property, you can either type the value, select it from a drop-down list, or complete the value entries in a popup box. Here are some of the more common properties that you might change:
   - **Background** To change the background of a mini-TOC, expand the **Background** property group and change any of the properties within it. If you select both a background image and color, the image takes precedence.
   - **Border above** To change or remove the border line that appears at the top of a mini-TOC in online output, expand the **Border** property group. Then click in the cell next to **border-top**, set the border width, unit of measurement, color, and/or style in the small drop-down window. Click **OK**. You can also use the other cells in this property group to add borders below, to the left, or to the right of the mini-TOC.
   - **Depth** To change the number of levels of topic links that are shown in the mini-TOC, expand the **Unclassified** property group. Then click in the right column next to **mc-toc-depth** and enter a number. The default setting is 3. Keep in mind that the depth can also be set directly on the proxy wherever it has been inserted. If you keep that proxy set with a depth of "default," the style setting will be used. But if you have a specific depth set on a particular proxy, that number will be used instead of the style setting. Also remember that online outputs treat the depth setting differently than print outputs.
   - **Font family** To change the font family (e.g., Arial, Verdana), expand the **Font** property group. Click in the right column next to **font-family**, set the font family in the Font Family Picker dialog, and click **OK**.
   - **Padding above** To change the amount of empty space (padding) above the text within the mini-TOC container, expand the **Box** property group. Then click in the right column next to **padding-top**, set the padding value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**. You can also use the other cells in this property group to add padding below, to the left, or to the right of the mini-TOC.
9. Click to save your work.

HOW TO USE STYLES TO DETERMINE THE LOOK OF A MINI-TOC (INDIVIDUAL ENTRIES)

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Generated Content Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section of the editor, expand the **p** style. Classes of the style are shown below it.
5. Find and select the mini-TOC class that you want to customize (e.g., **MiniTOC1**, **MiniTOC2**, **MiniTOC3**). MiniTOC1 is used for the first-level heading in the mini-TOC, MiniTOC2 is used for the second-level heading, and so on.

   Note: The levels always begin with the MiniTOC1 style. For example, if the mini-TOC proxy was placed in a topic under a heading using the <h2> style, the first level in the generated mini-TOC still uses the style MiniTOC1 (not MiniTOC3).

   Note: For mini-TOCs in print output, the page numbers in the generated list inherit their style settings from the list items before them. However, if you want the page numbers to look differently, you can modify the MadCap|xref.TOCPageNumber style.

6. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.

   Note: If you want to see properties that are of particular importance for a style, you can select **Show: Assorted Relevant Properties**.

7. In the **Properties** section to the right, expand a property group (e.g., Font, Block, Box, Unclassified) to see the actual properties within it.

> **Note:** Do not use the "PrintSupport" property for the MiniTOC1 through MiniTOC9 style classes.

8. Locate the specific property that you want to change. The property name is shown in the left column. Use the right column to select and enter values for the property. Depending on the type of property, you can either type the value, select it from a drop-down list, or complete the value entries in a popup box. Here are some of the more common properties that you might change (some are unique for print output, others are appropriate for both online and print output):

   - **Alignment of Page Number (Print Output)** To change the alignment (left, right, center) of the page number, expand the **Unclassified** property group. Then click in the right column next to **mc-leader-align** and select the type of alignment.
   - **Font Family** To change the font family (e.g., Arial, Verdana), expand the **Font** property group. Click in the right column next to **font-family**, set the font family in the Font Family Picker dialog, and click **OK**.
   - **Font Size** To change the font size (e.g., 10 pt, 11 pt), expand the **Font** property group. Then click in the right column next to **font-size**, set the font size in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**.
   - **Leader Format (Print Output)** To change the format of the area between the mini-TOC heading and the page number, expand the **Unclassified** property group. Then click in the right column next to **mc-leader-format** and type the character to use. For example, if you want a series of dots, type a period. If you do not want to use a leader format, leave this field blank.

     > **Note:** For Word output, you can enter one character only (period, hyphen, or underscore). For FrameMaker, you can specify a combination of characters and spaces, which repeat between the text and page number.

   - **Leader Space Before/After (Print Output)** Expand the **Unclassified** property group. To change the *distance from the end of the list entry to the start of the leader*, click in the right column next to **mc-leader-indent**, set the margin value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**. To change the *distance between the end of the leader and the page number*, click in the right column next to **mc-leader-offset**, set the margin value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**.
   - **Padding Above** To change the amount of empty space (padding) above the mini-TOC heading, expand the **Box** property group. Then click in the right column next to **padding-top**, set the padding value in the

small drop-down window, and click **OK**. You can also use the other cells in this property group to add padding below, to the left, or to the right.

» **Space in Front (Indentation)** To change the distance from the left page margin to the beginning of the mini-TOC heading, expand the **Box** property group. Then click in the right column next to **margin-left**, set the margin value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**. You can specify additional indentation for headings that wrap to more than one line. To do this, expand the **Unclassified** property group. Then click in the right column next to **mc-multiline-indent**, set the margin value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**.

9. Click to save your work.

Note: For print-based output, you need to make sure that the headings to be included in the mini-TOC have lower-level styles than the one where the proxy exists. For example, if you have the proxy inserted in a topic after an <h1> heading, the generated headings in the mini-TOC must have styles of <h2> or lower. You can set these heading styles manually in the necessary topics, or you can use an option called "Use TOC depth for heading levels" in the target to do this automatically. See "Tables of Contents" on page 402.

For more information on how mini-TOCs work in online versus print output, see the online Help.

Note: You can also use styles to suppress page numbers in a print mini-TOC. See "Suppressing Page Numbers in a Print Mini-TOC" on the next page.

Note: In previous versions of Flare, the code for styling mini-TOC proxy links was .MCMiniTOCLink. Starting in Flare V4, the style class used for this purpose is p.MiniTOC1.

Note: Different browsers may treat margin and padding settings differently. For example, Internet Explorer 8 and Firefox honor padding settings more than they honor margin settings. If you were to set a left margin at, say, 1 inch, Internet Explorer 7 would show it that way. However, in order to get the same results in Internet Explorer 8 or Firefox, you would also need to set the left padding at 1 inch.

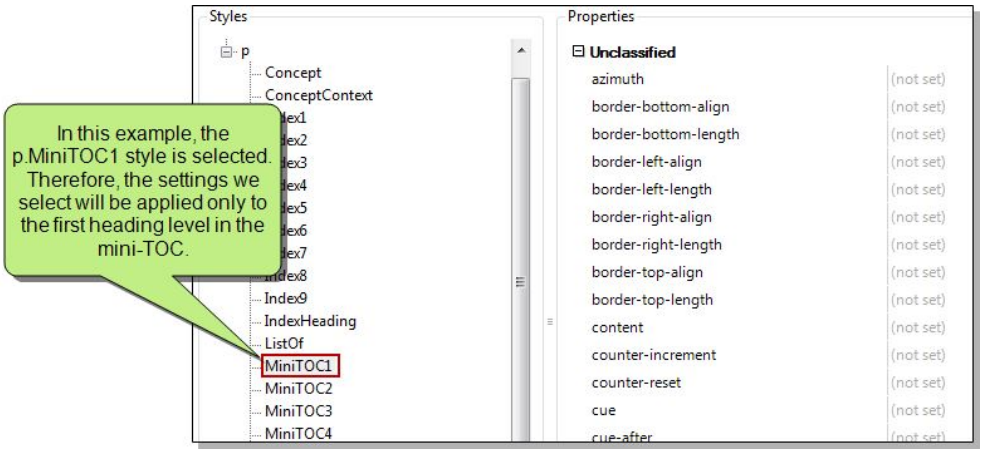
Suppressing Page Numbers in a Print Mini-TOC

This feature is supported in Adobe PDF, Microsoft XPS, and XHTML output.

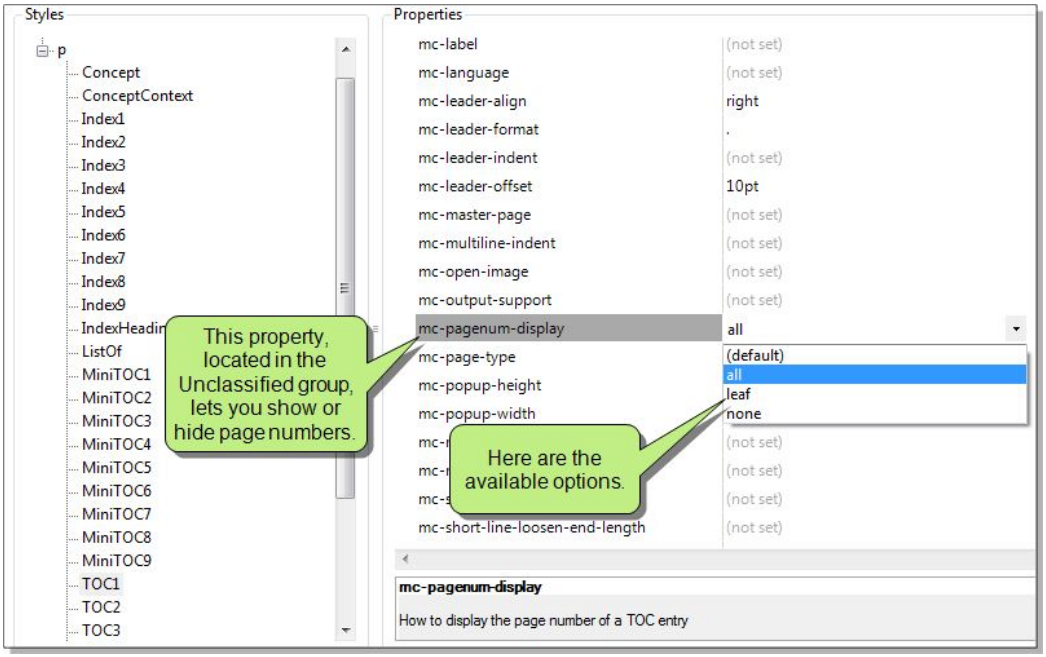
If you are generating one of Flare's native print-based output formats (PDF, XPS, or XHTML), you can suppress page numbers for specific levels in the table of contents (TOC) or mini-TOC. This can be done by modifying the TOC or mini-TOC style (e.g., p.TOC1, p.TOC2, p.MiniTOC1) and selecting an option in the mc-pagenum-display property.

HOW TO SUPPRESS PAGE NUMBERS IN A PRINT MINI-TOC

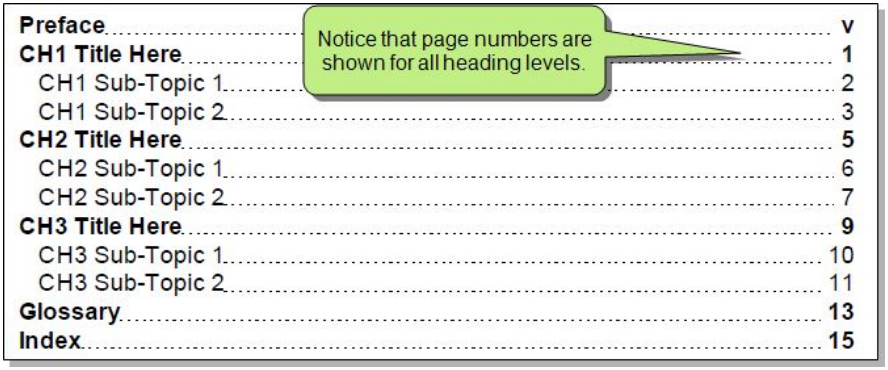
1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Generated Content Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section of the editor, expand the **p** style. Classes of the style are shown below it.
5. Find and select the mini-TOC class that you want to customize (e.g., **MiniTOC1**, **MiniTOC2**, **Mini-TOC3**). MiniTOC1 is used for the first-level heading in the print mini-TOC, MiniTOC2 is used for the second-level heading, and so on.



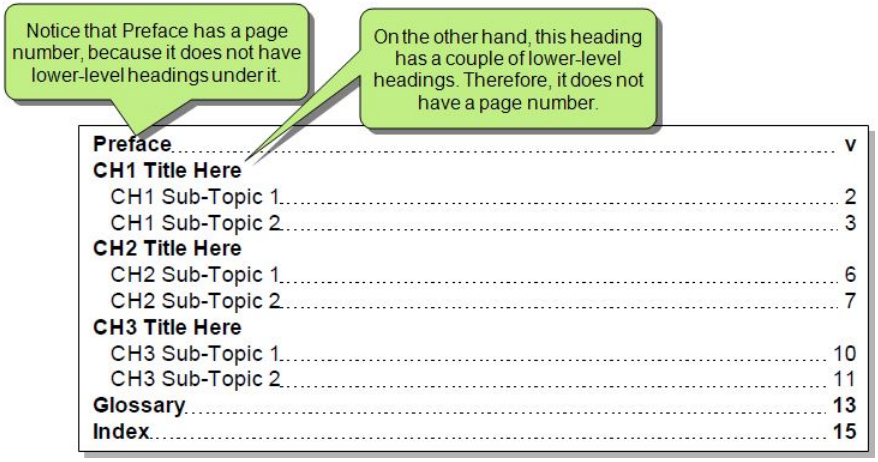
6. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
7. In the **Properties** section to the right, expand **Unclassified** to see the properties within it.
8. Click in the cell to the right of the **mc-pagenum-display** property and select one of the following.



» **(default)/all** This displays the page number, just as it has for previous versions of Flare.



» **leaf** This does not display the page number if lower-level entries exist. However, it does display the page number if no lower-level entries exist.



» **none** This does not display the page number for that heading level.

In this example, p.MiniTOC1 has been set to "none." Therefore, none of the first-level headings have page numbers.

Preface
CH1 Title Here
CH1 Sub-Topic 1 2
CH1 Sub-Topic 2 3
CH2 Title Here
CH2 Sub-Topic 1 6
CH2 Sub-Topic 2 7
CH3 Title Here
CH3 Sub-Topic 1 10
CH3 Sub-Topic 2 11
Glossary
Index

In this example, p.MiniTOC1 has been set to "all," but p.MiniTOC2 has been set to "none." Therefore, the first-level headings have page numbers, but the second-level headings do not.

Preface ..... **v**
CH1 Title Here **1**
CH1 Sub-Topic 1
CH1 Sub-Topic 2
CH2 Title Here **5**
CH2 Sub-Topic 1
CH2 Sub-Topic 2
CH3 Title Here **9**
CH3 Sub-Topic 1
CH3 Sub-Topic 2
Glossary **13**
Index **15**

9. Click to save your work.

Page Footers and Headers

This feature is supported in Adobe FrameMaker and Microsoft Word output.

When you add page footer and header proxies for Adobe FrameMaker and Microsoft Word output, you can specify which types of pages (all, even pages, first page, odd pages) should display the footers or headers. This can be done at the time you insert the proxy, but you can also use the following steps to set the page type on a style. Therefore, that page type will always be used as the default setting, unless you override it at the spot where you have inserted the proxy.

HOW TO USE STYLES TO DETERMINE THE PAGE TYPE FOR PAGE FOOTERS AND HEADERS

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Reusable Content Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section on the left side of the editor, find and select either the style called **MadCap|pageFooter** or **MadCap|pageHeader** (or a style class you have created within either style).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Set Properties. This displays only the properties that have been set for that particular style.
6. From the **Properties** section, expand the **Unclassified** property group.
7. Click the cell to the right of **mc-feader-type** and select one of these options:
   - **all** Displays the footer or header on all pages in the output.
   - **even** Displays the footer or header only on even pages in the output.
   - **first** Displays the footer or header only on the first page of each section.
   - **odd** Displays the footer or header only on the odd pages in the output.
8. Click to save your work.

Paragraph Formatting

You can affect the look and behavior of paragraphs in various ways. These settings can be applied locally or to the style used for the paragraph. Modifying the style is typically preferable to changing the settings locally for a single paragraph.

Following are some of the more common ways that you can format paragraphs.

- **Alignment** You can format a paragraph so that the text is aligned right, left, centered, or justified. See "Aligning Paragraphs" on page 251.
- **Autonumbering** You can apply an autonumber format to paragraphs so that certain content and/or incremented numbering displays with it. This is useful for numbering elements such as chapters, figures, or tables. See "Autonumbers" on page 68.
- **Background** You can set a background color and/or image on a paragraph. See "Setting the Background for Paragraphs" on page 252.
- **Borders** You can add borders around a paragraph. Borders can be added on any side of a paragraph (left, right, top, bottom), or all around it. See "Setting Borders for Paragraphs" on page 254.
- **Borders—Rounded** For most output formats, you can use CSS3 border-radius style properties to create rounded borders on block elements, such as paragraphs and blockquotes. See "Creating Rounded Borders on Paragraphs and Tables " on page 256.
- **Breaks** You can apply a page, column, or frame breaks to a paragraph or heading. For example, you might do this if you want the paragraph or heading to start at the beginning of the next page or column. You might apply a frame break if you want to make sure that only certain text, such as a heading, appears in a certain body frame in a page layout. These features are used for print-based output. See "Setting Page and Column Breaks" on page 294 and "Setting Frame Breaks on Paragraphs and Headings" on page 298.
- **Drop Caps/Initial Caps** You can create an effect on a paragraph so that the initial letter is different than the others and drops down to the lines below. See "Creating Drop Caps Effects" on page 275.
- **Hanging Punctuation** You can use styles to create hanging punctuation on block items such as paragraphs in Flare. Hanging punctuation lets you "hang" certain punctuation characters outside the block element, allowing the text to align. See "Creating Hanging Punctuation" on page 278.
- **Hyphenation** You can specify whether words at the end of a line in a paragraph should be hyphenated before continuing to the next line. You can also determine minimum word and character settings to be used for hyphenation. See "Setting Hyphenation" on page 284.
- **Indentation** You can indent paragraphs so that they start or end at a certain distance from the left or right side of the window or page frame. See "Indenting Paragraphs" on page 286.
- **Line Spacing** You can specify the amount of spacing between lines in a paragraph. See "Setting Line Spacing" on page 328.
- **Next Style** You can specify that a particular style should be used when you press Enter at the end of the current style. For example, after you type text for a heading and press Enter, you might want the next style to be something like p.TopicText, rather than the main <p> tag. See "Setting a "Next" Style" on page 292.

- **Positioning** You can adjust the positioning of a paragraph. For example, you can float it to the left of the page layout frame. You can do this by applying a position setting on the style used by the paragraph. See "Positioning Paragraphs" on page 313.
- **Short Line Elimination** You can use this feature to automatically adjust word spacing if the last line of a paragraph is only a certain number of characters long. Therefore, the spacing may be widened to make the last line longer, or the spacing may be narrowed to bring the words in the last line up to the previous line. See "Setting Short Line Elimination" on page 325.
- **Spacing Above/Below** You can set the amount of spacing above and below paragraphs. See "Setting Paragraph Spacing Above and Below" on page 331.
- **Widow and Orphan Control** You can use widow and orphan control to avoid instances where "leftover" lines from a paragraph are shown at the top or bottom of a page or column. This feature is used for print-based output. See "Setting Widow and Orphan Control" on page 334.

Aligning Paragraphs

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can format a paragraph so that the text is aligned right, left, centered, or justified.

HOW TO ALIGN A PARAGRAPH USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
4. Select the appropriate paragraph style. For example, you can select the parent **p** tag, or you can select a class that you may have created for that tag (e.g., p.Tip, p.Note).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Block** group.The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Click in the value column on the right side of the **text-align** property, and select one of the alignment options.
   - **center** Aligns the text on the center of the page or column.
   - **inherit** Uses the alignment setting of the parent tag.
   - **justify** Aligns the text so that it is flush with both the left and right side.
   - **left** Aligns the text on the left side of the page or column.
   - **right** Aligns the text on the right side of the page or column.
8. Click to save your work.

Setting the Background for Paragraphs

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can set a background color on a paragraph. You can also find and select an image to be used in the background of a paragraph.

HOW TO ADD A BACKGROUND TO A PARAGRAPH USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
4. Select the appropriate paragraph style. For example, you can select the parent **p** tag, or you can select a class that you may have created for that tag (e.g., p.Tip, p.Note).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Background** group.The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Locate the background property that you want to change, depending on what you are trying to accomplish.

   SET A COLOR FOR THE BACKGROUND

   - To the right of **background-color**, click the down arrow and select a color from the popup. For advanced color options, select **More Colors** and use the fields in the Color Picker dialog.

   ADD AN IMAGE TO THE BACKGROUND

   a. To the right of **background-image**, click and select an image already contained in your project.

   b. If you want the background image to repeat, click in the cell to the right of **background-repeat** and select one of the options (definitions from http://www.w3.org).

      - **no-repeat** The image is not repeated: only one copy of the image is drawn.
      - **repeat** The image is repeated both horizontally and vertically.

- **repeat-x** The image is repeated horizontally only.
- **repeat-y** The image is repeated vertically only.

8. Click to save your work.

Setting Borders for Paragraphs

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can add borders around a paragraph. Borders can be added on any side of a paragraph (left, right, top, bottom), or all around it.

HOW TO ADD A BORDER TO A PARAGRAPH USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
4. Select the appropriate paragraph style. For example, you can select the parent **p** tag, or you can select a class that you may have created for that tag (e.g., p.Tip, p.Note).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Border** group. The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Locate the border property that you want to change. Each side (bottom, left, right, top) has separate properties that you can set for the color, style, and width (e.g., border-bottom-style). You can set these properties individually, or you can set the main property for each side (e.g., border-bottom), which lets you specify the color, style, and width in one place. Even better, if you plan to have the same settings for all four sides, you can simply use the **border** property to set the color, style, and width all the way around. When you click in the cell to the right of one of the broad properties (e.g., border, border-bottom), a small popup displays.
   a. Use the lower-left area of the popup to enter a number for the border thickness.
   b. Use the lower-middle area to select a unit of measurement (e.g., point, pixel, centimeter) for the number you entered.
   c. Use the upper-right area to select a color for the border.

d. Use the lower-right area to select a line type (e.g., solid, double, dashed) for the border.

e. Click **OK**.

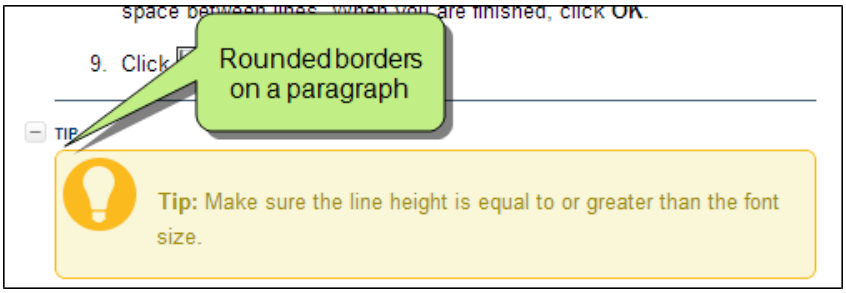
8. Click to save your work.

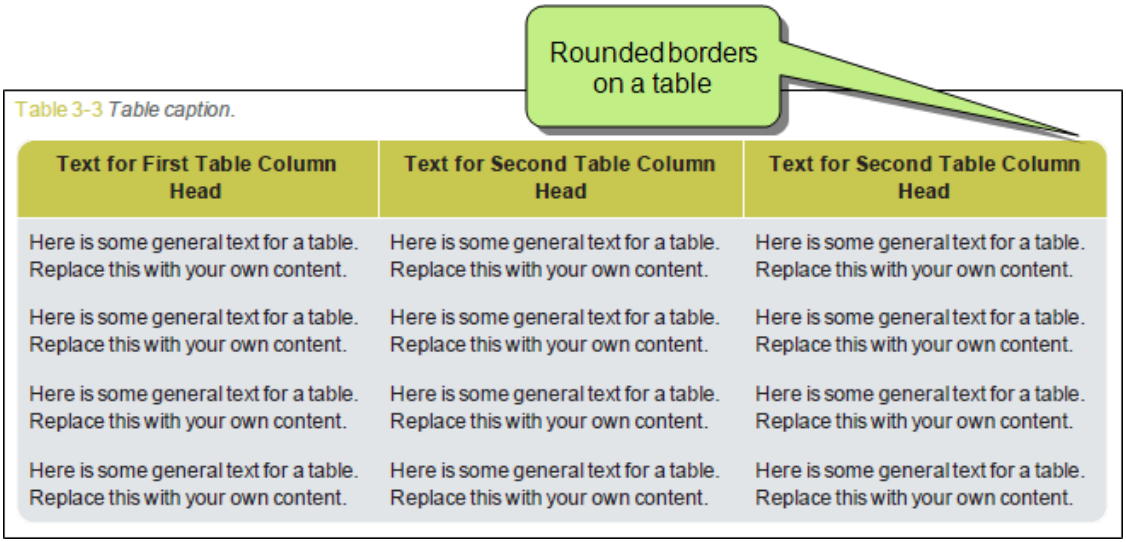
Note: You can also use create rounded borders on block elements, such as paragraphs and blockquotes. See "Creating Rounded Borders on Paragraphs and Tables" on the next page.

Creating Rounded Borders on Paragraphs and Tables

This feature is supported in all outputs, except Adobe FrameMaker, DITA, and Microsoft Word.

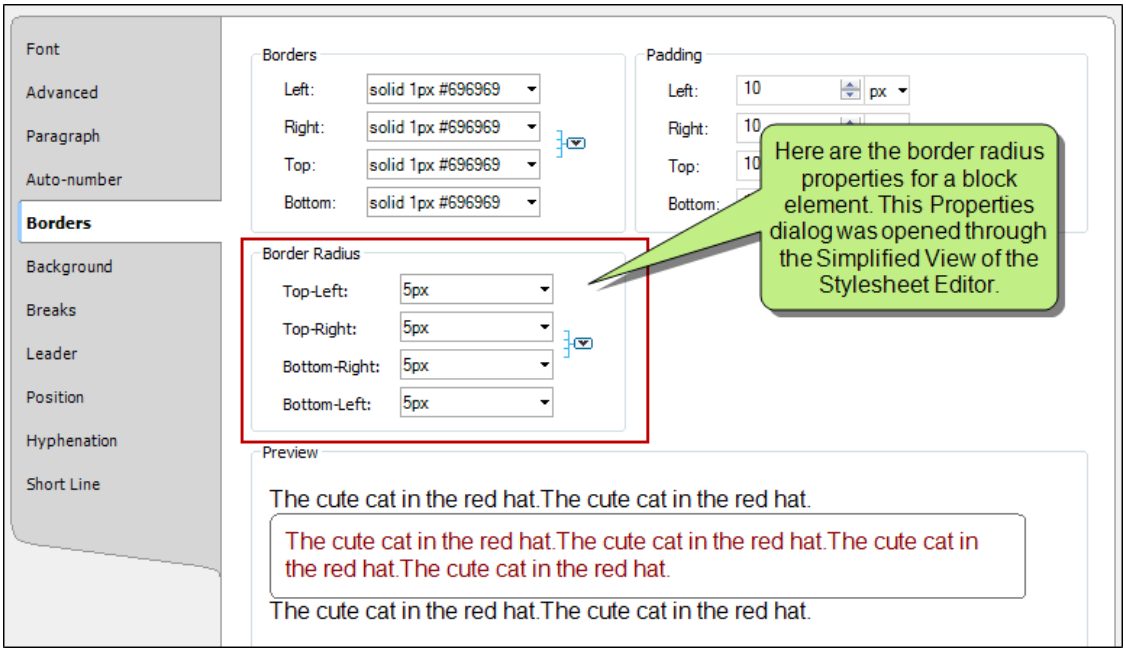
For most output formats, you can use CSS3 border-radius style properties to create rounded borders on block elements, such as paragraphs and blockquotes. You can also use set rounded borders on tables.

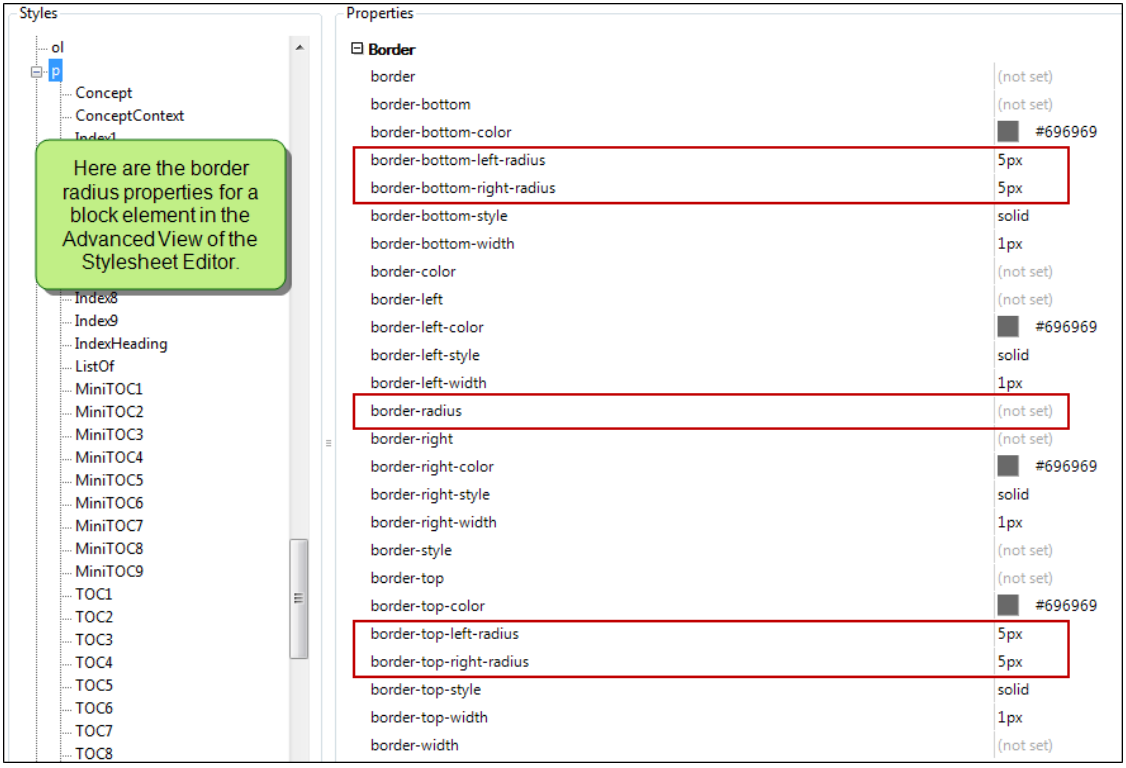




ROUNDED BORDERS AND BLOCK ELEMENTS

The properties for block elements are available in the Stylesheet Editor and in other areas of the user interface, such as the Paragraph Properties dialog.



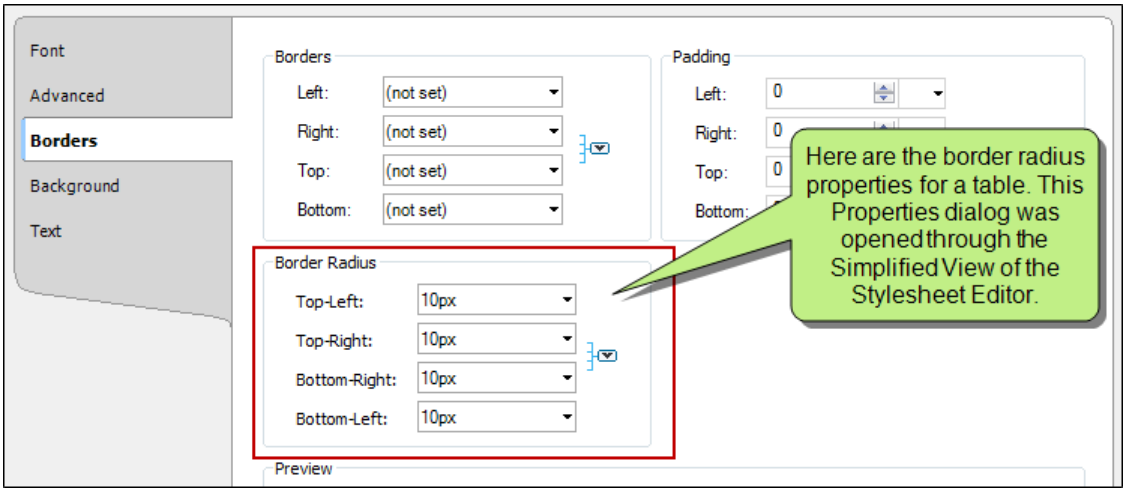

Styles
ol
p
Concept
ConceptContext
Index1
Here are the border radius properties for a block element in the Advanced View of the Stylesheet Editor.
Index8
Index9
IndexHeading
ListOf
MiniTOC1
MiniTOC2
MiniTOC3
MiniTOC4
MiniTOC5
MiniTOC6
MiniTOC7
MiniTOC8
MiniTOC9
TOC1
TOC2
TOC3
TOC4
TOC5
TOC6
TOC7
TOC8
Properties
Border
border (not set)
border-bottom (not set)
border-bottom-color #696969
border-bottom-left-radius 5px
border-bottom-right-radius 5px
border-bottom-style solid
border-bottom-width 1px
border-color (not set)
border-left (not set)
border-left-color #696969
border-left-style solid
border-left-width 1px
border-radius (not set)
border-right (not set)
border-right-color #696969
border-right-style solid
border-right-width 1px
border-style (not set)
border-top (not set)
border-top-color #696969
border-top-left-radius 5px
border-top-right-radius 5px
border-top-style solid
border-top-width 1px
border-width (not set)

ROUNDED BORDERS AND TABLES

For tables, you can set rounded borders in either a regular stylesheet or in a special table stylesheet. You can also set them locally in the Table Properties dialog.

REGULAR STYLESHEET

By setting rounded borders on the <table> style in a regular stylesheet, all of your tables will have the rounded borders.



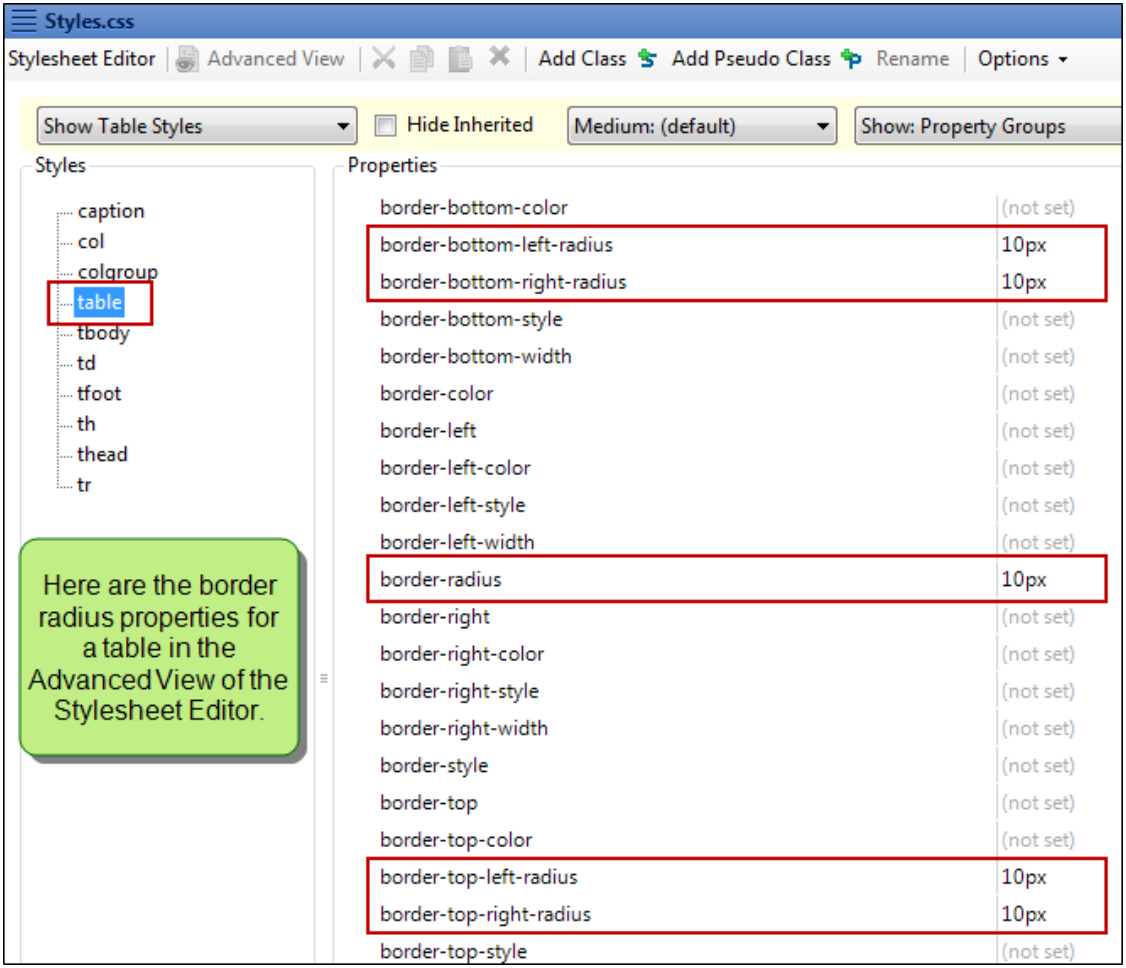
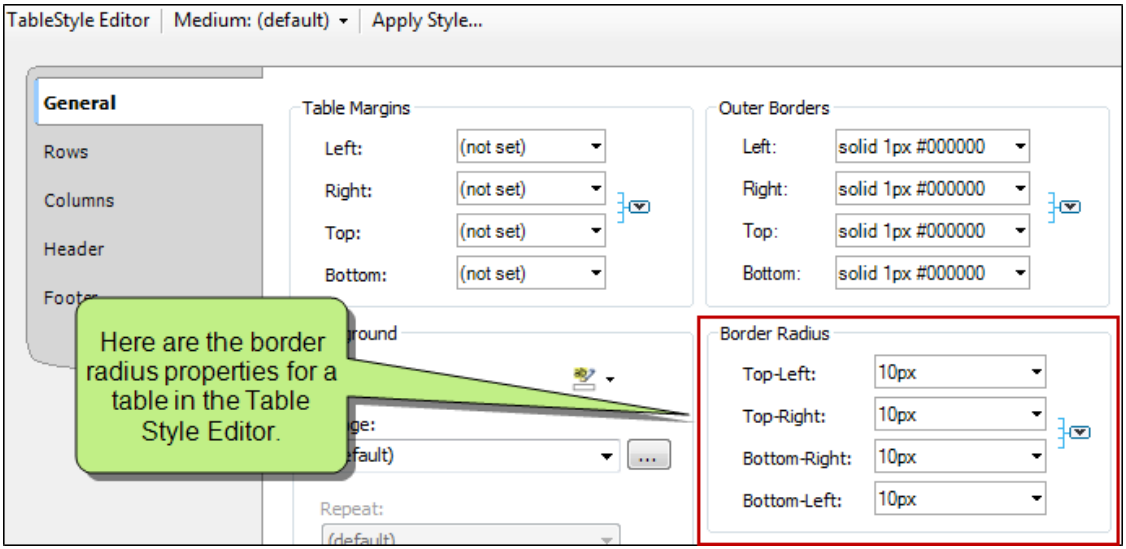

Styles.css
Stylesheet Editor
Advanced View
Add Class
Add Pseudo Class
Rename
Options
Show Table Styles
Hide Inherited
Medium: (default)
Show: Property Groups
Styles
caption
col
colgroup
table
tbody
td
tfoot
th
thead
tr
Properties
border-bottom-color (not set)
border-bottom-left-radius 10px
border-bottom-right-radius 10px
border-bottom-style (not set)
border-bottom-width (not set)
border-color (not set)
border-left (not set)
border-left-color (not set)
border-left-style (not set)
border-left-width (not set)
border-radius 10px
border-right (not set)
border-right-color (not set)
border-right-style (not set)
border-right-width (not set)
border-style (not set)
border-top (not set)
border-top-color (not set)
border-top-left-radius 10px
border-top-right-radius 10px
border-top-style (not set)
Here are the border radius properties for a table in the Advanced View of the Stylesheet Editor.

TABLE STYLESHEET

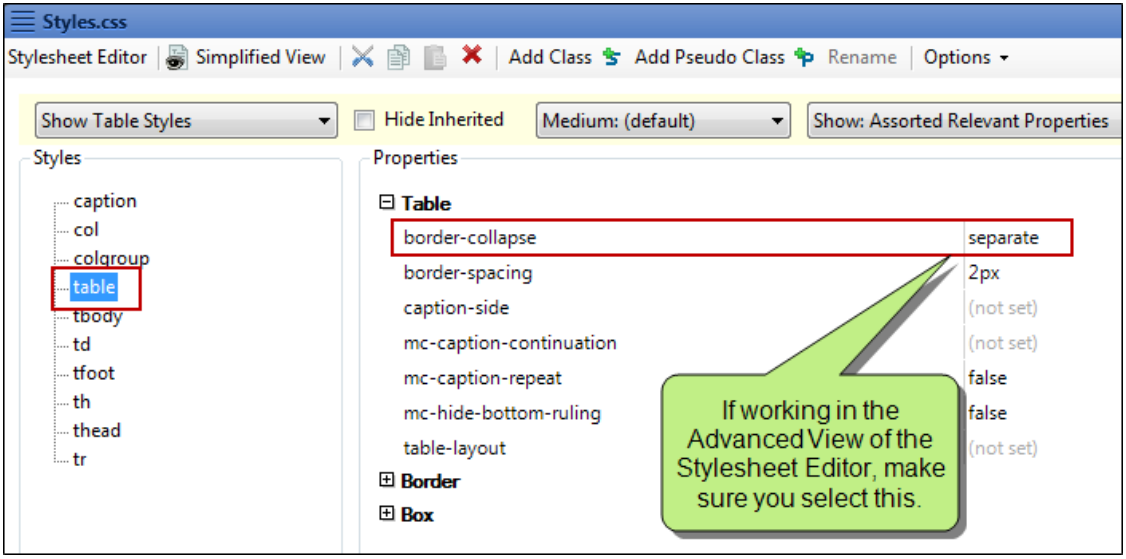
If you set rounded borders in a special table stylesheet, using the Table Style Editor, only the tables using that stylesheet will have rounded borders.

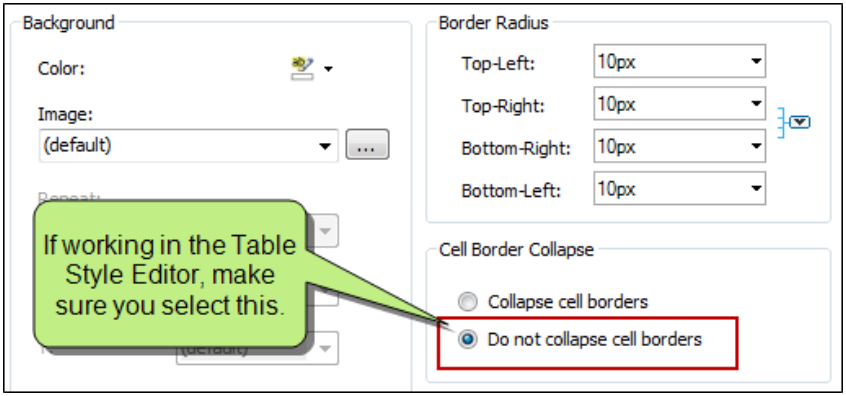


ADDITIONAL REQUIRED SETTINGS FOR ROUNDED BORDERS ON TABLES

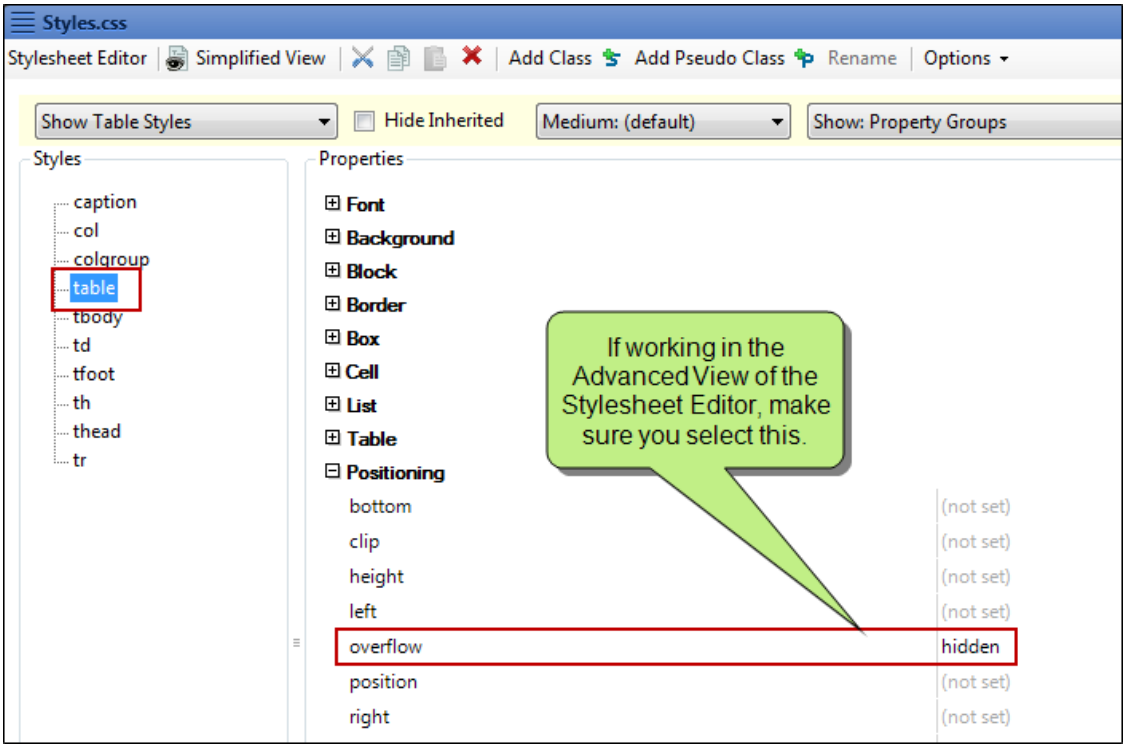
When setting rounded borders on tables, it is essential that you also set two other style properties.

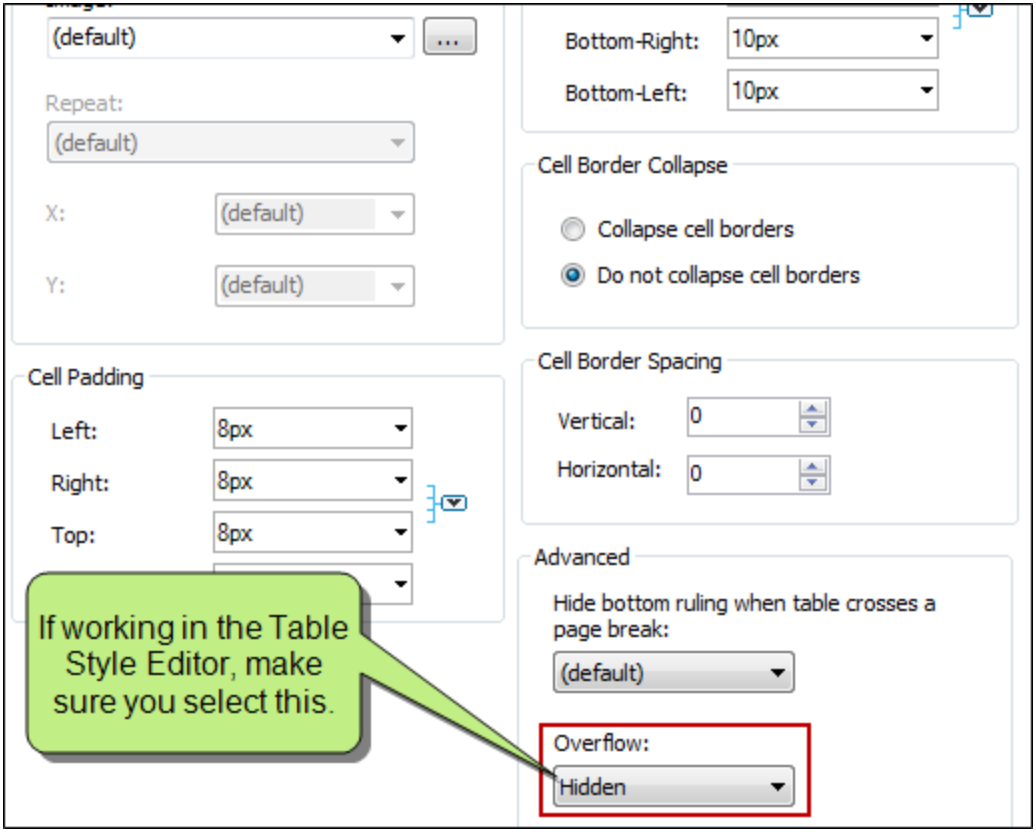
First, you must set the border-collapse property to "separate" (in a regular stylesheet) or "Do not collapse cell borders" (in a table stylesheet or the Table Properties dialog).





Second, you must set the overflow property to "hidden." This property prevents a background color in the table from obstructing the rounded corners, thus making the table look as if it still has square corners.




(default)
Repeat:
(default)
X:
(default)
Y:
(default)
Cell Padding
Left:
8px
Right:
8px
Top:
8px
Bottom-Right:
10px
Bottom-Left:
10px
Cell Border Collapse
Collapse cell borders
Do not collapse cell borders
Cell Border Spacing
Vertical:
0
Horizontal:
0
Advanced
Hide bottom ruling when table crosses a page break:
(default)
Overflow:
Hidden
If working in the Table Style Editor, make sure you select this.

However, Internet Explorer does not respect the overflow setting in tables. So the only way to ensure your tables appear to have rounded borders in Internet Explorer is to not have a background color in the cells at the four corners of the table.

EXAMPLE

Let's say you have set up a table stylesheet to use rounded corners. If you view the output on a Chrome browser, it looks like this:

Heading Text 1	Heading Text 2
Table content	Table content
Table content	Table content
Table content	Table content

As you can see, the rounded borders are shown.

But then you view the same table in Internet Explorer. It looks like this:

Heading Text 1	Heading Text 2
Table content	Table content
Table content	Table content
Table content	Table content

Notice that the rounded corners are obstructed by the background color.

To solve this issue, you remove the background colors from the table. After you do that, the table looks like this in Internet Explorer, as well as in other browsers:

Heading Text 1	Heading Text 2
Table content	Table content
Table content	Table content
Table content	Table content

If you do not want to lose your background color, you might consider creating your tables without an outer border. That way, the rounded borders will still be shown in most browsers and in PDF output, and in Internet Explorer the tables will simply appear with square corners.

EXAMPLE

Let's say you have a table with a colored background, but without outer borders. With rounded corners it looks like this in most newer browsers:

Heading Text 1	Heading Text 2
Table content	Table content
Table content	Table content
Table content	Table content

And in Internet Explorer it looks like this:

Heading Text 1	Heading Text 2
Table content	Table content
Table content	Table content
Table content	Table content

.

HOW TO USE A STYLE TO SET ROUNDED BORDERS ON BLOCK ELEMENTS

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
4. Select the appropriate paragraph style. For example, you can select the parent **p** tag, or you can select a class that you may have created for that tag (e.g., p.Tip, p.Note).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Border** group. The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Locate the border-radius property that you want to change. Each corner (bottom-left, bottom-right, top-left, top-right) can be set separately (e.g., border-bottom-left-radius, border-top-right-radius). Even better, you can set the main **border-radius** property, which lets you specify the amount of curve for all four corners in one place.

   When you click in the cell to the right of one of the properties, a small popup displays.

   This popup has two halves. you can complete only the left side of the popup if you like. This will create a curve that is equal horizontally and vertically. If you want a border to have more of a curve either horizontally or vertically, you can complete the fields in the right half of the popup as well, so that you have two values (e.g., 10px 15px) instead of one. For more information on using two sets of border-radius properties, see **www.c-ss3.info/preview/rounded-border/**.

   i. Use the lower-left area of the popup to enter a number for the amount of curve. The greater the number, the more curve that is applied.
   ii. Use the area to the right of the number field to select a unit of measurement (e.g., point, pixel, centimeter).
   iii. If you want to provide a second value for the rounded border, complete the same fields on the right half of the popup.
   iv. Click **OK**.
8. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Table** group.
9. Click in the cell to the right of the **border-collapse** property and select **separate**.
10. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Positioning** group.

11. Click in the cell to the right of the **overflow** property and select **hidden**.
12. Click to save your work.

HOW TO USE A TABLE STYLESHEET TO SET ROUNDED BORDERS ON TABLES

1. Open the table stylesheet that you want to edit. This can be found in the **Resources/TableStyles** subfolder in the Content Explorer, but you can store table stylesheets in other folders in the Content Explorer if you like.
2. In the Table Style Editor, select the **General** tab.
3. In the **Cell Border Collapse** area, select **Do not collapse cell borders**.
4. Set the options in the **Border Radius** section.
   a. Click in any of the individual fields (**Top-Left**, **Top-Right**, **Bottom-Right**, **Bottom-Left**) to specify the settings for a particular corner of the table. If you click the down arrow to the right of all the fields, the settings will be applied to all of the fields.

      When you click that down arrow or in one of the individual fields, a small popup displays.

      This popup has two halves. you can complete only the left side of the popup if you like. This will create a curve that is equal horizontally and vertically. If you want a border to have more of a curve either horizontally or vertically, you can complete the fields in the right half of the popup as well, so that you have two values (e.g., 10px 15px) instead of one. For more information on using two sets of border-radius properties, see **www.css3.info/preview/rounded-border/**.

   b. Use the lower-left area of the popup to enter a number for the amount of curve. The greater the number, the more curve that is applied.
   c. Use the area to the right of the number field to select a unit of measurement (e.g., point, pixel, centimeter).
   d. If you want to provide a second value for the rounded border, complete the same fields on the right half of the popup.
   e. Click **OK**.
5. Scroll down to the bottom of the tab, and in the **Advanced** area, click in the **Overflow** drop-down and select **Hidden**.
6. Click to save your work.

HOW TO USE A REGULAR STYLESHEET TO SET ROUNDED BORDERS ON TABLES

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.

2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Table Styles.
4. In the grid below, select **table**.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Border** group. The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Locate the border-radius property that you want to change. Each corner (bottom-left, bottom-right, top-left, top-right) can be set separately (e.g., border-bottom-left-radius, border-top-right-radius). Even better, you can set the main **border-radius** property, which lets you specify the amount of curve for all four corners in one place.

   When you click in the cell to the right of one of the properties, a small popup displays.

   This popup has two halves. you can complete only the left side of the popup if you like. This will create a curve that is equal horizontally and vertically. If you want a border to have more of a curve either horizontally or vertically, you can complete the fields in the right half of the popup as well, so that you have two values (e.g., 10px 15px) instead of one. For more information on using two sets of border-radius properties, see **www.c-ss3.info/preview/rounded-border/**.

   i. Use the lower-left area of the popup to enter a number for the amount of curve. The greater the number, the more curve that is applied.
   ii. Use the area to the right of the number field to select a unit of measurement (e.g., point, pixel, centimeter).
   iii. If you want to provide a second value for the rounded border, complete the same fields on the right half of the popup.
   iv. Click **OK**.

8. Click to save your work.

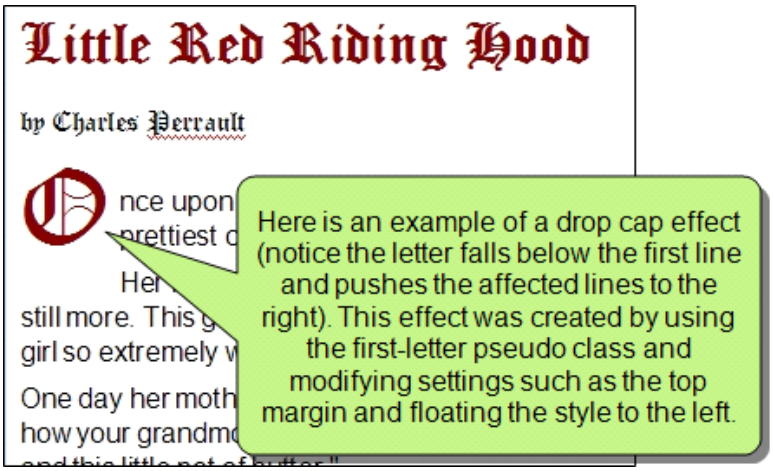
Note: Some older browsers may not support rounded borders, so even if you create the rounded borders for your content, they may display as rounded in some browsers but square in others.

Note: Different browsers display different results if you have all of the following set on a table: a caption, rounded borders, and a color in the background of the first row. That's because some browsers consider the caption part of the table and others do not. One possible workaround is to set the border-top-left-radius and border-top-right-radius on the top-left and top-right cells.

Creating Drop Caps Effects

This feature is supported in all outputs.

If you want to create a drop caps effect in a paragraph, causing the initial letter to look different and drop below the first line, you can use Flare's first-letter pseudo class.

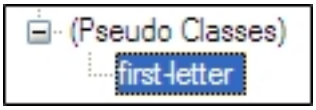


HOW TO CREATE A DROP CAPS EFFECT

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Make sure the appropriate medium is selected. If you are not using stylesheet mediums for your different outputs or if you want all mediums to have the same settings, just leave the medium set to "default" and continue.

   Mediums can be used if you want to use one group of settings for online output types (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus) and another group of settings for print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). For example, you might use the "default" medium for your online outputs and you might use the "print" medium for your print outputs.
3. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

4. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
5. Select the paragraph style for which you want to create the drop caps effect.
6. In the local toolbar, click Add Pseudo Class. The New Pseudo Class dialog opens.
7. Select **First Letter**.
8. Click **OK**. The new class is added under a "(Pseudo Classes)" heading and is automatically selected.



9. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
10. Modify the necessary properties to give the first letter a different look than the rest of the paragraph. Following are some of the more common changes for an effect such as this.

FONT COLOR

a. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Font** group.
b. To the right of **color**, click the down arrow and select a color from the popup. For advanced color options, select **More Colors** and use the fields in the Color Picker dialog.

FONT FAMILY

a. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Font** group.
b. Click to the right of **font-family**. The Font Family Picker dialog opens. Use this dialog to select a font family.

FONT SIZE

a. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Font** group.
b. To the right of **font-size**, click the down arrow and set the font size in the popup. When you are finished, click **OK**.

FONT WEIGHT

a. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Font** group.
b. To the right of **font-weight**, click the down arrow and select a weight (e.g., bold).

SPACE AFTER

a. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Block** group.

b. To the right of **letter-spacing**, click the down arrow and select the amount of space after the initial letter, before the rest of the paragraph text. When you are finished, click **OK**.

11. Modify the necessary properties to produce the effect of the initial letter dropping below the first line. Usually this involves floating the letter to the left and adjusting the margins above and/or below it, as well as to the right.

FLOAT

a. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Box** group.

b. Click to the right of **float**, and select **left**.

MARGINS ABOVE/BELOW/RIGHT

a. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Box** group.

b. To the right of **margin-bottom, margin-right**, and/or **margin-top**, click the down arrow and select the amount of space around the initial letter. You can even enter negative numbers if necessary. When you are finished, click **OK**.

12. Click to save your work.

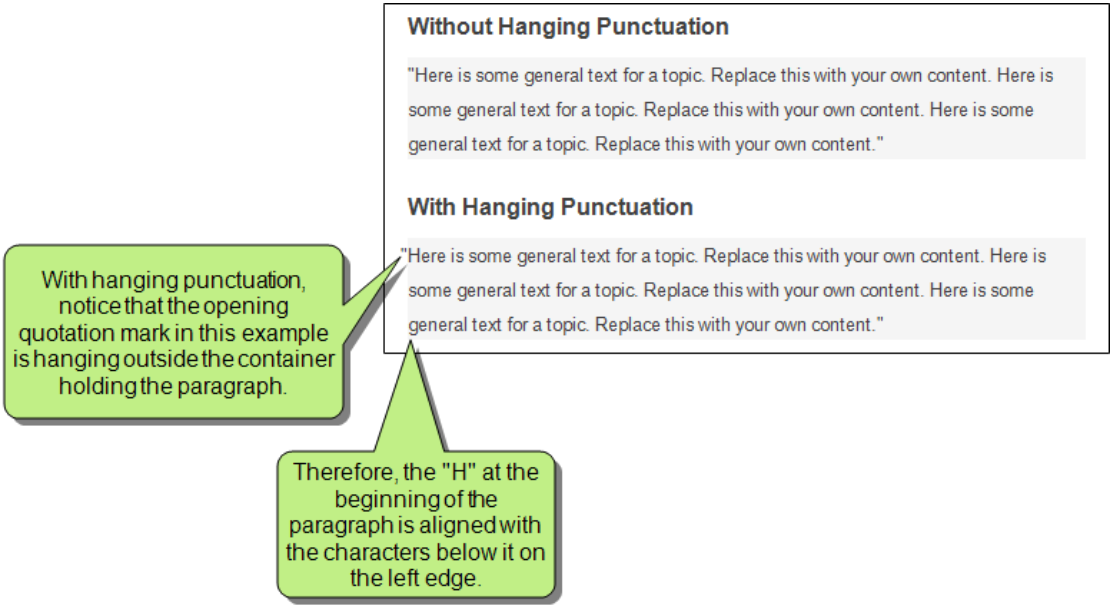
Note: In order to use this feature, you must ensure that the first letter of the paragraph is not preceded by any other content (such as an image).

Note: You can also use the first-child pseudo class, which lets you apply style settings to the first child of another element (e.g., the first <p> tag that occurs within a tag).

Creating Hanging Punctuation

This feature is supported in Adobe PDF, Microsoft XPS, and XHTML output.

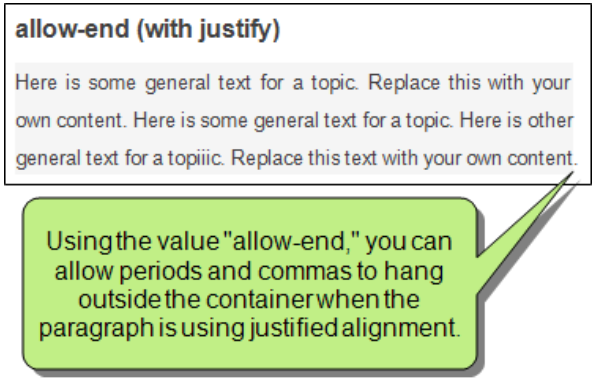
You can use styles to create hanging punctuation on block items such as paragraphs in Flare. Hanging punctuation lets you "hang" certain punctuation characters outside the block element, allowing the text to align.



HOW TO CREATE HANGING PUNCTUATION USING A STYLE

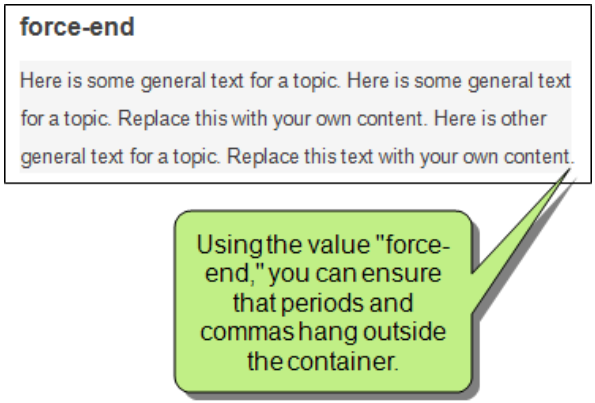
1. Open the stylesheet that you want to modify.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
4. Select the style you want to edit.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Block** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Click the down arrow in the cell to the right of **hanging-punctuation** and select one of the following:
   - **allow-end** A stop (e.g., period) or comma at the end of a line hangs if it does not otherwise fit prior to justification. This value works in conjunction with text that is justified.



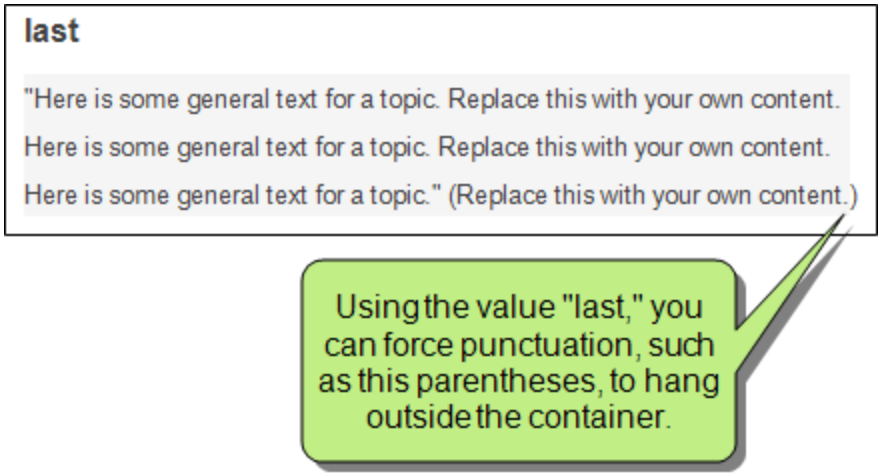
» **first** An opening bracket or quote at the start of the first formatted line of an element hangs. This applies to all characters in the Unicode categories Ps, Pf, Pi (e.g., brackets, parentheses, and quotation marks).

» **force-end** A stop (e.g., period) or comma at the end of a line hangs.



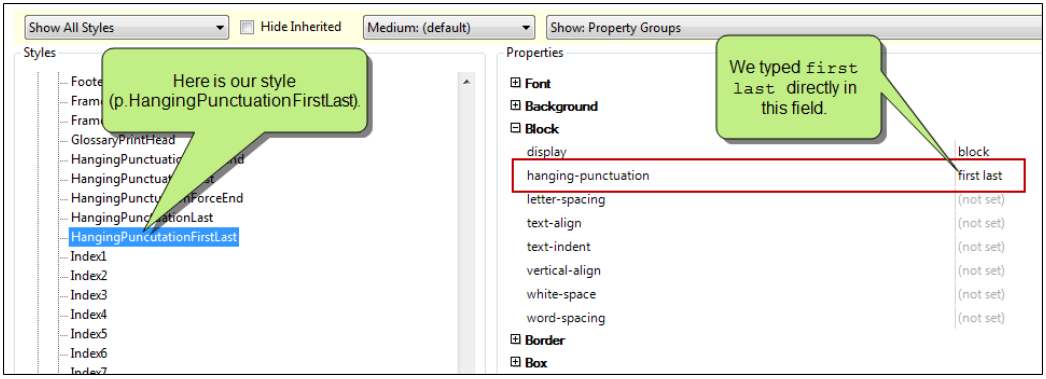
» **inherit** The parent element's property is inherited.

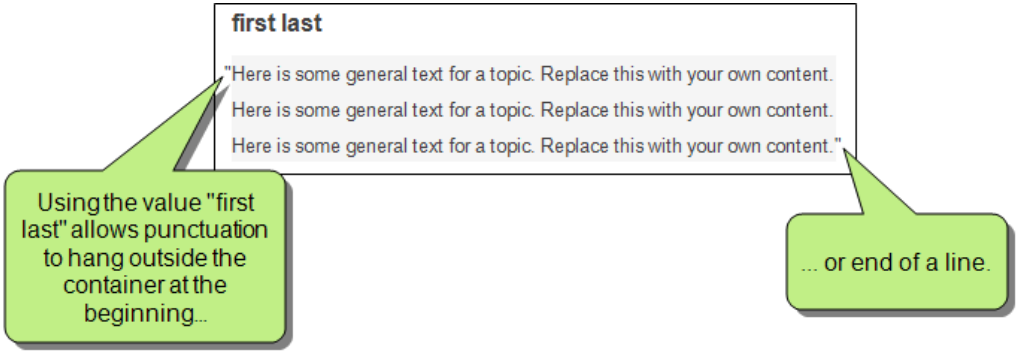
» **last** A closing bracket or quote at the end of the last formatted line of an element hangs. This applies to all characters in the Unicode categories Pe, Pf, Pi (e.g., brackets, parentheses, and quotation marks).



» **none** No character hangs.

It is significant to note that the "first" and "last" property values apply to one specific set of punctuation symbols, while "force-end" and "allow-end" apply to a separate set. Therefore, combinations of these properties are also allowed. Valid combinations would be: "first last," "first force-end," "first allow-end," "first force-end last," "first allow-end last," "force-end last," and "allow-end last." These combinations are not available from the drop-down list in the Stylesheet Editor, but you can type the value directly into the field.





8. Click to save your work.

Note: For more information about the hanging punctuation CSS property, see http://www.w3.org/TR/css3-text/#hanging-punctuation.

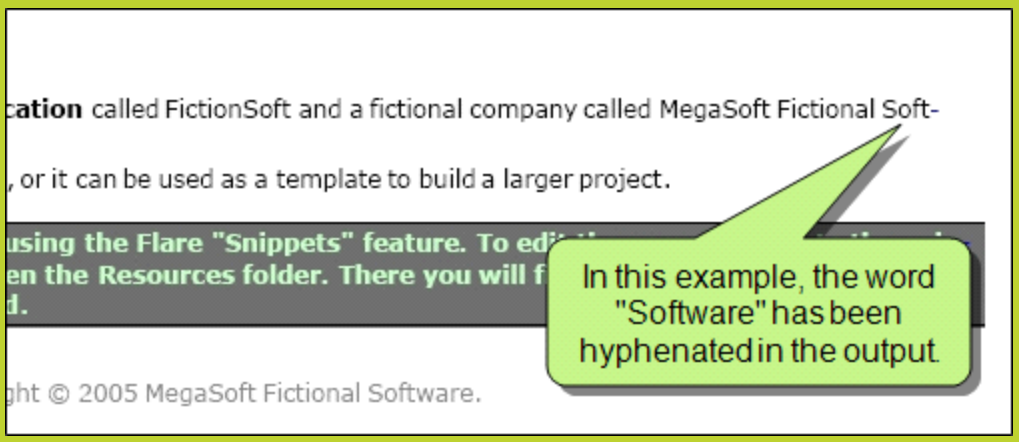
Note: The hanging punctuation property is available only in the Advanced View of the Stylesheet Editor.

Setting Hyphenation

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can specify whether words at the end of a line in a paragraph should be hyphenated before continuing to the next line. You can also determine minimum word and character settings to be used for hyphenation.

E X A M P L E



HOW TO SET HYPHENATION USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
4. Select the appropriate paragraph style. For example, you can select the parent **p** tag, or you can select a class that you may have created for that tag (e.g., p.Tip, p.Note).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Unclassified** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Click in the value column on the right side of the appropriate property to specify the hyphenation settings.
   - **mc-hyphenate** Select whether you always or never want words to be hyphenated at the end of lines.
   - **mc-hyphenate-maximum-adjacent-line-count** Enter the maximum number of lines next to each other that are allowed to end with a hyphenated word. For example, if you do not mind seeing three consecutive lines ending in a hyphenated word, but you want to avoid seeing a fourth adjacent line with a hyphenated word, you can enter 3 in this field.
   - **mc-hyphenate-shortest-prefix** Enter the minimum number of characters that must remain on the initial line when a word is hyphenated. For example, if you enter 4 in this field, a word that normally could be hyphenated after two characters would not be broken at that point. Instead, it would not be broken until at least four letters make an appearance on the first line.
   - **mc-hyphenate-shortest-suffix** Enter the minimum number of characters that must be carried over to the second line when a word is hyphenated. For example, if you enter 3 in this field, a hyphenated word must have at least three characters on the second line after it has been broken.
   - **mc-hyphenate-shortest-word** Enter the minimum number of characters that a word must have in order to be hyphenated.
8. Click to save your work.

Indenting Paragraphs

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can indent paragraphs so that they start or end at a certain distance from the left or right side of the window or page frame.

HOW TO INDENT A PARAGRAPH USING A STYLE

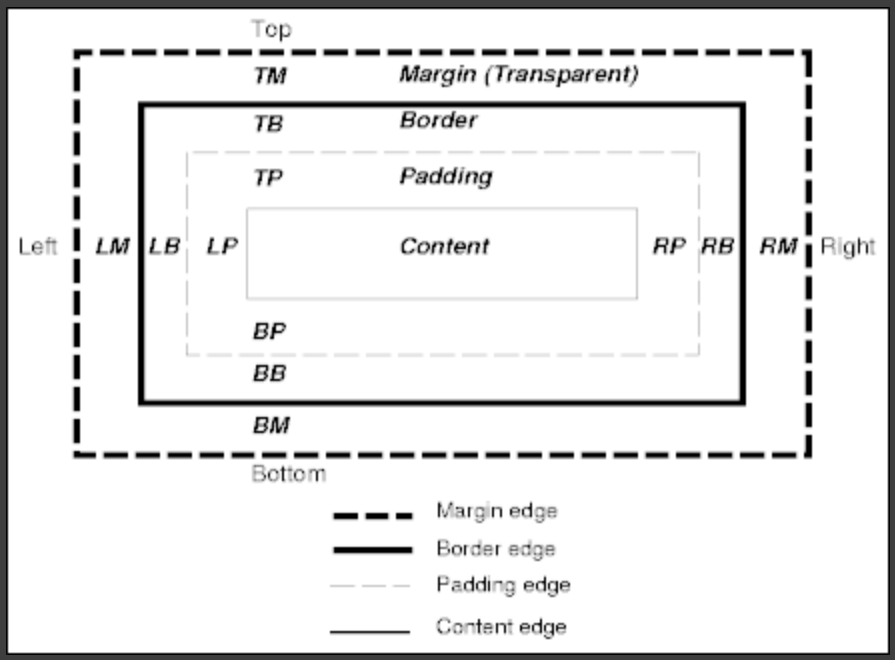
1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
4. Select the appropriate paragraph style. For example, you can select the parent **p** tag, or you can select a class that you may have created for that tag (e.g., p.Tip, p.Note).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Box** group. The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

7. To the right of **margin-left** or **padding-left**, click the down arrow and select the distance that the paragraph will be indented. Click **OK**.

Note: Both margins and padding can affect the space around elements. The margin controls the amount of space from the edge of the page or viewing device to the edge of the "container" holding the element. Padding controls the amount of space from the edge of the element itself and the container holding it. Therefore, if you seem to be experiencing more space than you expected, you might check to see if you have values entered for both the margin and padding.



Note: If you want to indent the first line of the paragraph only, open the **Block** property group and edit the **text-indent** property.

8. To the right of **margin-right**, click the down arrow and select the distance that the paragraph will be indented from the right side of the page. When you are finished, click **OK**.
9. Click to save your work.

Note: If you click on a paragraph and press **Tab** or click in the Home ribbon or Text Format toolabar, you will notice that the paragraph is not indented, but rather the Create Group dialog opens. This occurs because Flare is encouraging you to engage in the "Best Practice" of using styles and creating tag groups, as opposed to using local formatting. A tag is one of the tag groups that you can select. One common use of a tag is to indent lots of content. For example, you might have a section of content containing four paragraphs, a numbered list, and an image. Rather than creating special style classes for all of those different elements with an indentation setting (e.g., margin-left or padding-left) on each, you can place your indentation setting on a class of the tag. That way, any content contained within that tag will be indented accordingly. It is recommended that you create classes of the tag, rather than using the parent tag itself. That's because the base tag is also used for other features such as generated content from proxies, and you may want to keep the look of that generated content separate. For more information about tag groups, see the online Help.

Note: Different browsers may treat margin and padding settings differently. For example, Internet Explorer 8 and Firefox honor padding settings more than they honor margin settings. If you were to set a left margin at, say, 1 inch, Internet Explorer 7 would show it that way. However, in order to get the same results in Internet Explorer 8 or Firefox, you would also need to set the left padding at 1 inch.

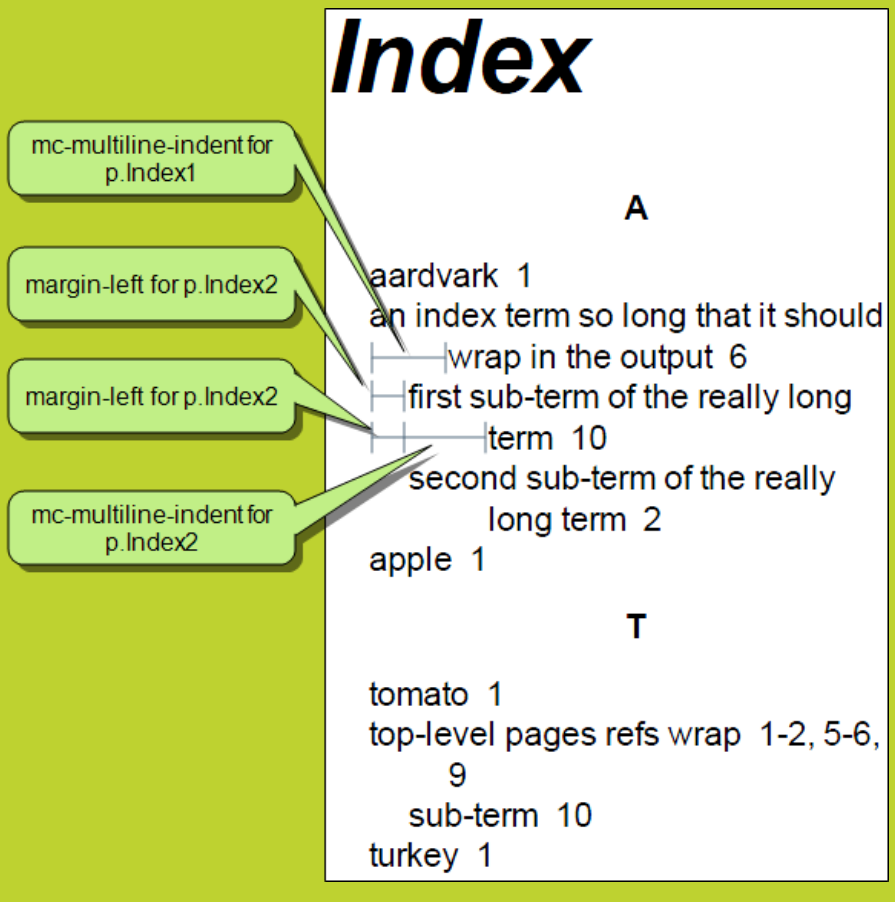
Creating Multiline Indentation

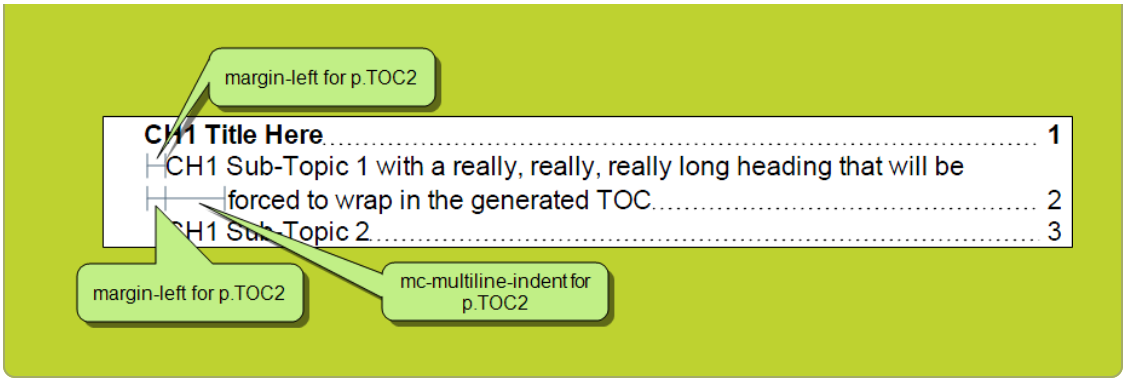
This feature is supported in all print outputs (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, and XHTML).

Using a style property called “mc-multiline-indent” you can specify additional indentation for content that wraps to more than one line. Although this property can be used for any block-level element (such as paragraphs), it is most useful when applied to print index, table of contents (TOC), and mini-TOC entries.

EXAMPLES

The following images show how the mc-multiline-indent style property works alongside the margin-left property in a print index and TOC.





HOW TO CREATE MULTILINE INDENTATION USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
4. Select the appropriate style. For example, you might select any of the following.
   - **p.Index** These styles (from p.Index1 through p.Index9) control the different levels of index entries in print-based output.
   - **p.TOC** These styles (from p.TOC1 through p.TOC9) control the different levels of TOC entries in print-based output.
   - **p.MiniTOC** These styles (from p.MiniTOC1 through p.MiniTOC9) control the different levels of mini-TOC entries in print-based output.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section to the right, expand the **Unclassified** group.
7. Click in the cell to the right of **mc-multiline-indent**. A small popup displays.
8. Use the lower-left area of the popup to enter a number.
9. Use the lower-right area to select a unit of measurement.
10. Click **OK**.
11. Click to save your work.

Setting a "Next" Style

You can specify that a particular style should be used when you press Enter at the end of the current style. For example, after you type text for a heading and press Enter, you might want the next style to be something like p.TopicText, rather than the main <p> tag.

In this version of Flare, you cannot specify this setting in the user interface. Instead, you need to open the stylesheet in an editor such as Notepad and enter the settings manually.

HOW TO SET A "NEXT" STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Do one of the following, depending on the part of the user interface you are using:
   - **Standard Toolbar** click the **Send To** button and select **Notepad**.

     To open the Standard toolbar from the menu view, you can select **View>Toolbars>Standard**.
   - **Right-click** In the Content Explorer, right-click on the stylesheet, and from the context menu select **Open with>Notepad**.
3. Find the "current" style (i.e., the style that will immediately precede the "next" style).
4. Within the curly brackets in the CSS file, enter the following text if the next style is a primary tag (e.g., <p>, <li>).

   ```
   mc-next-tag:[tag];
   ```

   OR

   Within the curly brackets, enter the following text if the next style is a class.

   ```
   mc-next-tag:[tag];
   mc-next-class:[class];
   ```

E X A M P L E

If the current tag is <h2> and the next style should be <p>, it would look like this:

```
h2
{
        mc-next-tag:p;
}
```

On the other hand, if the current tag is <h2> and the next style should be a class of <p> called "TopicText," you would enter this:

```
h2
{
        mc-next-tag:p;
        mc-next-class:TopicText;
}
```

5. Save your changes.

Setting Page and Column Breaks

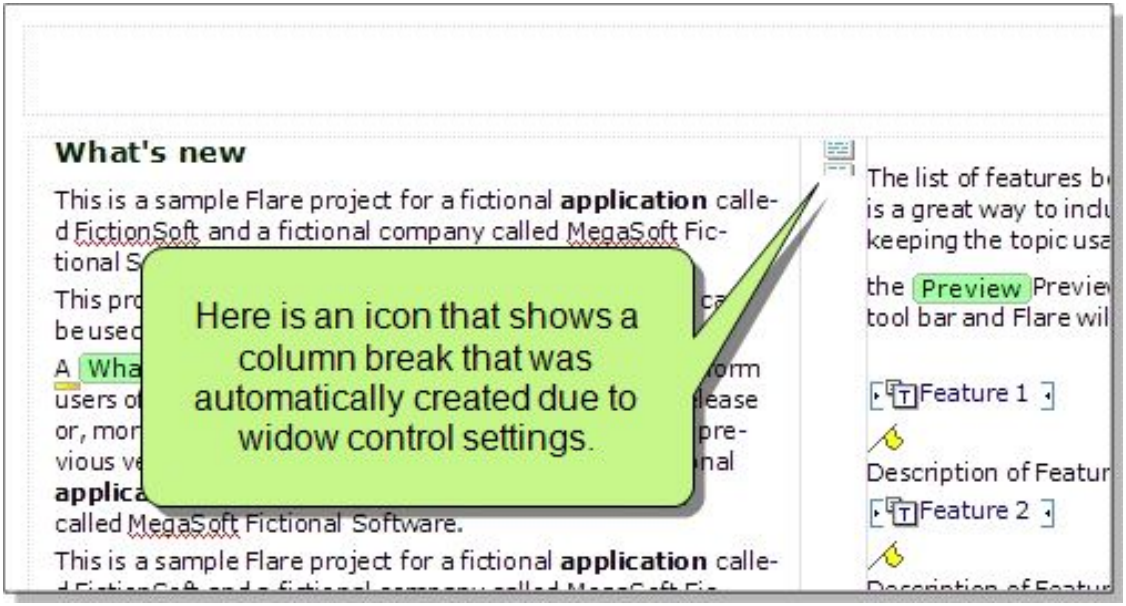
This feature is supported in all print outputs (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, and XHTML).

You can apply a page or column break to a paragraph or heading. For example, you might do this if you want the paragraph or heading to start at the beginning of the next page or column. This feature is used for print-based output.

If you are working on a document in the Print Layout mode, you may see icons in the margins next to text. These icons indicate where a paragraph has been moved to another page or column as a result of a page or column break, or due to widow or orphan control.

Following are the types of icons that you might see in a document.

	Explicit Page Break This icon displays if you have created a page break before a paragraph.
	Explicit Page Break by Previous This icon displays if you have created a page break after a paragraph.
	Explicit Column Break This icon displays if you have created a column break before a paragraph.
	Explicit Column Break by Previous This icon displays if you have created a column break after a paragraph.
	Orphan Controlled This icon displays if a paragraph has been adjusted due to orphan control.
	Widow Controlled This icon displays if a paragraph has been adjusted due to widow control.


What's new
This is a sample Flare project for a fictional application called FictionSoft and a fictional company called MegaSoft Fictional S
called MegaSoft Fictional Software.
This is a sample Flare project for a fictional application calle-
Here is an icon that shows a column break that was automatically created due to widow control settings.
Feature 1
Description of Featur
Feature 2

HOW TO SET A PAGE OR COLUMN BREAK USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Advanced View (which means that the Simplified view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Simplified View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Advanced View, see the online Help.

   Note: With the Advanced view, you can set page breaks only. With the Simplified view, you can set both page and column breaks.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
4. Select the appropriate style. For example, you can select the base **p** tag, or you can select a class that you may have created for that tag (e.g., p.Tip, p.Note). You can also place a page break on a heading style (such as <h1>).
5. In the local toolbar of the editor, click . The Properties dialog opens.
6. Select the **Breaks** tab.
7. Use the **Page Break** and **Column Break** sections on the tab to specify the settings for a page or column break, respectively.

   BEFORE

   You can select one of the options for setting a page or column break before the element.

   - **Automatic** A page break will neither be forced nor prevented before the element.
   - **Always** A page break will always occur before the element.
   - **Avoid** A page break will not occur before the element.
   - **Force to 'left page'** One or two page breaks will occur before the element so that the next page is formatted as a left page.
   - **Force to 'right page'** One or two page breaks will occur before the element so that the next page is formatted as a right page.

AFTER

You can select one of the options for setting a page or column break after the element.

- **Automatic** A page break will neither be forced nor prevented after the element.
- **Always** A page break will always occur after the element.
- **Avoid** A page break will not occur after the element.
- **Force to 'left page'** One or two page breaks will occur after the element so that the next page is formatted as a left page.
- **Force to 'right page'** One or two page breaks will occur after the element so that the next page is formatted as a right page.

INSIDE

You can select one of the options for setting a page break inside the "rendering box" of the element.

- **Automatic** A page break will neither be forced nor prevented inside the rendering box of the element.
- **Avoid** A page break will not occur inside the rendering box of the element.

8. In the Properties dialog, click **OK**.
9. Click to save your work.

Note: If you are using a multi-column page layout and set an "Inside" break to "Avoid," you must specify this in both the "Page Break" and "Column Break" fields.

Note: It is also possible to set breaks on tables. See "Setting Page, Column, and Frame Breaks on Tables" on page 375.

Setting Frame Breaks on Paragraphs and Headings

This feature is supported in Adobe PDF, Microsoft XPS, and XHTML output.

For PDF, XPS, and XHTML outputs, you can apply breaks to page layout frames, similar to the way you can apply page breaks to content such as headings or paragraphs.

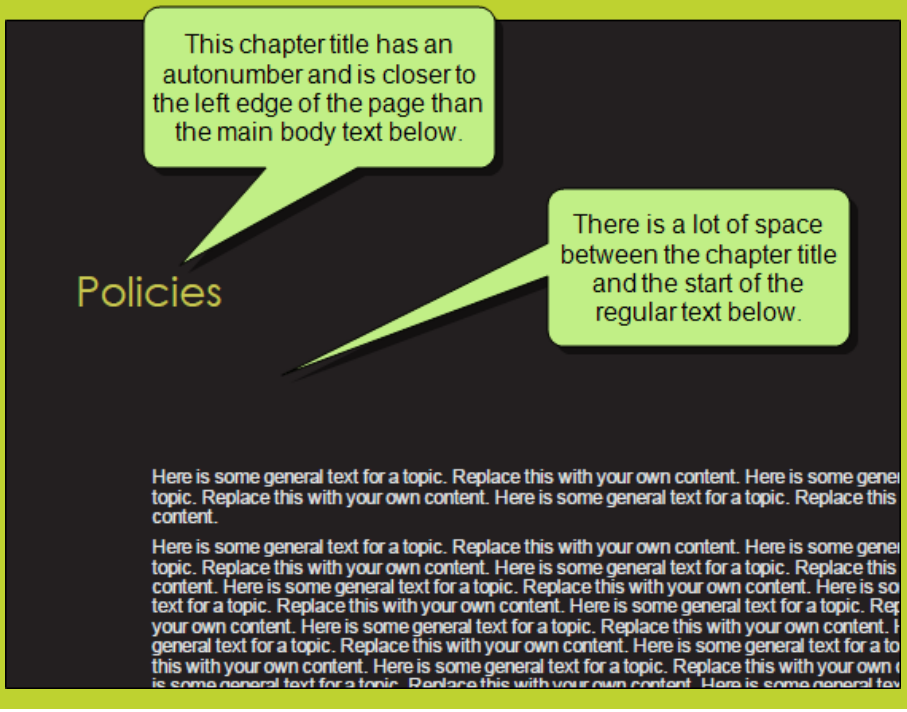
In a stylesheet, the following properties are used: frame-break-before, frame-break-after, frame-break-inside. These are not part of the W3C's CSS specification. Instead, they were created by MadCap Software specifically to support this functionality.

By applying these style properties, you can automatically move content to the next frame on the current page in a layout. If no more frames are available on the current page, a page break occurs instead.

This feature can be especially useful when you want to make sure that heading text is the only content in a particular body frame.

E X A M P L E

Let's say you want chapter titles to appear by themselves in PDF output. You want the chapter title to start farther to the left than the rest of the body content, and you want extra space between the title and body content, in case you have long chapter titles that wrap to two lines.



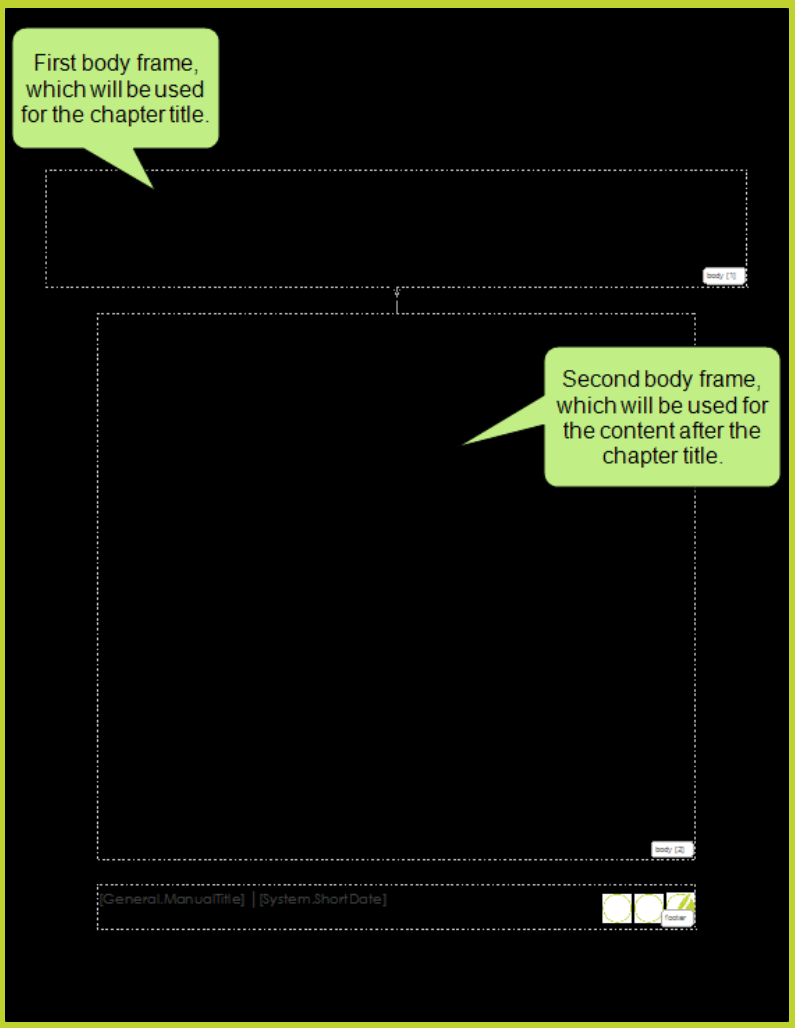
Here is a long chapter title that wraps to two lines.

Company History, Timeline of Very Important Milestones, and Mission Statement

Here is some general text for a topic. Replace this with your own content. Here is some general text for a topic. Replace this with your own content. Here is some general text for a topic. Replace this with your own content. Here is some general text for a topic. Replace this with your own content. Here is some general text for a topic. Replace this with your own content. Here is some general text for a topic. Replace this with your own content. Here is some general text for a topic. Replace this with your own content. Here is some general text for a topic. Replace this with your own content. Here is some general text for a topic. Replace this with your own content. Here is some general text for a topic. Replace this with your own content.

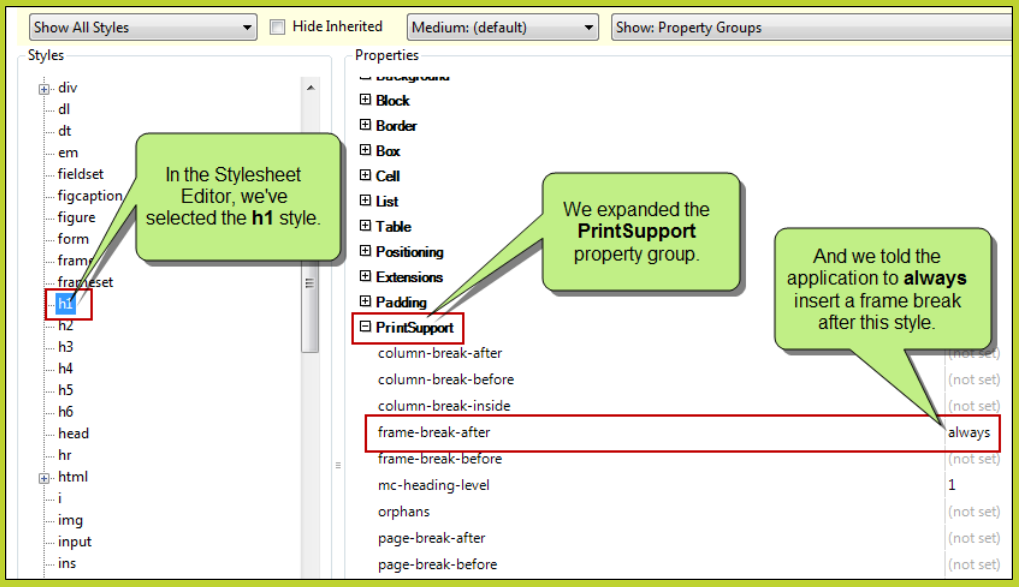
- Here is a cross-reference link: See "Introduction" on the next page.
- Here is a cross-reference link: See "Mission Statement" on page 7.
- Here is a cross-reference link: See "Company History" on page 8.
- Here is a cross-reference link: See "Organizational Chart" on page 9.

In your page layout, you can create one body frame that you want to be used to display the chapter title, and a second, much larger body frame to display the content following it.



This might work fine when you have long chapter titles that wrap to two lines, but if you have a short, one-line title, the body text from below will creep up and start below it in the first body frame, like this:

To solve the issue, you apply a frame break to the style used for your chapter titles (e.g., h1).



Therefore, even when a chapter title is short, Flare inserts a break after it. This creates the effect that you want, where only the chapter title appears in the top body frame, and everything else shows up in the second body frame.

This can be done through styles or by using local formatting. Using styles is usually recommended because the setting is automatically applied to any content using that style throughout the project, whereas local formatting affects only the particular content that you are working on.

HOW TO USE A STYLE TO SET A FRAME BREAK

1. Open the stylesheet that you want to modify.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
4. Select the appropriate style. In most cases, this will be a heading style (e.g., h1, h2, h3). But you can also place a frame break on other block-level styles, such as paragraphs.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **PrintSupport** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Select the appropriate property and value for it.

   FRAME-BREAK-BEFORE

   Click to the right of this property to set a frame break before the element.

   - **always** A frame break will always occur before the element.
   - **auto** A frame break will neither be forced nor prevented before the element.
   - **avoid** A frame break will not occur before the element.
   - **inherit** The frame break setting of the parent tag is used.

   FRAME-BREAK-AFTER

   Click to the right of this property to set a frame break after the element.

   - **always** A frame break will always occur after the element.
   - **auto** A frame break will neither be forced nor prevented after the element.
   - **avoid** A frame break will not occur after the element.
   - **inherit** The frame break setting of the parent tag is used.

   FRAME-BREAK-INSIDE

   You can select one of the options for setting a frame break inside the "rendering box" of the element.

   - **automatic** A frame break will neither be forced nor prevented inside the rendering box of the element.
   - **avoid** A frame break will not occur inside the rendering box of the element.
   - **inherit** The frame break setting of the parent tag is used.

8. Click to save your work.

Note: You can also set frame breaks on tables. See "Setting Page, Column, and Frame Breaks on Tables" on page 375.

Determining Wrap Behavior on Line Breaks Using Styles

This feature is supported in all print outputs (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, and XHTML).

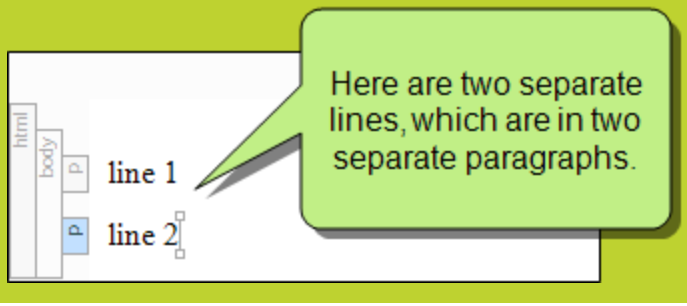
You can apply line breaks and then determine the wrap behavior on line breaks using styles.

The line break tag in XHTMLis <br/>. Line breaks end the current line and the text or image after it will be moved to the very next line, in a way similar to pressing the Return key in a word processor.

However, there is a difference. Pressing the Return key will start a new paragraph with a <p> tag. Using the line break tag will start a new line without creating a new paragraph tag.

E X A M P L E

Below are two lines that were created by pressing Return. Notice that they are contained in separate paragraph <p> tags.



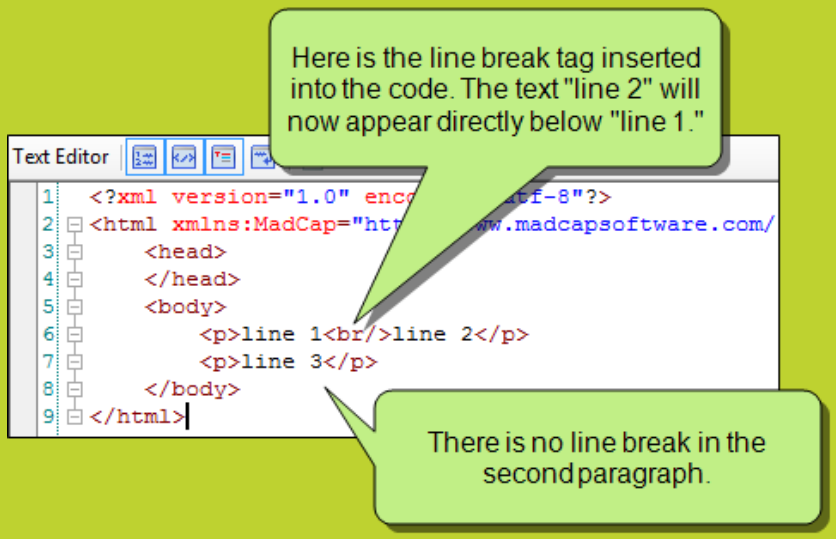
Here is what these lines look like when viewing the XHTML code in the Internal Text Editor.

Here are the same two paragraphs in the XHTML code. Note that there is no space between them in the code.

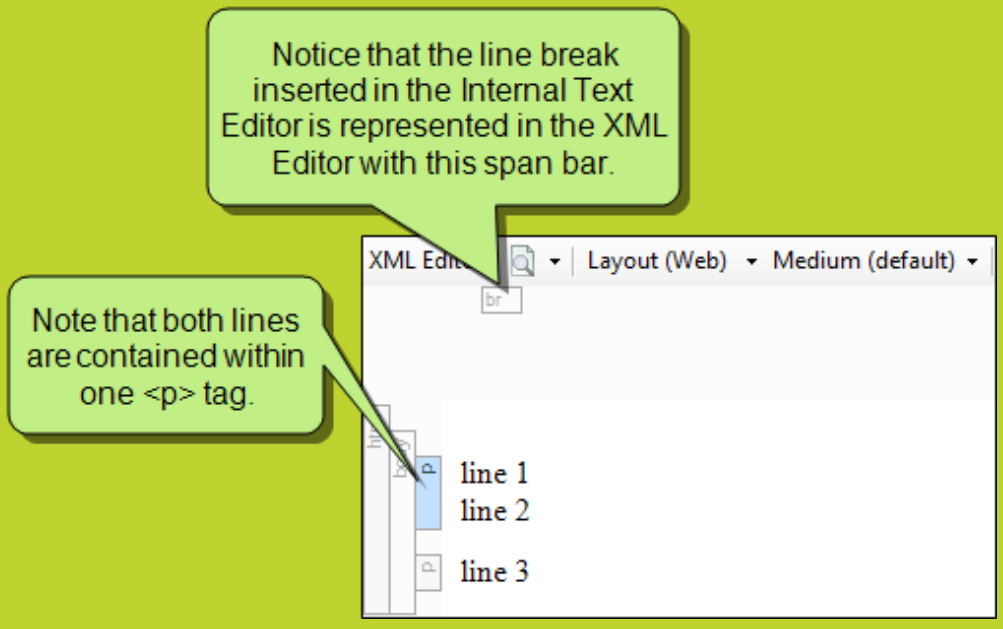
Text Editor

```
1  <?xml version="1.0" encoding=
2  <html xmlns:MadCap="http://
3      <head>
4      </head>
5      <body>
6          <p>line 1</p>
7          <p>line 2</p>
8      </body>
9  </html>
```

If you insert the line break tag into the XHTML code, it might look like this.



Here is how that code will appear in the XML Editor. Notice that the first two lines are in the same paragraph, even though they are on separate lines.



You might want to use line breaks for adjusting particular areas of a topic or for placing text immediately below images. You can use the line break tag inside many other XHTML elements such as tables, lists and headings.

Line breaks are best used for solving minor formatting issues on individual cases. Large formatting issues across many topics are best handled by using styles.

HOW TO INSERT LINE BREAKS

1. Open a topic.
2. At the bottom of the XML Editor, click the **Text Editor** tab to see the markup. You can also use split the editor between the XML Editor and the Internal Text Editor.
3. With the topic open in the Internal Text Editor, identify the location in the code where you want the line break to be. This will usually be in a paragraph element. Then type the following.

   ```
   <br/>
   ```

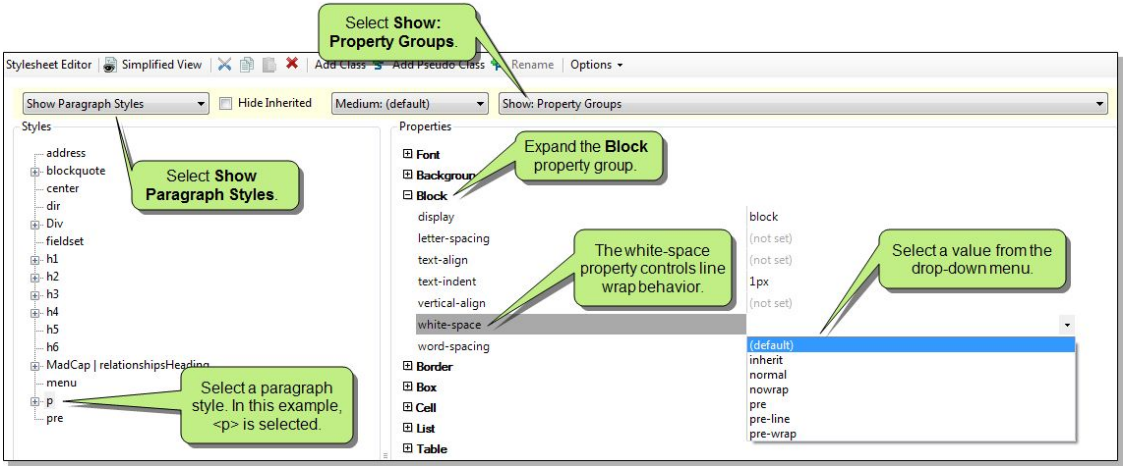
   This is the line break tag.
4. Click to save your work.

Wrap behavior on line breaks determines how and when the line ends and begins (or "wraps") on <br/> tags from one line to the next. It also determines how white space is treated when the line wraps. Wrap behavior is controlled by the **white-space** property.

HOW TO DETERMINE WRAP BEHAVIOR ON LINE BREAKS USING STYLES

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
4. Select the appropriate paragraph style. For example, you can select the parent **p** tag, or you can select a class that you may have created for that tag (e.g., p.Tip, p.Note).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Block** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. To the right of **white-space**, click in the field and select one of the following from the drop-down menu.
   - **default** Sets the property to the default value, which is "normal." See below.
   - **inherit** The value for line breaks will be inherited from the parent element.
   - **normal** Any sequences of white-space will be converted to a single white-space. The text will wrap on line breaks when necessary.
   - **nowrap** Any sequences of white-space will be converted to a single white-space. The text will never wrap to the next line and will continue on the same line until a **
** tag appears.
   - **pre** The white-space will be preserved by the browser. The text will only wrap on line breaks.
   - **pre-line** Any sequences of white-space will be converted to a single white-space. The text will wrap on line breaks when necessary.
   - **pre-wrap** The white-space will be preserved by the browser. The text will wrap on line breaks when necessary.
8. Click to save your work.


Select **Show: Property Groups**.
Stylesheet Editor
Simplified View
Add Class
Add Pseudo Class
Rename
Options
Show Paragraph Styles
Hide Inherited
Medium: (default)
Show: Property Groups
Styles
address
blockquote
center
dir
Div
fieldset
h1
h2
h3
h4
h5
h6
MadCap | relationshipsHeading
menu
p
pre
Select **Show Paragraph Styles**.
Select a paragraph style. In this example, <p> is selected.
Properties
Font
Backgroun
Block
display
letter-spacing
text-align
text-indent
vertical-align
white-space
word-spacing
Border
Box
Cell
List
Table
Expand the **Block** property group.
The white-space property controls line wrap behavior.
block
(not set)
(not set)
1px
(not set)
(default)
inherit
normal
nowrap
pre
pre-line
pre-wrap
Select a value from the drop-down menu.

Positioning Paragraphs

This feature is supported in Adobe PDF, EPUB, Microsoft XPS, and XHTML, as well as in all online outputs (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, and WebHelp Plus).

After you add a paragraph or heading to a topic, you can adjust its positioning on the page. For example, you can float it to the left of the page layout frame to create a side heading. You can do this by applying a positioning setting on the style used by the paragraph.

HOW TO POSITION A PARAGRAPH ON A PAGE USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
4. Select the appropriate paragraph style. For example, you can select the parent **p** tag, or you can select a class that you may have created for that tag (e.g., p.Tip, p.Note).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. Use any of the following set of instructions to select "float," "clear," and "vertical alignment" settings for the paragraph.

   FLOAT

   You can specify where to place the paragraph on the page.

   In the **Properties** section, expand the **Unclassified** group. Click in the value column to the right of the **mc-float** property and select any of the available options.

   - **center** Positions the paragraph in the center of the column on the page.
   - **frame-center** Positions the paragraph both vertically and horizontally in the middle of the page frame.
   - **left** Positions the paragraph on the left side of the page frame, allowing you to type text to the right of the paragraph.

- **none** Does not place the paragraph in a specific location.
- **outside-frame** Positions the paragraph outside of the page frame.
- **outside-frame-left** Positions the paragraph beyond the left margin of the topic text.
- **outside-frame-right** Positions the paragraph beyond the right margin of the topic text.
- **outside-frame-top** Positions the paragraph outside of the page frame, as well as aligning it with the top of the frame.
- **outside-left** Positions the paragraph to the left of the page frame.
- **outside-right** Positions the paragraph to the right of the page frame.
- **right** Positions the paragraph on the right side of the page frame, allowing you to type text to the left of the paragraph.

CLEAR

You can position a paragraph so that it is "clear" of an adjacent paragraph. For example, let's say you have already inserted a paragraph and applied the float left property to it. If you then insert another paragraph immediately after the first paragraph, you want to make sure that the second paragraph doesn't rest next to the first paragraph. Instead, you want the second paragraph to be placed completely below the first paragraph. Therefore, you can apply the clear property to the second paragraph.

In the **Properties** section, expand the **Box** group. Click in the value column to the right of the **clear** property and select any of the available options.

- **both** The paragraph will be placed below the a previous paragraph, whether it is floating left or right.
- **inherit** Uses the same setting as the parent tag.
- **left** The paragraph will be placed below the bottom outer edge of a previous paragraph that is floating left.
- **none** Does not apply the clear property to the paragraph.
- **right** The paragraph will be placed below the bottom outer edge of a previous paragraph that is floating right.

VERTICAL ALIGNMENT

You can adjust where the paragraph is positioned vertically.

In the **Properties** section, expand the **Block** group. Click in the value column to the right of the **vertical-align** property. In the popup, click the arrow in the upper-right corner and select any of the available options. Click **OK** when you are finished.

- **baseline** The baseline of the box will be aligned with the baseline of the parent box.
- **bottom** The bottom of the box will be aligned with the bottom of the line box.
- **middle** The vertical midpoint of the box will be aligned with the baseline of the parent box, plus half the x-height of the parent.
- **sub** The baseline of the box will be lowered to the proper position for subscripts of the parent's box. (This value has no effect on the font size of the element's text.)
- **super** The baseline of the box will be raised to the proper position for superscripts of the parent's box. (This value has no effect on the font size of the element's text.)
- **text-bottom** The bottom of the box will be aligned with the bottom of the line box.
- **text-top** The top of the box will be aligned with the top of the parent element's font.
- **top** The top of the box will be aligned with the top of the line box.
- **Inherit** Uses the same setting as the parent tag.
- **Length** Lets you enter a specific measurement.

7. Click to save your work.

Note: For examples of the different ways you can configure headings, including creating side headings, see "Heading Examples" on page 317.

Note: If you want to adjust the space between a floating paragraph and the text that flows next to it, you can modify the margins on the paragraph (using the Indentation section on the Paragraph tab).

Note: For additional details on the rules for floating objects, see http://www.w3c.org.

Note: You can also position objects, such as images and text boxes, as well as autonumbers. See "Positioning Text Boxes" on page 452 and "Autonumbers" on page 68.

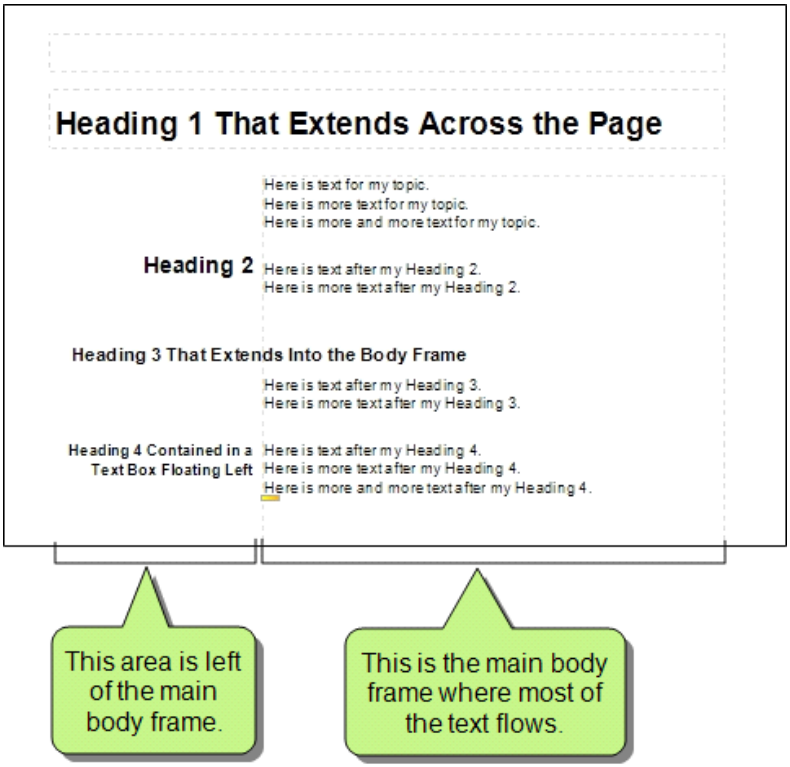
Heading Examples

When creating headings for print-based output, you have many configuration options. You can simply use the <h1> through <h6> style tags provided in Flare, and you can modify the style settings to meet your needs.

Some of the advanced features available that you might use when configuring headings for print-based output include:

- Dual body frames in a page layout (one for major headings and the other for the main topic content)
- Positioning headings
- Text boxes

Following is a topic shown in Print Layout mode with multiple headings. Each heading was configured differently to affect how it is displayed on the page. The Heading 2, 3, and 4 examples were created in part by using styles. The Heading 2 example involved the positioning of a paragraph, and the Heading 4 example involved the positioning of a text box.



HEADING 1 EXAMPLE

The Heading 1 example was created by adding two body frames to a page layout. For more information about using page layouts, see the online Help.

The first body frame was added to the top of the page layout and is high enough only to fit the first heading in the topic. It extends across the entire page.

The second body frame is much taller, but is not as wide. It was designed to hold the main content of the chapter, with space to the left that can hold subheadings, text boxes, notes, tips, images and so on.

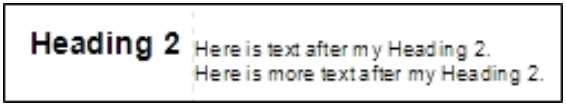
You might consider using this type of configuration if you know for certain that the content to be displayed in the first body frame is a major heading that will always display at the top of a page, rather than somewhere in the middle of it. For example, you might create a page layout with a "First Right" page type that is designed to hold the beginning of each chapter in your output. By having a dual frame configuration (such as the one described) on the initial page only, you can be assured that the first body frame is used only by the heading that begins that chapter.

On the other hand, if you want to have headings that stretch across multiple areas of a page in random locations, you probably do not want to use this method, but rather the method described for the Heading 3 example.

For detailed steps on creating the heading configuration in this example, see the online Help.

HEADING 2 EXAMPLE

The Heading 2 Example was created by simply positioning the <h2> style tag so that it appears to the left of the body frame. We also adjusted the indentation to the right of that tag, as well as the space above it. Finally, we created a new class of the <p> tag and adjusted the space above it. We used this style class for the first paragraph following our <h2> text. For paragraphs after that, we just used the parent <p> tag.



One benefit of this method is that it is relatively simple. However, it is best when used with headings that are not very long. If you have headings that need to wrap to a second line, you should probably use a text box, which is what we used for the Heading 4 example.

HOW DID WE CREATE THE HEADING 2 EFFECT IN THIS EXAMPLE?

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Advanced View (which means that the Simplified view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Simplified View instead, then click it.
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
4. In the grid, select the style for the heading (in our example, it is **h2**).
5. In the local toolbar, click .
6. In the Properties dialog, select the **Paragraph** tab.
7. In the **Indentation** section, set the **Right** field to **12 px**.
8. In the **Spacing** section, set the **Before** field to **22 px**.
9. Select the **Position** tab.
10. In the **Float** field, select **Left of Frame**.
11. In the **Vertical Alignment** field, select **Text Bottom**.
12. Click **OK**.
13. In the Stylesheet Editor, select **p** in the grid.
14. In the local toolbar, click Add Class.
15. Give the new class a name. We typed `FirstPara` in our example.
16. Click **OK**.

17. With the new style class selected, click .
18. In the Properties dialog, select the **Paragraph** tab.
19. In the **Spacing** section, set the **Before** field to **30 px**.
20. Click to save your work.
21. Open a topic and type the text for the heading, as well as the paragraph(s) following it.
22. Click on the text to be used for the heading.
23. Select the **Home** ribbon, click in the **Style** drop-down field, and select the style for the heading (in our example, it is **h2**).
24. Click on the first paragraph following that heading.
25. In the Home ribbon, click in the **Styles** drop-down field and select your new paragraph style class (e.g., p.FirstPara).
26. Click to save your work.

HEADING 3 EXAMPLE

The Heading 3 Example was created by simply specifying a negative left indentation setting for the <h3> tag.

Heading 3 That Extends Into the Body Frame

Here is text after my Heading 3.
Here is more text after my Heading 3.

This method is extremely easy. Plus, it allows you to stretch headings across multiple areas of a page in random locations.

HOW DID WE CREATE THE HEADING 3 EFFECT IN THIS EXAMPLE?

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Advanced View (which means that the Simplified view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Simplified View instead, then click it.
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
4. In the grid, select the style for the heading (in our example, it is **h3**).
5. In the local toolbar, click .
6. In the Properties dialog, select the **Paragraph** tab.
7. In the **Indentation** section, set the **Left** field to a negative number. In our example, we set it to **-200 pixels**.
8. Click **OK**.
9. Open a topic and type the text for the heading.
10. Click on the text to be used for the heading.
11. Select the **Home** ribbon, click in the **Style** drop-down field, and select the style for the heading (in our example, it is **h3**).
12. Click to save your work.

HEADING 4 EXAMPLE

The Heading 4 Example was configured by creating a style class of the tag and using it when inserting a text box. The style class for the text box specifies that it should be floated to the left of the body frame, have text that is aligned right, and have 30 pixels of space above it. In addition, we created a new class of the <p> tag and adjusted the space above it. We used this style class for the first paragraph following our <h4> text. For paragraphs after that, we just used the parent <p> tag.

Heading 4 Contained in a Text Box Floating Left

Here is text after my Heading 4.
Here is more text after my Heading 4.
Here is more and more text after my Heading 4.

This method takes a bit more time, but it very useful if you want the entire heading to be displayed to the left of the frame, with text wrapping around to additional lines when necessary. Meanwhile, the text after that heading flows to the right inside the body frame.

HOW DID WE CREATE THE HEADING 4 EFFECT IN THIS EXAMPLE?

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Advanced View (which means that the Simplified view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Simplified View instead, then click it.
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
4. In the grid, select **div**.
5. In the local toolbar, click Add Class.
6. Give the new class a name. We typed `h4TextBox` in our example.
7. Click **OK**.
8. With the new style class selected, click .
9. In the Properties dialog, select the **Paragraph** tab.
10. In the **Alignment** section, select **Right**.
11. In the **Indentation** section, set the **Right** field to **12 px**. (You may need to first click the down arrow in the upper-right corner and select **Length**.)
12. In the **Spacing** section, set the **Before** field to **30 px**. (You may need to first click the down arrow in the upper-right corner and select **Length**.)
13. Select the **Position** tab.

14. In the **Float** field, select **Left of Frame**.
15. In the **Vertical Alignment** field, select **Text Bottom**.
16. Click **OK**.
17. In the Stylesheet Editor grid, select **p**.
18. In the local toolbar, click Add Class.
19. Give the new class a name. We typed `FirstPara` in our example.
20. Click **OK**.
21. With the new style class selected, click .
22. In the Properties dialog, select the **Paragraph** tab.
23. In the **Spacing** section, set the **Before** field to **30 px**.
24. Click to save your work.
25. Open a topic and click at the location where you want to add the heading.

> **Note:** It is often easiest if you already have some text after the location where you are inserting the text box. Therefore, type some text that you want to appear after the heading (i.e., the first paragraph or two after the heading).

26. Select **Insert>Text Box**.
27. In the dialog, select the div class (e.g., div.h4TextBox).
28. Click **OK**.
29. Unless you also added a background or border to the text box, the text box is invisible at first (since it does not contain any text). Click at the beginning of the first paragraph following the text box and press the left arrow on your keyboard a couple of times until you see the cursor to the left of the body frame. This means that the cursor is now inside the text box.
30. Inside the text box, type the text for the heading.
31. Click on the text to be used for the heading.
32. Select the **Home** ribbon, click in the **Style** drop-down field, and select the style for the heading (in our example, it is **h4**).
33. Click on the first paragraph following the heading in the text box.
34. In the Home ribbon, click in the **Style** drop-down field and select your new paragraph style class (e.g., p.FirstPara).

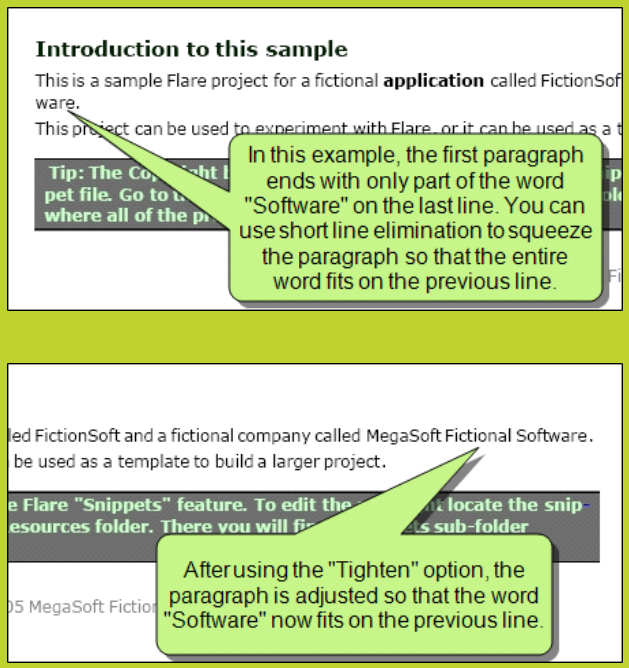
35. Click to save your work.

Setting Short Line Elimination

This feature is supported in all print outputs (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, and XHTML).

You can use this feature to automatically adjust word spacing if the last line of a paragraph is only a certain number of characters long. Therefore, the spacing may be widened to make the last line longer, or the spacing may be narrowed to bring the words in the last line up to the previous line.

EXAMPLE



HOW TO SET SHORT LINE ELIMINATION USING A STYLE

1. From the **Resources/Stylesheets** subfolder in the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
4. Select the appropriate paragraph style. For example, you can select the parent **p** tag, or you can select a class that you may have created for that tag (e.g., p.Tip, p.Note).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Unclassified** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Click in the value column on the right side of the appropriate property to specify the short line settings.

   It is a good idea to experiment with the various settings until you achieve the "last line" behavior that suits you best. The short line elimination properties that you might want to set are as follows.

   MC-SHORT-LINE

   Specify the length at which a line is considered "short," and therefore the short line settings come into play. If you do not select a length, a line is considered short if it has 10 or fewer characters. You can specify one of the following settings.

   - **hyphenated-last-word** If the last word in the paragraph is hyphenated, Flare will run short line elimination. To use this option, click the down arrow in the upper-right corner of the popup and select **hyphenated-last-word**.
   - **Inherit** Uses the same setting as the parent tag.
   - **Length** You can choose a specific length for a line to be considered short. To use this option, click the down arrow in the upper-right corner of the popup and select **Length**. Then enter a number in the lower-left field. Finally, click the down arrow in the lower-right corner and select a unit of measurement (UOM).

MC-SHORT-LINE-LOOSEN-END-LENGTH

Specify the length (number of characters) at which a line is considered "long enough." For example, let's say you have specified 8 characters as the length of a short line (mc-short-line), and you have specified 15 characters as the length of a long line (in this field). In that case, Flare will not allow the final line in a paragraph to have only 8 characters, and when you type content so that the text wraps around to a new line, the paragraph is automatically adjusted so that the new line always starts at a minimum of 15 characters.

MC-SHORT-LINE-LOOSEN-MAXIMUM

Specify the maximum number of pixels to loosen during short line elimination.

MC-SHORT-LINE-METHOD

Select whether to enable short line elimination, as well as how it will work.

- **inherit** Uses the short-line setting of the parent tag.
- **loosen** Flare will try to increase the kerning (i.e., white space becomes wider).
- **loosen-tighten** Flare will first try to increase the kerning (i.e., the white space will become wider) to the maximum setting. Then it will try to decrease the kerning (i.e., the white space will become more narrow).
- **never** Lines will not be adjusted.
- **tighten** Flare will try to decrease the kerning (i.e., the white space will become more narrow).
- **tighten-loosen** Flare will first try to decrease the kerning (i.e., the white space will become more narrow) to the maximum setting. Then it will try to increase the kerning (i.e., the white space will become wider).

MC-SHORT-LINE-STEP

Specify the number of pixels of kerning should be used incrementally on the entire paragraph until the desired effect is achieved. For example, if you enter .5, the kerning will occur in increments of .5 pixels.

MC-SHORT-LINE-TIGHTEN-MAXIMUM

Specify the maximum number of pixels to tighten during short line elimination.

8. Click to save your work.

Note: In order to see the results of this feature in the XML Editor, you must be using Print Layout mode, as opposed to Web Layout mode. For more information about layout modes, see the online Help.

Setting Line Spacing

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can specify the amount of spacing between lines in a paragraph.

EXAMPLE

In this example, the line spacing is using the default setting.

One evening a terrible storm came on; there was thunder and lightning, and the rain poured down in torrents. Suddenly a knocking was heard at the city gate, and the old king went to open it.

It was a princess standing out there in front of the gate. But, good gracious! what a sight the rain and the wind had made her look. The water ran down from her hair and clothes; it ran down into the toes of her shoes and out again at the heels. And yet she said that she was a real princess.

In this example, the line spacing has been adjusted to .25 inch. Notice that the gap between each line is greater.

One evening a terrible storm came on; there was thunder and lightning, and the rain poured down in torrents. Suddenly a knocking was heard at the city gate, and the old king went to open it.

It was a princess standing out there in front of the gate. But, good gracious! what a sight the rain and the wind had made her look. The water ran down from her hair and clothes; it ran down into the toes of her shoes and out again at the heels. And yet she said that she was a real princess.

HOW TO SET LINE SPACING USING A STYLE

1. From the **Resources/Stylesheets** subfolder in the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
4. Select the appropriate paragraph style. For example, you can select the parent **p** tag, or you can select a class that you may have created for that tag (e.g., p.Tip, p.Note).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Font** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. To the right of **line-height**, click the down arrow and set the amount of space between lines. When you are finished, click **OK**.
8. Click to save your work.

Setting Paragraph Spacing Above and Below

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can set the amount of spacing above and below paragraphs.

EXAMPLE

In this example, there are two paragraphs, but it is hard to distinguish them, because there is no extra space above or below either of them.

Once upon a time there was a prin ted to marry a princess; but she would have to be a *rea* . He traveled all over the world to find one, but nowhere get what he wanted. There were princesses enough, bu difficult to find out whether they were real ones. Ther as always something about them that was not as it should be he came home again and was sad, for he would have liked very much to have a real princess. One evening a terrible storm came on; there was thunder and lightning, and the rain poured down in torrents. Suddenly a knocking was heard at the city gate, and the old king went to open it.

In this example, the space above and below has been set to 9 points. Now it is easier to see the two paragraphs.

Once upon a time there was a prince [illegible] to marry a princess; but she would have to be a *real* [illegible] He traveled all over the world to find one, but nowhere could he get what he wanted. There were princesses enough, but it was difficult to find out whether they were real ones. There was always something about them that was not as it should be. So he came home again and was sad, for he would have liked very much to have a real princess.

One evening a terrible storm came on; there was thunder and lightning, and the rain poured down in torrents. Suddenly a knocking was heard at the city gate, and the old king went to open it.

HOW TO SET PARAGRAPH SPACING ABOVE AND BELOW USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
4. Select the appropriate paragraph style. For example, you can select the parent **p** tag, or you can select a class that you may have created for that tag (e.g., p.Tip, p.Note).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Box** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. To the right of **margin-bottom**, click the down arrow and set the amount of space below the paragraph. When you are finished, click **OK**.
8. To the right of **margin-top**, click the down arrow and set the amount of space above the paragraph. When you are finished, click **OK**.
9. Click to save your work.

Note: Different browsers may treat margin and padding settings differently. For example, Internet Explorer 8 and Firefox honor padding settings more than they honor margin settings. If you were to set a left margin at, say, 1 inch, Internet Explorer 7 would show it that way. However, in order to get the same results in Internet Explorer 8 or Firefox, you would also need to set the left padding at 1 inch.

Setting Widow and Orphan Control

This feature is supported in all print outputs (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, and XHTML).

You can use widow and orphan control to avoid instances where "leftover" lines from a paragraph are shown at the top or bottom of a page or column. For more about widows and orphans, see the online Help.

HOW TO SET WIDOW AND ORPHAN CONTROL USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
4. Select the appropriate paragraph style. For example, you can select the parent **p** tag, or you can select a class that you may have created for that tag (e.g., p.Tip, p.Note).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **PrintSupport** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Click to the right of **orphans**, and enter the number of leftover lines that you want to allow at the bottom a page or column.
8. Click to the right of **widows**, and enter the number of leftover lines that you want to allow at the top of a page or column.
9. Click to save your work.

Note: In order to see the results of this feature in the XML Editor, you must be using Print Layout mode, as opposed to Web Layout mode. For more information about layout modes, see the online Help.

Proxies

This feature is supported in all outputs.

For some proxies, you can specify which output types should support them. If an output type supports a particular proxy, the generated content is displayed in the output where the proxy was inserted. If an output type does not support a particular proxy, it is simply ignored when the output is generated. You can use a style to change which output types support a proxy. Following are the different proxies involved and the default setting for each.

- Concepts proxy (all)
- Endnotes proxy (all)
- Glossary proxy (all)
- Index proxy (all-print)
- List of proxy (all)
- Mini-TOC proxy (all)
- Relationships proxy (all)
- TOC proxy (all)

HOW TO USE STYLES TO DETERMINE OUTPUT SUPPORT FOR PROXIES

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section on the left side of the editor, find and select one of the following styles, depending on the type of proxy you want to affect.
   - **MadCap|conceptsProxy**
   - **MadCap|endnotesProxy**
   - **MadCap|glossaryProxy**
   - **MadCap|indexProxy**
   - **MadCap|listOfProxy**
   - **MadCap|miniTocProxy**
   - **MadCap|relationshipsProxy**
   - **MadCap|tocproxy**
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. From the **Properties** section, expand the **Unclassified** property group.
7. Click in the cell to the right of **mc-output-support** and select any of the following.
   - **all** The proxy will be supported in all output types, both online and print-based.
   - **all-online** The proxy will be supported in all online output types (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus).
   - **all-print** The proxy will be supported in all print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML).
   - **all-webhelp** The proxy will be supported in all of the WebHelp output types (WebHelp, HTML5, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus).
   - **dotnethelp** The proxy will be supported in DotNet Help.
   - **eclipsehelp** The proxy will be supported in Eclipse Help.
   - **epub** The proxy will be supported in EPUB.
   - **framemaker** The proxy will be supported in Adobe FrameMaker.

- **html5** The proxy will be supported in HTML5.
- **htmlhelp** The proxy will be supported in Microsoft HTML Help.
- **pdf** The proxy will be supported in Adobe PDF.
- **webhelp** The proxy will be supported in WebHelp.
- **webhelpair** The proxy will be supported in WebHelp AIR.
- **webhelpmobile** The proxy will be supported in WebHelp Mobile.
- **webhelpplus** The proxy will be supported in WebHelp Plus.
- **word** The proxy will be supported in Microsoft Word.
- **xhtmlbook** The proxy will be supported in XHTML.
- **xps** The proxy will be supported in Microsoft XPS.

8. Click to save your work.

QR Codes

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can use styles to affect QR codes in several ways.

- **Adding Backgrounds to QR Codes** See "Adding Backgrounds to QR Codes" on the next page.
- **Adding Borders to QR Codes** See "Adding Borders to QR Codes" on page 341.
- **Adding Margins to QR Codes** See "Adding Margins to QR Codes" on page 343.
- **Adding Padding to QR Codes** See "Adding Padding to QR Codes" on page 344.
- **Resizing QR Codes** See "Resizing QR Codes" on page 345.

Adding Backgrounds to QR Codes

You can add background settings to a QR code. This includes the ability to specify a color, image, and a repeating pattern for the background image. Normally you would not see a QR code's background, but if you give the QR code a certain amount of padding, you would see the background around the edges of it.

This can be done through styles or by using local formatting. Using styles is usually recommended because the setting is automatically applied to any content using that style throughout the project, whereas local formatting affects only the particular content that you are working on.

HOW TO ADD A BACKGROUND TO QR CODES USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Character Styles.
4. Select the **MadCap|qrCode** style.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Background** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Locate the background property that you want to change, depending on what you are trying to accomplish.

   SET A COLOR FOR THE BACKGROUND

   - To the right of **background-color**, click the down arrow and select a color from the popup. For advanced color options, select **More Colors** and use the fields in the Color Picker dialog.

   ADD AN IMAGE TO THE BACKGROUND

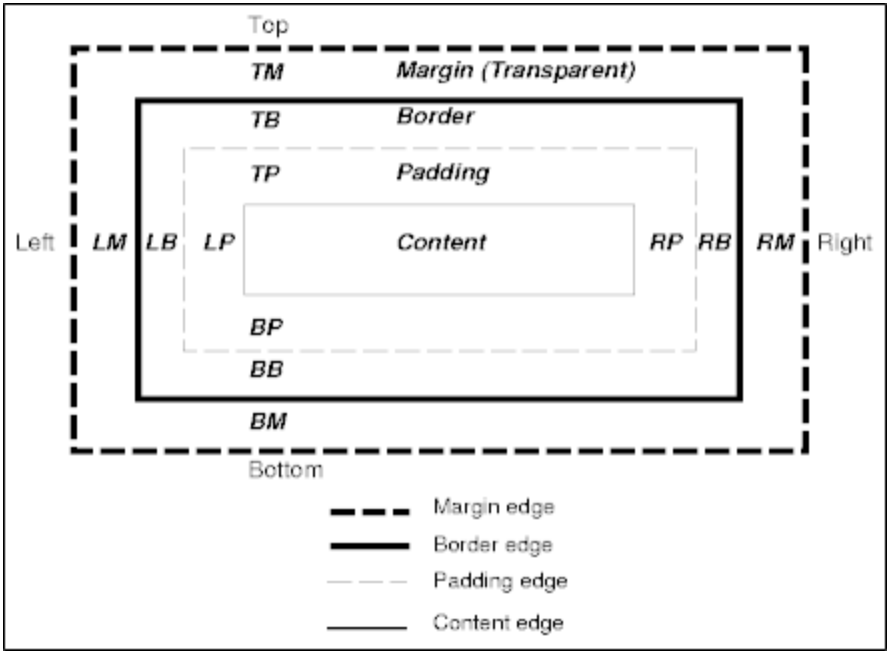
   a. To the right of **background-image**, click and select an image already contained in your project.

   b. If you want the background image to repeat, click in the cell to the right of **background-repeat** and select one of the options (definitions from http://www.w3.org).

      - **no-repeat** The image is not repeated: only one copy of the image is drawn.
      - **repeat** The image is repeated both horizontally and vertically.
      - **repeat-x** The image is repeated horizontally only.
      - **repeat-y** The image is repeated vertically only.
8. Click to save your work.

Adding Borders to QR Codes

You can add borders around a QR code, specifying the border size, color, and type.



This can be done through styles or by using local formatting. Using styles is usually recommended because the setting is automatically applied to any content using that style throughout the project, whereas local formatting affects only the particular content that you are working on.

HOW TO ADD A BORDER TO QR CODES USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Character Styles.
4. Select the **MadCap|qrCode** style.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Border** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Locate the border property that you want to change. Each side (bottom, left, right, top) has separate properties that you can set for the color, style, and width (e.g., border-bottom-style). You can set these properties individually, or you can set the main property for each side (e.g., border-bottom), which lets you specify the color, style, and width in one place. Even better, if you plan to have the same settings for all four sides, you can simply use the **border** property to set the color, style, and width all the way around.

   When you click in the cell to the right of one of the broad properties (e.g., border, border-bottom), a small popup displays.

   a. Use the lower-left area of the popup to enter a number for the border thickness.
   b. Use the lower-middle area to select a unit of measurement (e.g., point, pixel, centimeter) for the number you entered.
   c. Use the upper-right area to select a color for the border.
   d. Use the lower-right area to select a line type (e.g., solid, double, dashed) for the border.
   e. Click **OK**.
8. Click to save your work.

Adding Margins to QR Codes

You can adjust the margins around a QR code so that there is extra space above, below, to the right, or to the left of it.

This can be done through styles or by using local formatting. Using styles is usually recommended because the setting is automatically applied to any content using that style throughout the project, whereas local formatting affects only the particular content that you are working on.

HOW TO ADD MARGINS TO QR CODES USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Character Styles.
4. Select the **MadCap|qrCode** style.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Box** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Locate the margin property that you want to change. Each side (bottom, left, right, top) has separate properties that you can set (e.g., margin-top). If you plan to have the same settings for all four sides, you can simply use the **margin** property.
8. Click to save your work.

Note: Different browsers may treat margin and padding settings differently. For example, Internet Explorer 8 and Firefox honor padding settings more than they honor margin settings. If you were to set a left margin at, say, 1 inch, Internet Explorer 7 would show it that way. However, in order to get the same results in Internet Explorer 8 or Firefox, you would also need to set the left padding at 1 inch.

Adding Padding to QR Codes

You can add padding (i.e., extra space) between a QR code's border and the QR code itself.

This can be done through styles or by using local formatting. Using styles is usually recommended because the setting is automatically applied to any content using that style throughout the project, whereas local formatting affects only the particular content that you are working on.

HOW TO ADD PADDING TO QR CODES USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Character Styles.
4. Select the **MadCap|qrCode** style.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Box** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Locate the padding property that you want to change. Each side (bottom, left, right, top) has separate properties that you can set (e.g., padding-top). If you plan to have the same settings for all four sides, you can simply use the **padding** property.
8. Click to save your work.

Note: Different browsers may treat margin and padding settings differently. For example, Internet Explorer 8 and Firefox honor padding settings more than they honor margin settings. If you were to set a left margin at, say, 1 inch, Internet Explorer 7 would show it that way. However, in order to get the same results in Internet Explorer 8 or Firefox, you would also need to set the left padding at 1 inch.

Resizing QR Codes

You can resize QR codes with various methods. This can be done through styles or by using local formatting.

Following are the tasks you can perform.

- **Resize With Styles** You can resize many QR codes at once by using the <MadCap|qrCode> style tag in the Stylesheet Editor. Not only can you select a specific size, but you can also set a maximum or minimum height or width. You can set either the width or height on the QR code tag and let Flare set the other property automatically, maintaining the aspect ratio (i.e., size proportion of the QR code). See "how to resize qr codes by using styles" on the next page.
- **Resize Locally Using Properties** You can resize a QR code locally by choosing one of a few standard sizes. See the online Help.
- **Resize Locally Dragging the Icon** You can resize a QR code locally by clicking and dragging the icon in the lower-right corner of the QR code. When you use this feature, Flare automatically sets the new height and width on the QR code tag. See the online Help.
- **Reset Size** If you resize a QR code and then decide you want it to be its original size (even after you save your work), you can easily reset it. See the online Help.

HOW TO RESIZE QR CODES BY USING STYLES

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Make sure the appropriate medium is selected. If you are not using stylesheet mediums for your different outputs or if you want all mediums to have the same settings, just leave the medium set to "default" and continue.

   Mediums can be used if you want to use one group of settings for online output types (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus) and another group of settings for print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). For example, you might use the "default" medium for your online outputs and you might use the "print" medium for your print outputs.
3. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
4. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Character Styles.
5. Select the **MadCap|qrCode** style.
6. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
7. You can use the following steps to specify a precise width or height for the style. You can also specify a maximum or minimum width or height.

   TO SET A PRECISE WIDTH AND/OR HEIGHT

   a. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Box** group.

      The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

   b. To the right of **height** and/or **width**, click the down arrow and complete the fields in the popup. First you need to select **Length** in the top drop-down list. You can then enter a value in the lower-left area and choose from several different units of measurement (points, pixels, centimeters, etc.) in the lower-right area.Click **OK** when you are finished.

   > **Note:** When resizing objects, you can ensure the aspect ratio is maintained. For example, if you want certain objects to be resized so that each is exactly 3 inches high, you can make sure the width of each object is adjusted accordingly to stay in proportion. To do this, first set the height at 3 inches. You would not set the width property at all. In the same way, if you were to specify an exact width, you could maintain the aspect ratio by not setting the height.

TO SET THE MAXIMUM WIDTH AND/OR HEIGHT

If the original QR code is larger than the maximum width or height that is set, it will be reduced in size so that it is no greater than the maximum value. If the original QR code is smaller than the maximum width or height, it will not be resized.

a. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Unclassified** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

b. To the right of **max-height** and/or **max-width**, click the down arrow and complete the fields in the popup. First you need to select **Length** in the top drop-down list. You can then enter a value in the lower-left area and choose from several different units of measurement (points, pixels, centimeters, etc.) in the lower-right area. Click **OK** when you are finished.

> **Note:** When resizing objects, you can ensure that the aspect ratio is maintained. For example, if you want certain objects to be resized so that they are no more than 5 inches wide, you can make sure that the height of each object is adjusted accordingly so that it stays in proportion. To do this, you would set the maximum width of the style at 5 inches. You would then leave the maximum height property unspecified. In the same way, if you were to specify a maximum height, you could maintain the aspect ratio by not setting the maximum width property.

TO SET THE MINIMUM WIDTH AND/OR HEIGHT

If the original QR code is smaller than the minimum width or height that is set, it will be enlarged so that it reaches the minimum value. If the original QR code is larger than the minimum width or height, it will not be resized.

a. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Unclassified** group. The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

b. To the right of **min-height** and/or **min-width**, click the down arrow and complete the fields in the popup. First you need to select **Length** in the top drop-down list. You can then enter a value in the lower-left area and choose from several different units of measurement (points, pixels, centimeters, etc.) in the lower-right area. Click **OK** when finished.

> **Note:** When resizing objects, you can ensure that the aspect ratio is maintained. For example, if you want certain objects to be resized so that they are at least 2 inches wide, you can make sure that the height of each object is adjusted accordingly so that it stays in proportion. To do this, you would set the minimum width at 2 inches. You would then leave the minimum height property unspecified. In the same way, if you were to specify a minimum height, you could maintain the aspect ratio by not setting the minimum width property.

8. Click to save your work.

To apply a particular style class to a QR code (after you create it in the Stylesheet Editor), simply right-click the QR code where it is inserted. Then from the menu, select **Style Class** and choose the appropriate style.

> **Note:** Please be aware that if you are using percentage for the size of an object, the percentage refers to the block containing that object, not to the object itself. For example, if you have an object in a topic and set the width to 60%, this does not mean that the object will be reduced to 60% of its size. Instead, it means that the object will be resized so that its width is 60% of the "container" where it is inserted.

> **Note:** When resizing a QR code, it is important that the width matches the height exactly. Otherwise, the QR code will not work. That is why it's useful to use the max-width or max-height properties, since they allow you to maintain the aspect ratio.

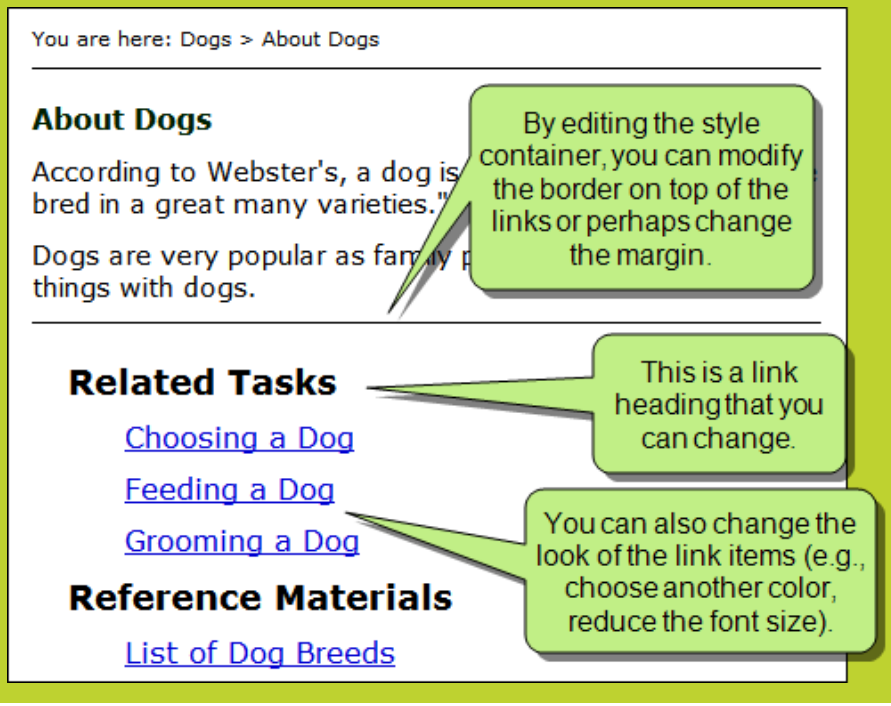
> **Note:** Use caution when resizing QR codes. If a code is too small, some QR code readers may have a difficult time reading it.

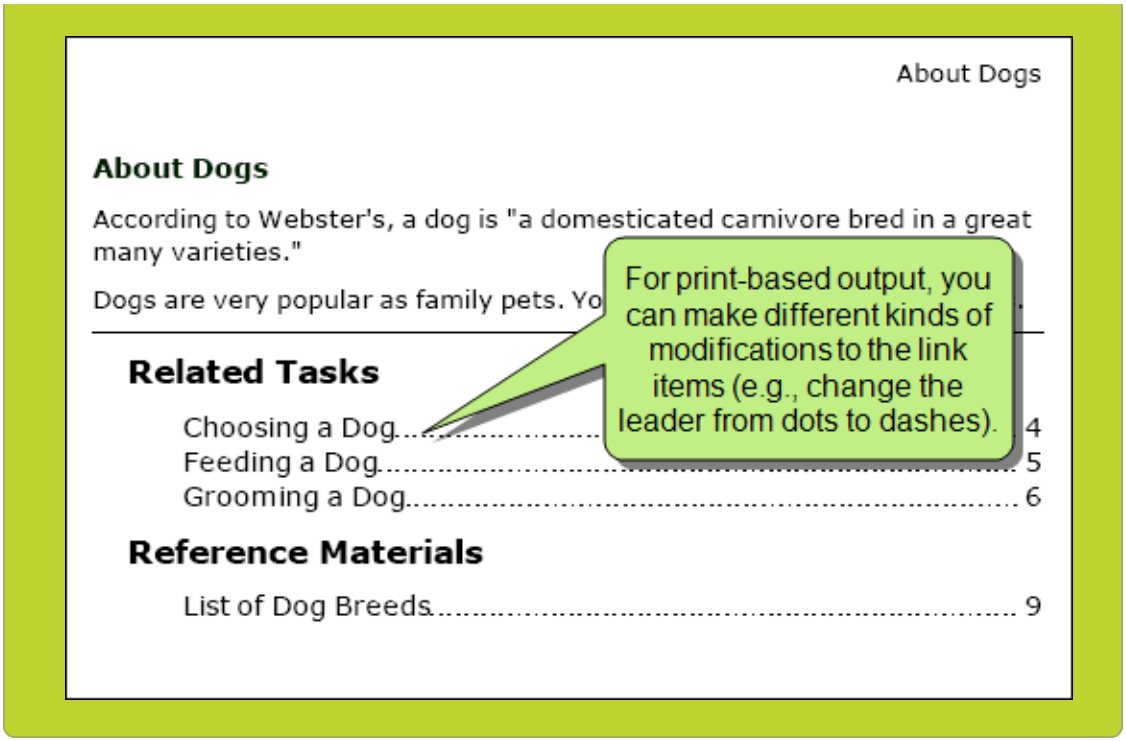
Relationship Links

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can edit the look of relationship links by adjusting the appropriate styles in your stylesheet. This might involve changing the look of any of the following: the container holding the links, the heading(s) above the links, the link items themselves. The Simplified view of the Stylesheet Editor lets you edit only some of the necessary styles; for the rest of the styles, you need to use the Advanced view.

EXAMPLE




About Dogs
About Dogs
According to Webster's, a dog is "a domesticated carnivore bred in a great many varieties."
Dogs are very popular as family pets. Yo
For print-based output, you can make different kinds of modifications to the link items (e.g., change the leader from dots to dashes).
Related Tasks
Choosing a Dog
4
Feeding a Dog
5
Grooming a Dog
6
Reference Materials
List of Dog Breeds
9

HOW TO EDIT THE CONTAINER

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: Some of the necessary style properties can also be changed in the Simplified view in the Stylesheet Editor.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Reusable Content Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section of the editor, select the **MadCap|relationshipsProxy** style.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Assorted Relevant Properties. The most relevant properties for that style are shown on the right side of the editor.
6. Following are some of the more common tasks that you may want to perform:

   BORDER PROPERTIES

   By default, a 1-pixel black border is already set, which separates the relationship links from the topic content above.

   a. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Border** group. The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
   b. Locate the border property that you want to change. Each side (bottom, left, right, top) has separate properties that you can set for the color, style, and width (e.g., border-bottom-style). You can set these properties individually, or you can set the main property for each side (e.g., border-bottom), which lets you specify the color, style, and width in one place. Even better, if you plan to have the same settings for all four sides, you can simply use the **border** property to set the color, style, and width all the way around. When you click in the cell to the right of one of the broad properties (e.g., border, border-bottom), a small popup displays.

      i. Use the lower-left area of the popup to enter a number for the border thickness.
      ii. Use the lower-middle area to select a unit of measurement (e.g., point, pixel, centimeter) for the number you entered.
      iii. Use the upper-right area to select a color for the border.

iv. Use the lower-right area to select a line type (e.g., solid, double, dashed) for the border.

v. Click **OK**.

MARGIN PROPERTIES

By default, a 10-pixel top margin is already set. The margin is the space around the outside of the container.

a. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Box** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

b. Locate the margin property that you want to change. Each side (bottom, left, right, top) has separate properties that you can set (e.g., margin-bottom, margin-left). However, if you plan to have the same settings for all four sides, you can simply use the main **margin** property to set the values all the way around. When you click in the cell to the right of one of the properties (e.g., margin, margin-bottom), a small popup displays.

   i. Use the lower-left area of the popup to enter a number for the amount of margin.

   ii. Use the lower-right area to select a unit of measurement (e.g., point, pixel, centimeter) for the number you entered.

   iii. Click **OK**.

PADDING PROPERTIES

By default, 20 pixels of padding are set on the left side of the container, and 10 pixels of padding are set on the top side. The padding is the space between the content inside the container and its outer edges.

a. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Box** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

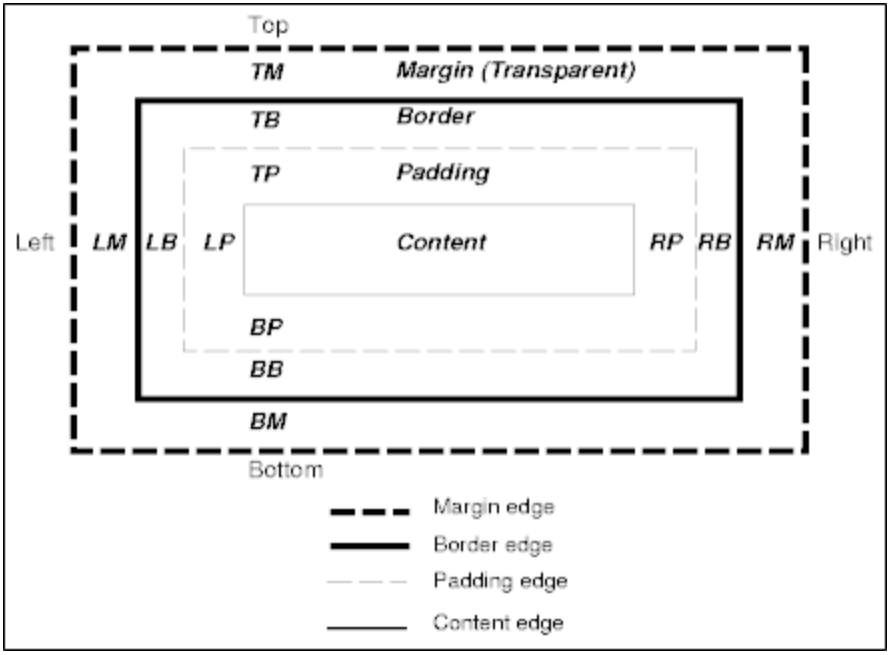
b. Locate the padding property that you want to change. Each side (bottom, left, right, top) has separate properties that you can set (e.g., padding-top). If you plan to have the same settings for all four sides, you can simply use the **padding** property.

c. Locate the padding property that you want to change. Each side (bottom, left, right, top) has separate properties that you can set (e.g., padding-top, padding-left). However, if you plan to have the same settings for all four sides, you can simply use the main **padding** property to set the values all the way around. When you click in the cell to the right of one of the properties (e.g., padding, padding-bottom), a small popup displays.

i. Use the lower-left area of the popup to enter a number for the amount of padding.

ii. Use the lower-right area to select a unit of measurement.

iii. Click **OK**.



7. Click to save your work.

HOW TO EDIT A HEADING

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Advanced View (which means that the Simplified view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Simplified View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section of the editor, expand the **MadCap|relationshipsHeading** style. Then select the appropriate style class under it:
   - **concept** This class lets you change the look of the heading that is displayed above any concept links (i.e., any topics found in the "concept" column of the relationships table).
   - **reference** This class lets you change the look of the heading that is displayed above any reference links (i.e., any topics found in the "reference" column of the relationships table).
   - **task** This class lets you change the look of the heading that is displayed above any task links (i.e., any topics found in the "task" column of the relationships table).

   Note: If you want to apply a setting that is used for all three of the classes, you can select the parent **MadCap|relationshipsHeading** style. Whatever you set for that style will trickle down to the three classes, unless a different value is already specified on that class.

   Note: The three style classes mentioned above are designed to work in sync with the column headings in the Relationship Table Editor. You can change the column heading (i.e., link type) for any of these in the editor via the column properties dialog. You can also create a custom column. But if you do this, make sure that you create a corresponding style class in the stylesheet to control that column. For example, if you create a custom column with a link type called "other," you should create a style class in the stylesheet named "MadCap|relationshipsHeading.other." If you do not create a unique style class for the custom column, it will use the settings from the parent MadCap|relationshipsHeading style. Therefore, the heading label will say "Related Information," instead of what you want it to say.

5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Assorted Relevant Properties. The most relevant properties for that style are shown on the right side of the editor.
6. Following are some of the more common tasks that you may want to perform.

   HEADING TEXT (LABEL)

   For the "concept" links, the default text is "Related Information." For the "reference" links, the default text is "Reference Materials." For the "task" links, the default text is "Related Tasks."

   » Click in the cell to the right of **mc-label** and replace the default text.

   FONT COLOR

   The default color is black.

   a. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Font** group.

      The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

   b. To the right of **color**, click the down arrow and select a color from the popup. For advanced color options, select **More Colors** and use the fields in the Color Picker dialog.

   FONT SIZE

   The default size is 14 points.

   a. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Font** group.

      The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

   b. To the right of **font-size**, click the down arrow and complete the fields in the popup. Enter a number in the field and use the down arrow in the lower-right corner to select a unit of measurement.

   c. Click **OK**.

   Note: You can also specify other style settings that can normally be done for fonts or paragraphs.

7. Click to save your work.

HOW TO EDIT LINK ITEMS

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Advanced View (which means that the Simplified view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Simplified View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Character Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section of the editor, select the **MadCap|relationshipsItem** style.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Assorted Relevant Properties. The most relevant properties for that style are shown on the right side of the editor.
6. Following are some of the more common tasks that you may want to perform.

   LEADER ALIGNMENT (FOR PRINT-BASED OUTPUT)

   This determines how the page numbers are aligned at the end of the leader. The default setting is right alignment.

   - Click in the cell to the right of **mc-leader-align** and select an alignment setting (**center**, **left**, **right**).

   LEADER FORMAT (FOR PRINT-BASED OUTPUT)

   This is the material that is shown between a topic name and the page number where it can be found. The default setting is a series of dots.

   - Click in the cell to the right of **mc-leader-format** and type whatever you want to be shown as the leader (e.g., dash, underline). Whatever you type will be repeated until the end of the leader.

   LEADER INDENT (FOR PRINT-BASED OUTPUT)

   This is the amount of space from the end of the list entry to the start of the leader.

   a. Click in the cell to the right of **mc-leader-indent**. A small popup displays.
   b. Use the lower-left area of the popup to enter a number.
   c. Use the lower-right area to select a unit of measurement.
   d. Click **OK**.

LEADER OFFSET (FOR PRINT-BASED OUTPUT)

This is the amount of space from the end of the leader to the page number following it.

a. Click in the cell to the right of **mc-leader-offset**. A small popup displays.
b. Use the lower-left area of the popup to enter a number.
c. Use the lower-right area to select a unit of measurement.
d. Click **OK**.

MARGIN

This the amount of space around each item. The default setting is a left margin of 24 points.

a. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Box** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

b. Locate the margin property that you want to change. Each side (bottom, left, right, top) has separate properties that you can set (e.g., margin-bottom, margin-left). However, if you plan to have the same settings for all four sides, you can simply use the main **margin** property to set the values all the way around. When you click in the cell to the right of one of the properties (e.g., margin, margin-bottom), a small popup displays.

   i. Use the lower-left area of the popup to enter a number for the amount of margin.
   ii. Use the lower-right area to select a unit of measurement (e.g., point, pixel, centimeter) for the number you entered.
   iii. Click **OK**.

FONT COLOR

The default color is black. The following instructions show you how to change the font color for print-based output. For online output, the color is based on the settings on the <a> tag, which controls the look of all text hyperlinks in your output. To change this, see "Text Hyperlinks" on page 457.

a. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Font** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

b. To the right of **color**, click the down arrow and select a color from the popup. For advanced color options, select **More Colors** and use the fields in the Color Picker dialog.

FONT SIZE

The default size is 14 points.

a. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Font** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

b. To the right of **font-size**, click the down arrow and complete the fields in the popup. Enter a number in the field and use the down arrow in the lower-right corner to select a unit of measurement.

c. Click **OK**.

> **Note:** You can also specify other style settings that can normally be done for fonts or paragraphs.

7. Click to save your work.

> **Note:** Different browsers may treat margin and padding settings differently. For example, Internet Explorer 8 and Firefox honor padding settings more than they honor margin settings. If you were to set a left margin at, say, 1 inch, Internet Explorer 7 would show it that way. However, in order to get the same results in Internet Explorer 8 or Firefox, you would also need to set the left padding at 1 inch.

Search—Highlighted Terms

This feature is supported in DotNet Help, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, and WebHelp Plus output.

When users perform searches in your online output, the keywords that are found are highlighted in the topics. The background for each term found in a topic is highlighted in a different color. In Flare you can use styles to change not only the color background, but other settings as well (e.g., font style, text decoration).

HOW TO CHANGE THE STYLE OF HIGHLIGHTED SEARCH TERMS

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Character Styles.
4. Create new classes to hold the style information for the search terms found in a topic. You can do this for the first 10 terms that users enter in the search field, naming each class "span.SearchHighlight1," "span.SearchHighlight2," and so on until you create "span.SearchHighlight10." The easiest way to create these classes is to import them from a Flare factory stylesheet, but you can also create them manually.

   E X A M P L E

   Let's say that you have the following three classes: span.SearchHighlight1, span.SearchHighlight2, and span.SearchHighlight3. For span.SearchHighlight1, you change the background color to blue. For span.SearchHighlight2, you change the background color to orange. And for span.SearchHighlight3, you change the background color to yellow.

   If a user enters "topic information help find" in the search field, the term "topic" will be displayed with a blue background everywhere it occurs in a topic. The term "information" will be displayed with an orange background, and the term "help" will be displayed with a yellow background. The term "find" will be displayed with the default background color specified by Flare (since you did not change it).

If another user enters "help find topic information" in the search field, the term "help" will be displayed with a blue background. The term "find" will be displayed with an orange background, and the term "topic" will be displayed with a yellow background. The term "information" will be displayed with the default background color specified by Flare (since you did not change it).

TO IMPORT THESE CLASSES FROM A FLARE FACTORY STYLESHEET

i. In the local toolbar, click the **Options** button and select **Import Styles**. The Import Styles dialog opens.

ii. In the **Library Folders** section, make sure **Factory Stylesheets** is selected.

iii. In the **Stylesheets** section, select **SearchHighlight**.

iv. (Optional) In the **[Medium]** drop-down list, you can select a specific medium. This determines the medium to which the styles are imported in your current stylesheet. If you select "default," the imported style properties will be applied to all of the mediums in the other stylesheet. If you select a custom medium, the imported style properties will be imported to that medium in the other stylesheet. For more information see "The Basics" on page 546.

v. In the section below, click the **Import** check box next to each style class named **span.SearchHighlight** followed by a number. There are 10 of these style classes.

vi. Click **OK**. The style classes are added to the current stylesheet.

TO CREATE THESE CLASSES MANUALLY

i. In the **Styles** section on the left side of the editor, select the **span** tag.

ii. In the local toolbar, click Add Class. The New Style dialog opens.

iii. Enter `SearchHighlight1` (or replace 1 with another number at the end, up to 10).

iv. Click **OK**.

5. Select the new style class that you want to modify.

6. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.

7. In the **Properties** section to the right, locate the specific property that you want to change. Not only can you change the background color, but you can change any other property for the class as well. The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

8. Click in the value column on the right side. Depending on the type of property, you can either type the value, select it from a drop-down list, or complete the values in a dialog or popup box.If you completed values in a popup, click **OK** at the bottom of the box.

E X A M P L E

Let's say that you want to change the background color for the class span.SearchHighlight1. After you select that class on the left you can double-click the **Background** property group on the right side of the editor. Then in the cell to the right of **background-color**, click the down arrow and choose the color you want.

9. Click to save your work.

Note: You can also modify search highlight styles for HTML5 output. However, it is done in the Skin Editor instead of the Stylesheet Editor. See "Search Results in HTML5 Skins" on page 612.

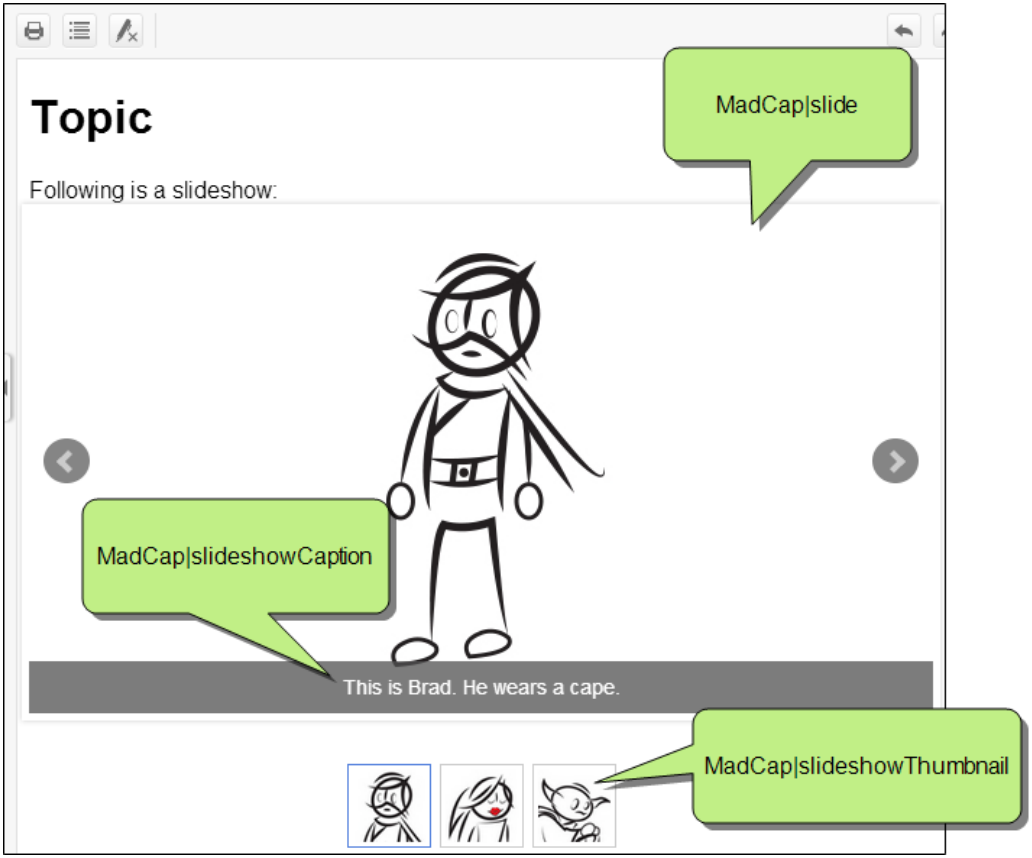
Slideshows

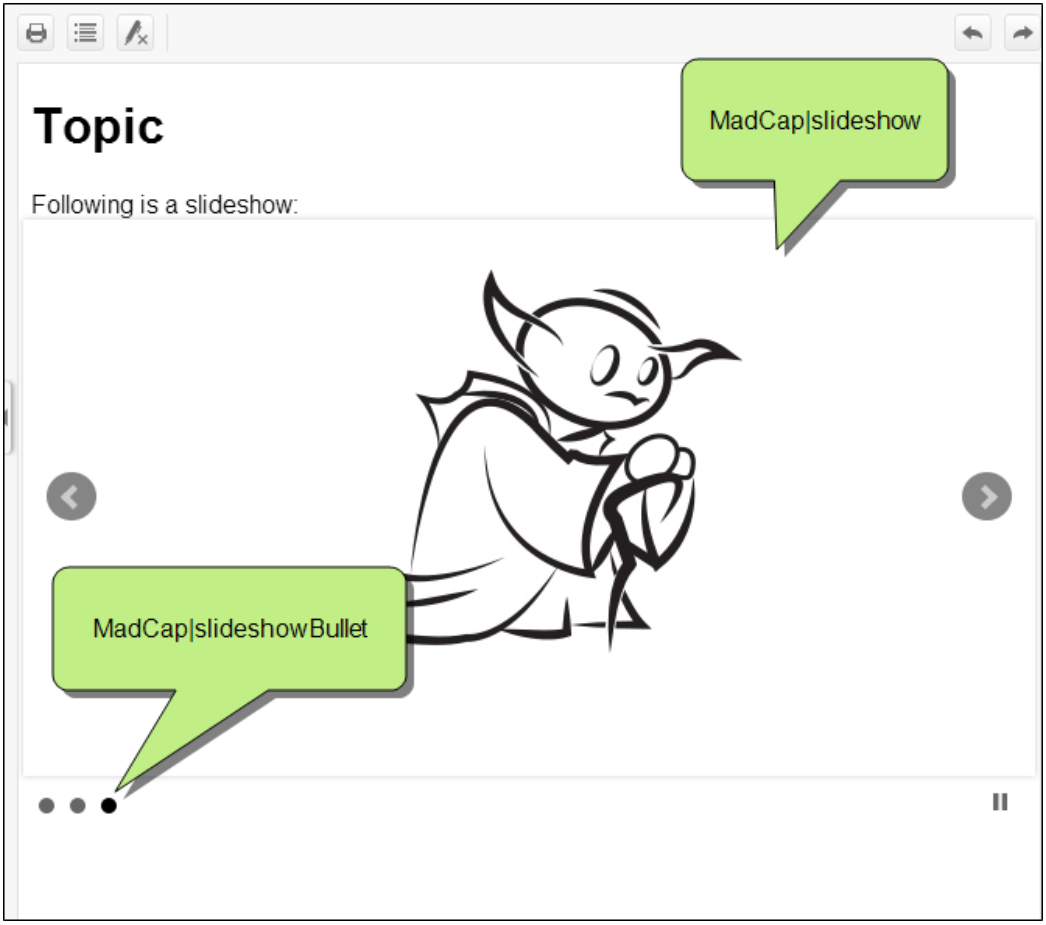
This feature is supported in DotNet Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, and WebHelp Plus output.

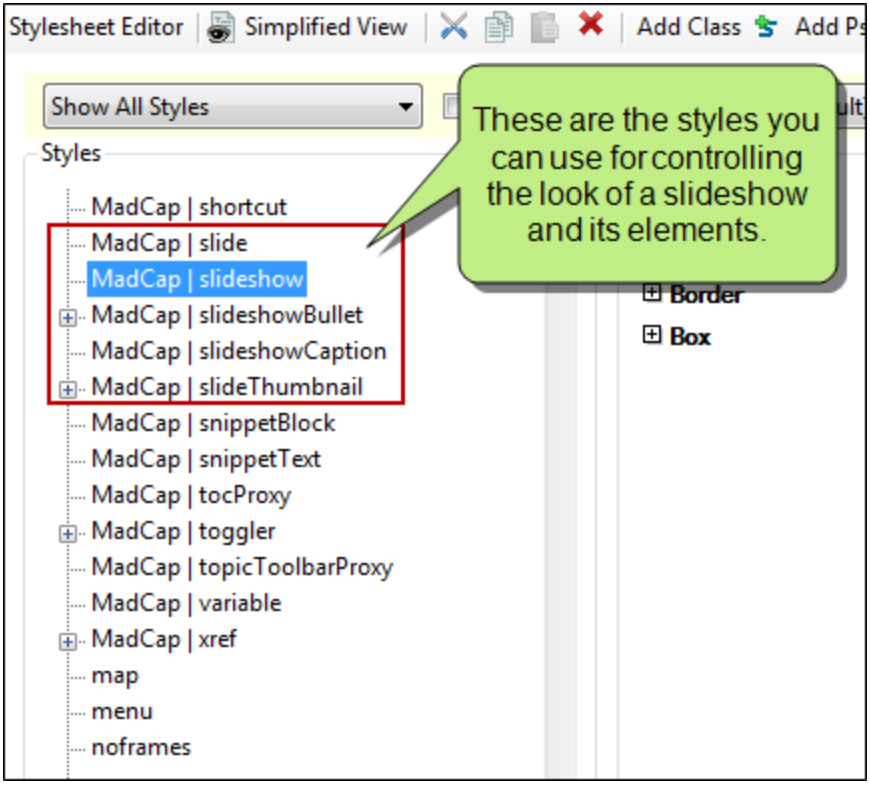
You can edit styles to control the look of slideshows. When you do this, the look changes for all slideshows throughout your project.

HOW TO EDIT SLIDESHOW STYLES

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select **Show All Styles**.
4. In the **Styles** section on the left side of the editor, find and select one of the following styles, depending on what you want to accomplish.


Topic
Following is a slideshow:
MadCap|slide
MadCap|slideshowCaption
This is Brad. He wears a cape.
MadCap|slideshowThumbnail


Topic
Following is a slideshow:
MadCap|slideshow
MadCap|slideshowBullet

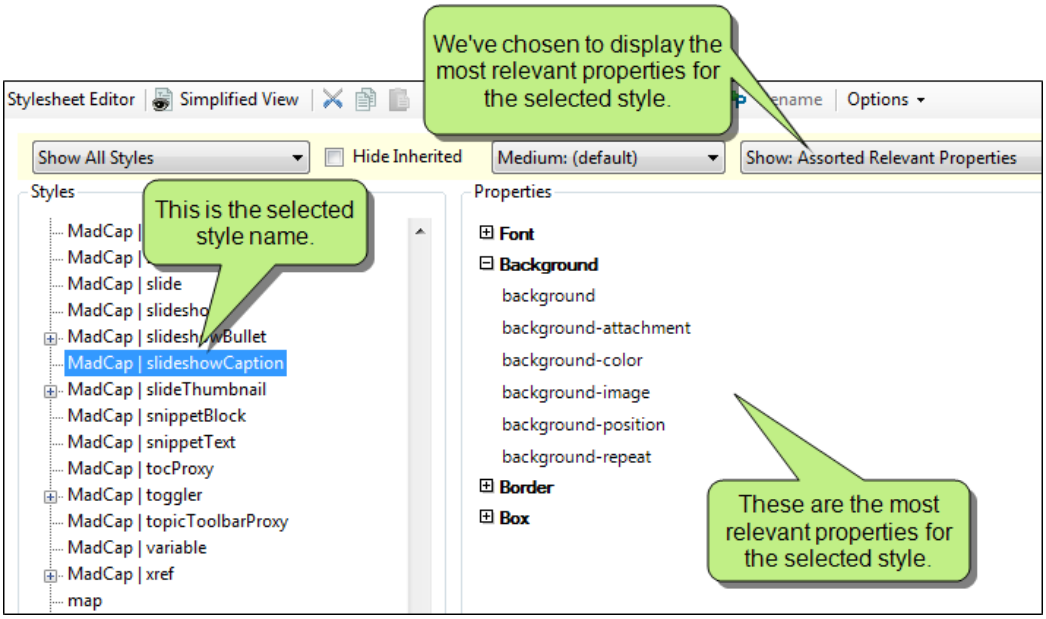


- **MadCap|slide** This controls the look of the containers holding individual slides.
- **MadCap|slideshow** This controls the look of the container holding the entire slideshow. Keep in mind that if you have competing styles set, those set in the MadCap|slide style take precedence. For example, if you set the background on MadCap|slideshow to blue and the background on MadCap|slide to yellow, the background will be yellow. But if you then change the background for MadCap|slide to (default), the background will show as blue.
- **MadCap|slideshowBullet** This controls the look of the series of dots used to navigate to specific slides. Keep in mind that if you choose to include thumbnail images, the MadCap|slideThumbnail style will be used instead.

» **MadCap|slideshowCaption** This controls the look of the caption at the bottom of the slide.

» **MadCap|slideThumbnail** This controls the look of the thumbnail image area at the bottom of the slide.

5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Assorted Relevant Properties. The most relevant properties for that style are shown on the right side of the editor.



6. From the **Properties** section, change values for any of the style's properties.

7. Click to save your work.

Tables

This feature is supported in all outputs.

In addition to simply clicking in cells and typing text, there are several ways that you can edit tables after inserting them into topics. Following are the ways that you can edit tables using styles.

- **Regular Stylesheets** You can modify the look and feel of multiple tables at once by editing standard HTML table tags (e.g., <table>, <th>, <td>, <tr>) in your regular stylesheet. For example, you might use these styles in order to control the look of the text that appears in your table headings (<th> style) or within the cells (<td> style). See "Editing Table Styles in Regular Stylesheets" on page 369. When you insert a table, it is set up by default to use standard table tags in the individual cells (e.g., <th> for table headers, <td> for regular table text). However, if you press Enter at the end of a line, a <p> tag is added within the standard tag. Therefore, in order to keep all of the content in your table cells looking consistent, you may want to create a special style class of the <p> tag to be used for table content (e.g., p.tabletext) and apply that style to all of your cells when you first create a table. You can apply specific styles to tables by selecting the table cells, clicking **Table>Cell Content Style**, and choosing the style to be used for those cells. See "Selecting Styles for Table Cell Contents" on page 371.
- **Table Stylesheets** You can modify the look and feel of multiple tables at once by editing the properties in a custom table stylesheet. These table stylesheets let you easily and quickly create patterns and different looks for tables. See "Editing Table Stylesheets" on page 527.

Note: For the differences between regular stylesheets, table stylesheets, and local properties—and when you should use one over the other—see "Regular Stylesheets, Table Stylesheets, or Local Properties?" on page 34

Tip: When controlling the look of tables, it is a good idea to choose just one method for styling them. You should use either (A) table stylesheets and perhaps classes of the <p> style (e.g., p.TableText) for table content (see "Selecting Styles for Table Cell Contents" on page 371), or (B) standard table styles from a regular stylesheet.

If you use standard table tags at the parent level (e.g., tr, td), you may run into trouble if you also use proxies in your project. The reason for this is that when proxies are generated, they also use standard parent-level table styles. So any style changes you make to the standard table styles may be seen not only in tables, but also in generated content created via proxies (e.g., TOCs, indexes). In this case, it would be wiser to use classes of the standard table styles (e.g., tr.myclass, td.myclass), instead of table styles at the parent level.

However, if you decide to use classes of standard table styles (e.g., tr.myclass, td.myclass), you may be faced with a different dilemma. This issue occurs when you also use table stylesheets. That's because the table stylesheet settings will overwrite settings on the classes.

- **Breaks—Page, Column, Frame** You can set page, column, and frame breaks on tables using a couple of different options. In regular stylesheets, you can set breaks on the standard HTML table tags. The most common approach is to set breaks on table rows through the <tr> style tag. Another option is that you can set breaks on entire tables and individual rows through a table stylesheet. And because you can create patterns in table stylesheets, each pattern item might have different settings for breaks. See "Setting Page, Column, and Frame Breaks on Tables" on page 375.
- **Rounded Borders** For most output formats, you can use CSS3 border-radius style properties to create rounded borders on tables. See "Creating Rounded Borders on Paragraphs and Tables " on page 256.

Editing Table Styles in Regular Stylesheets

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can modify the look and feel of multiple tables at once by editing standard HTML table tags (e.g., <table>, <th>, <td>, <tr>) in your regular stylesheet. For example, you might use these styles in order to control the look of the text that appears in your table headings (<th> style) or within the cells (<td> style).

HOW TO EDIT TABLE STYLES IN A REGULAR STYLESHEET

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Table Styles.
4. From the area below, select the appropriate table style.
   - **caption** This tag lets you modify the table caption, which is a short title or description of the table's purpose. When inserting or editing a table, you can add a caption above or below the table.
   - **col** This tag lets you group together attribute specifications for table columns. The <col> elements are empty and serve only as a support for attributes. They may appear inside or outside an explicit column group (i.e., <colgroup> element).
   - **colgroup** This tag lets you group columns together structurally. The number of columns in the column group may be specified by using the element's tag or by the <col> element, which represents one or more columns in the group.
   - **table** This tag lets you modify entire tables. It contains all other elements that specify caption, rows, content, and formatting.
   - **tbody** This tag lets you modify the main rows in a table (i.e., not the header or footer rows). Each <tbody> tag must have at least one <tr> tag within it, which is used to represent a single row.
   - **td** This tag lets you modify the data (or content) in the primary cells of a table. When you press Enter after the first paragraph in a table cell, a paragraph <p> tag is added inside each <td> tag in that cell.

- **tfoot** This tag lets you modify a footer row in a table. When a table requires multiple pages in print layouts and outputs, the footer row is placed at the bottom of the last page. Each <tfoot> tag must have at least one <tr> tag within it, which is used to represent a single row.
- **th** This tag lets you modify the header content in a table. Why not just use the <td> tag for header content as well? First, by having different tags, you can more easily dictate one look for the header text (e.g., bold font) and a different look for the main content in the table (e.g., normal font). Second, using separate tags greatly assists users with visual disabilities, making it possible for multi-modal wireless browsers with limited display capabilities (e.g., Web-enabled pagers and phones) to handle tables. When you press Enter after the first paragraph in a table cell, a paragraph <p> tag is added inside each <th> tag in that cell.
- **thead** This tag lets you modify a header row in a table. When a table requires multiple pages in output, the header row is repeated by default at the top of each page. Each <thead> tag must have at least one <tr> tag within it, which is used to represent a single row.
- **tr** This tag lets you modify single rows that are contained within <tbody>, <tfoot>, and <thead> tags.

For more about each of these tags, please refer to **http://www.w3c.org**.

5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Assorted Relevant Properties. The most relevant properties for that style are shown on the right side of the editor.
6. In the **Properties** section, you can expand the group. Click in the field to the right of a property to change its setting.

   Most of the relevant properties are the same as those used for regular paragraph formatting. For details about using the features on these tabs, see "Paragraph Formatting" on page 249.

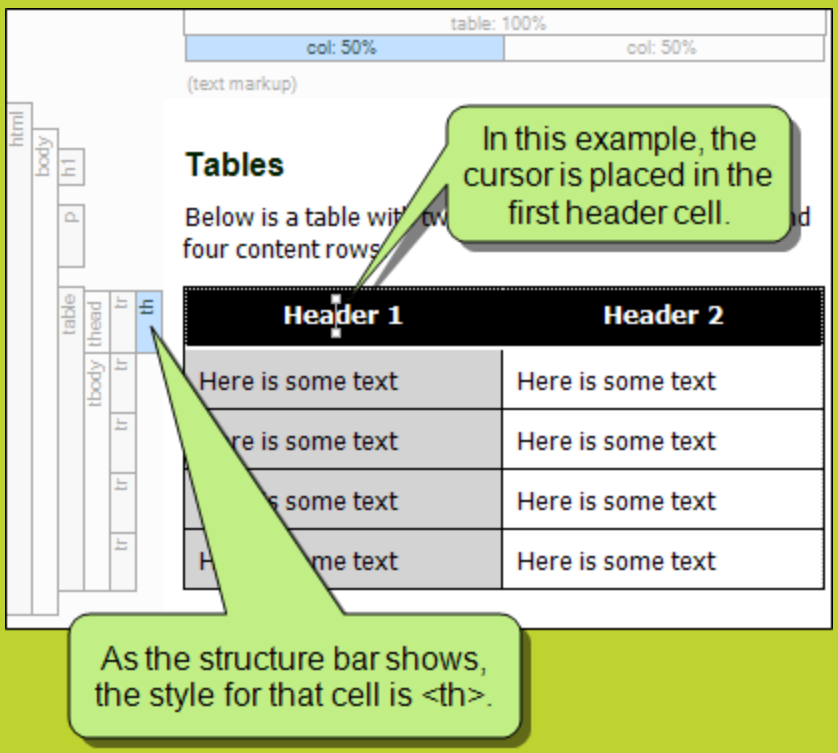
   For the <td> and <th> styles, you also might want to adjust the vertical alignment of text (e.g., top, middle, bottom). You can do this by expanding the Cell property group and setting the **vertical-align** property.
7. Click to save your work.

Selecting Styles for Table Cell Contents

When you insert a table, it is set up by default to use standard table tags in the individual cells (e.g., <th> for table headers, <td> for regular table text). However, if you press Enter at the end of a line, a <p> tag is added within the standard tag. Therefore, in order to keep all of the content in your table cells looking consistent, you may want to create a special style class of the <p> tag to be used for table content (e.g., p.tabletext) and apply that style to all of your cells when you first create a table. You can apply specific styles to tables by selecting the table cells, clicking **Table>Cell Content Style**, and choosing the style to be used for those cells.

E X A M P L E

If you select a <td> or <th> style, all cells are converted to "non-p" cells, like this:



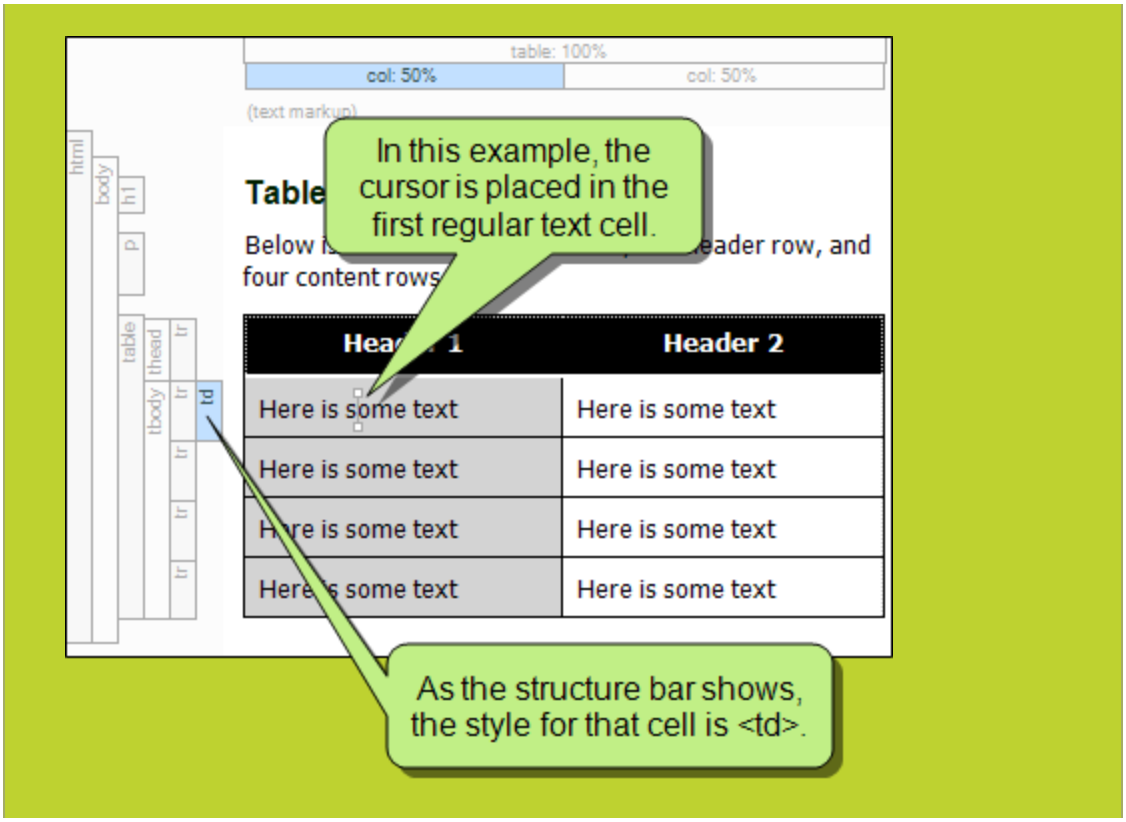
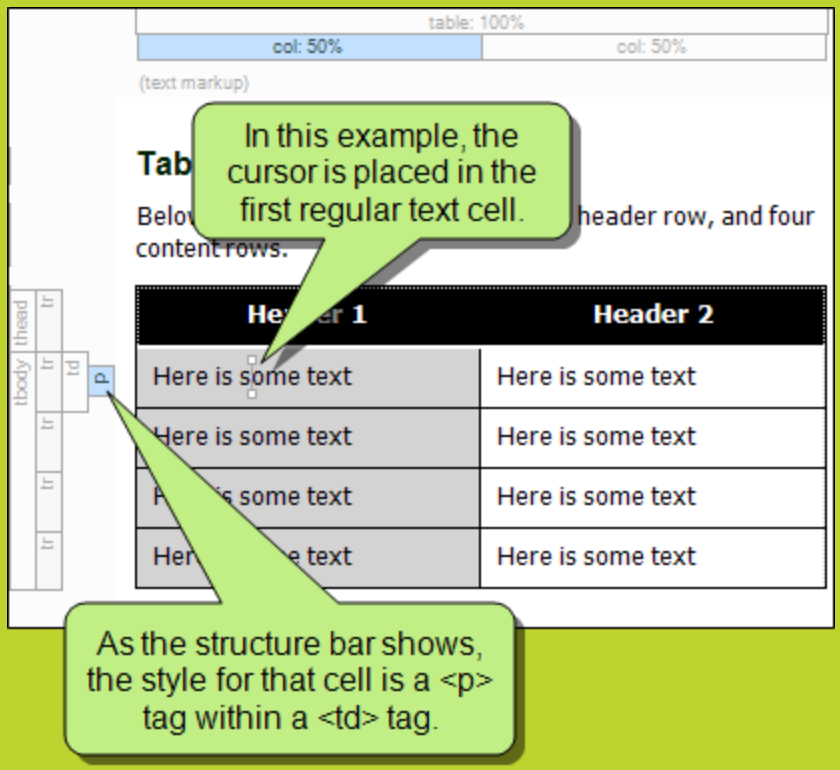


table: 100%
col: 50%
col: 50%
(text markup)
In this example, the cursor is placed in the first regular text cell.
Header 2
Here is some text
Here is some text
Here is some text
Here is some text
Here is some text
Here is some text
Here is some text
Here is some text
As the structure bar shows, the style for that cell is <td>.

If you select a <p> style, all selected cells are converted to "td with p" cells:



HOW TO SELECT STYLES FOR TABLE CELL CONTENTS

1. Open the content file (e.g., topic, snippet).
2. Select the table cells for which you want to use a certain style.
3. Do one of the following, depending on the part of the user interface you are using:
   - **Ribbon** Select the **Table** ribbon. In the **Cells** section select **Cell Content Style**.
   - **Menu** Select **Table>Cell Content Style**.

   The Table Cell Content Style dialog opens, displaying the available paragraph styles in your stylesheet.
4. From the list, select the style that you want to use for the selected cells. If you select (none), any paragraph style applied will be removed from those cells.
5. Click **OK**.
6. Click to save your work.

Setting Page, Column, and Frame Breaks on Tables

This feature is supported in all print outputs (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, and XHTML).

You can set page, column, and frame breaks on tables using a couple of different options. For additional information about frame breaks and why you might use them, see "Setting Frame Breaks on Paragraphs and Headings" on page 298.

In regular stylesheets, you can set breaks on the standard HTML table tags. The most common approach for page breaks is to set them on table rows through the <tr> style tag. Another option is that you can set breaks on rows (and on entire tables) through a table stylesheet. And because you can create patterns in table stylesheets, each pattern item might have different settings for breaks.

You might use standard HTML table tags in a regular stylesheet if you want all tables to follow the same behavior when it comes to breaks. On the other hand, you might use table style settings if you have complex tables and patterns requiring some table elements to break in a certain way and other elements to behave differently.

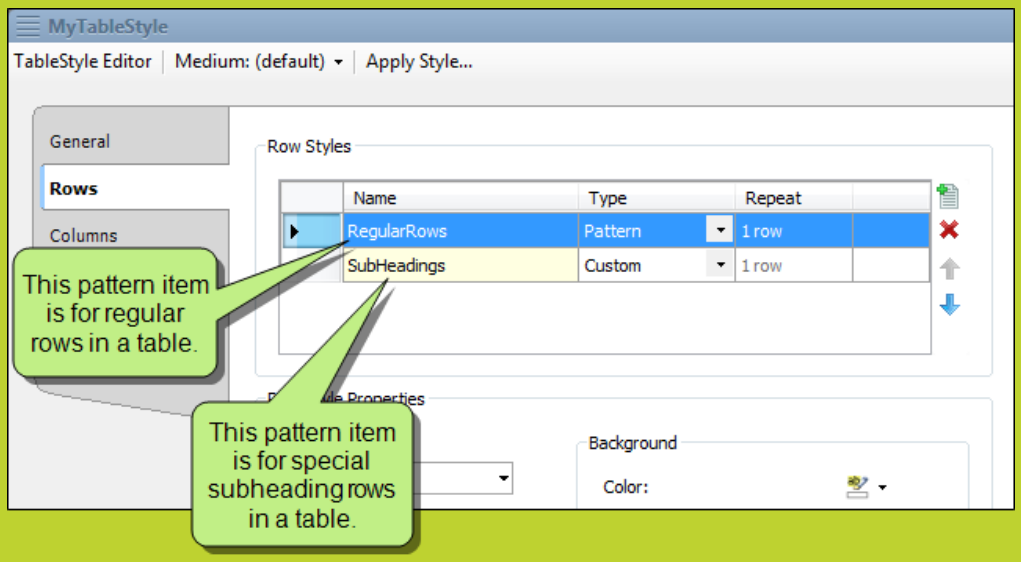
EXAMPLE—PAGE BREAK IN REGULAR STYLESHEET

Let's say you have a long table. In the output, the first part of the table might be shown on page 14, and the second part of it is shown on page 15. Suppose the final table row on page 14 has so much content that it wraps around to page 15, in essence splitting that row. If you would rather not split rows such as this, but rather keep them entirely on one page or another, you can set a page break on the <tr> style tag in a regular stylesheet. In this situation, you would set the "page-break-inside" property to "avoid." Therefore, all tables in your output would simply break automatically at the end of pages when necessary.

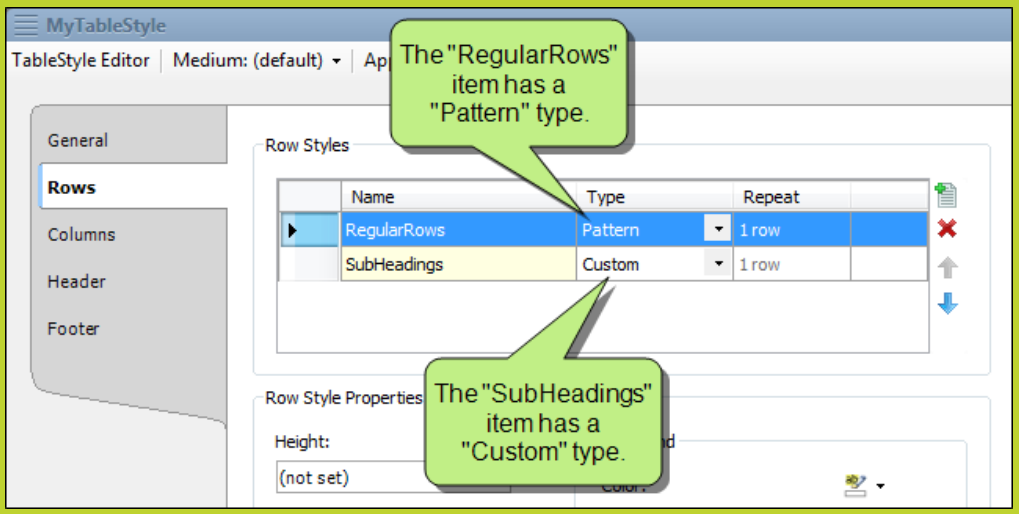
EXAMPLE—PAGE BREAK IN SPECIAL TABLE STYLESHEET

Let's say you have many tables where you have not only main headings with a gray background at the top of each table, but subheadings with a blue background every so many rows. And whenever a new subheading is needed, you want a page break to occur before it so that the subheading row begins a new page.

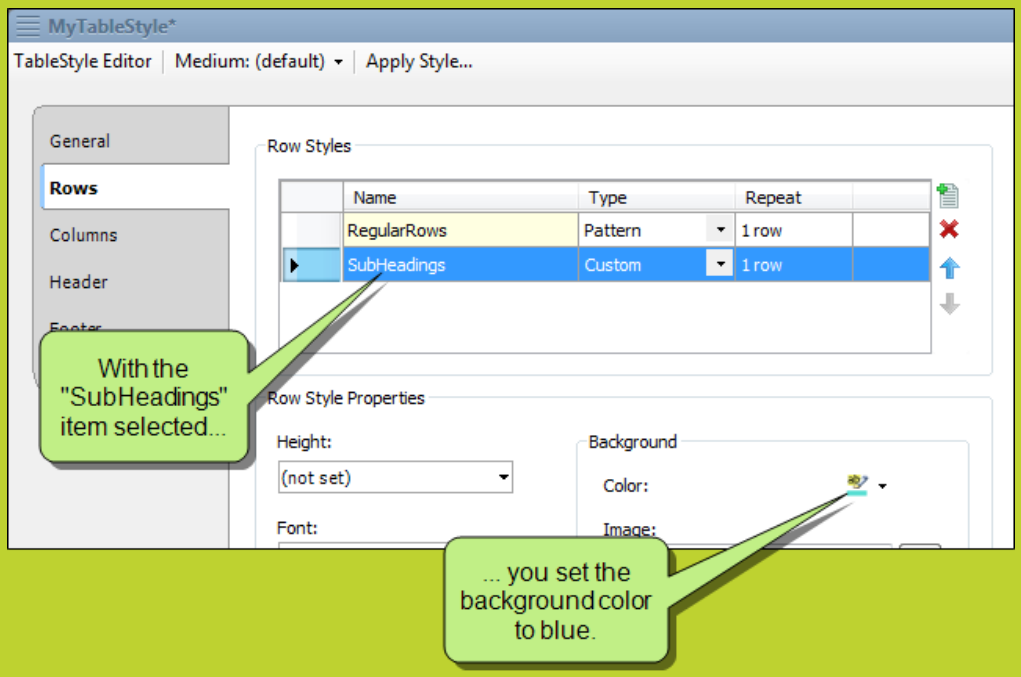
After designing your main header row in the Header tab of the Table Style Editor, you open the Rows tab. In the Rows tab you create two pattern items—one for the main table rows and another for rows used as subheadings.



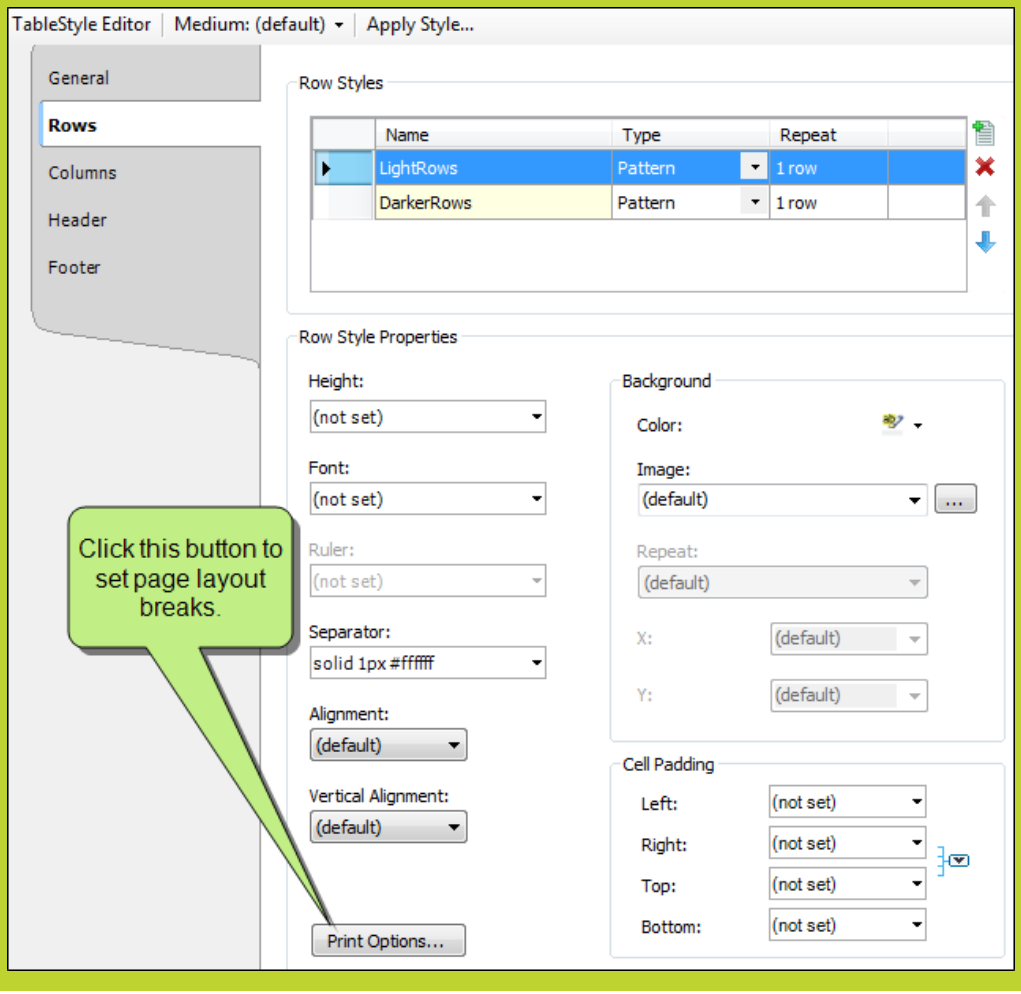
You leave the "RegularRows" item set as a "Pattern" type, which means that this style will be applied to rows in the table automatically. On the other hand, you change the type of the "SubHeadings" item to "Custom." This means that the style will not automatically be applied to rows to be used as subheadings; instead, you must apply the style to those rows manually. Why? Because you can't predict when you're going to need a subheading in a table. So you simply apply that look whenever it's needed.



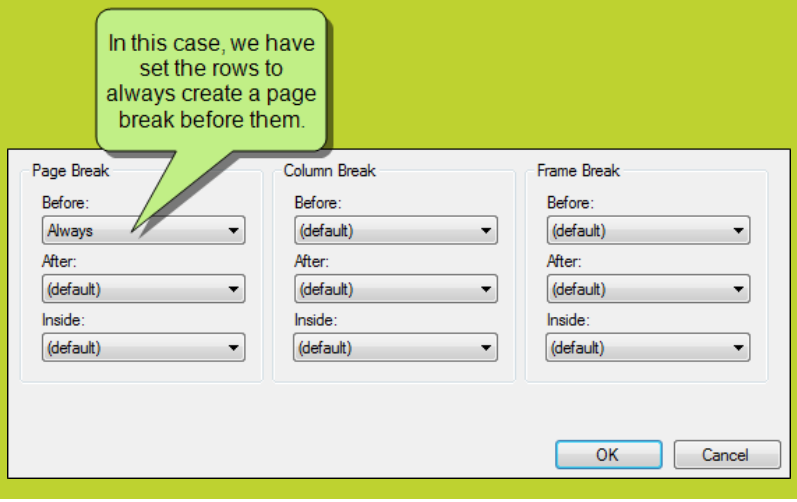
As mentioned, subheading rows should have a blue background, so that's what you set in the **Background** area.



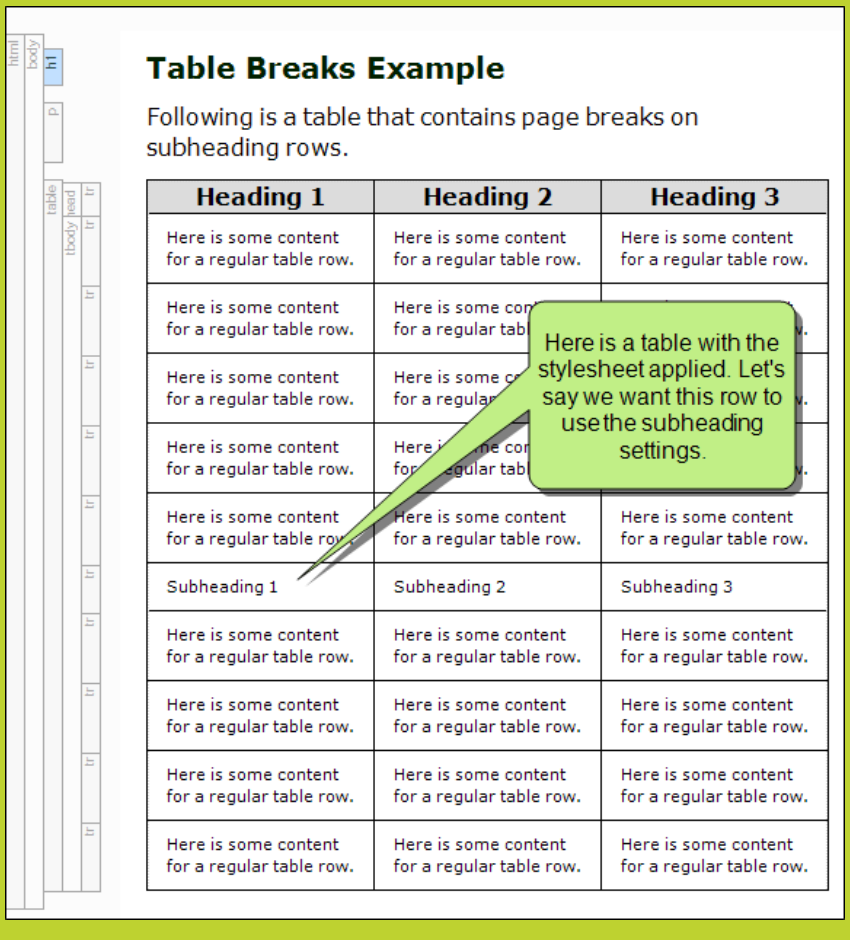
With the "SubHeadings" item still selected, you can click the **Print Options** button at the bottom of the tab.



In the Breaks dialog you select **Always** in the **Before** field in the **Page Break** section.



After you are finished designing your table stylesheet, you insert a table into a topic and apply the table stylesheet to it. But because the "SubHeading" pattern item was set to "Custom," none of the rows initially have the blue background or the page break setting.



In PDF output the table might look like this:

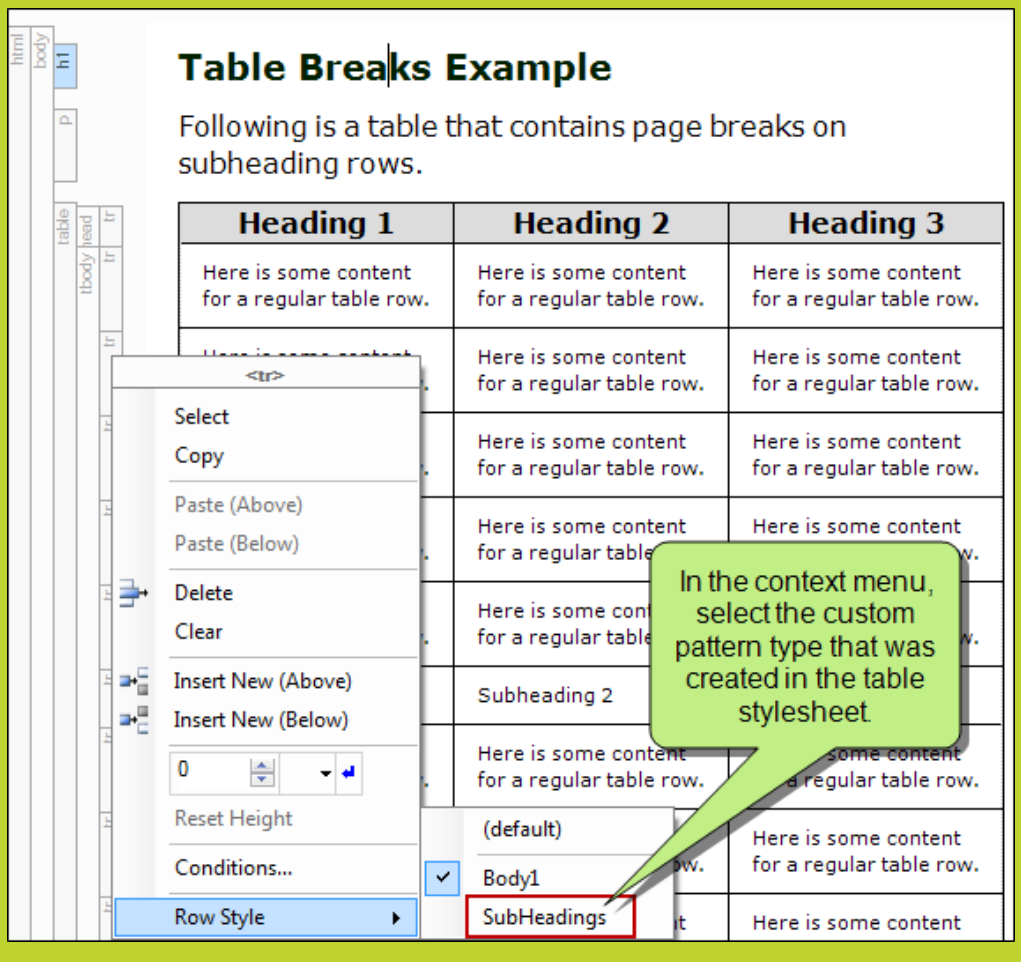
Table Breaks Example

Following is a table that contains page breaks on subheading rows.

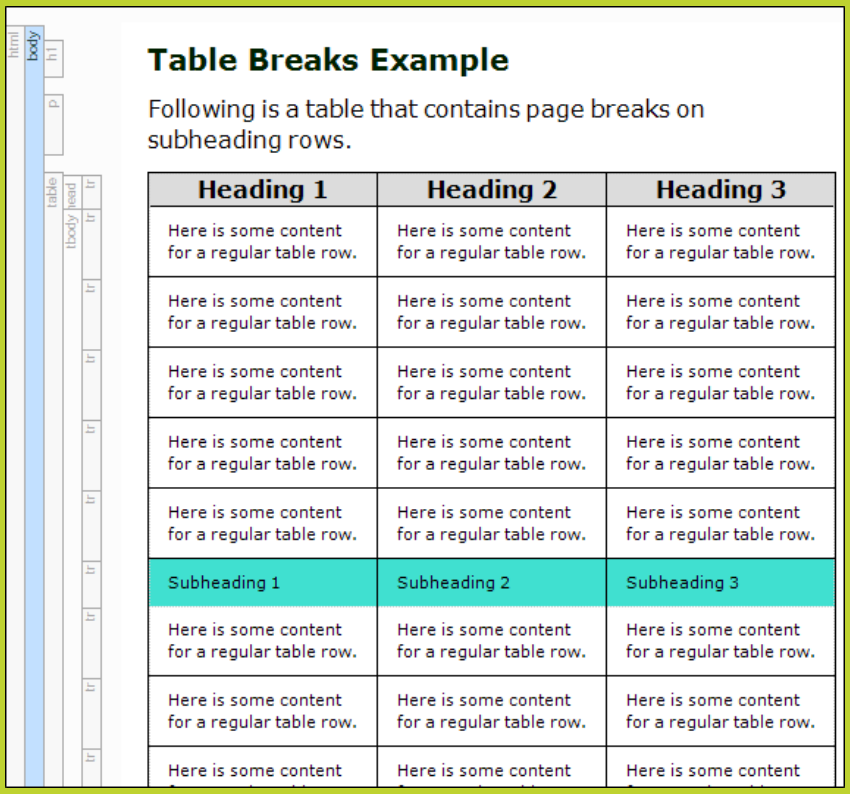
Heading 1	Heading 2	Heading 3
Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.
Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.
Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.
Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.
Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.
Subheading 1	Subheading 2	Subheading 3
Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.
Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.
Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.
Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.

- 1 -

In order for a row to be treated as a subheading row with a page break, you need to right-click on the **tr** tag bar and select the custom "SubHeadings" style.



In the XML Editor, the table might now look like this (in this example, the topic is being viewed with the Default medium, which is why we don't see the page break in action):



And in the PDF output, it would look like this:

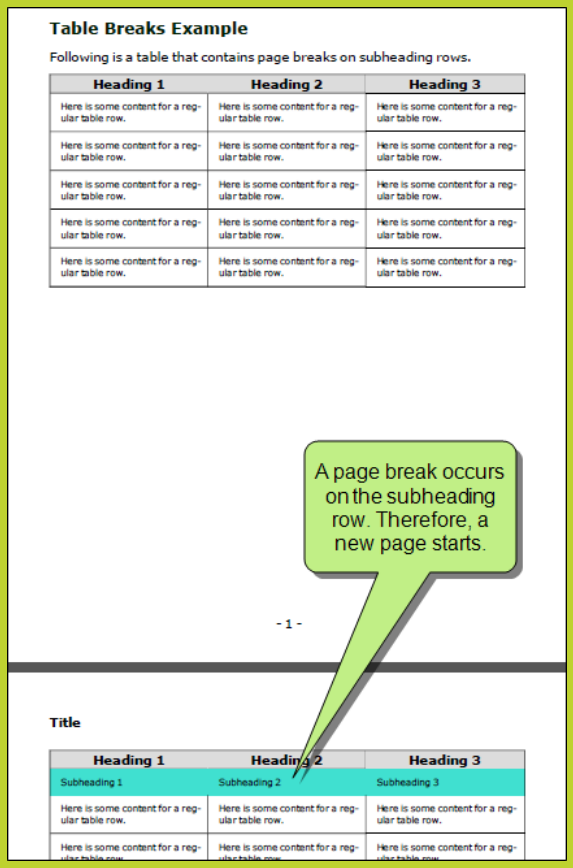


Table Breaks Example

Following is a table that contains page breaks on subheading rows.

Heading 1	Heading 2	Heading 3
Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.
Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.
Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.
Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.
Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.

A page break occurs on the subheading row. Therefore, a new page starts.

- 1 -

Title

Heading 1	Heading 2	Heading 3
Subheading 1	Subheading 2	Subheading 3
Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.
Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.	Here is some content for a regular table row.

HOW TO SET BREAKS FOR TABLES IN A REGULAR STYLESHEET

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Make sure the appropriate medium is selected. If you are not using stylesheet mediums for your different outputs or if you want all mediums to have the same settings, just leave the medium set to "default" and continue.

   Mediums can be used if you want to use one group of settings for online output types (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus) and another group of settings for print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). For example, you might use the "default" medium for your online outputs and you might use the "print" medium for your print outputs.
3. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
4. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Table Styles.
5. From the list below, select the appropriate style. Usually you want to put a break on <table> (which sets the break on the entire table) or <tr> (which sets the break on rows, allowing you to easily end a page with one row due to the amount of content, and begin the next page with the following row).
6. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
7. In the **Properties** section, expand the **PrintSupport** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
8. Select the appropriate property and value for it. Perhaps the most common setting is to click to the right of **page-break-inside**, and select **avoid**. If you do this for the <tr> tag, Flare will automatically create a break between rows so that row content does not continue from one page to another.

   COLUMN-BREAK-BEFORE

   Click to the right of this property to set a column break before the element (if you are using a multi-column page layout).

   - **always** A column break will always occur before the element.
   - **auto** A column break will neither be forced nor prevented before the element.
   - **avoid** A column break will not occur before the element.
   - **inherit** The column break setting of the parent tag is used.

COLUMN-BREAK-AFTER

Click to the right of this property to set a column break after the element (if you are using a multi-column page layout).

- **always** A column break will always occur after the element.
- **auto** A column break will neither be forced nor prevented after the element.
- **avoid** A column break will not occur after the element.
- **inherit** The column break setting of the parent tag is used.

COLUMN-BREAK-INSIDE

Click to the right of this property to set a column break after the element (if you are using a multi-column page layout).

- **auto** A column break will neither be forced nor prevented inside the rendering box of the element.
- **avoid** A column break will not occur inside the rendering box of the element.
- **inherit** The column break setting of the parent tag is used.

FRAME-BREAK-BEFORE

Click to the right of this property to set a frame break before the element.

- **always** A frame break will always occur before the element.
- **auto** A frame break will neither be forced nor prevented before the element.
- **avoid** A frame break will not occur before the element.
- **inherit** The frame break setting of the parent tag is used.

FRAME-BREAK-AFTER

Click to the right of this property to set a frame break after the element.

- **always** A frame break will always occur after the element.
- **auto** A frame break will neither be forced nor prevented after the element.
- **avoid** A frame break will not occur after the element.
- **inherit** The frame break setting of the parent tag is used.

FRAME-BREAK-INSIDE

You can select one of the options for setting a frame break inside the "rendering box" of the element.

- **automatic** A frame break will neither be forced nor prevented inside the rendering box of the element.
- **avoid** A frame break will not occur inside the rendering box of the element.

- **inherit** The frame break setting of the parent tag is used.

PAGE-BREAK-BEFORE

Click to the right of this property to set a page break before the element.

- **always** A page break will always occur before the element.
- **auto** A page break will neither be forced nor prevented before the element.
- **avoid** A page break will not occur before the element.
- **inherit** The page break setting of the parent tag is used.
- **left** One or two page breaks will occur before the element so that the next page is formatted as a left page.
- **right** One or two page breaks will occur before the element so that the next page is formatted as a right page.

PAGE-BREAK-AFTER

Click to the right of this property to set a page break after the element.

- **always** A page break will always occur after the element.
- **auto** A page break will neither be forced nor prevented after the element.
- **avoid** A page break will not occur after the element.
- **inherit** The page break setting of the parent tag is used.
- **left** One or two page breaks will occur after the element so that the next page is formatted as a left page.
- **right** One or two page breaks will occur after the element so that the next page is formatted as a right page.

PAGE-BREAK-INSIDE

Click to the right of this property to set a page break inside the "rendering box" of the element.

- **auto** A page break will neither be forced nor prevented inside the rendering box of the element.
- **avoid** A page break will not occur inside the rendering box of the element.
- **inherit** The page break setting of the parent tag is used.

9. Click to save your work.

HOW TO SET BREAKS IN A TABLE STYLESHEET

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the Table Style Editor, select the appropriate tab, depending on the table element that you want to create the break for.
   - **General tab** This tab lets you set breaks for the entire table.
   - **Rows tab** This tab lets you set breaks for regular rows in the table.
3. If the tab has multiple pattern items, select the one that you want to set the break for (e.g., in the Row Styles section).
4. Toward the bottom of the tab click the **Print Options** button. (You may need to use the scroll bar to view this button.) The Breaks dialog opens.
5. Use the **Page Break**, **Column Break**, and **Frame Break** sections in the dialog to specify the settings for a page, column, or frame break, respectively.

   BEFORE

   You can select one of the options for setting a page or column break before the element.

   - **Automatic** A break will neither be forced nor prevented before the element.
   - **Always** A break will always occur before the element.
   - **Avoid** A break will not occur before the element.
   - **Force to 'left page'** One or two page breaks will occur before the element so that the next page is formatted as a left page. This option is available only for page breaks, not for column or frame breaks.
   - **Force to 'right page'** One or two page breaks will occur before the element so that the next page is formatted as a right page. This option is available only for page breaks, not for column or frame breaks.

   AFTER

   You can select one of the options for setting a break after the element.

   - **Automatic** A break will neither be forced nor prevented after the element.
   - **Always** A break will always occur after the element.
   - **Avoid** A break will not occur after the element.
   - **Force to 'left page'** One or two page breaks will occur after the element so that the next page is formatted as a left page. This option is available only for page breaks, not for column or frame breaks.
   - **Force to 'right page'** One or two page breaks will occur after the element so that the next page is formatted as a right page. This option is available only for page breaks, not for column or frame breaks.

INSIDE

You can select one of the options for setting a break inside the "rendering box" of the element.

- **Automatic** A break will neither be forced nor prevented inside the rendering box of the element.
- **Avoid** A break will not occur inside the rendering box of the element.

6. (Optional) If you have selected the General tab, you can also set widow and orphan properties for the table. By default, table widows and orphans are set at 1, which means that it is possible for there to be a single row from a table left at the top or bottom of a page or column (if you use multi-column page layouts). But you can change the setting in order to ensure that multiple rows are always shown at the top or bottom of a page or column.
   a. In the **Widows** section, click the down arrow in the upper-right corner and select **Number**. Then enter a number in the field. This determines the number of leftover rows allowed at the top of a page or column.
   b. In the **Orphans** section, click the down arrow in the upper-right corner and select **Number**. Then enter a number in the field. This determines the number of leftover rows allowed at the bottom of a page or column.
7. Click **OK**.
8. Click to save your work.

Note: Because you can often control the look of a table in multiple ways—(1) using local table properties, (2) using other local formatting tools, (3) a table stylesheet, or (4) a regular stylesheet—it's possible that you might encounter conflicting settings from time to time. When it comes to situations like this, the settings closest to the content typically has precedence. So any explicit setting in the Table Properties dialog (or other local formatting) has precedence over both stylesheet options, and the table stylesheet setting has precedence over the regular stylesheet setting. For example, let's say you open a regular stylesheet and specify that the outer borders of the table should be green. Then you open the table stylesheet and specify that the outer borders should be red. And then you open the Table Properties dialog and specify that the outer borders should be blue. You've told Flare to do three different things to the same table. So in this case, the table would display blue borders, because the local properties rule over the other settings. But if you remove that setting from the Table Properties dialog and use the default setting, the table would then display red borders, because the table stylesheet has precedence over the regular stylesheet. And finally, if you remove the settings from both the Table Properties dialog and table stylesheet, using the default setting in both, the table would take its command from the regular stylesheet and display green borders.

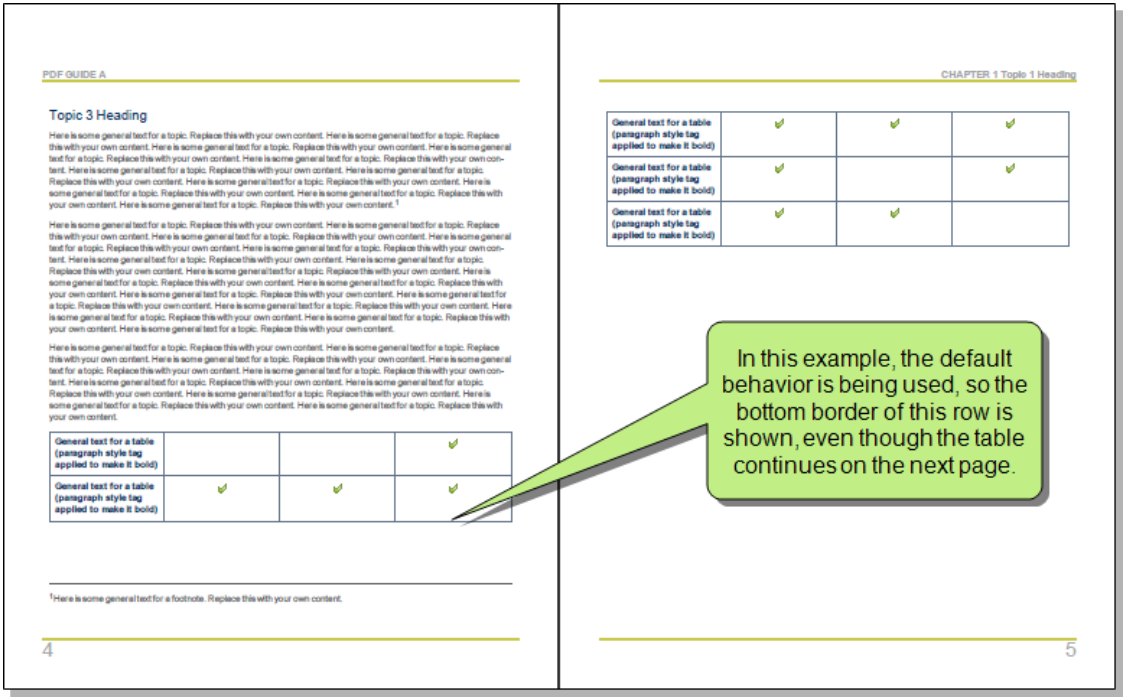
Note: If you are using a multi-column page layout and set an "Inside" break to "Avoid," you must specify this in both the "Page Break" and "Column Break" fields.

Note: Frame breaks are supported only in PDF, XPS, and XHTML outputs.

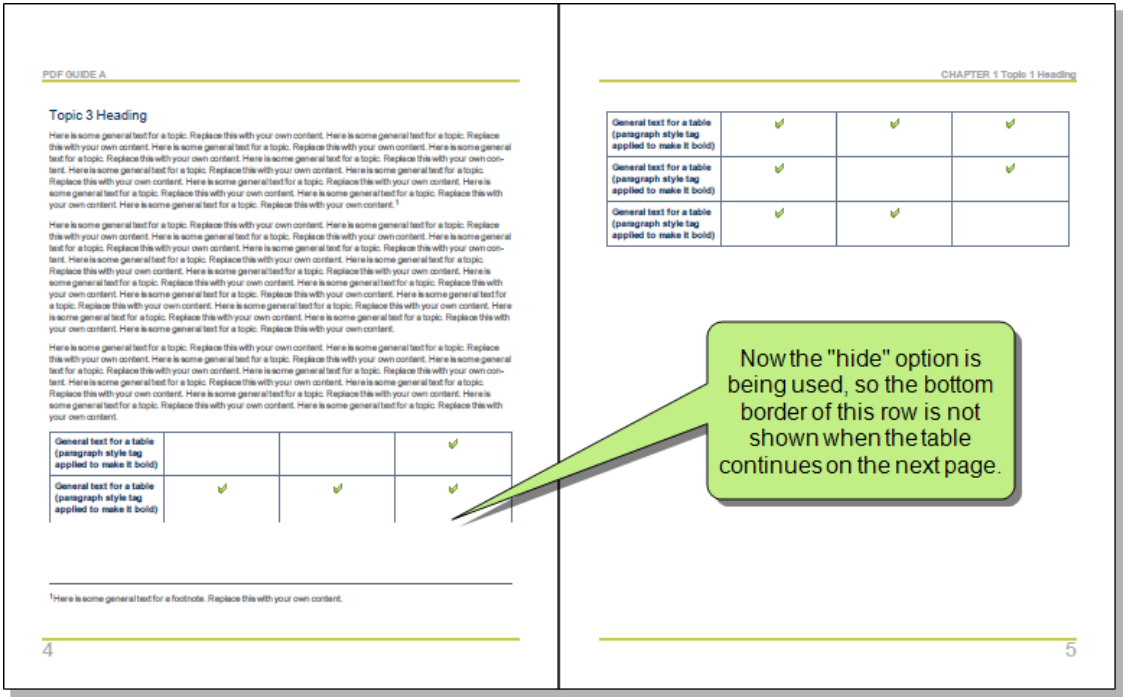
Hiding the Bottom Border on Tables when Crossing Page Breaks

This feature is supported in all print outputs (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, and XHTML).

By default, if you have a table that crosses multiple pages in print-based output, the bottom border is shown before the table continues on the next page.



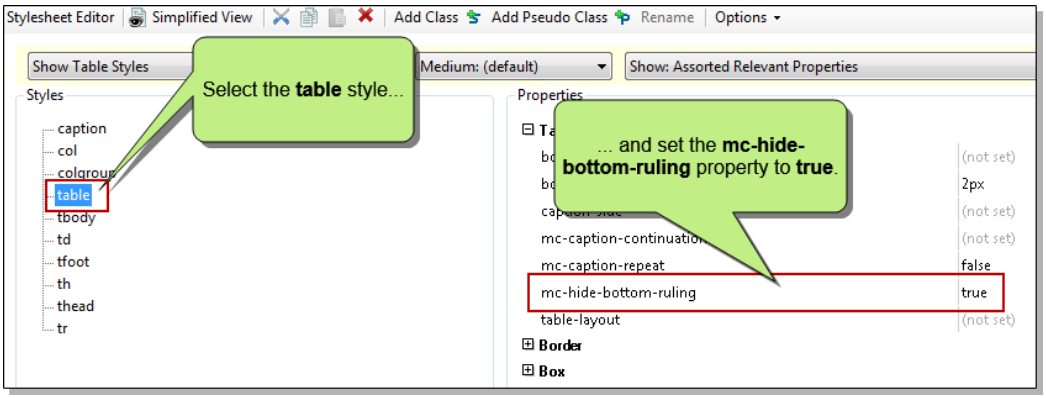
However, you also have the option to hide the bottom border when the table continues on another page.



HOW TO HIDE TABLE BOTTOM BORDERS IN A REGULAR STYLESHEET

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Make sure the appropriate medium is selected. If you are not using stylesheet mediums for your different outputs or if you want all mediums to have the same settings, just leave the medium set to "default" and continue.
3. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
4. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Table Styles.
5. From the list below, select the **table** style.
6. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Assorted Relevant Properties. The most relevant properties for that style are shown on the right side of the editor.
7. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Table** group.

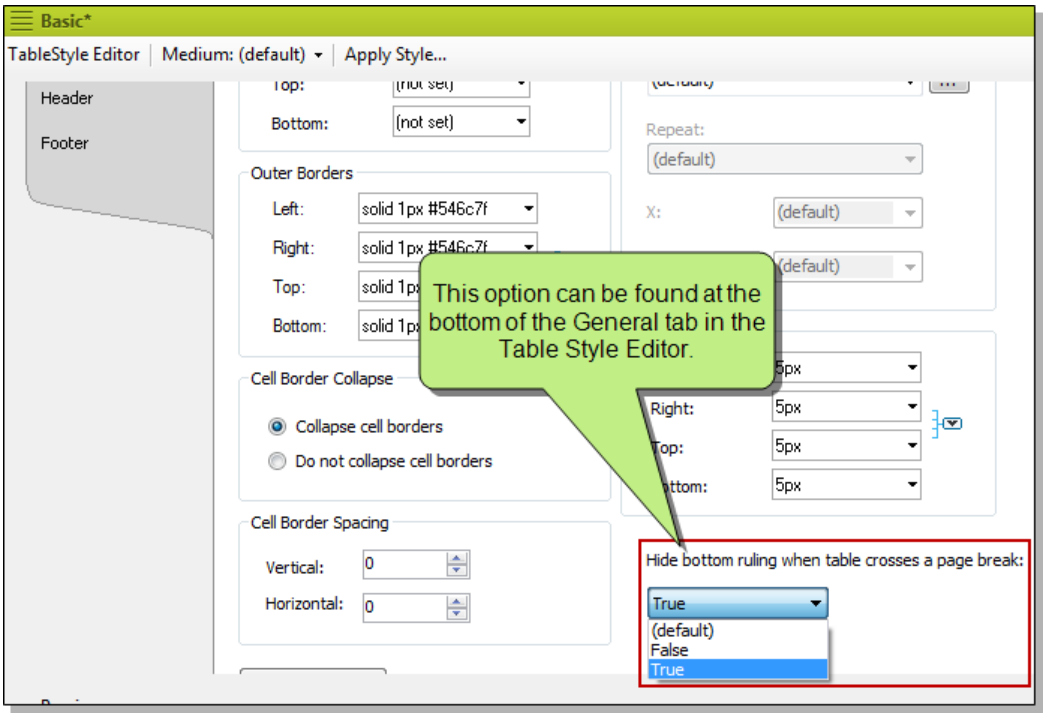
   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
8. Click in the field to the right of **mc-hide-bottom-ruling** to **true**.



9. Click to save your work.

HOW TO HIDE TABLE BOTTOM BORDERS IN A TABLE STYLESHEET

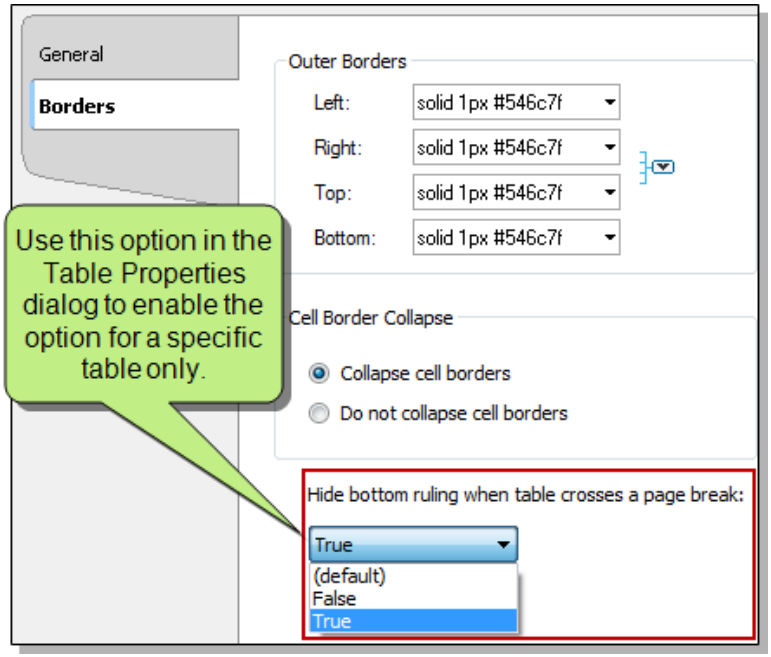
1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the Table Style Editor, select the **General** tab.
3. Toward the bottom of the tab, click the field labeled **Hide bottom ruling when table crosses a page break**, and select **True**.



4. Click to save your work.

HOW TO HIDE TABLE BOTTOM BORDERS LOCALLY IN THE PROPERTIES DIALOG

1. Open the content file (e.g., topic, snippet).
2. Click inside the table.
3. Do one of the following, depending on the part of the user interface you are using:
   - **Ribbon** Select the **Table** ribbon. In the **Table** section select **Table Properties**.
   - **Menu** Select **Table>Table Properties**.
   - **Right-Click** Right-click the table and from the context menu, select **Table Properties**.
4. Select the **Borders** tab.
5. Click the field labeled **Hide bottom ruling when table crosses a page break**, and select **True**.



6. Click **OK**.
7. Click to save your work.

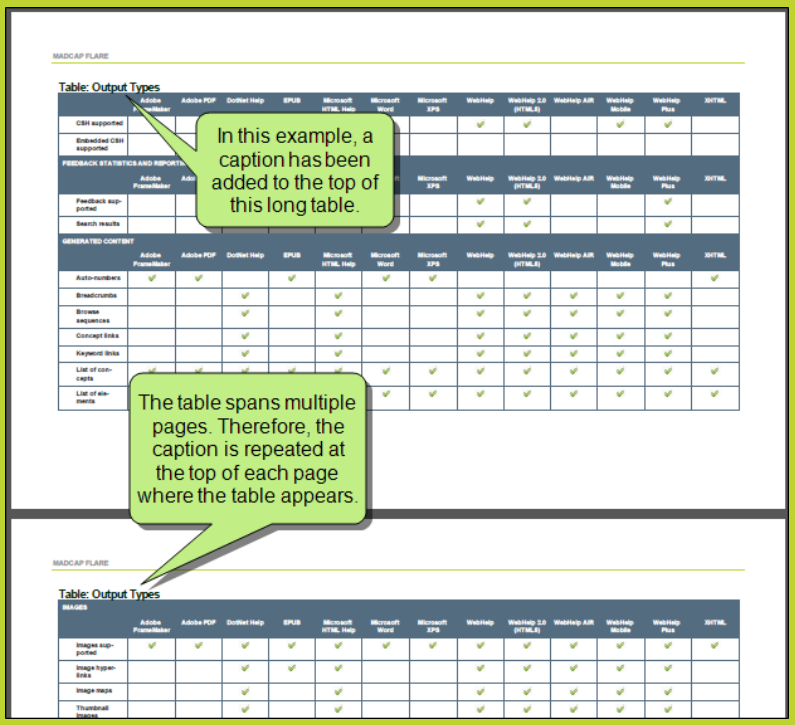
Note: Because you can often control the look of a table in multiple ways—(1) using local table properties, (2) using other local formatting tools, (3) a table stylesheet, or (4) a regular stylesheet—it's possible that you might encounter conflicting settings from time to time. When it comes to situations like this, the settings closest to the content typically has precedence. So any explicit setting in the Table Properties dialog (or other local formatting) has precedence over both stylesheet options, and the table stylesheet setting has precedence over the regular stylesheet setting. For example, let's say you open a regular stylesheet and specify that the outer borders of the table should be green. Then you open the table stylesheet and specify that the outer borders should be red. And then you open the Table Properties dialog and specify that the outer borders should be blue. You've told Flare to do three different things to the same table. So in this case, the table would display blue borders, because the local properties rule over the other settings. But if you remove that setting from the Table Properties dialog and use the default setting, the table would then display red borders, because the table stylesheet has precedence over the regular stylesheet. And finally, if you remove the settings from both the Table Properties dialog and table stylesheet, using the default setting in both, the table would take its command from the regular stylesheet and display green borders.

Using Styles to Repeat Table Captions in Print Output

> This feature is supported in all print outputs (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, and XHTML).

You can use styles to repeat captions on tables that span multiple pages in print-based output. Furthermore, you can add continuation text to the end of those captions (other than the caption appearing on the first page where a table occurs). Typically this text would be something like “(continued)."

EXAMPLE



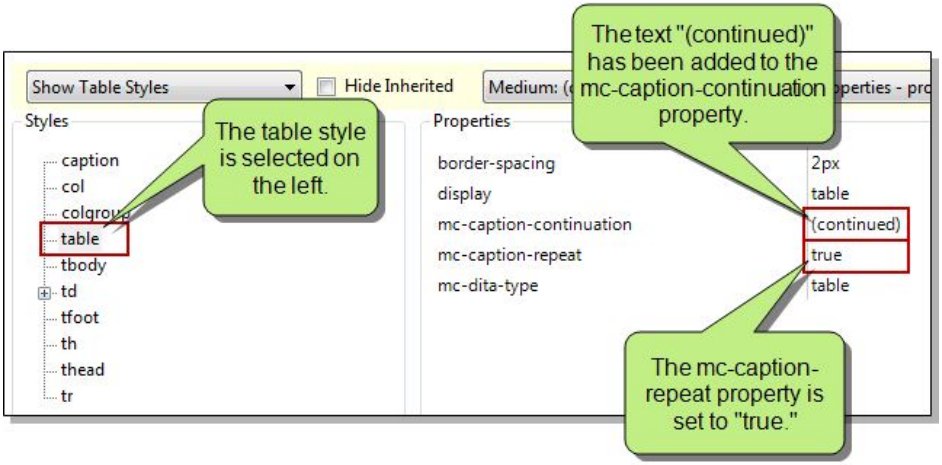
If you use the continuation feature, the specified text is added to all of the table captions, except the caption on the first page where the table occurs.

Table: Output Types (continued)

List of end-notes	✓	✓		✓
Page numbers	✓	✓		
Related topics links			✓	
Relationship links	✓	✓	✓	✓

HOW TO USE STYLES TO REPEAT TABLE CAPTIONS IN PRINT OUTPUT

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Table Styles.
4. From the area below, select **table**.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Assorted Relevant Properties. The most relevant properties for that style are shown on the right side of the editor.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Table** group.
7. You can change the following.
   - **mc-caption-repeat** If you want captions to repeat on tables that span multiple pages in print-based output, click in the field to the right and select **true**.
   - **mc-caption-continuation** You can click in the field to the right and enter continuation text for the end of captions that repeat (other than the caption appearing on the first page where a table occurs). Typically this text would be something like "(continued)."



8. Click to save your work.

Note: In addition to using styles, you can enable these repeat/continuation features for a specific table by using the Insert Table dialog or the Table Properties dialog.

Tables of Contents

This feature is supported in EPUB and in all print outputs (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML).

Using styles, you can affect the look and feel of generated tables of contents (TOCs) in print-based output. You can do this in the following ways:

- **Heading Levels** You can determine which topic headings will be displayed at which level in the generated TOC. See "Using Styles for Print TOC Heading Levels" on the following page.
- **Look of Print TOC** You can change how the entries in a generated TOC look. See "Using Styles to Determine the Look of a Print TOC" on page 405.
- **Look of Print Mini-TOC** If you include a mini-TOC in topics, you can use styles to change the way the mini-TOC looks in the output. See "Mini-TOCs" on page 239.
- **Page Number Suppression** If you are generating one of Flare's native print-based output formats (PDF, XPS, or XHTML), you can suppress page numbers for specific levels in the table of contents (TOC) or mini-TOC. This can be done by modifying the TOC or mini-TOC style (e.g., p.TOC1, p.TOC2, p.MiniTOC1) and selecting an option in the mc-pagenum-display property. See "Suppressing Page Numbers in a Print TOC" on page 412 and "Suppressing Page Numbers in a Print Mini-TOC" on page 244.

Note: If you want to change the look of your TOC in online output, you can do so by modifying styles within your skin. See "Standard Skin Styles" on page 625, "HTML5 Skin Styles" on page 558, and "WebHelp Mobile Skin Styles" on page 755.

Using Styles for Print TOC Heading Levels

When creating print-based output, you can determine which topic headings will be displayed at which level in the generated TOC. For example, even though all of your topics may use a heading style of <h1>, you might want some of those topic headings to display at the first level in the print TOC (acting as an <h1>), others at the second level (acting as an <h2>), and still others at the third level (acting as an <h3>).

One option is to base the headings on style levels. The mc-heading-level property is used to indicate a TOC level for a style. This property is already set to 1 for <h1> styles, 2 for <h2> styles, 3 for <h3> styles, and so on. Therefore, you can simply use the <h1> through <h6> styles provided by Flare in your content. You can also set the mc-heading-level property to the appropriate depth level for any paragraph style that you want to use as a heading. In the output, the print TOC will display styles with an mc-heading-level value of 1 at the highest (far left) level, those with a value of 2 at the next level, and so on (regardless of the structure of the outline TOC).

E X A M P L E

Let's say that you have applied <h1>, <h2>, and <h3> styles to headings in your topics, but you only want the headings with <h2> and <h3> styles to be included in the print TOC (omitting <h1> headings from the print TOC). You can do this by designating the level of the "mc-heading-level." A level of 0 means the heading is not included in the print TOC, a level of 1 means that it is included at the highest level in the TOC hierarchy (farthest to the left), a level of 2 means that it is included at the second highest level in the TOC hierarchy, and so on. Therefore, for this example, you might set the mc-heading-level for the <h1> style to 0. And if you want to move the <h2> and <h3> headings up a level, you could set the mc-heading-level property for <h2> to 1, and the property for <h3> to 2.

HOW TO USE STYLES FOR HEADING LEVELS

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Make sure the appropriate medium is selected. If you are not using stylesheet mediums for your different outputs or if you want all mediums to have the same settings, just leave the medium set to "default" and continue.

   Mediums can be used if you want to use one group of settings for online output types (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus) and another group of settings for print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). For example, you might use the "default" medium for your online outputs and you might use the "print" medium for your print outputs.
3. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

4. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Heading Styles.
5. From the area below, select the <h1> through <h6> style (h1, h2, h3, h4, h5, h6) that you want to customize.

   If you created other custom styles for your headings (e.g., p.MyIndexHeading), you can select those styles instead (you may first need to switch to a view that shows all paragraph styles). The mc-heading-level property (which is the property that determines the heading level in a print TOC) can be applied to any paragraph style.

6. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
7. In the **Properties** section, expand the **PrintSupport** group.
8. Click in the right column next to **mc-heading-level** and select the level for the heading style (e.g., 0, 1, 2, 3). The higher the number, the lower in the hierarchy the heading will be displayed in the print TOC. If you select 0, the heading will not be included in the print TOC.
9. Click to save your work.

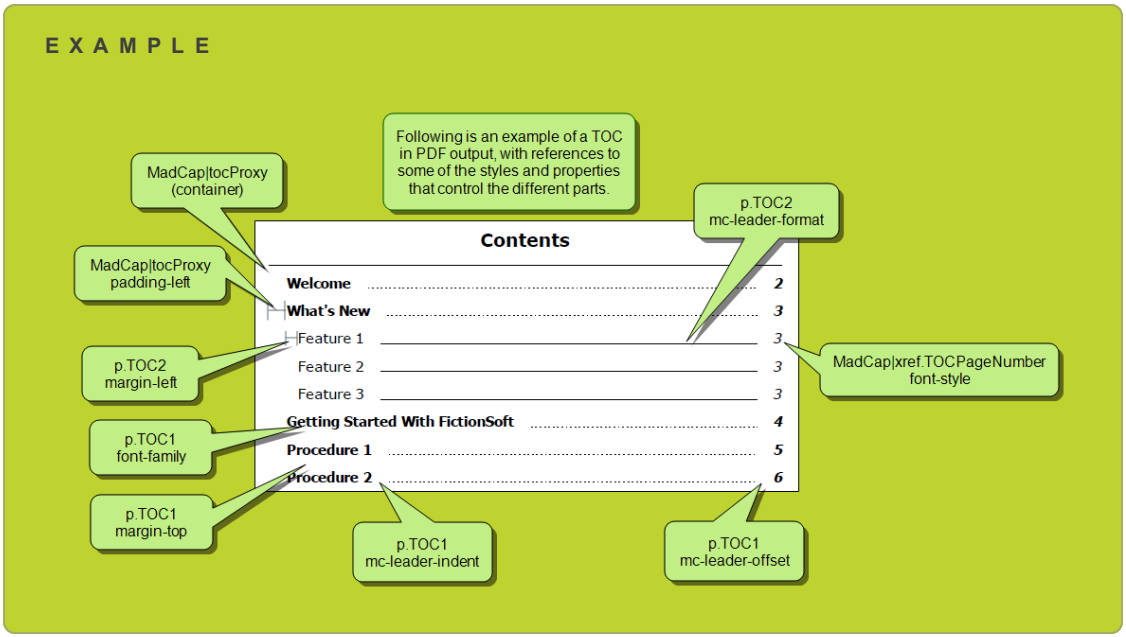
Make sure you apply the styles to be used in the generated TOC to the appropriate headings in your content. See "Applying Styles to Content" on page 482.

Using Styles to Determine the Look of a Print TOC

This feature is supported in EPUB and in all print outputs (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML).

For TOCs in print-based output, you can use styles to adjust properties such as font family and size, indentation, word spacing, spacing above/below, TOC width, page number alignment, and leader settings (e.g., the dots between the headings and the numbers). The headings in the print TOC will take on the settings that you specify. You can also modify the look of the entire container holding the generated TOC.

A style called "MadCap|tocProxy" is used to control the look of the entire container. Other styles—such as p.TOC1, p.TOC2, and p.TOC3—are used to control the look of individual entries in the TOC. Style properties—such as margin-left, font-size, and mc-leader-indent, mc-leader-format—are used to affect the look in different ways.



HOW TO USE STYLES TO DETERMINE THE LOOK OF A PRINT TOC (ENTIRE CONTAINER)

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.

2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: Some of the necessary style properties can also be changed in the Simplified view in the Stylesheet Editor.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section of the editor, scroll down and select the **MadCap|tocProxy** style or a class that you have created under it (e.g., MadCap|tocProxy.myclass).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section to the right, expand a property group (e.g., Font, Block, Box) to see the actual properties within it.
7. Locate the specific property that you want to change. The property name is shown in the left column. Use the right column to select and enter values for the property. Depending on the type of property, you can either type the value, select it from a drop-down list, or complete the value entries in a popup box.

   For example, if you want to change the width of the entire TOC you would first expand the **Box** property group. Then you would click in the cell to the right of the **width** property and set the value.

8. Click to save your work.

HOW TO USE STYLES TO DETERMINE THE LOOK OF A PRINT TOC (INDIVIDUAL ENTRIES)

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

> **Note:** For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Generated Content Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section of the editor, expand the **p** style. Classes of the style are shown below it.
5. Find and select the TOC class that you want to customize (e.g., **TOC1**, **TOC2**, **TOC3**). TOC1 is used for the first-level heading in the print TOC, TOC2 is used for the second-level heading, and so on.

> **Note:** The page numbers in the generated list inherit their style settings from the list items before them. However, if you want the page numbers to look differently, you can modify the MadCap|xref.TOCPageNumber style.

6. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.

> **Note:** If you want to see properties that are of particular importance for a style, you can select **Show: Assorted Relevant Properties**.

7. In the **Properties** section to the right, expand a property group (e.g., Font, Block, Box, Unclassified) to see the actual properties within it.

> **Note:** Do not use the "PrintSupport" property for the TOC1 through TOC9 style classes.

8. Locate the specific property that you want to change. The property name is shown in the left column. Use the right column to select and enter values for the property. Depending on the type of property, you can either type the value, select it from a drop-down list, or complete the value entries in a popup box. Here are some of the more common properties that you might change.

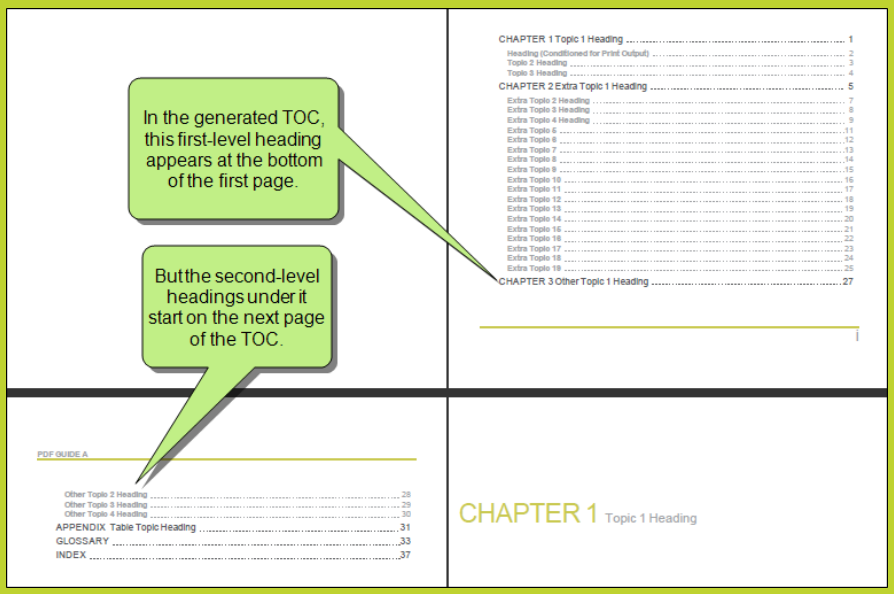
   - **Alignment of Page Number (Print Output)** To change the alignment (left, right, center) of the page number, expand the **Unclassified** property group. Then click in the right column next to **mc-leader-align** and select the type of alignment.
   - **Font Family** To change the font family (e.g., Arial, Verdana), expand the **Font** property group. Click in the right column next to **font-family**, set the font family in the Font Family Picker dialog, and click **OK**.
   - **Font Size** To change the font size (e.g., 10 pt, 11 pt), expand the **Font** property group. Then click in the right column next to **font-size**, set the font size in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**.
   - **Leader Format (Print Output)** To change the format of the area between the TOC heading and the page number, expand the **Unclassified** property group. Then click in the right column next to **mc-leader-format** and type the character to use. For example, if you want a series of dots, type a period. If you do not want to use a leader format, leave this field blank.

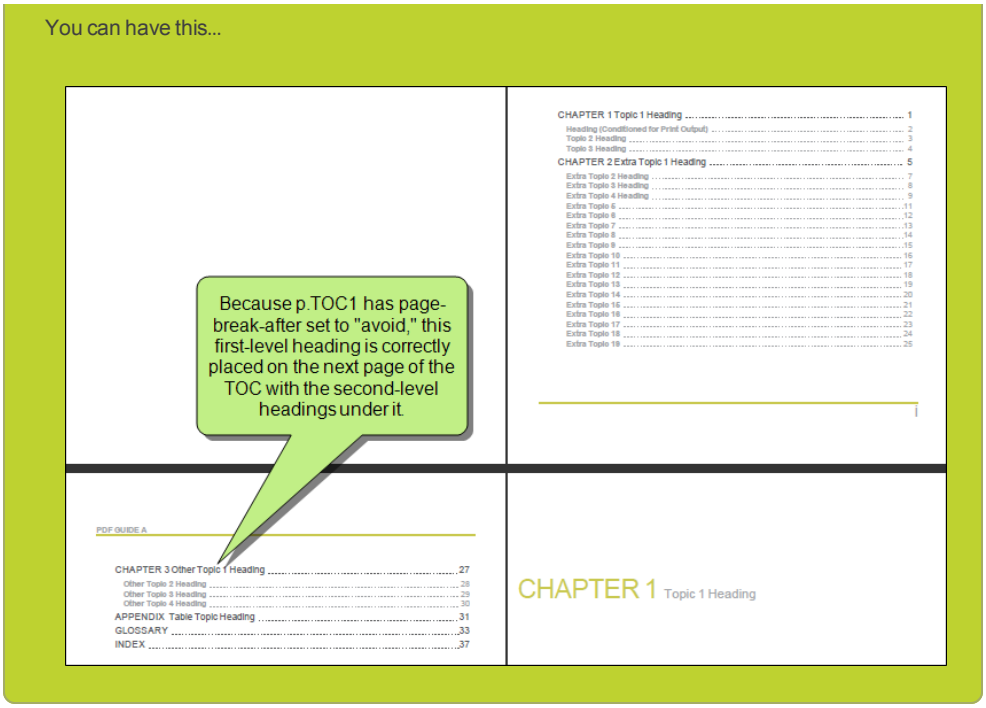
     > **Note:** For Word output, you can enter one character only (period, hyphen, or underscore). For FrameMaker, you can specify a combination of characters and spaces, which repeat between the text and page number.

   - **Leader Space Before/After (Print Output)** Expand the **Unclassified** property group. To change the *distance from the end of the list entry to the start of the leader*, click in the right column next to **mc-leader-indent**, set the margin value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**. To change the *distance between the end of the leader and the page number*, click in the right column next to **mc-leader-offset**, set the margin value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**.
   - **Page Break (Avoid Heading Orphans—Print Output)** To avoid orphan TOC headings (e.g., a first-level heading in the TOC that is stuck by itself at the bottom of the page, with its second-level headings continuing at the top of the next page), you can set that style (e.g., p.TOC1) to avoid a page break after it. To do this, expand the **PrintSupport** property group. Then click in the right column next to **page-break-after** and select **avoid**.

E X A M P L E

Instead of this...



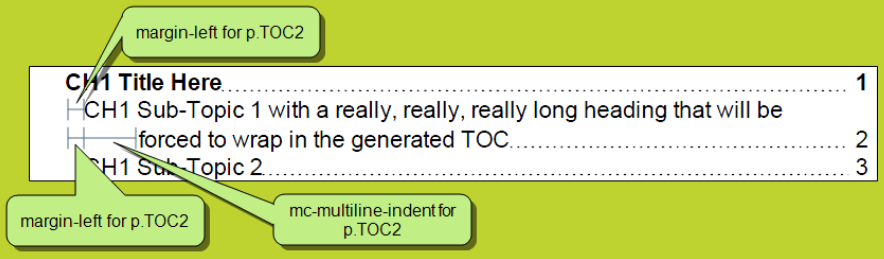


» **Padding Above** To change the amount of empty space (padding) above the TOC heading, expand the **Box** property group. Then click in the right column next to **padding-top**, set the padding value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**. You can also use the other cells in this property group to add padding below, to the left, or to the right.

» **Space in Front (Indentation)** To change the distance from the left page margin to the beginning of the TOC heading, expand the **Box** property group. Then click in the right column next to **margin-left**, set the margin value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**. You can specify additional indentation for headings that wrap to more than one line. To do this, expand the **Unclassified** property group. Then click in the right column next to **mc-multiline-indent**, set the margin value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**.

E X A M P L E

The following image shows how the **mc-multiline-indent** property works alongside the **margin-left** property in a print TOC.



9. Click to save your work.

Note: You can also use styles to suppress page numbers in a print TOC. See "Suppressing Page Numbers in a Print TOC" on the next page.

Note: You can change the heading text for an auto-generated TOC in the language skin.

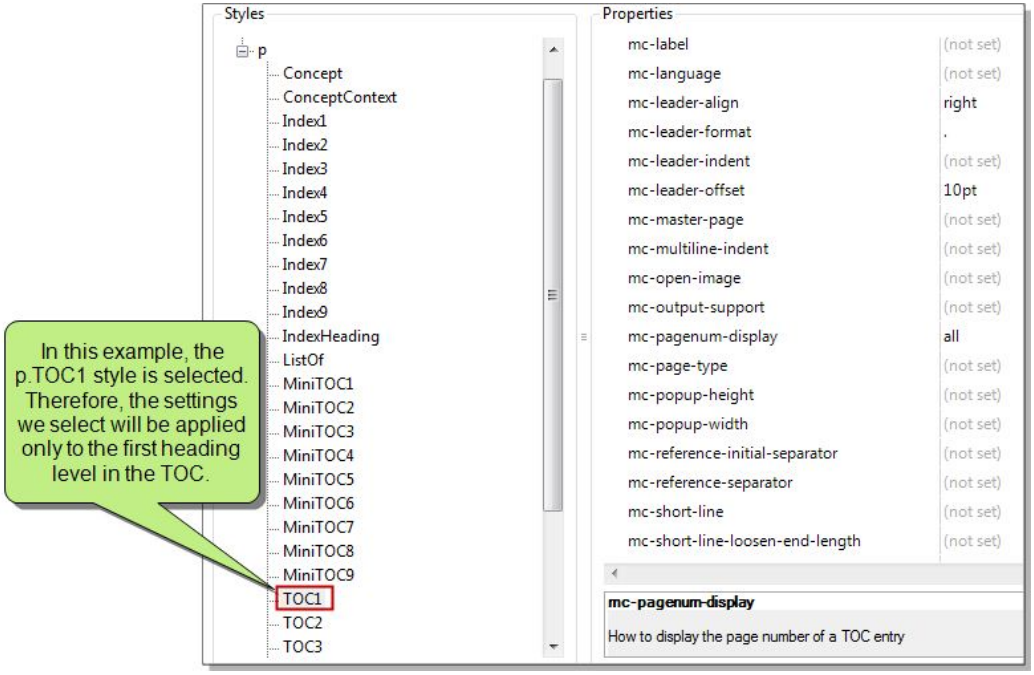
Suppressing Page Numbers in a Print TOC

This feature is supported in Adobe PDF, Microsoft XPS, and XHTML output.

If you are generating one of Flare's native print-based output formats (PDF, XPS, or XHTML), you can suppress page numbers for specific levels in the table of contents (TOC) or mini-TOC. This can be done by modifying the TOC or mini-TOC style (e.g., p.TOC1, p.TOC2, p.MiniTOC1) and selecting an option in the mc-pagenum-display property.

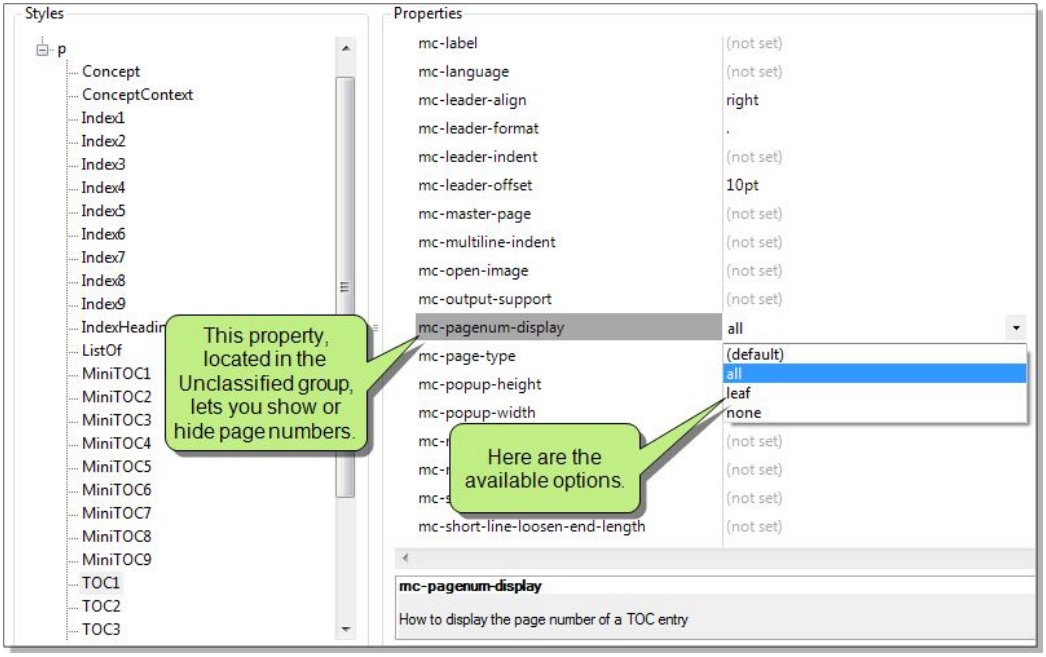
HOW TO SUPPRESS PAGE NUMBERS IN A PRINT TOC

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Generated Content Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section of the editor, expand the **p** style. Classes of the style are shown below it.
5. Find and select the TOC class that you want to customize (e.g., **TOC1**, **TOC2**, **TOC3**). TOC1 is used for the first-level heading in the print TOC, TOC2 is used for the second-level heading, and so on.

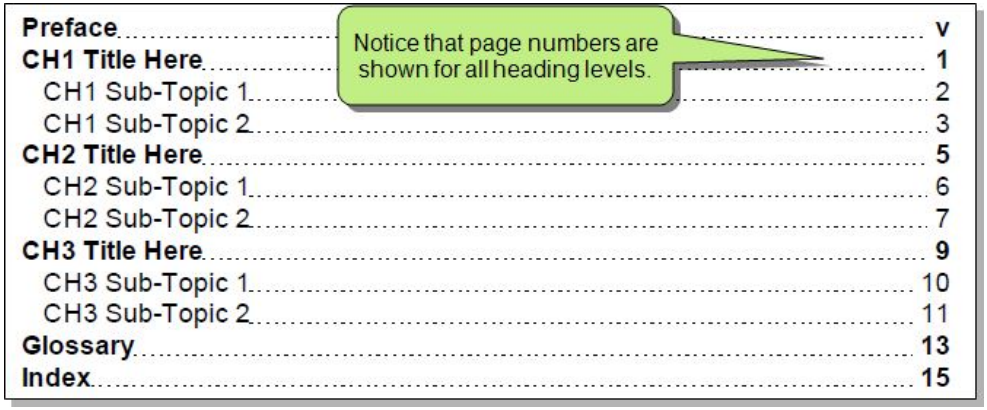


6. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
7. In the **Properties** section to the right, expand **Unclassified** to see the properties within it.

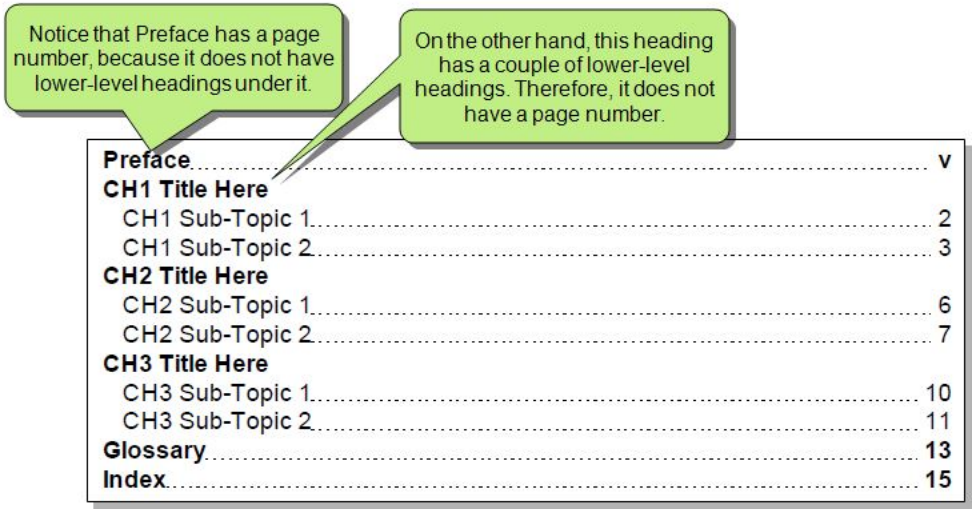
8. Click in the cell to the right of the **mc-pagenum-display** property and select one of the following.



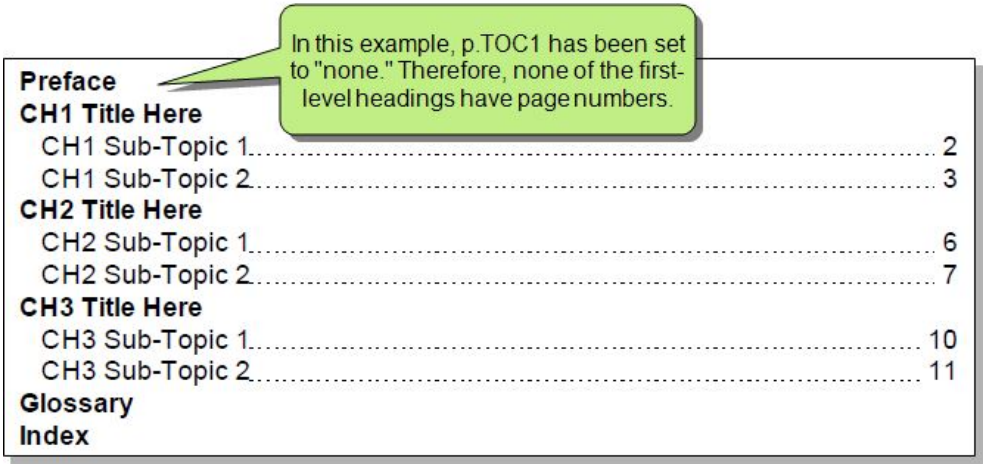
» **(default)/all** This displays the page number, just as it has for previous versions of Flare.

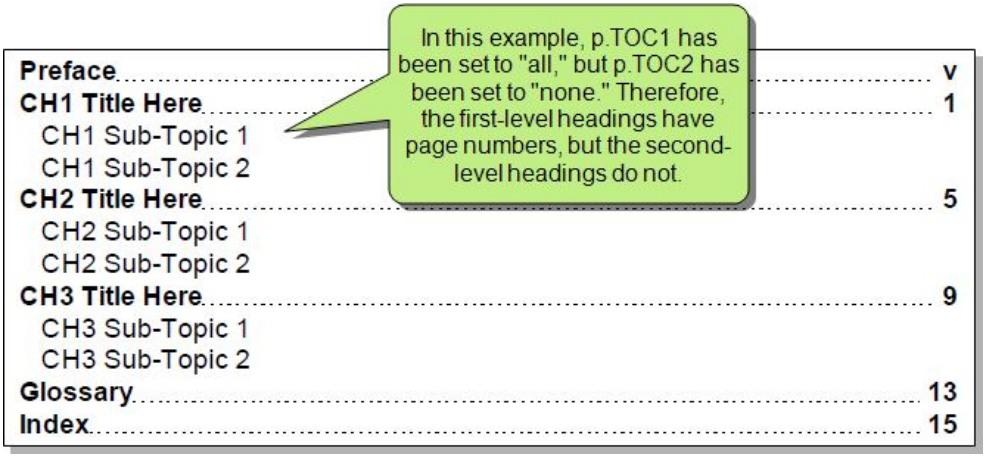


» **leaf** This does not display the page number if lower-level entries exist. However, it does display the page number if no lower-level entries exist.



» **none** This does not display the page number for that heading level.





9. Click to save your work.

Text

You can affect the look and behavior of text in your content in various ways. These settings can be applied locally (i.e., directly) to the text or by applying a style to selected text. Modifying the style is typically preferable to changing the settings locally. Different settings are available depending on the user interface you are using to apply the font properties (e.g., the Font Properties dialog may have an Advanced tab or it may not, depending on where you open it).

Ways to Edit Font Properties

Following are some of the more common ways that you can edit font properties.

- **Bold** You can apply a bold weight to text. Perhaps the easiest way to do this is to highlight the text, select the **Home** ribbon, and click B. You can also highlight text and click B in the Text Format toolbar. However, you can also change the properties of a different tag so that it uses a bold weight. See "Setting Bold Text" on page 419.
- **Case** You can change the case of text so it is all uppercase or lowercase. You can also specify that the first letter of each word in the selected content should be capitalized, while the other letters are lowercase. See "Setting the Case of Text" on page 421.
- **Color of Background** You can set a background color for text. See "Setting the Background Color for Text" on page 422.
- **Color of Text** You can select a color for text. See "Setting the Color for Text" on page 423.
- **Font Family** You can select a font family (e.g., Arial, Verdana) for text to change its look. See "Setting the Font Family for Text" on page 424.
- **Italics** You can apply italics to text. Perhaps the easiest way to do this is to highlight the text, select the **Home** ribbon, and click I. You can also highlight text and click I in the Text Format toolbar.However, you can also change the properties of a different tag so that it uses italics. See "Setting Italic Text" on page 426.
- **Italic Correction** You can correct the spacing in a line when italic formatting is involved. Often, when you italicize a word in the middle of a sentence, the last letter of the italicized word appears to have less space behind it. This is typically due to the fact that the blank space immediately after the word is italicized and the word that comes after is not. Using italic correction, you can increase this space between the italicized word and the non-italicized word. See "Setting Italic Correction" on page 427.
- **Letter Spacing** You can specify the amount of spacing between letters in text. See "Setting Letter Spacing" on page 430.
- **Overline** You can specify that a horizontal line should be placed above text (opposite of underlined text). See "Setting an Overline on Text" on page 433.
- **Redacted Text** You can set redacted text on any kind of content (e.g., characters, paragraphs, images, tables). You can do this locally at the font level by highlighting each piece of content, or you can specify redaction on a style and then apply that style to content whenever necessary. It is recommended that you use styles whenever possible.Redaction occurs when content is permanently eliminated from a printed or electronic document. In place of

that content, end users will see black rectangles that indicate where the original content was found. See "Setting Redacted Text on Content" on page 434.

- **Size** You can specify the size of text, choosing from many different units of measurement. See "Setting the Font Size" on page 435.
- **Smallcaps** You can specify that text should be displayed in all capital letters, but in a small size. See "Setting Smallcaps on Text" on page 436.
- **Strikethrough** You can specify that a horizontal line should be added through the middle of the text, providing the effect of content that has been "striked through." See "Setting a Strikethrough Effect on Text" on page 437.
- **Subscript** You can apply a subscript effect to topic text, where some text appears below the level of the other characters (e.g., H_2O). Perhaps the easiest way to do this is to highlight the text, select the Home ribbon or Text Format toolbar, and then click X_2. However, you can also change the properties of a different tag so that it appears as subscript text. See "Setting Subscript Text" on page 438.
- **Superscript** You can apply a superscript effect to text, where some text appears above the regular text (e.g., X^2). Perhaps the easiest way to do this is to highlight the text, select the Home ribbon or Text Format toolbar, and click X^2. However, you can also change the properties of a different tag so that it appears as superscript text. See "Setting Superscript Text" on page 439.
- **Underline** You can easily underline text. See "Setting Underlined Text" on page 440.
- **Word Spacing** You can specify the amount of spacing between words. See "Setting Word Spacing" on page 441.

Setting Bold Text

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can apply a bold weight to text. Perhaps the easiest way to do this is to highlight the text, select the **Home** ribbon, and click B. You can also highlight text and click B in the Text Format toolbar. However, you can also change the properties of a different tag so that it uses a bold weight.

HOW TO SET BOLD TEXT WITH A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
4. Select a style (e.g., character, heading, paragraph).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Font** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Click in the cell to the right of **font-weight** and select one of the bold options.

   The numbers from 100 to 900 represent different levels of darkness. The number 400 is the same as a "normal" weight, and the number 700 is the same as the standard "bold" option.
8. Click to save your work.

Note: Some font families contain bold or italic variants (e.g., the font Georgia has a relative named "Georgia Bold" and another named "Georgia Italic"). If you are generating native Adobe PDF or Microsoft XPS output, bold or italic formatting that is applied to text will display properly in the output ONLY if the font you are using already has a bold or italic font relative. You can determine the availability of such fonts by opening the Fonts folder from the Control Panel in Windows. For example, let's say you open the Fonts folder and see that, in addition to many other fonts, you have the following: Andalus, Angsana New, Angsana New Bold, Angsana New Bold Italic, and Angsana New Italic. If you use Andalus and apply bold or italic to some of the text, that content *will not* display in bold or italic in PDF or XPS output. However, if you use Angsana New and apply bold or italic to some of the text, that content *will* display in bold or italic in PDF or XPS output. The reason for this is that Andalus does not have a bold or italic relative, whereas the Angsana New font does.

Setting the Case of Text

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can change the case of text so it is all uppercase or lowercase. You can also specify that the first letter of each word in the selected content should be capitalized, while the other letters are lowercase.

HOW TO SET THE CASE OF TEXT ON A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
4. Select a style (e.g., character, heading, paragraph).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Font** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Click in the cell to the right of **text-transform** and select one of the following options:
   - **capitalize** The first letter of each word in the text will be capitalized. The other letters will be lowercase.
   - **lowercase** All characters in the text will be displayed in lowercase.
   - **uppercase** All characters in the text will be capitalized.
8. Click to save your work.

Setting the Background Color for Text

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can set a background color for text.

HOW TO SET THE BACKGROUND COLOR FOR TEXT ON A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
4. Select a style (e.g., character, heading, paragraph).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Background** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. To the right of **background-color**, click the down arrow and select a color from the popup. For advanced color options, select **More Colors** and use the fields in the Color Picker dialog.
8. Click to save your work.

Setting the Color for Text

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can select a color for text.

HOW TO SET THE COLOR FOR TEXT ON A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
4. Select a style (e.g., character, heading, paragraph).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Font** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. To the right of **color**, click the down arrow and select a color from the popup. For advanced color options, select **More Colors** and use the fields in the Color Picker dialog.
8. Click to save your work.

Setting the Font Family for Text

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can select a font family (e.g., Arial, Verdana, and so on) for text to change how the typeface looks.

HOW TO SET THE FONT FAMILY FOR TEXT USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
4. Select a style (e.g., character, heading, paragraph).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Font** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Click the cell to the right of **font-family**. The Font Family Picker dialog opens.
8. Use the fields in the Font Family Picker dialog to select a font family. (You can also use this dialog to create font sets and select a font family list for the user interface.) Select from these options:
   - **Family List** Displays the name of the font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, etc.) after you select it in the dialog.
   - **Add To My Favorites** Adds the selected font family to a list called My Favorite Families. This is a way to create a list of your favorite fonts so that it is easier to find and select them in the future.
   - **My Favorite Families** Displays the font families that you have added by clicking the Add To My Favorites button. To use one of these fonts, click it. The My Favorite Families list is a way to create a list of your favorite fonts so that it is easier to find and select them in the future.
   - **Recent Families** Displays the most recent font families that you have used. To use one of these fonts, click it.

- **Defined Font Sets** Displays the font sets that you have created. A font set (a.k.a., font family) is just what it sounds like—a collection of fonts. You can create a font set in order to designate the substitute fonts to use when the preferred font is not available on the user's computer. If the first (i.e., preferred) font family in the set is not found on the user's computer, the second font family in the set is used. If the second font family is not found, the third font family is used, and so on.
- **Installed Families** Displays the system font families. To use one of these fonts, click it.
- **Generic Families** Displays a list of generic font families. To use one of these fonts, click it.
- **Clear List** Removes the font families listed in the My Favorite Families list, the Recent Families list, or the Defined Font Sets list. To enable this button, first select one of those lists.
- **Remove** Removes a selected color that is listed in the My Favorite Families list, the Recent Families list, or the Defined Font Sets list. To enable this button, first select one of those lists. Then select the font(s) to be removed. You can select multiple fonts by holding down the SHIFT or CTRL key and clicking in the list.
- **Define Set** Opens the Define Font Set dialog, which lets you create a new font set. This button is enabled only if you select the Defined Font Sets list above.
- **Pick UI Family List** Opens the Pick Font List dialog, which lets you select a font family list to be used in the Flare interface. In other words, when you select the drop-down list from the Text Format toolbar (as well as from other areas of the user interface), you can select certain fonts to apply to your content. By using this dialog, you can limit which fonts are made available from that list. You can select the My Favorite Families List, the Defined Font Sets list, or the Installed Families list.

9. Click **OK**.
10. Click to save your work.

Setting Italic Text

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can apply italics to text. Perhaps the easiest way to do this is to highlight the text, select the **Home** ribbon, and click . You can also highlight text and click in the Text Format toolbar.However, you can also change the properties of a different tag so that it uses italics.

HOW TO SET ITALIC TEXT ON A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

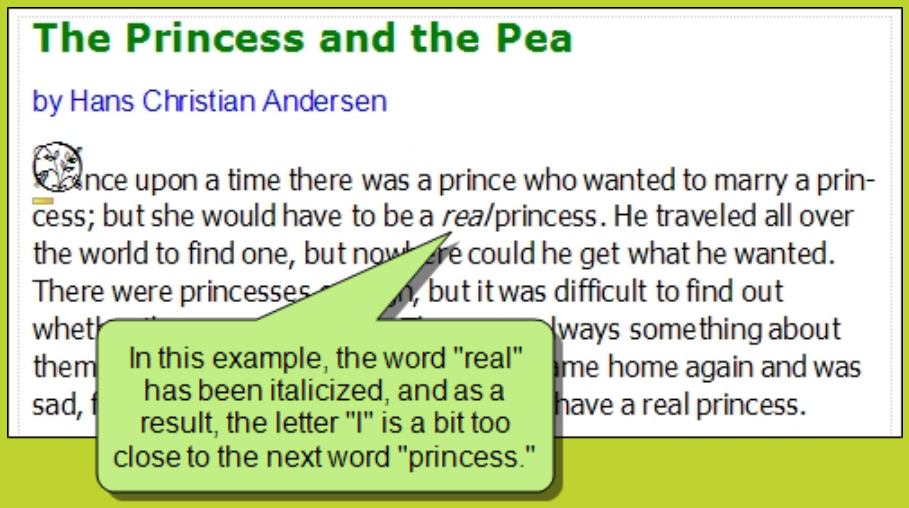
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
4. Select a style (e.g., character, heading, paragraph).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Font** group. The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Click in the cell to the right of **font-style** and select **italic**.
8. Click to save your work.

Setting Italic Correction

This feature is supported in all outputs, except Adobe FrameMaker and Microsoft Word.

You can correct the spacing in a line when italic formatting is involved. Often, when you italicize a word in the middle of a sentence, the last letter of the italicized word appears to have less space behind it. This is typically due to the fact that the blank space immediately after the word is italicized and the word that comes after is not. Using italic correction, you can increase this space between the italicized word and the non-italicized word.

EXAMPLE



The Princess and the Pea

by Hans Christian Andersen

nce upon a time there was a prince who wanted to marry a princess; but she would have to be a *real* princess. He traveled all over the world to find one, but now could he get what he wanted. There were princesses ut it was difficult to find out whether t s something about them that home again and was sad, for h e a real princess.

In this example, italic correction has been set on the style to add 3 pixels after an italicized word. As a result, there is now more space between the words.

HOW TO SET ITALIC CORRECTION ON A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Make sure the appropriate medium is selected. If you are not using stylesheet mediums for your different outputs or if you want all mediums to have the same settings, just leave the medium set to "default" and continue.

   Mediums can be used if you want to use one group of settings for online output types (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus) and another group of settings for print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). For example, you might use the "default" medium for your online outputs and you might use the "print" medium for your print outputs.
3. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Advanced View (which means that the Simplified view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Simplified View instead, then click it.
4. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
5. Select a style (e.g., character, heading, paragraph).
6. In the local toolbar of the editor, click . The Properties dialog opens.
7. Select the **Advanced** tab.
8. In the **Italic Correction** section, click the down arrow in the upper-right corner and select **Length**.
9. Enter a number in the field and use the down arrow in the lower-right corner to select a unit of measurement. This is the amount of space that will be added after an italic word and the next letter in the paragraph.
10. In the Properties dialog, click **OK**.
11. Click to save your work.

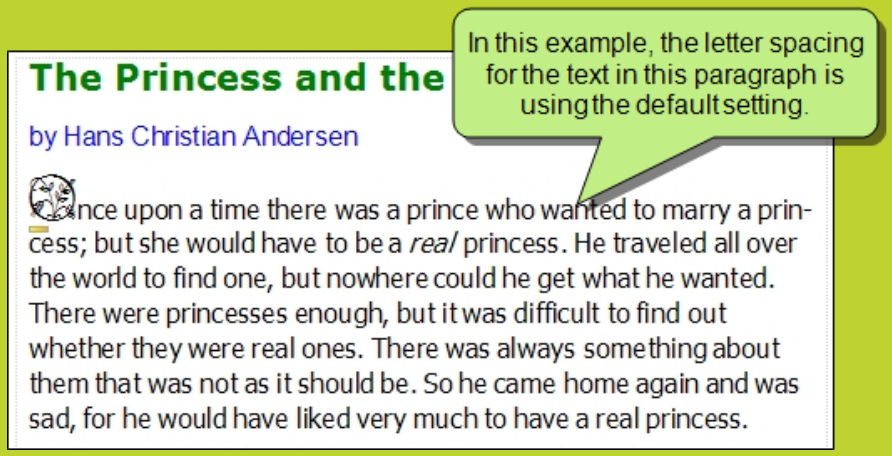
Note: In order to see the results of this feature in the XML Editor, you must be using Print Layout mode, as opposed to Web Layout mode. For more information about layout modes, see the online Help.

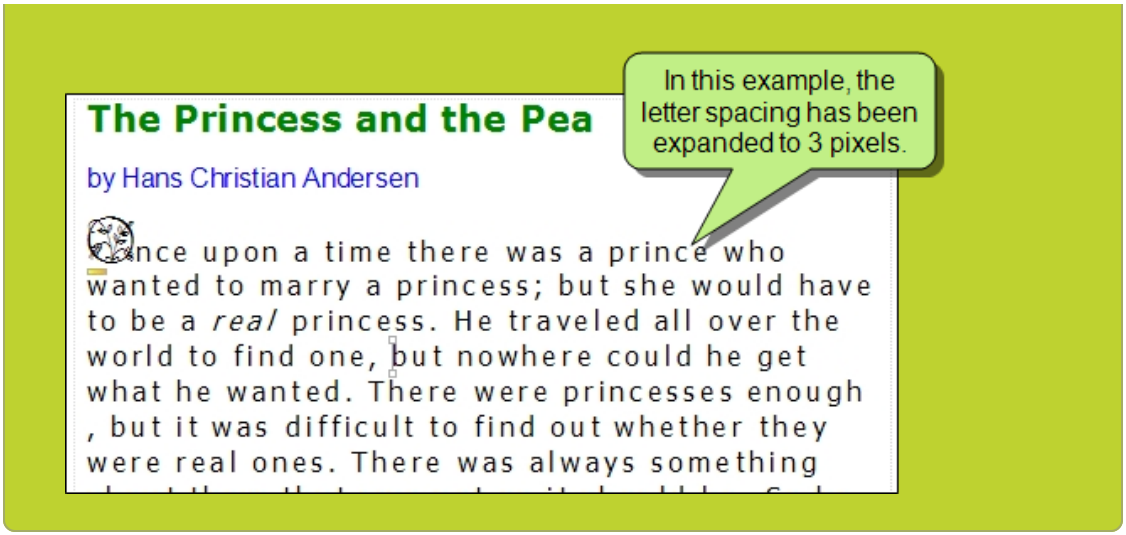
Setting Letter Spacing

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can specify the amount of spacing between letters in text.

EXAMPLE




The Princess and the Pea
by Hans Christian Andersen
Once upon a time there was a prince who wanted to marry a princess; but she would have to be a *real* princess. He traveled all over the world to find one, but nowhere could he get what he wanted. There were princesses enough , but it was difficult to find out whether they were real ones. There was always something
In this example, the letter spacing has been expanded to 3 pixels.

HOW TO SET LETTER SPACING USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
4. Select a style (e.g., character, heading, paragraph).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Block** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. To the right of **letter-spacing**, click the down arrow and select the distance between letters. When you are finished, click **OK**.
8. Click to save your work.

Setting an Overline on Text

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can specify that a horizontal line should be placed above text (opposite of underlined text).

HOW TO SET AN OVERLINE ON TEXT WITH A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
4. Select a style (e.g., character, heading, paragraph).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Font** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Click in the cell to the right of **text-decoration**, type `overline`, and press **Enter**.
8. Click to save your work.

Setting Redacted Text on Content

This feature is supported in Adobe PDF, Microsoft XPS, and XHTML output.

At each place in a document where you need to perform redaction, you can select the necessary content and apply the redaction via a style (recommended) or locally. Redaction occurs when content is permanently eliminated from a printed or electronic document. In place of that content, end users will see black rectangles that indicate where the original content was found.

HOW TO SET REDACTED TEXT ON CONTENT ON USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
4. Select a style (e.g., character, heading, paragraph).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Alphabetical List.
6. Scroll down and find the property called **mc-redacted**.
7. Click in the cell to the right of that property and select **redacted**.
8. Click to save your work.
9. After editing a style, you can apply it to content in a topic or snippet.

   The text becomes shaded in the editor, letting you know that it will be redacted when the output is generated.

10. Click to save your work.

Setting the Font Size

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can specify the size of text, choosing from many different units of measurement.

HOW TO SET THE FONT SIZE ON A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
4. Select a style (e.g., character, heading, paragraph).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Font** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. To the right of **font-size**, click the down arrow and complete the fields in the popup. Enter a number in the field and use the down arrow in the lower-right corner to select a unit of measurement.
8. Click **OK**.
9. Click to save your work.

Setting Smallcaps on Text

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can specify that text should be displayed in all capital letters, but in a small size.

HOW TO SET SMALLCAPS ON TEXT ON A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
4. Select a style (e.g., character, heading, paragraph).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Font** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Click in the cell to the right of **font-variant** and select **small-caps**.
8. Click to save your work.

Setting a Strikethrough Effect on Text

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can specify that a horizontal line should be added through the middle of the text, providing the effect of content that has been "striked through."

HOW TO SET A STRIKETHROUGH EFFECT ON TEXT WITH A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
4. Select a style (e.g., character, heading, paragraph).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Font** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Click in the cell to the right of **text-decoration**, type `line-through`, and press **Enter**.
8. Click to save your work.

Setting Subscript Text

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can apply a subscript effect to topic text, where some text appears below the level of the other characters (e.g., H_2O). Perhaps the easiest way to do this is to highlight the text, select the Home ribbon or Text Format toolbar, and then click X². However, you can also change the properties of a different tag so that it appears as subscript text.

HOW TO SET SUBSCRIPT TEXT ON A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Make sure the appropriate medium is selected. If you are not using stylesheet mediums for your different outputs or if you want all mediums to have the same settings, just leave the medium set to "default" and continue.

   Mediums can be used if you want to use one group of settings for online output types (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus) and another group of settings for print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). For example, you might use the "default" medium for your online outputs and you might use the "print" medium for your print outputs.
3. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Advanced View (which means that the Simplified view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Simplified View instead, then click it.
4. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
5. Select a style (e.g., character, heading, paragraph).
6. Do one of the following:
   - In the local toolbar of the Stylesheet Editor, click X₂.

     OR
   - In the local toolbar of the editor, click . The Properties dialog opens. Select the **Font** tab. Click the check box next to **Subscript**. In the Properties dialog, click **OK**.
7. Click to save your work.

Setting Superscript Text

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can apply a superscript effect to text, where some text appears above the regular text (e.g., X^2). Perhaps the easiest way to do this is to highlight the text, select the Home ribbon or Text Format toolbar, and click X². However, you can also change the properties of a different tag so that it appears as superscript text.

HOW TO SET SUBSCRIPT TEXT ON A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Make sure the appropriate medium is selected. If you are not using stylesheet mediums for your different outputs or if you want all mediums to have the same settings, just leave the medium set to "default" and continue.

   Mediums can be used if you want to use one group of settings for online output types (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus) and another group of settings for print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). For example, you might use the "default" medium for your online outputs and you might use the "print" medium for your print outputs.
3. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Advanced View (which means that the Simplified view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Simplified View instead, then click it.
4. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
5. Select a style (e.g., character, heading, paragraph).
6. Do one of the following:

   » In the local toolbar of the Stylesheet Editor, click X².

   OR

   » In the local toolbar of the editor, click . The Properties dialog opens. Select the **Font** tab. Click the check box next to **Superscript**. In the Properties dialog, click **OK**.
7. Click to save your work.

Setting Underlined Text

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can easily set underline text.

HOW TO SET UNDERLINED TEXT USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
4. Select a style (e.g., character, heading, paragraph).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Font** group.

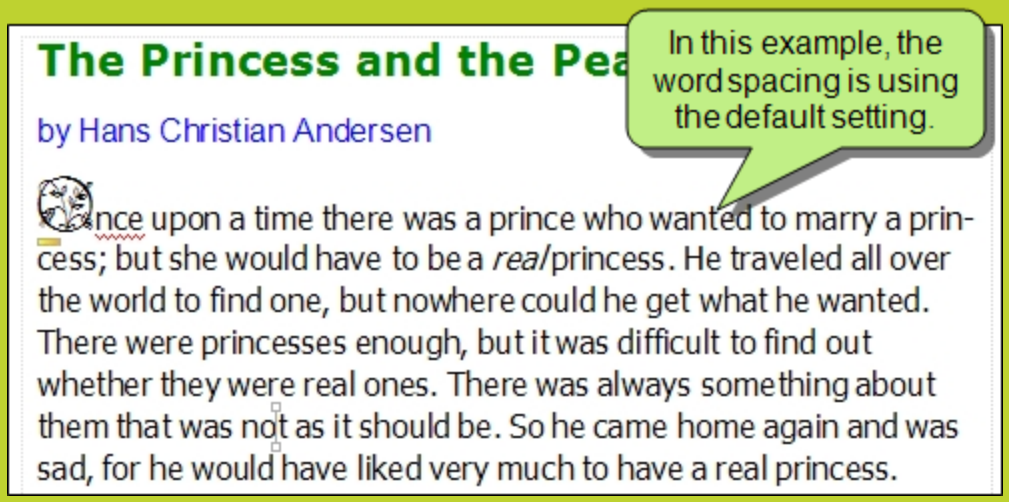
   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Click in the cell to the right of **text-decoration**, type `underline`, and press **Enter**.
8. Click to save your work.

Setting Word Spacing

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can specify the amount of spacing between words.

EXAMPLE



The Princess and the Pea

by Hans Christian Andersen

In this example, the word spacing is set at 4 pixels.

Once upon a time there was a prince who wanted to marry a princess; but she would have to be a *real* princess. He traveled all over the world to find one, but nowhere could he get what he wanted. There were princesses enough, but it was difficult to find out whether they were real ones. There was always something about them that was not as it should be. So he came home again and was sad, for he would have liked very much to have a real princess.

HOW TO SET WORD SPACING ON A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
4. Select a style (e.g., character, heading, paragraph).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Block** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. To the right of **word-spacing**, click the down arrow and select the distance between letters. When you are finished, click **OK**.
8. Click to save your work.

Text Boxes

This feature is supported in Adobe PDF, Microsoft XPS, and XHTML, as well as in all online outputs (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, and WebHelp Plus).

After a text box is inserted, you can make further modifications to change the way that it looks. For more information about text boxes, see the online Help.

HOW TO EDIT TEXT BOXES USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
4. Select the appropriate style. If you use the default style when inserting the text boxes, then select **div**. Otherwise, if you have used a class of that style that you created previously, then select it instead.
5. Use the properties section on the right side of the editor to apply settings for the style.
   - **Background** See "Adding Backgrounds to Text Boxes" on the following page.
   - **Border** See "Adding Borders to Text Boxes" on page 446.
   - **Margins** See "Adding Margins to Text Boxes" on page 450.
   - **Padding** See "Adding Padding to Text Boxes" on page 451.
6. Click to save your work.

Adding Backgrounds to Text Boxes

After you insert a text box, you can add background settings to the text box. This includes the ability to specify a color, an image, and a repeating pattern for the background image.

HOW TO ADD A BACKGROUND TO A TEXT BOX USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
4. Select the appropriate style. If you use the default style when inserting the text boxes, then select **div**. Otherwise, if you have used a class of that style that you created previously, then select it instead.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Background** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Locate the background property that you want to change, depending on what you are trying to accomplish.

   SET A COLOR FOR THE BACKGROUND

   - To the right of **background-color**, click the down arrow and select a color from the popup. For advanced color options, select **More Colors** and use the fields in the Color Picker dialog.

   ADD AN IMAGE TO THE BACKGROUND

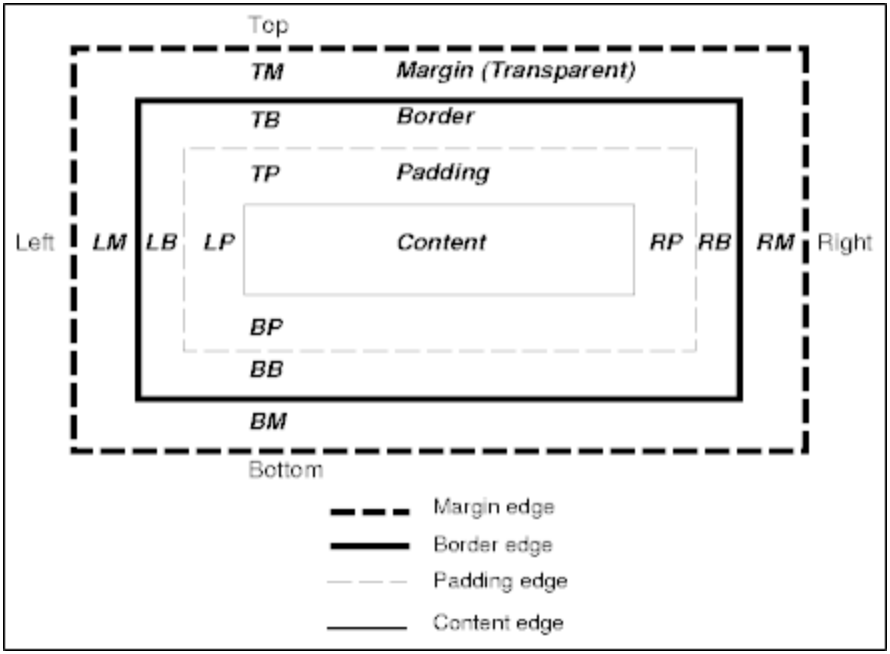
   a. To the right of **background-image**, click and select an image already contained in your project.

   b. If you want the background image to repeat, click in the cell to the right of **background-repeat** and select one of the options (definitions from http://www.w3.org).

      - **no-repeat** The image is not repeated: only one copy of the image is drawn.
      - **repeat** The image is repeated both horizontally and vertically.
      - **repeat-x** The image is repeated horizontally only.
      - **repeat-y** The image is repeated vertically only.
8. Click to save your work.

Adding Borders to Text Boxes

After you insert a text box, you can add borders around it, specifying the border size, color, and type.



HOW TO ADD A BORDER TO A TEXT BOX USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.

2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.

4. Select the appropriate style. If you use the default style when inserting the text boxes, then select **div**. Otherwise, if you have used a class of that style that you created previously, then select it instead.

5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.

6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Border** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.

7. Locate the border property that you want to change. Each side (bottom, left, right, top) has separate properties that you can set for the color, style, and width (e.g., border-bottom-style). You can set these properties individually, or you can set the main property for each side (e.g., border-bottom), which lets you specify the color, style, and width in one place. Even better, if you plan to have the same settings for all four sides, you can simply use the **border** property to set the color, style, and width all the way around.

   When you click in the cell to the right of one of the broad properties (e.g., border, border-bottom), a small popup displays.

   a. Use the lower-left area of the popup to enter a number for the border thickness.
   b. Use the lower-middle area to select a unit of measurement (e.g., point, pixel, centimeter) for the number you entered.
   c. Use the upper-right area to select a color for the border.
   d. Use the lower-right area to select a line type (e.g., solid, double, dashed) for the border.
   e. Click **OK**.

8. Click to save your work.

Setting Hyphenation in Text Boxes

After you insert a text box, you can adjust the way that the text within it is hyphenated.

HOW TO SET HYPHENATION IN A TEXT BOX USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Make sure the appropriate medium is selected. If you are not using stylesheet mediums for your different outputs or if you want all mediums to have the same settings, just leave the medium set to "default" and continue.

   Mediums can be used if you want to use one group of settings for online output types (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus) and another group of settings for print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). For example, you might use the "default" medium for your online outputs and you might use the "print" medium for your print outputs.
3. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Advanced View (which means that the Simplified view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Simplified View instead, then click it.
4. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
5. Select the appropriate style. If you use the default style when inserting the text boxes, then select **div**. Otherwise, if you have used a class of that style that you created previously, then select it instead.
6. In the local toolbar of the editor, click . The Properties dialog opens.
7. Select the **Hyphenation** tab.
8. Complete the options as necessary.
   - **Enable Hyphenation** Select whether you always or never want words to be hyphenated at the end of lines.
   - **Length of shortest word...** Enter the minimum number of characters that a word must have in order to be hyphenated.
   - **The minimum number of characters remaining...** Enter the minimum number of characters that must remain on the initial line when a word is hyphenated. For example, if you enter 4 in this field, a word that normally could be hyphenated after two characters would not be broken at that point. Instead, it would not be broken until at least four letters make an appearance on the first line.
   - **The minimum number of characters carried over...** Enter the minimum number of characters that must be carried over to the second line when a word is hyphenated. For example, if you enter 3 in this field, a hyphenated word must have at least three characters on the second line after it has been broken.
   - **The maximum number of adjacent lines...** Enter the maximum number of lines next to each other that are allowed to end with a hyphenated word. For example, if you do not mind seeing three consecutive lines

ending in a hyphenated word, but you want to avoid seeing a fourth adjacent line with a hyphenated word, you can enter 3 in this field.

9. In the Properties dialog, click **OK**.
10. Click to save your work.

Adding Margins to Text Boxes

After you insert a text box, you can adjust the margins around it so that there is extra space above, below, to the right, or to the left of it.

HOW TO ADD MARGINS TO A TEXT BOX USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
4. Select the appropriate style. If you use the default style when inserting the text boxes, then select **div**. Otherwise, if you have used a class of that style that you created previously, then select it instead.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Box** group.

   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Locate the margin property that you want to change. Each side (bottom, left, right, top) has separate properties that you can set (e.g., margin-top). If you plan to have the same settings for all four sides, you can simply use the **margin** property.
8. Click to save your work.

Note: Different browsers may treat margin and padding settings differently. For example, Internet Explorer 8 and Firefox honor padding settings more than they honor margin settings. If you were to set a left margin at, say, 1 inch, Internet Explorer 7 would show it that way. However, in order to get the same results in Internet Explorer 8 or Firefox, you would also need to set the left padding at 1 inch.

Adding Padding to Text Boxes

After you insert a text box, you can add padding (i.e., extra space) between the text box's border and the text within it.

HOW TO ADD PADDING TO A TEXT BOX USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
4. Select the appropriate style. If you use the default style when inserting the text boxes, then select **div**. Otherwise, if you have used a class of that style that you created previously, then select it instead.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Box** group.

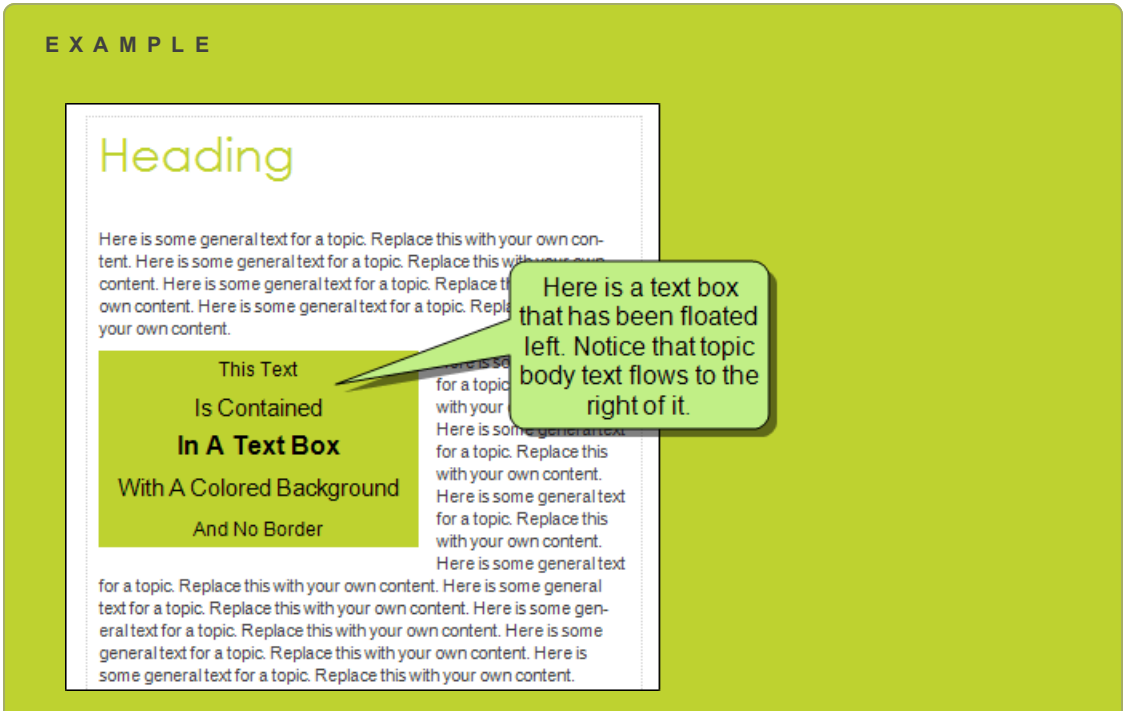
   The property name is shown in the left column. The right column is used for selecting and entering values for the property.
7. Locate the padding property that you want to change. Each side (bottom, left, right, top) has separate properties that you can set (e.g., padding-top). If you plan to have the same settings for all four sides, you can simply use the **padding** property.
8. Click to save your work.

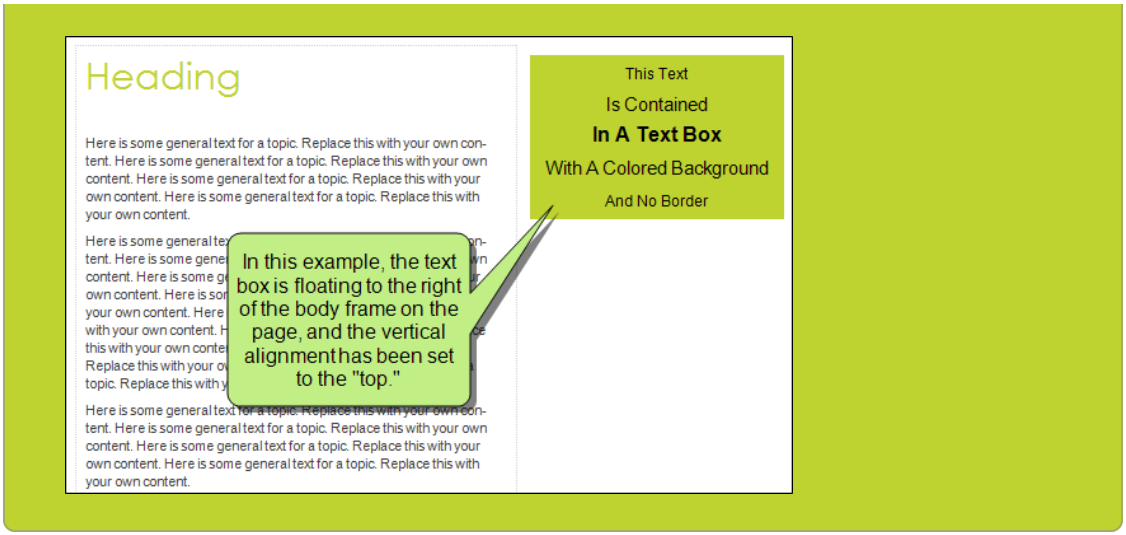
Note: Different browsers may treat margin and padding settings differently. For example, Internet Explorer 8 and Firefox honor padding settings more than they honor margin settings. If you were to set a left margin at, say, 1 inch, Internet Explorer 7 would show it that way. However, in order to get the same results in Internet Explorer 8 or Firefox, you would also need to set the left padding at 1 inch.

Positioning Text Boxes

After you insert a text box, you can adjust its positioning on the page. This includes the ability to float text boxes to the left or right, or even outside of page frames.

This can be done through styles or by using local formatting. If you want to position all text boxes in the same place on the pages where they appear, use a style. If you want to position each text box so that it is in a unique location on the page where it has been inserted, use local formatting.





HOW TO POSITION TEXT BOXES USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Make sure the appropriate medium is selected. If you are not using stylesheet mediums for your different outputs or if you want all mediums to have the same settings, just leave the medium set to "default" and continue.

   Mediums can be used if you want to use one group of settings for online output types (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus) and another group of settings for print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). For example, you might use the "default" medium for your online outputs and you might use the "print" medium for your print outputs.
3. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Advanced View (which means that the Simplified view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Simplified View instead, then click it.
4. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
5. Select the appropriate style. If you use the default style when inserting the text boxes, then select **div**. Otherwise, if you have used a class of that style that you created previously, then select it instead.
6. In the local toolbar of the editor, click . The Properties dialog opens.
7. Select the **Position** tab.

8. In the **Position** section, you can select a **Float** and a **Clear** setting. You can also set the **Vertical Alignment** of the text box.

FLOAT

Use this field to specify where to place the text box on the page.

- **None** Does not place the text box in a specific location.
- **Left** Positions the text box on the left side of the page frame, allowing you to type text to the right of the text box.
- **Right** Positions the text box on the right side of the page frame, allowing you to type text to the left of the text box.
- **Center of Column** Positions the text box in the center of the column on the page.
- **Outside Left Margin** Positions the text box beyond the left margin of the topic text.
- **Outside Right Margin** Positions the text box beyond the right margin of the topic text.
- **Outside Frame** Positions the text box outside of the page frame.
- **Outside Frame, Top Align** Positions the text box outside of the page frame, as well as aligning it with the top of the frame.
- **Left of Frame** Positions the text box to the left of the page frame.
- **Right of Frame** Positions the text box to the right of the page frame.
- **Center of Frame** Positions the text box both vertically and horizontally in the middle of the page frame.

CLEAR

Use this field to position a text box so that it is "clear" of an adjacent text box. For example, let's say you have already inserted a text box and applied the float left property to it. If you then insert another text box immediately after the first text box, you want to make sure that the second text box doesn't rest next to the first text box. Instead, you want the second text box to be placed completely below the first text box. Therefore, you can apply a clear property to the second text box.

- **None** Does not apply the clear property to the text box.
- **Left Side** The text box will be placed below the bottom outer edge of a previous text box that is floating left.
- **Right Side** The text box will be placed below the bottom outer edge of a previous text box that is floating right.
- **Both Sides** The text box will be placed below the a previous text box, whether it is floating left or right.

VERTICAL ALIGNMENT

Use this field to adjust where the item is positioned vertically.

- **Baseline** The baseline of the box will be aligned with the baseline of the parent box.
- **Text Top** The top of the box will be aligned with the top of the parent element's font.
- **Text Bottom** The bottom of the box will be aligned with the bottom of the line box.
- **Top** The top of the box will be aligned with the top of the line box.
- **Middle** The vertical midpoint of the box will be aligned with the baseline of the parent box, plus half the x-height of the parent.
- **Bottom** The bottom of the box will be aligned with the bottom of the line box.

9. In the Properties dialog, click **OK**.
10. Click to save your work.
11. When you insert a text box, select the **div** tag that you have modified.

Note: If you want to adjust the space between the object and the text that flows next to it, you can modify the margins on the object (using the Borders & Margins tab in the dialog).

Note: For additional details on the rules for floating objects, see **http://www.w3c.org**.

Specifying the Size of Text Boxes

After you insert a text box, you can adjust its width and height.

HOW TO SPECIFY THE SIZE OF A TEXT BOX USING A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Make sure the appropriate medium is selected. If you are not using stylesheet mediums for your different outputs or if you want all mediums to have the same settings, just leave the medium set to "default" and continue.

   Mediums can be used if you want to use one group of settings for online output types (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus) and another group of settings for print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). For example, you might use the "default" medium for your online outputs and you might use the "print" medium for your print outputs.
3. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Advanced View (which means that the Simplified view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Simplified View instead, then click it.
4. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Paragraph Styles.
5. Select the appropriate style. If you use the default style when inserting the text boxes, then select **div**. Otherwise, if you have used a class of that style that you created previously, then select it instead.
6. In the local toolbar of the editor, click . The Properties dialog opens.
7. Select the **Position** tab.
8. Specify the **Width** and **Height** of the text box.
9. In the Properties dialog, click **OK**.
10. Click to save your work.

Text Hyperlinks

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can edit text hyperlinks that you have inserted into a topic in at least three different ways: (1) edit the destination and properties of the hyperlink, (2) edit the style of the hyperlink, and (3) unbind (or remove) the hyperlink from the text. The following steps show you how to edit the style of a hyperlink.

HOW TO EDIT THE STYLE OF A TEXT HYPERLINK

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Link Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section on the left side of the editor, find and select the **a** tag.

   If you want to modify the way links look when they are in a certain state, you can select a pseudo class under the <a> tag. Link pseudo classes include the following:

   - **Active** This class is used when the person activates the element (mouse is clicked).
   - **Focus** This class is used if the element has the focus.
   - **Hover** This class is used when the person hovers the mouse over the element.
   - **Link** This class is used for links that have not yet been clicked.
   - **Visited** This class is used for links that have already been clicked.

   EXAMPLE

   Let's say you want the text to display in green for links that have not yet been clicked. But after a link is clicked, you want it to display as gray text. Therefore, under the <a> style tag, you modify the "link" pseudo class and change the font color to green. Then you modify the "visited" pseudo class under the <a> tag so that the font color is gray.

5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Assorted Relevant Properties. The most relevant properties for that style are shown on the right side of the editor.
6. From the **Properties** section, change values for any of the style's properties.
7. Click to save your work.

Text Popups

This feature is supported in all online outputs (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, and WebHelp Plus).

HOW TO EDIT THE STYLE OF A TEXT POPUP

You can edit the style (e.g., font, color) of a text popup hotspot or the popup body. When you do this, the style changes for all text popups in any topics in your project.

E X A M P L E

Let's say that you want to change the font for your text popup hotspots to dark green with no underline. The following steps show you how to accomplish this.

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Dynamic Effects Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section on the left side of the editor, find and select the style called **MadCap|popupHead** (for the hotspot) or **MadCap|popupBody** (for the body of the popup).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Assorted Relevant Properties. The most relevant properties for that style are shown on the right side of the editor.
6. From the **Properties** section, change values for any of the style's properties.
7. Click to save your work.

Togglers

This feature is supported in all online outputs (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, and WebHelp Plus).

HOW TO EDIT THE STYLE OF A TOGGLER HOTSPOT

You can edit the style (e.g., font, color) of a toggler hotspot. When you do this, the style changes for all toggler hotspots in any topics in your project.

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Dynamic Effects Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section on the left side of the editor, find and select the style called **MadCap|toggler** (or a toggler style class you have created within it).
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Assorted Relevant Properties. The most relevant properties for that style are shown on the right side of the editor.
6. From the **Properties** section, change values for any of the style's properties. Following are some of the more common properties that you might change.
   - **mc-closed-image** This style, located in the **Unclassified** property group, lets you select an image to be shown next to the toggler effect when it is in a closed state.
   - **mc-closed-image-alt-text** This style, located in the **Unclassified** property group, lets you set alternate text for the toggler effect when it is in a closed state.
   - **mc-open-image** This style, located in the **Unclassified** property group, lets you select an image to be shown next to the toggler effect when it is in an open state.
   - **mc-open-image-alt-text** This style, located in the **Unclassified** property group, lets you set alternate text for the toggler effect when it is in an open state.
7. Click to save your work.

Topic Popups

This feature is supported in all online outputs (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, and WebHelp Plus).

HOW TO EDIT THE STYLE OF A TOPIC POPUP HYPERLINK

You can edit the style (e.g., font, color) of the hyperlink for a topic popup. When you do this, the style changes for all topic popups in any topics in your project.

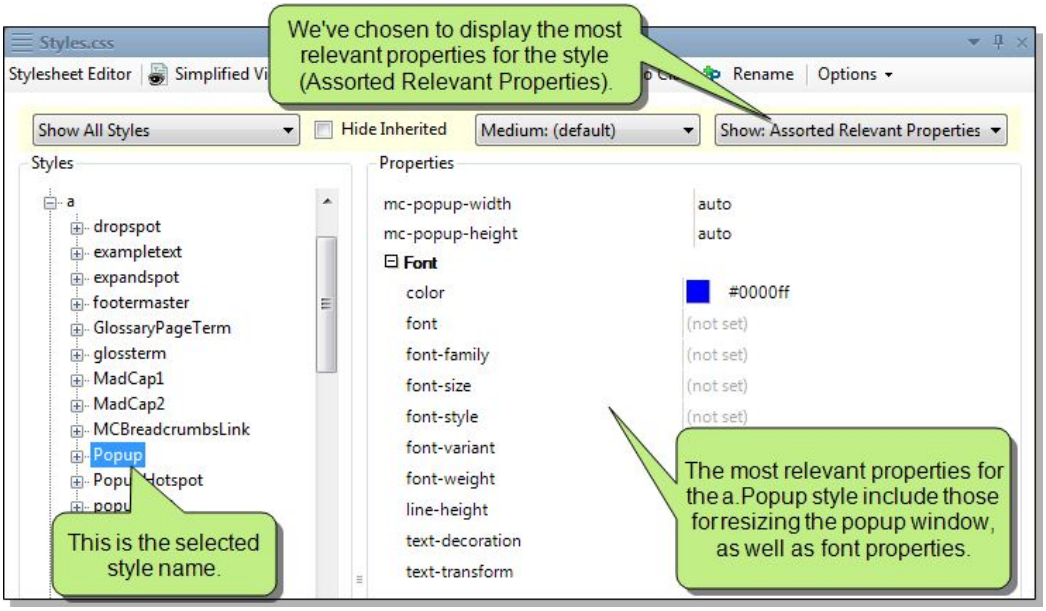
E X A M P L E

Let's say that you want to change the font for your topic popups to dark green with no underline. The following steps show you how to accomplish this.

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Link Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section on the left side of the editor, find and select the **a.Popup** tag.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Assorted Relevant Properties. The most relevant properties for that style are shown on the right side of the editor.



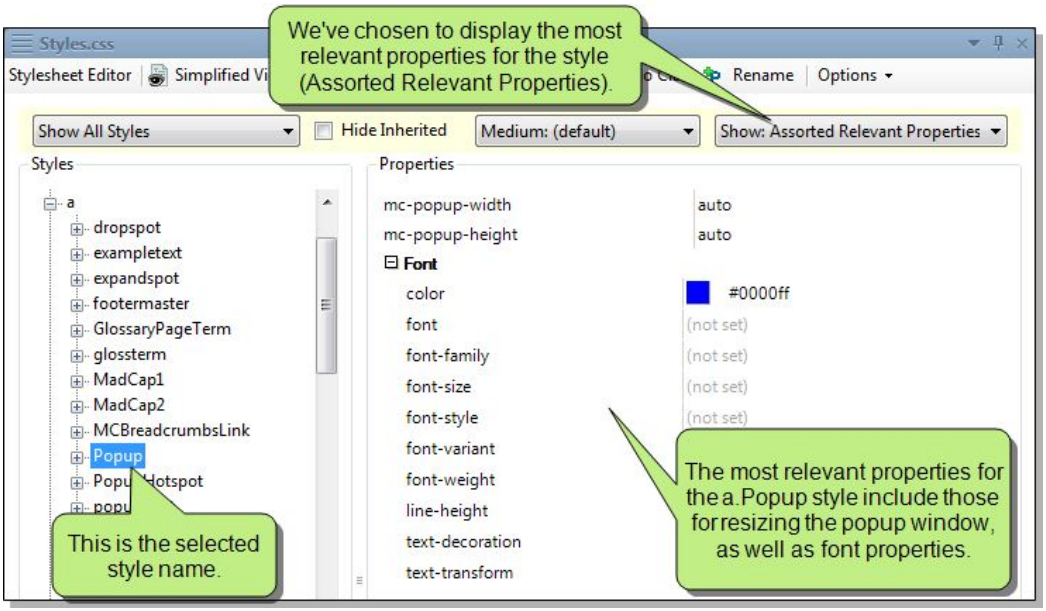
6. From the **Properties** section, change values for any of the style's properties.
7. Click to save your work.

Customizing the Size of Topic Popups

If you insert a topic popup link, the popup displays in a default window size in the output (after the link is clicked). However, you can adjust the style to specify a custom size for the popup box. You can do this by selecting the a.Popup style class and changing the values for the mc-popup-width and mc-popup-height properties (located in the Unclassified property group).

HOW TO CUSTOMIZE THE SIZE OF TOPIC POPUPS

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Link Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section on the left side of the editor, find and select the **a.Popup** style class.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Assorted Relevant Properties. The most relevant properties for that style are shown on the right side of the editor.



6. From the **Properties** section, click in the column to the right of **mc-popup-width** or **mc-popup-height** (where it displays "auto"). A small box popup displays, where you can enter values.
7. In the top-right corner of the small popup box (next to "Automatic"), click the down arrow and select **Length**.
8. In the lower-left field, enter a number.
9. In the lower-right field, click the down arrow and select a unit of measurement.
10. In the popup box, click **OK**.
11. Click to save your work.

Topic Toolbars

This feature is supported in DotNet Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, and WebHelp Plus output.

You can use the <Madcap|topicToolbarProxy> style to change the look of the container holding generated topic toolbars.

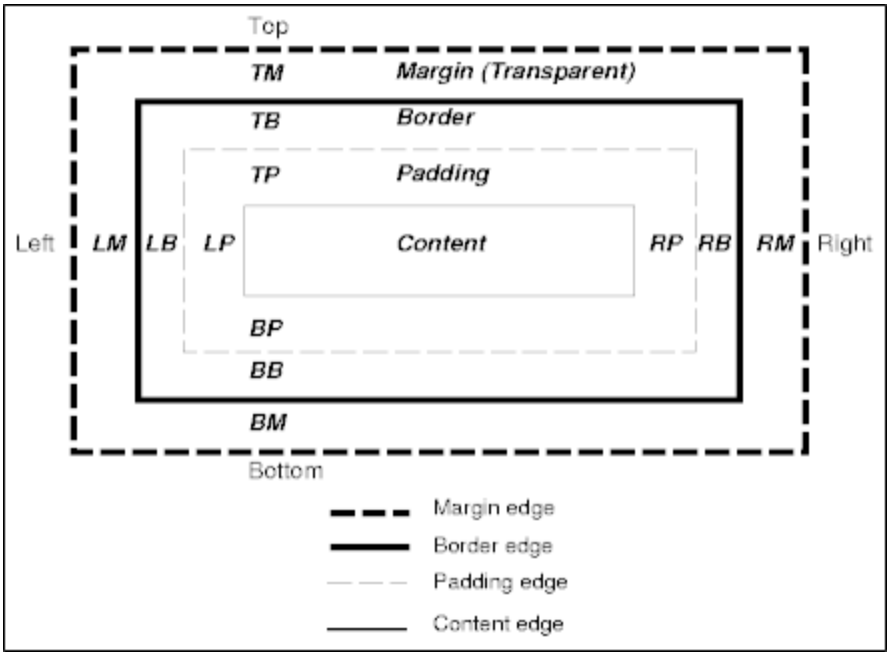
HOW TO USE STYLES TO DETERMINE THE LOOK OF TOPIC TOOLBARS

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: Some of the necessary style properties can also be changed in the Simplified view in the Stylesheet Editor.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Reusable Content Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section of the editor, select **MadCap|topicToolbarProxy**.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Assorted Relevant Properties. The most relevant properties for that style are shown on the right side of the editor.
6. In the **Properties** section to the right, you can change a variety of style settings for topic toolbars. You may need to expand a property group (e.g., Block, Box, Border) to see the actual properties within it.
7. Locate the specific property that you want to change. The property name is shown in the left column. Use the right column to select and enter values for the property. Depending on the type of property, you can either type the value, select it from a drop-down list, or complete the value entries in a popup box. Here are some of the more common properties that you might change.
   - **Border below** To change the border line that appears at the bottom of the topic toolbar, expand the **Borders** property group. Then click in the right column next to **border-bottom**, set the border width, unit of measurement, color, and/or style in the small drop-down window. Click **OK**. You can also use the other cells in this property group to add borders above, to the left, or to the right of the topic toolbar.

- **Padding above** To change the amount of empty space (padding) above the text within the topic toolbar container, expand the **Box** property group. Then click in the right column next to **padding-top**, set the padding value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**.
- **Padding below** To change the amount of empty space (padding) below the text within the topic toolbar container, expand the **Box** property group. Then click in the right column next to **padding-bottom**, set the padding value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**.
- **Space above** To change the amount of space above the topic toolbar container, expand the **Box** property group. Then click in the right column next to **margin-top**, set the margin value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**.
- **Space below** To change the amount of space below the topic toolbar container, expand the **Box** property group. Then click in the right column next to **margin-bottom**, set the margin value in the small drop-down window, and click **OK**.



Note: You can also affect the look of topic toolbars by modifying the styles in your skin. See "Standard Skin Styles" on page 625 and "WebHelp Mobile Skin Styles" on page 755.

Note: Different browsers may treat margin and padding settings differently. For example, Internet Explorer 8 and Firefox honor padding settings more than they honor margin settings. If you were to set a left margin at, say, 1 inch, Internet Explorer 7 would show it that way. However, in order to get the same results in Internet Explorer 8 or Firefox, you would also need to set the left padding at 1 inch.

8. Click to save your work.

Topics

This feature is supported in all outputs.

You can use styles to change the look or behavior of entire topics. Here are a few ways to do this:

- **Background Color** See "Applying Color to the Background for Topics" on the following page.
- **Background Image** See "Creating Watermarks" on page 153.
- **Nonscrolling Regions** See "Creating a Nonscrolling Region" on page 471.

Applying Color to the Background for Topics

You can change the background color for topics by using the parent <body> style tag or classes of that style. If you want the background color to be applied to all topics using a particular stylesheet, you can use the parent <body> tag. If you want to change the background color for only some topics, create and use a class of the <body> tag.

HOW TO APPLY A BACKGROUND COLOR FOR ALL TOPICS

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.

   Note: For steps using the Simplified View, see the online Help.

3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section on the left side of the editor, find and select the **body** tag.
5. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
6. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Background** group.
7. Next to the **background-color** field, click in the column on the right.
8. Click the down arrow and select a color from the popup. For advanced color options, select **More Colors** and use the fields in the Color Picker dialog.
9. Click to save your work.

HOW TO APPLY A BACKGROUND COLOR FOR ONLY SOME TOPICS

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
3. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
4. In the **Styles** section on the left side of the editor, find and select the **body** tag.
5. In the local toolbar, click **Add Class**. The New Style dialog opens.
6. Enter a name for the new style class and click **OK**. The new class is added under the <body> tag.
7. In the **Styles** section, make sure the new style class is selected.
8. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Property Groups.
9. In the **Properties** section, expand the **Background** group.
10. Next to the **background-color** field, click in the column on the right.
11. Click the down arrow and select a color from the popup. For advanced color options, select **More Colors** and use the fields in the Color Picker dialog.
12. Click to save your work.
13. Open the topic to which you want to apply the background color.
14. If the tag block bars are not shown to the left of the content, click in the toolbar at the bottom of the editor.
15. Right-click the **body** tag bar (the second bar from the left).
16. In the context menu, select **Style Class>body.[name of class]**.
17. Click to save your work.

Note: These steps change the background for the entire topic in online output. For print output that uses page layouts, these steps affect the background of the frames only, not the margins outside of the frames. If you want to change the background for print output that extends to the margins, you can specify background settings in your page layouts. Let's say that you want a yellow background on all topics for both online and print-based output, extending all the way to the edges of the screen or page. For online output, you would use the steps above to set the background color for the <body> tag to yellow. For the print output, you would set the background on the pages in your layout to yellow and set the page margins to 0.

Creating a Nonscrolling Region

For online output you can specify that a certain portion of the content (usually a heading and breadcrumbs, if included) should remain fixed in place. This means that when the end user scrolls down to see more content, the fixed areas do not scroll with the rest of the text. You can see an example of this in any Flare online Help topic.

In order to create this type of effect, you need to make changes to multiple properties for at least two or three different styles—<body>, the heading style (usually <h1> or a variant of it), and <MadCap|breadcrumbsProxy> (if you include breadcrumbs).

HOW TO CREATE A NONSCROLLING REGION

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Make sure the appropriate medium is selected. If you are not using stylesheet mediums for your different outputs or if you want all mediums to have the same settings, just leave the medium set to "default" and continue.

   Mediums can be used if you want to use one group of settings for online output types (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus) and another group of settings for print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). For example, you might use the "default" medium for your online outputs and you might use the "print" medium for your print outputs.

   In the case of nonscrolling regions, you probably want at least some of the settings described below to be different for online outputs than for print-based outputs.
3. In the local toolbar, make sure the first button displays Simplified View (which means that the Advanced view is currently shown in the editor). If the button displays Advanced View instead, then click it.
4. In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Heading Styles.
5. From the **Styles** area, select the **h1** tag (or whatever tag you are using for headings at the top of topics).
6. From the **Show** drop-down list on the upper-right side of the editor, select Show: Alphabetical List.
7. Make changes to the following properties in the list. For each property, click in the cell to the right of it and enter the appropriate values.
   - **background-color** Select the background color you want for your nonscrolling region. If you already have a background color set for your breadcrumbs (using the <MadCap|breadcrumbsProxy> style), you might want to use the same color.
   - **border-bottom** Select the border type (e.g., solid), width (e.g., 2px), and color you want for the line under your nonscrolling region.
   - **left** Set the distance from the left edge of the browser window. This should be **0**.

- **margin** Set the distance to the edge of the browser window. The values for the top, bottom, left, and right may vary. Start with **0** and adjust as necessary.
- **padding** Set the distance from the edge of the "container" holding the content to the content itself. Again, the values for the top, bottom, left, and right may vary.
- **position** This is the most critical property, which keeps the content from scrolling. Set it to **fixed**.
- **right** Set the distance from the right edge of the browser window. This should be **0**.
- **top** Set the distance to the top of the browser window. If you are not using breadcrumbs then enter **0**. Otherwise enter enough space to clear the breadcrumbs (e.g., 30px).
- **width** Set the width to **100%** to make sure that the nonscrolling region fills the width of the page.

Here is an example of how the settings might look in the Stylesheet Editor. The properties relevant for non-scrolling regions are highlighted.

Properties

background-color	#f5f5f5
border-bottom	solid 2px #006400
color	#002000
display	block
font-family	Arial
font-size	13pt
font-weight	bold
left	0px
margin	.67em 0
margin-bottom	8pt
margin-top	0pt
mc-auto-number-offset	0
mc-auto-number-position	inside-head
mc-disable-glossary-terms	true
mc-dita-type	p
mc-heading-level	1
padding-bottom	10px
padding-left	10px
padding-top	5px
page-break-before	always
position	fixed
right	0px
text-transform	capitalize
top	30px
width	100%

8. (Optional—complete the next three steps only if you are using breadcrumbs) In the upper-left corner of the editor, click in the **Show Styles** field and select Show Reusable Content Styles.
9. From the **Styles** area, select the **MadCap|breadcrumbsProxy** tag.
10. Make adjustments to the same style attributes as you did for the <h1> tag. You may need to make minor variations so that the breadcrumbs render above the <h1> text.

    Here is an example of how the settings might look in the Stylesheet Editor. The properties relevant for non-scrolling regions are highlighted.

Properties

background-color	#f5f5f5
border-bottom	solid 0px #f5f5f5
border-bottom-color	#f5f5f5
border-bottom-style	solid
border-bottom-width	0px
border-top	solid 0px
font-size	10pt
left	0px
margin	0px
margin-bottom	0px
mc-breadcrumbs-count	3
mc-breadcrumbs-divider	>
mc-breadcrumbs-prefix	You are here:
padding	10px
padding-bottom	10px
padding-left	20px
position	fixed
right	0px
top	0px
width	100%

11. In the upper-left corner of the editor, make sure the **Show Styles** field is set to Show All Styles.
12. From the **Styles** area, select the **body** tag.
13. Find and select the **margin-top** property and in the cell to the right enter a value high enough to ensure that none of the topic text ends up hidden behind the nonscrolling region.

    A value of 100px might work well for some people, but 50px might work better for others. Enter a number somewhere in that range, preview a topic, and adjust the value as necessary.
14. Click to save your work.

Applying Styles and Stylesheets

Create styles and stylesheets is only part of the process for using them. You also need to tell Flare which content should use those styles and stylesheets.

Applying Master Stylesheets

When you want to use styles in your content, the stylesheet needs to be made available for the content in question. In Flare, you can associate regular stylesheets with a single topic (see "Applying Regular Stylesheets to Topics" on page 478). However, you also have the option of using a regular stylesheet as a "master," applying it at either the project or target level, or both.

- **Master Stylesheets at the Project Level** You can associate a master stylesheet with an entire Flare project. The styles will therefore be available to all content in the project. You can set the project-level master stylesheet in the Project Properties dialog (select **Project>Project Properties**).
- **Master Stylesheets at the Target Level** You can associate a master stylesheet with an entire Flare target. The styles will therefore be used for the content in the target. If you have specified a master stylesheet at the project level and another at a target level, the stylesheet at the target will take precedence. If you are using different master stylesheets for different targets, the stylesheet associated with the primary target determines what you see in the XML Editor. You can set the target-level master stylesheet on the General tab of the Target Editor.

HOW TO APPLY A MASTER STYLESHEET TO A PROJECT

1. Do one of the following, depending on the part of the user interface you are using:
   - **Ribbon** Select the **Project** ribbon. In the **Properties** section select **Project Properties**.
   - **Menu** Select **Project>Project Properties**.
   - **Project toolbar** Click Project Properties...

     To open the Project toolbar from the menu view, select **View>Toolbars>Project**.

   The Project Properties dialog opens.
2. Select the **Defaults** tab.
3. In the **Master Stylesheet** field, click the drop-down and select the stylesheet to be used as the master.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Click to save your work.

HOW TO APPLY A MASTER STYLESHEET TO A TARGET

1. From the Project Organizer open the target.
2. Select the **General** tab.
3. In the **Master Stylesheet** field, click the drop-down and select the stylesheet to be used as the master.
4. Click to save your work.

Applying Regular Stylesheets to Topics

After creating a regular stylesheet, you need to apply (link) the stylesheet to topics where you want to use those styles. It is recommended that you apply a master stylesheet at the project or target level, which means that the stylesheet will automatically be applied to all topics in that project or target (see "Applying Styles and Stylesheets" on page 476). However, if you want to apply different stylesheets to topics individually, you can.

The following methods can be used when applying stylesheets to topics.

- Apply one or more stylesheets to a single topic.
- Apply a single stylesheet to multiple topics at the same time using the File List window pane.
- Apply a single stylesheet to multiple topics at the same time using the Split View feature.

Following are steps for each of these.

HOW TO APPLY ONE OR MORE STYLESHEETS TO A SINGLE TOPIC

1. Open the topic to which you want to apply the stylesheet.
2. Do one of the following, depending on the part of the user interface you are using:
   - **Ribbon** Select the **Home** ribbon. In the **Styles** section select **Stylesheet Links**.

     You can use the Options dialog to switch between ribbons and the classic tool strip layout. For more information see the online Help.

     Keep in mind that the smaller the application window becomes, the more the options in a ribbon shrink. Therefore, you might only see a small icon instead of text, or you might see only a section name displayed with a down arrow to access the options in it. You can hover over small icons to see tooltips that describe them. You can also enlarge the application window or click one of the section drop-downs in the ribbon to locate a hidden feature.
   - **Menu** Select **Tools>Stylesheet Links**.

     The Stylesheet Links dialog opens, showing all the regular stylesheets in your project.
3. Do one of the following:
   - On the right side of the dialog, select the stylesheet(s) that you want to associate with the topic. Then click << to add the stylesheet(s) to the Current Links section on the left.

     OR
   - Double-click the stylesheet(s) that you want to associate with the topic. The stylesheet is added to the Current Links section on the left.

   Note: If the stylesheet does not yet exist, you can click **Add** to create a new stylesheet.
4. Click **OK**. The stylesheet is now associated with the topic.
5. Click to save your work.

HOW TO APPLY A SINGLE STYLESHEET TO MULTIPLE TOPICS USING THE FILE LIST WINDOW PANE

1. Do one of the following, depending on the part of the user interface you are using:
   - **Ribbon** Select the **View** ribbon. In the **Explorer** section select **File List**.
   - **Menu** Select **View>File List**.
   - **Keyboard Shortcut** Press **CTRL+SHIFT+J**.

   The Stylesheet Links dialog opens, showing all the regular stylesheets in your project.
2. (Optional) From the **Filter** drop-down list in the File List window pane, select the type of files that you want to view.
3. Select the files to which you want to apply a stylesheet. You can hold the **SHIFT** key to select a range, or you can hold the **CTRL** key to select individual items.
4. In the local toolbar, click . The Properties dialog opens.
5. Click the **Topic Properties** tab.
6. In the **Stylesheet** field, click the drop-down arrow and select the appropriate stylesheet.
7. Click **OK**.

HOW TO APPLY A SINGLE STYLESHEET TO MULTIPLE TOPICS USING THE SPLIT VIEW FEATURE

1. In the Content Explorer, click the **Show Files** button. The Content Explorer splits into two halves (left and right).
2. On the left side of the split Content Explorer, select the folder containing the topics to which you want to apply a stylesheet.
3. On the right side of the split Content Explorer, select the topics. Hold down the **SHIFT** key and click a range of topics, or hold down the **CTRL** key and click individual topics.
4. In the local toolbar, click. The Properties dialog opens.
5. Click the **Topic Properties** tab.
6. In the **Stylesheet** field, click the drop-down arrow and select the appropriate stylesheet.
7. Click **OK**.
8. To hide the split view, click the **Show Files** button again.

Note: You cannot use multiple stylesheets per topic for native Adobe PDF, Microsoft XPS, and XHTML outputs.

Applying Styles to Content

You can apply styles from a stylesheet to content in your topics. For regular stylesheets, this means choosing sections in your topics and selecting individual styles from the stylesheet. For table styles, this means inserting a table into a topic and selecting a table stylesheet during that process, or from the Table Properties dialog when editing a table.

HOW TO APPLY STYLES FROM A REGULAR STYLESHEET

When you insert or create certain content in a topic, the parent tag for that type of element is often automatically applied (e.g., the <li> tag is automatically applied when you create a list bullet item). The following steps show you how to select a particular style for content (perhaps a class of a parent tag, such as "li.indented," or another tag altogether).

1. Open the topic for which you want to apply styles.
2. When applying styles to content, you are likely to use one of the following, depending on the type of style you are applying. Most of the time, there are multiple ways to select a style. To make sure these tools are open, do the following.

   #### *STYLES WINDOW PANE*

   Do one of the following, depending on the part of the user interface you are using:

   - **Ribbon** Select the **Home** ribbon. In the **Styles** section select **Style Window**.

     You can use the Options dialog to switch between ribbons and the classic tool strip layout. For more information see the online Help.

     Keep in mind that the smaller the application window becomes, the more the options in a ribbon shrink. Therefore, you might only see a small icon instead of text, or you might see only a section name displayed with a down arrow to access the options in it. You can hover over small icons to see tooltips that describe them. You can also enlarge the application window or click one of the section drop-downs in the ribbon to locate a hidden feature.
   - **Menu** Select **View>Style Window**.
   - **Keyboard Shortcut** Press **F12**

   The Styles window pane opens, showing styles from your stylesheet.

STYLES DROP-DOWN FIELD

Do one of the following, depending on the part of the user interface you are using:

- **Ribbon** Select the **Home** ribbon. The styles drop-down field is located in the **Styles** section. It looks like this: Style: p. The current style is displayed in the drop-down—in this example, <p> is the current style.
- **Text Format Toolbar** The drop-down in the toolbar looks like this: li. The current style is displayed in the drop-down—in this example, <li> is the current style.

  To open the Text Format toolbar from the menu view, select **View>Toolbars>Text Format**.

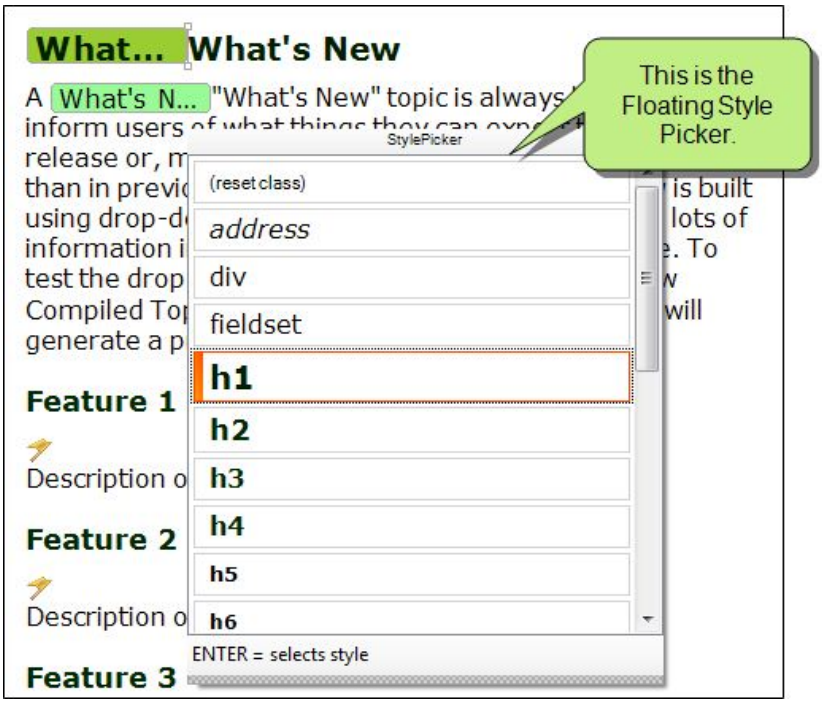
FLOATING STYLE PICKER

Do one of the following, depending on the part of the user interface you are using:

- **Menu** Select **Format>Pick Style**.
- **Keyboard Shortcut** Press **CTRL+SHIFT+H**.

  To open the Text Format toolbar from the menu view, select **View>Toolbars>Text Format**.

The Style Picker displays, showing style classes from the stylesheets that are associated with the topic.



STRUCTURE BARS

In the local toolbar at the bottom of the XML Editor, click one of the buttons to turn on the structure bars. Depending on the button that you click, structure bars are displayed either to the left of the topic or table content, or above it.

MARKERS

In the local toolbar of the XML Editor, click the down arrow in the **Show tags** button and select **Show Markers**.

When applying styles to content, you may notice from time to time that the style you are looking for is not available from the drop-down list or Styles window pane when you try to select it.

This can occur if the style exists in a particular medium (e.g., print) but not in the default medium. So if you are working in the XML Editor with the medium set to default and you attempt to apply that style to content, you won't see it in the selection list with all of the other styles. To correct this, make sure the style exists in the default medium as well.

Another possible reason for this has to do with the location of the cursor in the topic. Flare realizes where the cursor is placed and knows that only certain styles should be applied at that location.

EXAMPLES

Let's say that you have your cursor on a regular paragraph and you want to apply a list <li> style to it in order to turn it into the beginning of a bulleted list. Because it is not yet a list item, but rather a simple paragraph, you will not see your <li> style when you try to select it. Instead, you will see several paragraph styles in the list. In order to use the list style, you first need to turn the paragraph into a bulleted list item, by clicking the bullet button in the Home ribbon or Text Format toolbar.

You also might notice that if you have your cursor in a list, you only see <li> styles in the window pane, but not the broader <ol> and <ul> styles. To see these other styles, click at the very beginning of a list item. Then press the left arrow key. This should switch the Style window pane from showing <li> styles to the <ol> and <ul> tags. If you have your structure bars on, you'll see why this happens. When you initially click in a list, you'll see that the <li> block bar is highlighted, so Flare assumes you want to do something with that style level. After you press your left arrow key enough, you'll see the next level up (<ol> or <ul>) become highlighted. And if you keep pressing the left arrow key, Flare will highlight then next level of style (e.g., <body>). And whatever is highlighted in the structure bar should become available as styles in the Style window pane.

Here is another example. If multiple paragraphs are selected or if the cursor is simply placed somewhere within a paragraph, the paragraph styles are shown in the Styles window pane. If only a portion of a paragraph is selected, the character styles are shown.

If you still do not see your style available for selection, try closing and re-launching Flare.

3. In the topic, do one of the following, depending on the type of content to which you are applying a style.

CHARACTERS (I.E., SELECTED TEXT)

a. Highlight all characters within a paragraph that you want to be affected by the style, without selecting the entire paragraph.

b. From the Home ribbon, Styles window pane, Floating Style Picker, or Text Format toolbar, select the character style.

DYNAMIC EFFECTS (E.G., DROP-DOWN TEXT, EXPANDING TEXT, TOGGLERS, POPUPS)

a. Insert the dynamic effect.

b. You can create a class for one of the parent dynamic effect styles in the Stylesheet Editor (e.g., MadCap|dropDownHead.italic). See "Creating Styles" on page 55.

c. For some dynamic effect styles (e.g., MadCap|dropDownHead.italic), you can place your cursor on the appropriate text in the topic and select the style from the Styles window pane or Text Format toolbar. For other dynamic effect styles (e.g., MadCap|dropDown.myimageicon), you can hover over the appropriate marker in the topic until the cursor is an arrow. Then right-click the marker and select **Style Class> [Name of Style]**.

FOOTNOTES

a. Insert the footnote into the topic.

b. You can create a class for one of the parent footnote tags in the Stylesheet Editor. See "Creating Styles" on page 55.

c. For some footnote styles (e.g., MadCap|footnote), you can hover over the appropriate marker in the topic until the cursor is an arrow. Then right-click the marker and select **Style Class>[Name of Style]**.

FORMS

a. Insert the form into the topic. The <form> tag can be selected after you highlight multiple paragraphs in a topic, select the **Home** ribbon and click, or select the Format menu and choose **Group**.

b. You can create a class for the <form> tag in the Stylesheet Editor. See "Creating Styles" on page 55.

c. Right-click the structure bar to the left that is labeled "form" and select **Style Class>[Name of Style]**.

HEADINGS

a. Click somewhere in the paragraph to be used as the heading. If you highlight the text, make sure you highlight the entire paragraph. Otherwise, you will not be able to select a heading style, but rather a character style only. The exception to this is when you highlight portions of multiple paragraphs at the same time; in that case, you will be able to select a heading style to be applied to all of those paragraphs.

b. From the Home ribbon, Styles window pane, Floating Style Picker, or Text Format toolbar, select the character style.

LINKS (E.G., CROSS-REFERENCES, TEXT HYPERLINKS)

a. Insert the link into the topic.

b. You can create a class for the link tag in the Stylesheet Editor (e.g., a.greenlink, MadCap|xref.seepage). See "Creating Styles" on page 55.

c. In the XML Editor, click inside the link.

d. At the top of the XML Editor, right-click the span bar representing the link. For example, hyperlink span bars have an "a" label, and cross-reference span bars have a "MadCap:xref" label. When you click on the link in the topic, the appropriate span bar at the top of the XML Editor will change color to indicate that it goes with the link. If your span bars are not turned on, click in the local toolbar of the XML Editor.

e. In the menu, select **Style Class>[Name of Style]**.

LIST ITEMS

a. Create the list item in the topic.

b. You can create a class for the list tag in the Stylesheet Editor (e.g., li.Indented). See "Creating Styles" on page 55.

c. Click somewhere in the list item. If you highlight the text, make sure you highlight the entire line. Otherwise, you will not be able to select a list style, but rather a character style only. The exception to this is when you highlight portions of multiple list items at the same time; in that case, you will be able to select a list style to be applied to all of those items.

d. From the Home ribbon, Styles window pane, Floating Style Picker, or Text Format toolbar, select the character style.

PARAGRAPHS

a. Click somewhere in the paragraph. If you highlight the text, make sure you highlight the entire paragraph. Otherwise, you will not be able to select a paragraph style, but rather a character style only. The exception to this is when you highlight portions of multiple paragraphs at the same time; in that case, you will be able to select a paragraph style to be applied to all of those paragraphs.

b. From the Home ribbon, Styles window pane, Floating Style Picker, or Text Format toolbar, select the character style.

REUSABLE CONTENT (E.G., VARIABLES, PROXIES)

a. Insert the reusable content into the topic.

b. You can create a class for one of the reusable content tags in the Stylesheet Editor (e.g., MadCap|variable.bluetext). See "Creating Styles" on page 55.

c. Hover over the reusable item in the topic until the cursor is an arrow. Then right-click the item and select **Style Class>[Name of Style]**.

SLIDESHOWS

a. Insert the slideshow into the topic.

b. You can create a class for any of the slideshow styles in the Stylesheet Editor. See "Creating Styles" on page 55.

c. Right-click the structure bar (either for the slideshow itself or for a slide within it) and select **Style Class> [Name of Style]**.

TABLES

a. Insert the table into the topic.

b. You can create a class for any of the table styles in the Stylesheet Editor (e.g., th.style1, td.mystyle, tr.firstrow). See "Creating Styles" on page 55.

c. For some table styles (e.g., <caption>, <th>), you can click somewhere on the appropriate text in the table and select the style from the Styles window pane, Floating Style Picker, or Text Format toolbar.

d. For other table styles (e.g., <table>, <tr>), you can right-click the structure bar and select **Style Class> [Name of Style]**.

Note: For another way to select styles for table content, including the ability to use <p> tags in tables, see "Selecting Styles for Table Cell Contents" on page 371.

4. Click to save your work.

More About Regular Stylesheets

In addition to the information already covered, there are several other things you may do with regular stylesheets.

Opening Stylesheets

When you create a new stylesheet for your project, the stylesheet opens automatically in the Stylesheet Editor or Table Style Editor. If you want to make changes to a stylesheet that is closed, use the following steps to open it.

HOW TO OPEN A STYLESHEET

1. Make sure the Content Explorer is open.
2. Double-click the **Resources** folder to open it.
3. Do one of the following:
   - If you want to open a regular stylesheet, double-click the **Stylesheets** subfolder.

     OR
   - If you want to open a table stylesheet, double-click the **TableStyles** subfolder.

   > **Note:** These are the traditional locations for storying stylesheet files. However, you can store them in cusom folders elsewhere in the Content Explorer. Also, if you imported a project that has a stylesheet, it will not be located in one of these folders unless you move it there. Instead, the stylesheet will be located in the same place where it was stored in the source project (e.g., at the root level of the Content Explorer).

4. Do one of the following:
   - Locate and double-click the stylesheet (CSS file) that you want to open.

     OR
   - Locate and click the stylesheet (CSS file) that you want to open. In the local toolbar, click .

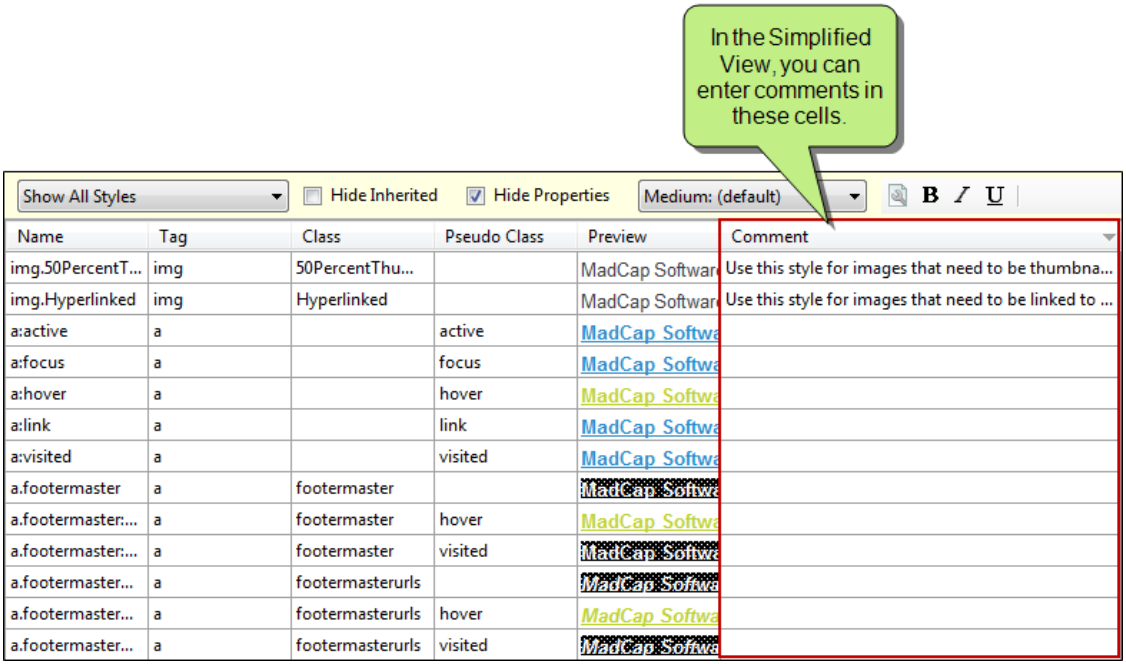
   The stylesheet opens in the Stylesheet Editor or Table Style Editor, depending on whether you are opening a regular stylesheet or a table stylesheet.

Adding Comments to Styles

If you are familiar with using cascading stylesheets (CSS) in a text editor, you probably already know that you can add comments to styles. This is simply a way to remind you or others about information related to a style (e.g., which situations are appropriate to use a certain style). In Flare you can add, edit, and view these style comments through the user interface. This can be done in both views of the Stylesheet Editor, in the Internal Text Editor, and in the Create Style dialog.

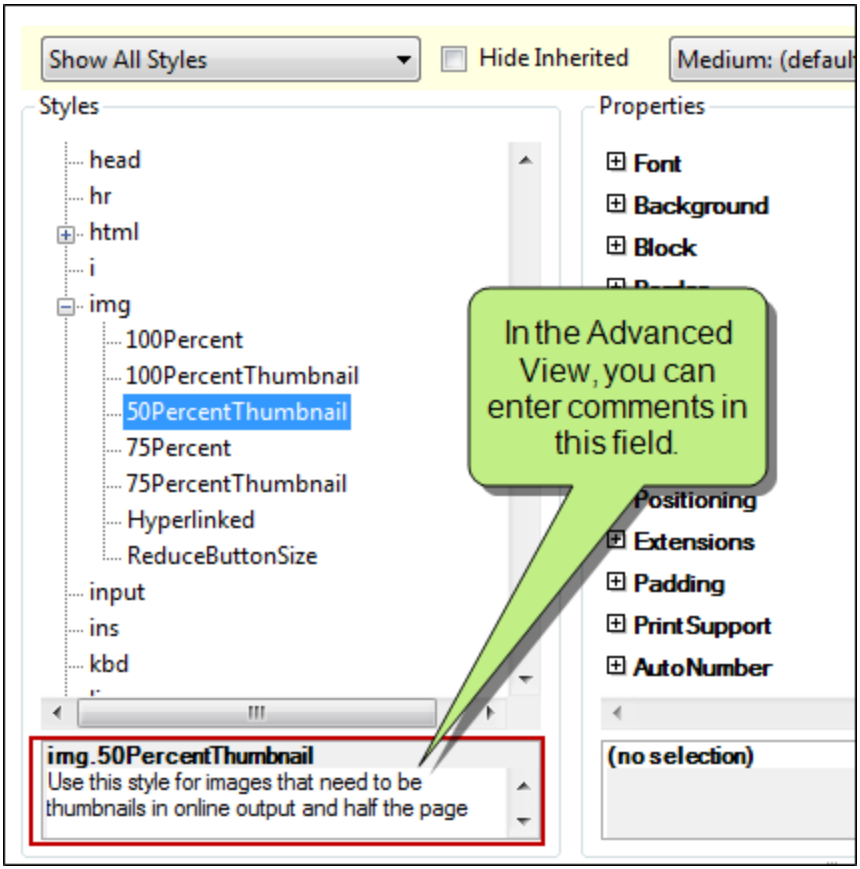
SIMPLIFIED VIEW OF STYLESHEET EDITOR

In the Simplified View of the Stylesheet Editor, you can click twice (or click once and press **F2**) in the **Comment** cell and type text related to the style.



ADVANCED VIEW OF STYLESHEET EDITOR

In the Advanced View of the Stylesheet Editor, you can select the style and then type a comment in the field at the bottom of the **Styles** section.

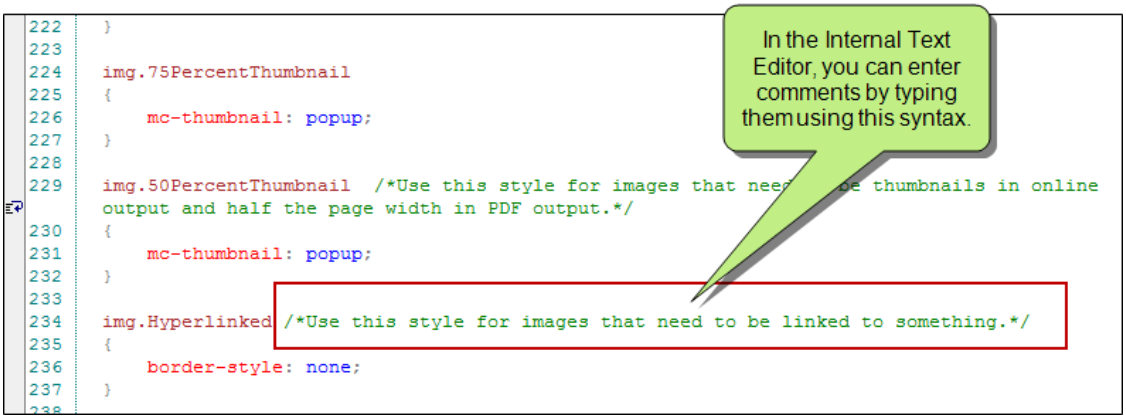


INTERNAL TEXT EDITOR

In the Internal Text Editor, you can type your comment after a style name, using the following syntax.

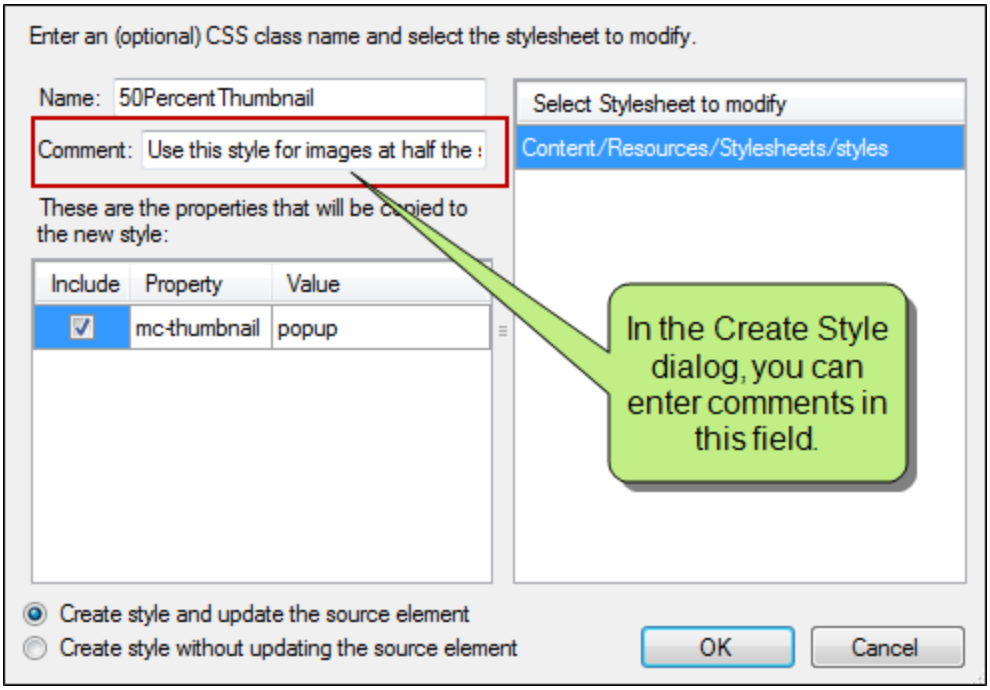
```
/*[comment text]*/
```

After typing your comment using this format, it should display in a green font to signify that it is a comment.



CREATE STYLE DIALOG

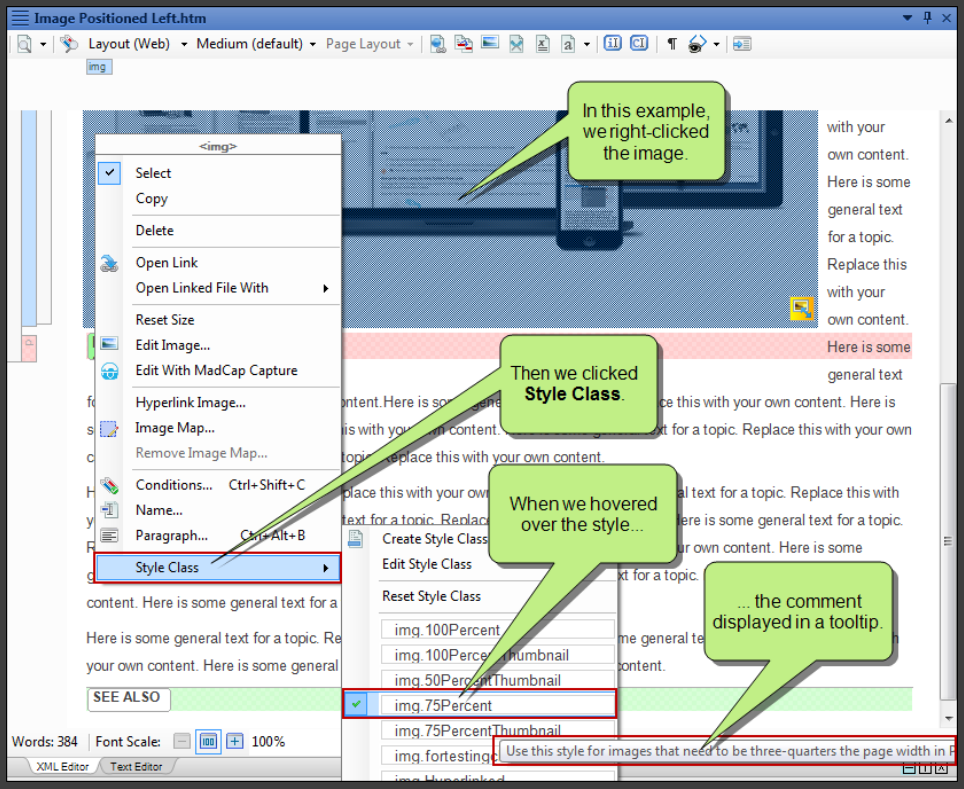
When you open the Create Style dialog, you can enter text in the **Comment** field.



Note: When you add or edit a comment using any of these methods, the comment is generated and displayed in the other views. For example, if you add a comment to a style in the Simplified View of the Stylesheet Editor and then open the CSS file in the Internal Text Editor, you will see that same comment.

Note: If you add or edit a style comment in the Stylesheet Editor when the (default) medium is selected, the same comment is shown in the editor when you switch to the other mediums. If you add or edit a comment when one of the other mediums is selected, that comment displays only when that specific medium is selected in the editor.

Note: When you right-click a tag in the XML Editor and navigate to choose a style class, a tooltip with the comment is displayed. If the style does not have a comment, the default "Set class" tip text is shown instead.



Selecting a Style Class for a Browse Sequence Entry

For certain elements of the online output window (e.g., navigation pane, TOC or browse sequence entries, index keywords) you can determine skin style settings. If you are generating one of the WebHelp output types, you can use the Toc Entry style in the Styles tab of the Skin Editor to change the look of individual entries in your browse sequence. You can also select the Toc Entry style in the Skin Editor and use the Add Class button in its local toolbar to create classes of that style. If you do that, you can select a particular class for a browse sequence entry so that you can give it the look you want.

HOW TO SELECT A STYLE FOR A BROWSE SEQUENCE ENTRY

1. Open the browse sequence.
2. Select a browse sequence entry.
3. In the local toolbar, click . The Properties dialog opens.
4. Select the **General** tab.
5. In the **Style Class** field, select a style class if you have created one under "Toc Entry" in the Skin Editor. If you want to use the parent Toc Entry style, leave the field set to **(default)**.
6. In the Properties dialog, click **OK**.
7. Click to save your work.

Deleting Styles

You can delete style classes that you have added to a regular stylesheet. However, you cannot delete parent styles or classes added by Flare.

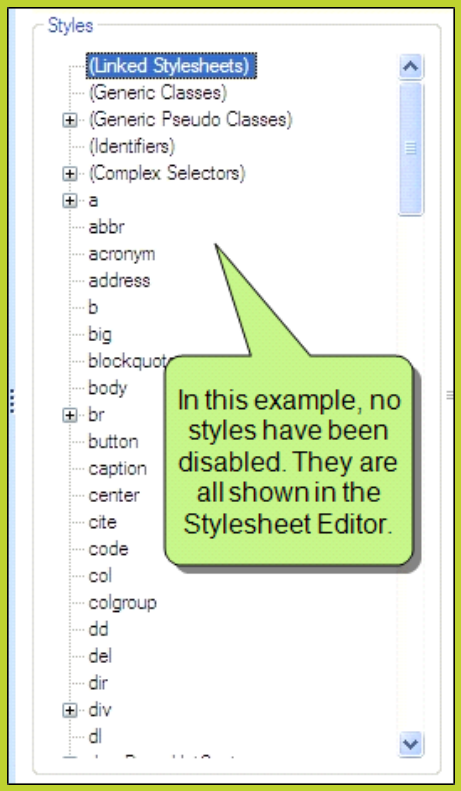
HOW TO DELETE STYLES

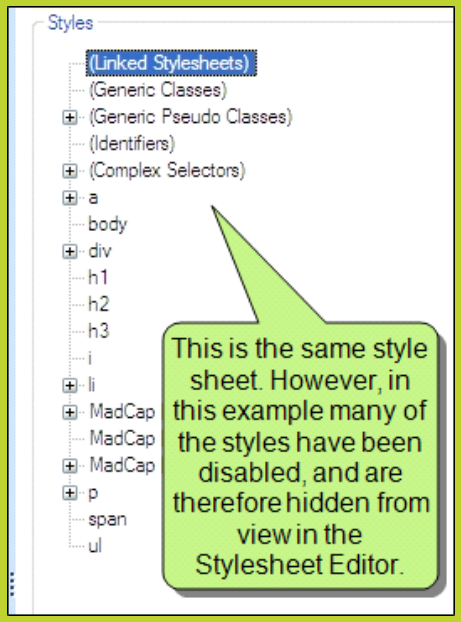
1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Select the style class you want to delete.
3. On your keyboard press **Delete**.
4. Click to save your work.

Disabling Styles

You can prevent certain styles from being shown in the Stylesheet Editor and in the Flare interface. This is a good feature if you use only some of the styles provided in a stylesheet. Rather than being overwhelmed with the sight of all styles in the stylesheet, you can ensure that you see only the styles that you tend to use in your project. Those styles will not be removed from the stylesheet; they will simply be hidden until you enable them.

EXAMPLE




Styles
(Linked Stylesheets)
(Generic Classes)
(Generic Pseudo Classes)
(Identifiers)
(Complex Selectors)
a
body
div
h1
h2
h3
i
li
MadCap
MadCap
MadCap
p
span
ul
This is the same style sheet. However, in this example many of the styles have been disabled, and are therefore hidden from view in the Stylesheet Editor.

HOW TO DISABLE STYLES

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, click the **Options** button and select **Disable Styles**. The Disable Styles dialog opens.
3. On the right side of the dialog, select the styles that you want to disable. You can hold down the **SHIFT** or **CTRL** key and click, selecting a range of styles or many individual styles not next to each other.
4. Click << . The selected styles are moved to the left side of the dialog.
5. Click **OK**. The style classes are removed from view in the stylesheet.

Warning: Even if you have some styles that you never modify, you may want to avoid disabling them in your stylesheet. The reason for this is that disabling a style in a stylesheet also disables its use in the rest of the interface. For example, let's say that you have inserted several images in your project. When you do this, an <img> tag is used. Therefore, although you may never edit the style properties for the <img> tag, you still require it in order to insert images in the future. Otherwise, features such as the option to insert images become disabled in the interface. The bottom line is that you should use caution when disabling styles, making sure that you truly will not need to use those styles.

Patching Stylesheets and Image Links for HTML Help

If you generate Microsoft HTML Help output, some topics may not look as intended when they are printed from the CHM file, due to stylesheet-related problems. You can use this feature to "patch" those problems, ensuring the printed topics will look as intended.

Why would you not use this option? The only reason not to use this option is when you plan to rename the generated CHM file. If this option is enabled and you rename the CHM file, styles in the output are broken. This happens because, when the option is enabled, the file name of the CHM is hardcoded into the CHM itself.

HOW TO PATCH STYLESHEETS AND IMAGE LINKS FOR HTML HELP

1. Open a target.
2. On the **Advanced** tab of the Target Editor, select **Patch stylesheet and image links for HTML Help printing**.
3. Click to save your work.

Importing Stylesheets

If you already have a stylesheet (CSS file) somewhere else and want to reuse it in your current project, you can import that stylesheet.

HOW TO IMPORT A STYLESHEET

1. Do one of the following, depending on the part of the user interface you are using:
   - **Ribbon** Select the **Project** ribbon. In the **Content** section select **New>Stylesheet**.
   - **Menu** Select **Project>Add Stylesheet**.

   The Add File dialog opens.
2. Select **New from existing** and click ...
3. Find and select the stylesheet file that you want to import.
4. Click **Open**. The Source File field now contains the path to the file that you are importing. Also, the name of the file is displayed in the File Name field.
5. Leave the selection in the **Folder** field as **Resources/Stylesheets**.
6. If you want to give the stylesheet a different name than that for the imported file, click in the **File name** field and replace the text.
7. Click **Add**. The stylesheet is added to the Resources\Stylesheets folder in the Content Explorer and opens in the Stylesheet Editor.

Note: You can also import individual styles from another stylesheet. See "Importing Styles" on the next page.

Importing Styles

You can manually create new styles in a stylesheet. Another option is to import existing styles from another stylesheet.

HOW TO IMPORT A STYLE

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the local toolbar, click the **Options** button and select **Import Styles**.
3. Do one of the following, depending on the stylesheet containing the style you want to import.

   SELECT A STYLESHEET FROM ONE OF THE AVAILABLE FOLDERS

   a. In the **Library Folders** section, select one of the folders.

      - **Factory Stylesheets** Holds stylesheets that are provided by Flare. This folder includes a stylesheet called "SearchHighlight," which provides styles that let you control the look of terms that are highlighted in searches performed by users. See "Search—Highlighted Terms" on page 359.
      - **My Templates** Holds your own stylesheets that you store in your Documents\My Templates\Stylesheets folder.

        Note: In some operating systems, the folder is called "My Documents" instead of "Documents."

      - **Project Stylesheets** Holds stylesheets added to your project.

   b. In the **Styles** section to the right, select a stylesheet contained in the folder.

   SELECT A STYLESHEET NOT FOUND IN ONE THE AVAILABLE FOLDERS

   a. Click the **Browse** button.

   b. In the dialog, find and double-click the stylesheet.
4. (Optional) In the **[Show Styles]** drop-down list, you can make a selection to filter which types of styles to show in the area below.
5. (Optional) In the **[Medium]** drop-down list, you can select a specific medium. This determines the medium to which the styles are imported in your current stylesheet. If you select "default," the imported style properties will be applied to all of the mediums in the other stylesheet. If you select a custom medium, the imported style properties will be imported to that medium in the other stylesheet. For more information see "The Basics" on page 546.
6. Click the **Import** check box next to each style that you want to import.
7. Click **OK**. The styles are added to the current stylesheet.

Linking Stylesheets

If you have added more than one stylesheet to your project, you can link them together. By doing this, one stylesheet can adopt the styles of the other stylesheet so that they can be used in topics where that stylesheet is applied.

HOW TO LINK STYLESHEETS

1. Open a stylesheet that you want to link to another stylesheet. The stylesheet being opened will adopt the styles from the stylesheet(s) that you link it to.
2. In the local toolbar of the Stylesheet Editor, click the **Options** button and select **Stylesheet Links**. The Stylesheet Links dialog opens.
3. Do one of the following:
   - On the right side of the dialog, select the stylesheet(s) that you want to link to the current stylesheet. Then click << to add the stylesheet(s) to the Current Links section on the left.

     OR
   - Double-click the stylesheet(s) that you want to link to the current stylesheet. The stylesheet is added to the Current Links section on the left.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Click to save your work.

Setting Styles for Print Output in a Regular Stylesheet

A regular stylesheet allows you to single-source formatting by setting the properties in one place and reusing them throughout your project. But what if you want your online output to look one way and your printed output to look another way? Rather than creating a style for online output and another style for printed output, you can use a single style and provide it with two sets of properties—one set to use for online output and another set to use with printed output. You can accomplish this through the use of a medium in your stylesheet.

HOW TO SET STYLES FOR PRINT OUTPUT IN A REGULAR STYLESHEET

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Set the style properties to be used for your online output as follows:
   a. In the local toolbar of the Stylesheet Editor, do one of the following.
      - In the **Medium** field, make sure **Medium: (default)** is selected.
      - Click the down arrow in the **Medium** field and select **Medium: non-print**.
   b. Select a style and set the properties for it. Do this for each style that you want to use in your online output.
3. Set the style properties to be used for your printed output as follows:
   a. In the local toolbar of the Stylesheet Editor, click the down arrow in the **Medium** field and select **Medium: print** or **Medium: [name of print medium]**.

> **Note:** You can also create a new medium if necessary. You actually might find it preferable to do this. For example, if you want page breaks before a particular heading for print output, but not when users send online topics to the printer, it is a good idea to create a custom print medium. The reason for this is that browsers respect the settings in the "print" medium provided by Flare. Therefore, even though your online output style medium does not have page breaks set before that heading, the application will see that you *do* have a page break specified in the print medium. And when a user tries to print a topic from your online Help, the printer will start a new page at that heading. The solution is to create a custom print medium (perhaps calling it "PDF" or "XPS"), specifying page breaks in that medium, and using it for your print output (instead of using the "print" medium provided by Flare). See "Creating Stylesheet Mediums" on page 554.

   b. Select the same styles that you edited for the online output, and set different properties for them (for the purpose of printed output).
   c. Click to save your work.
4. Apply the styles to the content throughout your project.

   See "Applying Styles to Content" on page 482.
5. Associate the online medium with your online target as follows:
   a. Open the target to be used for online output (DotNet Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, or WebHelp Plus).
   b. In the Target Editor, select the **Advanced** tab.
   c. In the **Stylesheet Medium** section, select the medium that you used for online output (e.g., default, non-print).
6. Associate the print medium with your print target as follows:
   a. Open the target to be used for print output (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, or XHTML).
   b. In the Target Editor, select the **Advanced** tab.
   c. In the **Stylesheet Medium** section, select the medium that you used for printed output (e.g., print).
7. Select **File>Save>Save All** (if using ribbons), select **File>Save All** (if using menus), or press **CTRL+SHIFT+S**.

Renaming Style Classes

You can rename a style class after you have created it. However, you cannot rename existing parent tags, such as <p>, <h1>, or .

HOW TO RENAME A STYLE CLASS

1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. In the Stylesheet Editor, select the style class that you have created (not a parent tag).
3. In the local toolbar, click **Rename**. The Rename Class dialog opens.
4. Enter a new name for the style.
5. Click **OK**.
6. Click to save your work.

Selecting a Style Class for a TOC Entry

For certain elements of the online output window (e.g., navigation pane, TOC or browse sequence entries, index keywords) you can determine skin style settings. If you are generating one of the WebHelp output types, you can use the Toc Entry style in the Styles tab of the Skin Editor to change the look of individual entries in your TOC. You can also select the Toc Entry style in the Skin Editor and use the Add Class button in its local toolbar to create classes of that style. If you do that, you can select a particular class for a TOC entry so that you can give it the look you want.

HOW TO SELECT A STYLE FOR A TOC ENTRY

1. Open the table of contents.
2. Select a TOC entry.
3. In the local toolbar, click . The Properties dialog opens.
4. Select the **General** tab.
5. In the **Style Class** field, select a style class if you have created one under "Toc Entry" in the Skin Editor. If you want to use the parent Toc Entry style, leave the field set to **(default)**.
6. In the Properties dialog, click **OK**.
7. Click to save your work.

Setting Style Classes for Topics

You can select a topic style class (i.e., based on the <html> tag) to associate with any topic in your project. The properties for this style class will be applied to the entire topic. The following style classes are provided in the drop-down list: task, concept, reference, topic. These options are typically used if you are generating DITA output from the project. If you do not select any of these, the "topic" class is applied to the topic by default. If you want to use a custom style class instead, you can open the stylesheet, select the **html** style, and create your own topic style class. In order for you to use this feature, the appropriate stylesheet must be selected in the Stylesheet field in the Properties dialog (not enabled if you are using a master stylesheet).

You can set style classes for one topic at a time or for multiple topics at once.

HOW TO SET STYLE CLASSES FOR ONE TOPIC AT A TIME

1. Make sure the Content Explorer is open.
2. Find and select the topic.
3. In the local toolbar of the Content Explorer, click . The Properties dialog opens.
4. Select the **Topic Properties** tab.
5. In the **Topic Style Class** field, click the down arrow and select a style class from the list.
6. Click **OK**.

HOW TO SET STYLE CLASSES FOR MULTIPLE TOPICS AT ONCE

1. Do one of the following, depending on the part of the user interface you are using:
   - **Ribbon** Select the **View** ribbon. In the **Explorer** section select **File List**.
   - **Menu** Select **View>File List**.
   - **Keyboard Shortcut** Press **CTRL+SHIFT+J**.

   The File List window pane opens.
2. From the **Filter** list in the local toolabr, select **Topic Files (*.htm;*.html)**.
3. Select the files to which you want to set a style class. You can hold the **SHIFT** key to select a range, or you can hold the **CTRL** key to select individual items.
4. In the local toolbar, click . The Properties dialog opens.
5. Select the **Topic Properties** tab.
6. In the **Topic Style Class** field, click the down arrow and select a style class from the list.
7. Click **OK**.

Note: If you have imported DITA file content, the topic types associated with each of those files previously will remain that way, unless you override the settings in the Properties dialog.

About Units of Measurement

When changing the look of content, you may often need to select a unit of measurement (UOM). Flare offers the following relative and absolute UOMs (definitions are taken from w3c.org).

Relative UOMs

Following are UOMs that are relative. In other words, they might be displayed differently, depending on the circumstance.

- **Pixel (px)** Pixel units are relative to the resolution of the viewing device (i.e., most often a computer display). If the pixel density of the output device is very different from that of a typical computer display, the user agent should rescale pixel values. It is recommended that the reference pixel be the visual angle of one pixel on a device with a pixel density of 96 dpi and a distance from the reader of an arm's length. For a nominal arm's length of 28 inches, the visual angle is therefore about 0.0213 degrees.
- **Ems (em)** The em unit is equal to the computed value of the font size property of the element on which it is used. The exception is when "em" occurs in the value of the "font-size" property itself, in which case it refers to the font size of the parent element. It may be used for vertical or horizontal measurement. (This unit is also sometimes called the quad-width in typographic texts.)
- **Percentage (%)** This is the percentage value of the element. Please be aware that if you are using percentage for the size of an object such as an image, the percentage refers to the block containing that image, not to the image itself. For example, if you have an image in a topic and set the width to 60%, this does not mean that the image will be reduced to 60% of its size. Instead, it means that the image will be resized so that its width is 60% of the "container" where it is inserted.
- **X-Height (ex)** The ex unit is defined by the element's first available font. The x-height is so called because it is often equal to the height of the lowercase "x." However, an "ex" is defined even for fonts that don't contain an "x.:

  The x-height of a font can be found in different ways. Some fonts contain reliable metrics for the x-height. If reliable font metrics are not available, the x-height may be determined from the height of a lowercase glyph. One possible heuristics is to look at how far the glyph for the lowercase "o" extends below the baseline, and subtract that value from the top of its bounding box. In the cases where it is impossible or impractical to determine the x-height, a value of 0.5 em should be used.

Absolute UOMs

Following the UOMs that are absolute. In other words, they are always displayed the same way.

- **Point (pt)** The points used by CSS 2.1 are equal to 1/72nd of an inch.
- **Centimeter (cm)**
- **Millimeter (mm)**
- **Inch (in)** One inch is equal to 2.54 centimeters.
- **Pica (pc)** One pica is equal to 12 points.

CHAPTER 4

Table Stylesheets

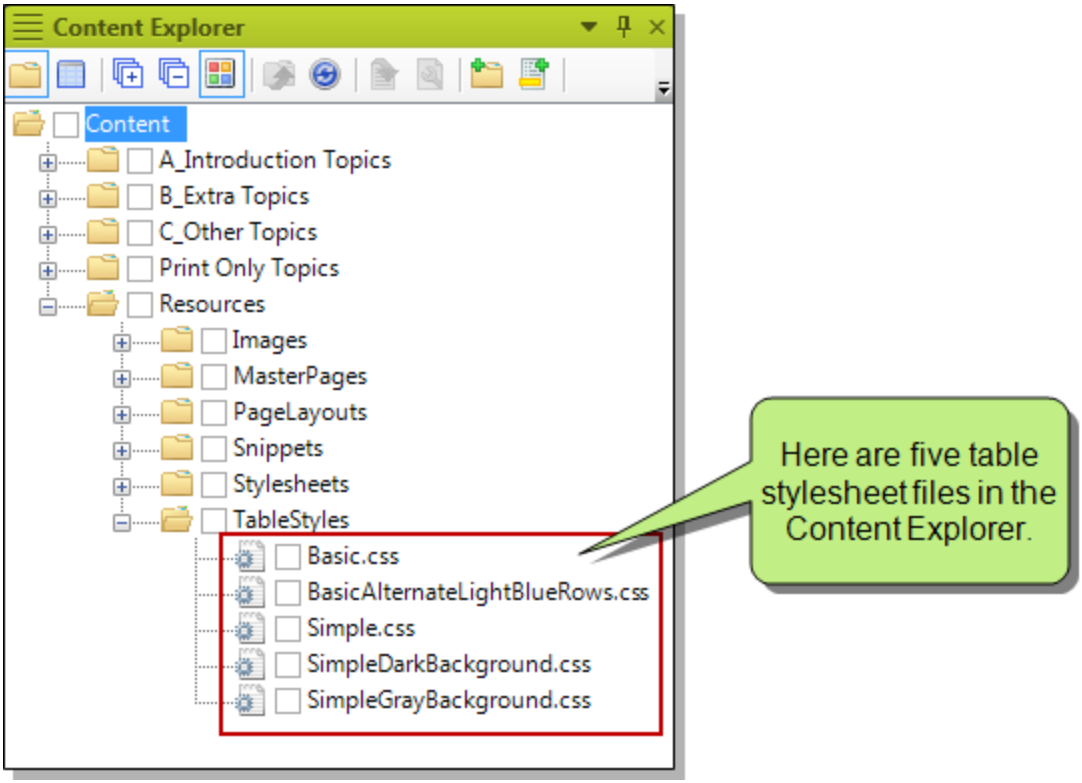
A table stylesheet lets you create a look that can be applied to several tables throughout your project. If you need to change the look of general content, you can use a regular stylesheet instead. In fact, a regular stylesheet is another way to control the look of tables. See "Regular Stylesheets" on page 27.

This chapter discusses the following:

Where Table Stylesheets are Stored 514
Example 515
Table Style Editor 517
Table Styles and RTL Languages 518
Steps for Using Table Stylesheets 519
Creating New Table Stylesheets 520
Applying Table Stylesheets to Tables 523
Editing Table Stylesheets 527
Setting Table Styles for Print Output 541

Where Table Stylesheets are Stored

You can create as many table stylesheets as you need. The traditional location to store a table stylesheet in the Content Explorer is in the Resources\TableStyles folder. However, you can store it anywhere in the Content Explorer that you like.

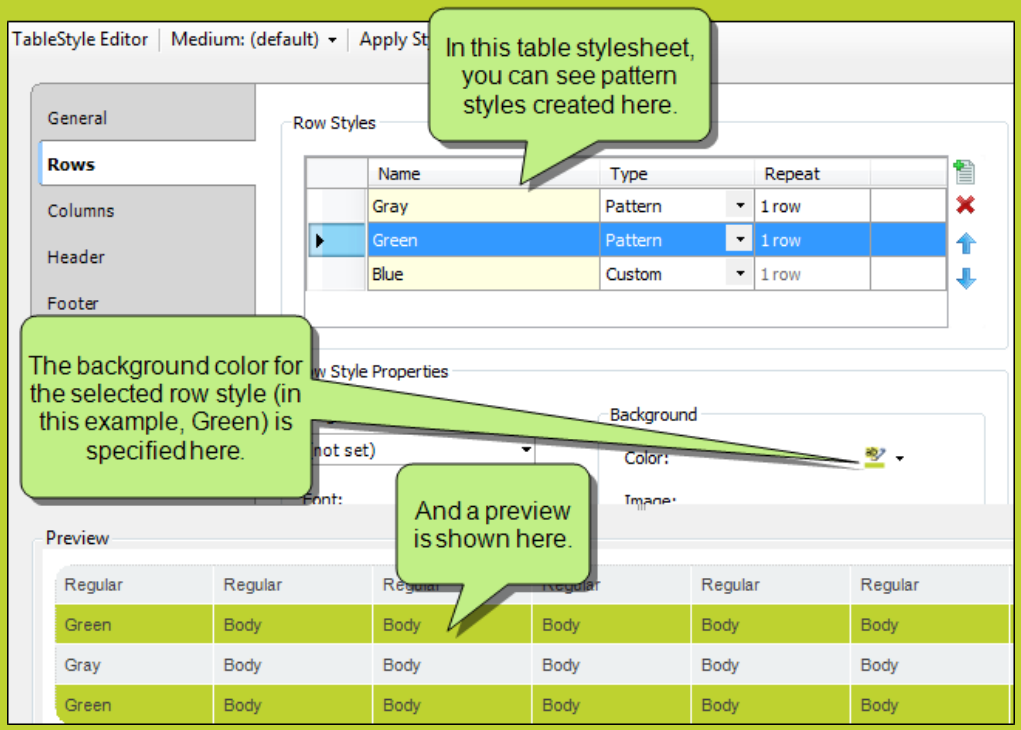


Example

Here is an example showing how you might use table stylesheets.

E X A M P L E

You might use two different types of tables in your project—a basic one (with simple borders and no shading) and a patterned one (with customized borders and colored shading in certain rows and columns). So you create one table stylesheet (let's say it's called "Basic.css") and format it the way you want, and then you create a second table stylesheet (let's say it's called "RowPatternStyleSheet.css") and format it. Then, as you insert tables into your topics, you can associate the new table with one of these two table stylesheets.



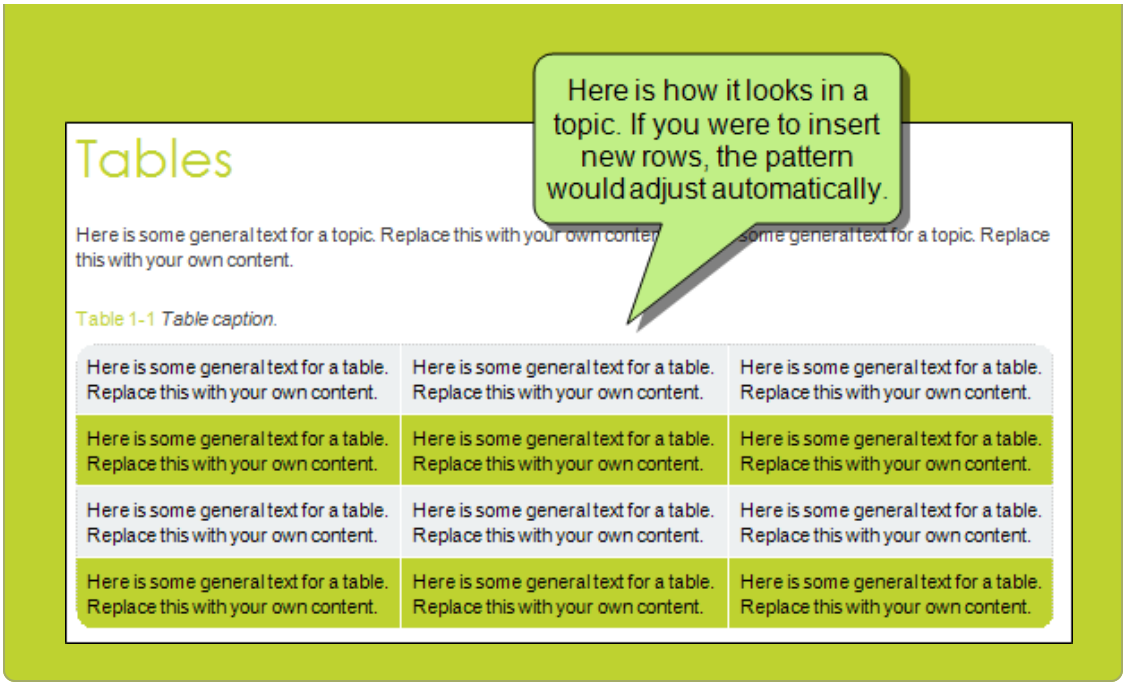

Here is how it looks in a topic. If you were to insert new rows, the pattern would adjust automatically.
Tables
Here is some general text for a topic. Replace this with your own conten
some general text for a topic. Replace this with your own content.
Table 1-1 Table caption.
Here is some general text for a table. Replace this with your own content.
Here is some general text for a table. Replace this with your own content.
Here is some general text for a table. Replace this with your own content.
Here is some general text for a table. Replace this with your own content.
Here is some general text for a table. Replace this with your own content.
Here is some general text for a table. Replace this with your own content.
Here is some general text for a table. Replace this with your own content.
Here is some general text for a table. Replace this with your own content.
Here is some general text for a table. Replace this with your own content.
Here is some general text for a table. Replace this with your own content.
Here is some general text for a table. Replace this with your own content.
Here is some general text for a table. Replace this with your own content.
Here is some general text for a table. Replace this with your own content.

Table Style Editor

When you open a table stylesheet, it is displayed in the Table Style Editor, which contains multiple tabs and fields for specifying settings such as patterns, borders, backgrounds, alignment, and margins.

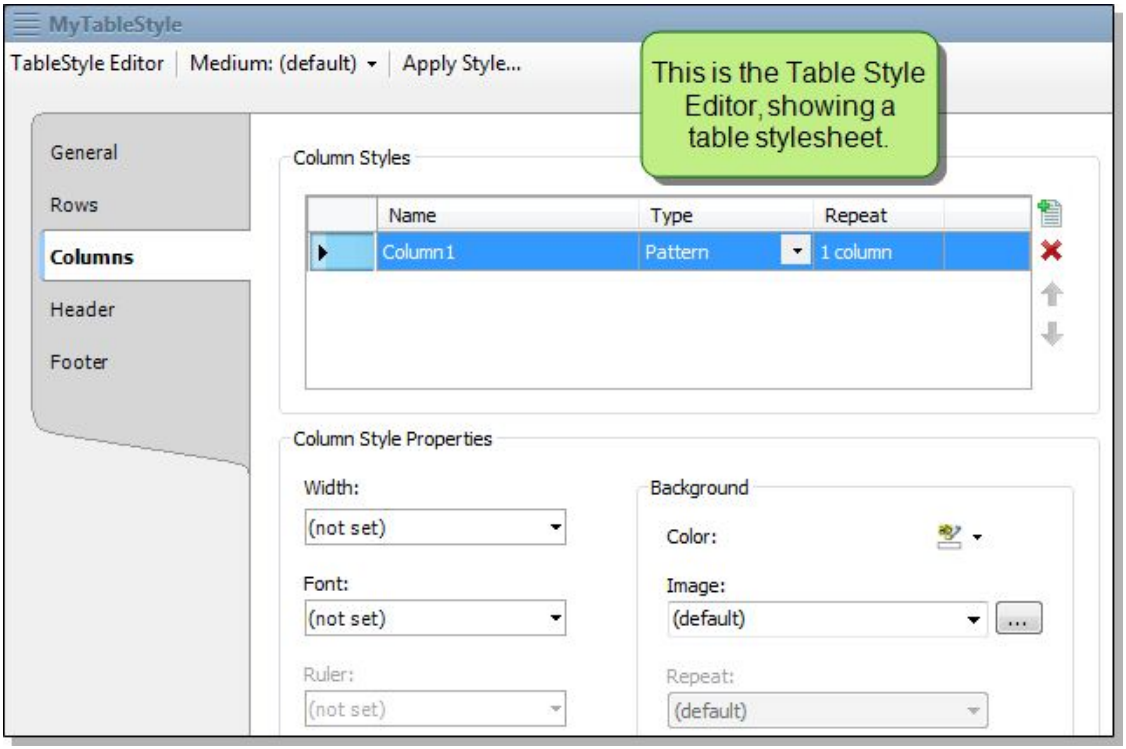


Table Styles and RTL Languages

If you are using a right-to-left (RTL) language, table styles in your project need to write additional CSS rules behind the scenes in order to work correctly with RTL tables. Because this can potentially double the size of the table style file, this behavior does not happen by default if you create and save a new table style. However, the behavior kicks in automatically in the following two scenarios. For more information see the Flare online Help.

- If you open a topic in the XML Editor and an RTL table references an old table stylesheet, Flare updates and saves the table stylesheet in your Content folder.
- If you generate output and an RTL table references an old table stylesheet, the table style in the output will be updated.

Steps for Using Table Stylesheets

Following are the primary tasks associated with table stylesheets.

1. **Create a New Table Stylesheet** You can add a stylesheet to be used specifically for tables. However, if a table stylesheet was already included in the template when you created the project, you can use that one instead of creating a new one. See "Creating New Table Stylesheets" on the next page and "Setting Table Styles for Print Output" on page 541.
2. **Edit** After you create a new table stylesheet, you can edit it. See "Editing Table Stylesheets" on page 527.
3. **Apply a Table Stylesheet to a Table** After you edit a table stylesheet, you can apply the stylesheet to a table. See "Applying Styles to Content" on page 482.

Note: For the differences between regular stylesheets, table stylesheets, and local properties—and when you should use one over the other—see "Regular Stylesheets, Table Stylesheets, or Local Properties?" on page 34

Note: If you are importing Adobe FrameMaker documents and have tables that you have formatted in a certain way, you can create matching table styles as a result of the import. This can be specified on the Options page of the Import FrameMaker Wizard. In the Flare project, the new table styles will be named after the format named applied to the table in FrameMaker (e.g., "Format_A.css," "Format_B.css," and so on). You can rename these table stylesheets in Flare after the import. Even if you do not use this mapping feature, the table formatting still comes across when you import the files. The only difference is that table stylesheets make it easier to maintain the formatting of your tables within Flare.

Creating New Table Stylesheets

You can add a stylesheet to be used specifically for tables. The traditional location to store a table stylesheet in the Content Explorer is in the Resources\TableStyles folder. However, you can store it anywhere in the Content Explorer that you like.

HOW TO CREATE A NEW TABLE STYLESHEET

1. Do one of the following, depending on the part of the user interface you are using:
   - **(Recommended) Right-click** In the Content Explorer, right-click on a folder and from the context menu select **New>Table Style**.

     > **Tip:** When adding a new file to the Content Explorer, the recommended method is to right-click on the folder in the Content Explorer and use the New menu option. This is the most efficient way to direct the new file to the folder where you want to store it. That's because the Add File dialog opens when you add a new content file, and this method ensures that the folder you want is already selected in that dialog.

   - **Ribbon** Select the **Project** ribbon. In the **Content** section select **New>Table Style**.

     You can use the Options dialog to switch between ribbons and the classic tool strip layout. For more information see the online Help.

     Keep in mind that the smaller the application window becomes, the more the options in a ribbon shrink. Therefore, you might only see a small icon instead of text, or you might see only a section name displayed with a down arrow to access the options in it. You can hover over small icons to see tooltips that describe them. You can also enlarge the application window or click one of the section drop-downs in the ribbon to locate a hidden feature.

   - **Menu** Select **Project>Add Table Style**.

   The Add File dialog opens.
2. In the **File Type** field at the top, make sure **Table Style** is selected.
3. In the **Source** area select one of the following:
   - **New from template** This lets you choose either the factory template file or one of your own customized template files as a starting point. The new file will take on all of the settings contained in the template. If you want to use the factory template provided by Flare, expand the **Factory Templates** folder and click on a template file. If you want to use your own customized template file, expand the appropriate folder and click on a file. For more information about templates, see the online Help.

> **Note:** In some dialogs and wizards you can click the **Manage Templates** button if you want to open the Template Manager. This lets you manage any of your template files (e.g., add new templates, enter descriptions for templates). For more information see the online Help.

» **New from existing** This lets you choose an existing file of the same type as a starting point for your new file. As with template files, your new file will take on all of the settings contained in the file you select. To use this option, click the browse button ..., use the Open File dialog to find a file, and double-click it.

4. (Optional) The Folder field is automatically populated with the folder that has focus in the Content Explorer. If you want to place the file into a folder that you previously created in the Content Explorer, in the **Folder** field click ... and select the subfolder. Otherwise, keep the default location.

> **Note:** If you want to place non-topic files in a traditional default folder, you must first make sure that folder exists in the Content Explorer. If it does not exist, you can easily add it.

Non-Topic File Type	Traditional Default Folder in Content Explorer
Image	Resources\Images
Master Page	Resources\MasterPages
Multimedia	Resources\Multimedia
Page Layout	Resources\PageLayouts
Snippet	Resources\Snippets
Stylesheet	Resources\Stylesheets
Table Stylesheet	Resources\TableStyles

5. In the **File Name** field, type a new name for the stylesheet.
6. Click **Add**. The table stylesheet is added to the Content Explorer and opens in its own page in the Table Style Editor.

Note: You can also create a new table stylesheet while inserting a table into a topic. In the Insert Table dialog, simply click face of the **Create New Table Style** button (not the down arrow) and then complete the options in the Select Table Style Template dialog. After you finish inserting the table, the new stylesheet is added to your project.

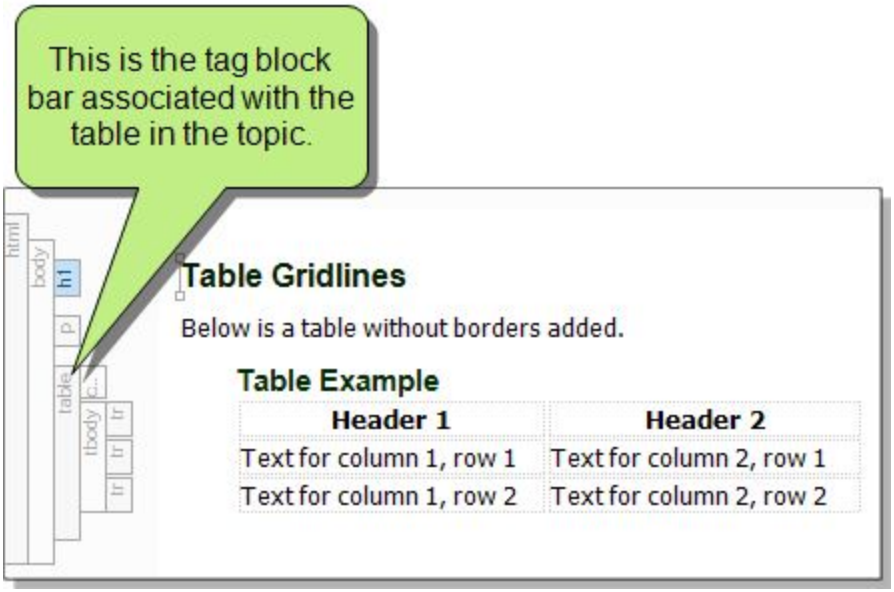
Applying Table Stylesheets to Tables

After you edit a table stylesheet, you can apply the stylesheet to a table. You can do this one table at a time, or to multiple tables at the same time.

HOW TO APPLY A TABLE STYLESHEET—ONE TABLE AT A TIME

The following steps show how to apply a table stylesheet to one table at a time. Use the next set of steps if instead you want to quickly apply a table stylesheet to many tables in different files.

1. Open the topic where a table has been inserted.
2. If the tag block bars are not displayed to the left of the topic, click at the bottom of the editor.
3. Right-click the **table** tag bar.



4. Do one of the following:
   - In the context menu select **Table Style** and then select the stylesheet in the submenu.

     OR

   a. In the context menu, select **Table Properties**. The Table Properties dialog opens.
   b. Click **Table Style**, and from the drop-down select the stylesheet.

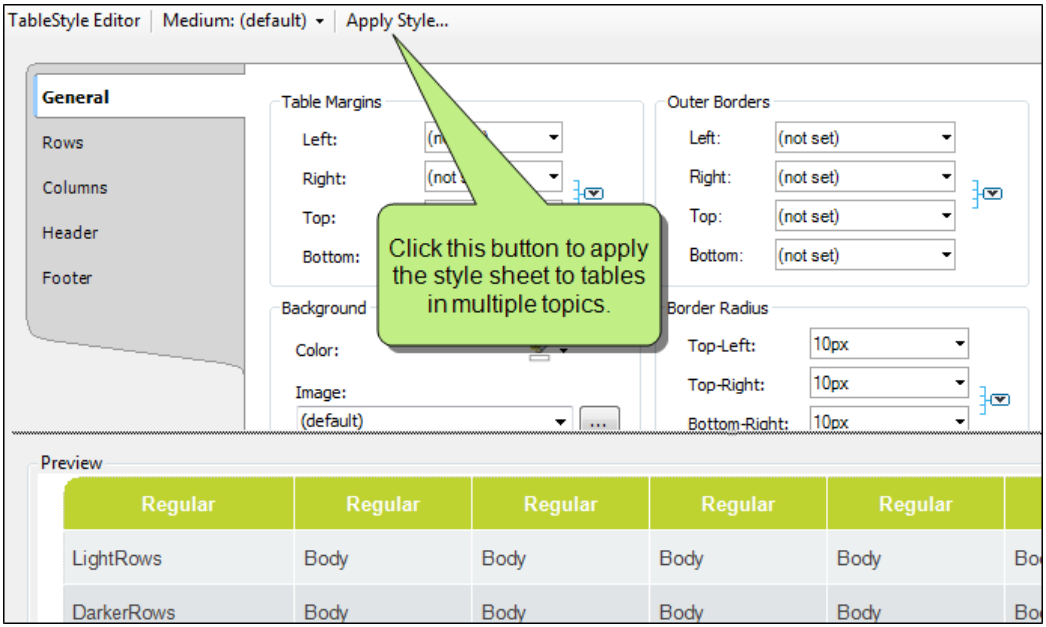
> **Note:** If you have not yet created a table stylesheet yet, you can do so by clicking to the right of the field. Click the face of the button, not the down arrow.

   c. Click **OK**.
5. Click to save your work.

HOW TO APPLY A TABLE STYLESHEET—MULTIPLE TABLES AND FILES

The following steps show how to quickly apply a table stylesheet to many tables in different files. Use the previous set of steps if instead you want to apply a table stylesheet to one table at a time.

1. Open the table stylesheet that you want to apply.
2. In the local toolbar of the Table Style Editor, click **Apply Style**.



The Apply Table Style dialog opens, displaying all folders and topic files in your project.

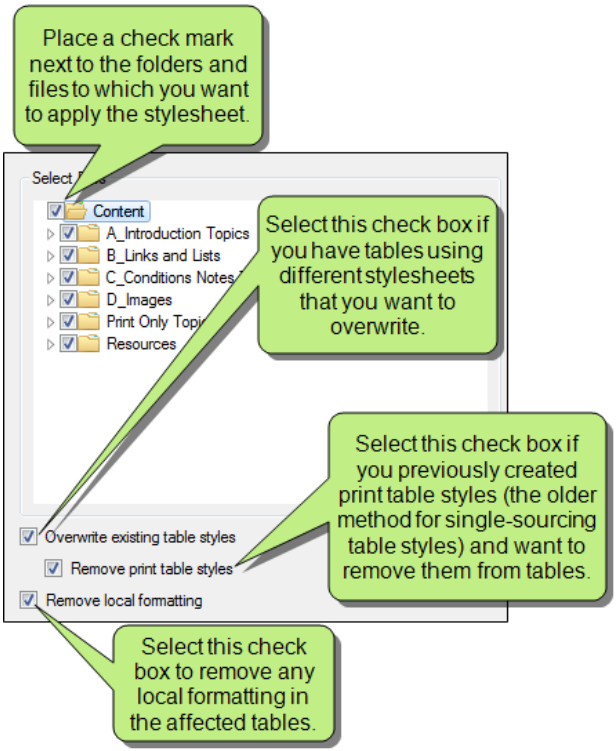
3. Click in the check box next to each folder and/or file containing tables that should use the stylesheet. If you click next to a folder, the stylesheet will be applied to all files and subfolders under it.

   You can also select either of the following options in the dialog.

   - **Overwrite existing table styles** Select this if you want to overwrite existing table styles in those topics. If you choose this option, you can also select **Remove print table styles**. As of Flare V7, print table styles are no longer the preferred method for single-sourcing tables in online and print output; mediums are now the recommended solution. Therefore, if you used print table styles in the past and want to remove them

now, you can use this option. When this option is enabled, print table styles will be removed from any tables updated by this dialog.

» **Remove local formatting** Select this if you have local formatting in tables and want to remove it when the table style is applied.



4. Click **OK**.

Editing Table Stylesheets

Following are the basic steps for editing a table stylesheet.

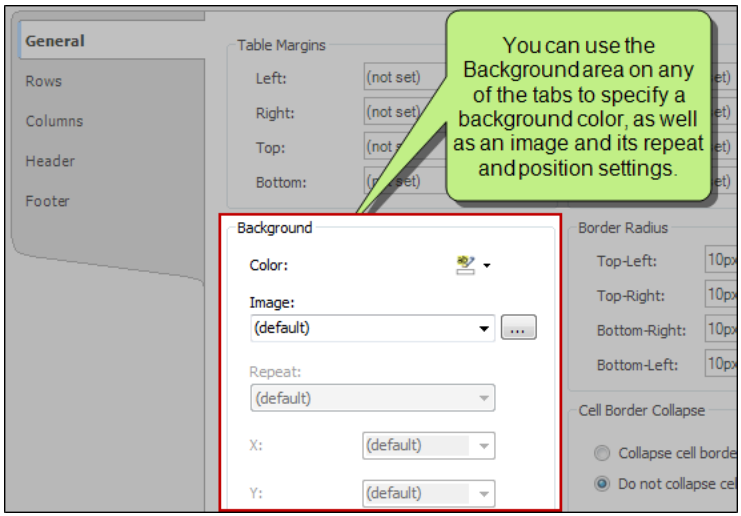
HOW TO EDIT A TABLE STYLESHEET

1. Open the table stylesheet that you want to edit. This is usually found in the **Resources/TableStyles** subfolder in the Content Explorer, but you can store table stylesheets in other folders in the Content Explorer if you like.
2. In the Table Style Editor, set the options for the table style on the tabs available.

   GENERAL TAB

   This tab lets you set border, padding, margin, page layout breaks, and background properties for the entire table style.

   - **Table Margins** Click in any of the individual fields (**Left**, **Right**, **Top**, **Bottom**) to specify the settings for the table margins (the amount of space around the table). In the left side of the field, enter a number for the amount of padding. In the right side of the field, select a unit of measurement (e.g., point, pixel, centimeter) for the number you entered. If you click the down arrow to the right of all the fields, the settings will be applied to all of the table margin fields. When you click that down arrow, a small popup displays. Use the lower-left area of the popup to enter a number for the amount of margin. Use the lower-right area to select a unit of measurement.
   - **Background** Use this area to specify the settings that you want for the table background.



In the **Color** field, click the down arrow and select a color from the popup. For advanced color options, select **MoreColors** and use the fields in the Color Picker dialog. Next to the **Image** field, click [...]. Select an image file to insert and click **OK**.

If you want the background image to repeat, select one of the options from the **Repeat** field. You can also set the image position horizontally and vertically by using the **X** and **Y** fields.

- **Cell Padding** Click in any of the individual fields (**Left**, **Right**, **Top**, **Bottom**) to specify the settings for the cell padding (the amount of space between the edge of the table cell and the content in the cell). In the left side of the field, enter a number for the amount of padding. In the right side of the field, select a unit of measurement (e.g., point, pixel, centimeter) for the number you entered. If you click the down arrow to the right of all the fields, the settings will be applied to all of the cell padding fields. When you click that down arrow, a small popup displays. Use the lower-left area of the popup to enter a number for the amount of padding. Use the lower-right area to select a unit of measurement.
- **Outer Borders** Click in any of the individual fields (**Left**, **Right**, **Top**, **Bottom**) to specify the settings for the table border in the stylesheet. If you click the down arrow to the right of all the fields, the settings will be applied to all of the border fields. When you click that down arrow or in one of the individual fields, a small popup displays. Use the lower-left area of the popup to enter a number for the thickness of the border. Use the lower-middle area to select a unit of measurement (e.g., point, pixel, centimeter) for the number you entered.Use the upper-right area to select a color for the border. And use the lower-right area to select a line type (e.g., solid, double, dashed) for the border. When you are finished, click **OK** in the small popup.
- **Border Radius** These fields let you create rounded corners on the table (see "Creating Rounded Borders on Paragraphs and Tables " on page 256). Click in any of the individual fields (**Top-Left**, **Top-Right**, **Bottom-Right**, **Bottom-Left**) to specify the settings for a particular corner of the table. If you click the down arrow to the right of all the fields, the settings will be applied to all of the fields. When you click that down arrow or in one of the individual fields, a small popup displays. This popup has two halves. you can complete only the left side of the popup if you like. This will create a curve that is equal horizontally and vertically. If you want a border to have more of a curve either horizontally or vertically, you can complete the fields in the right half of the popup as well, so that you have two values (e.g., 10px 15px) instead of one. For more information on using two sets of border-radius properties, see **www.css3.info/preview/rounded-border/**. Use the lower-left area of the popup to enter a number for the amount of curve. The greater the number, the more curve that is applied. Use the area to the right of the number field to select a unit of measurement (e.g., point, pixel, centimeter). If you want to provide a second value for the rounded border, complete the same fields on the right half of the popup. When you are finished, click **OK** in the small popup.
- **Cell Border Collapse** Select whether you want to collapse the cell borders in the stylesheet. If you collapse the cell borders, the row and cell borders of a table are joined in a single border. If you do not collapse the cell borders, the row and cell borders of a table are detached. If you use the border radius properties to create rounded borders, this must be set to "Do not collapse cell borders."

- **Cell Border Spacing** Use this area to increase or decrease the amount of spacing for a cell border.
- **Hide bottom ruling when table crosses a page break** Set this field to True if you want to hide the bottom border when the table continues on another page. See "Hiding the Bottom Border on Tables when Crossing Page Breaks" on page 392.
- **Overflow** This determines what happens if content overflows the table.
  - **Visible** The overflow is not clipped. It renders outside the table. This is default.
  - **Hidden** The overflow is clipped, and the rest of the content will be invisible. If you are using border-radius properties on the table, you must select this option for the rounded corners to be seen properly.
  - **Scroll** The overflow is clipped, but a scroll-bar is added to see the rest of the content.
  - **Auto** If overflow is clipped, a scroll-bar should be added to see the rest of the content.
  - **Inherit** The value of the overflow property is inherited from the parent element.
- **Print Options** Click this button to open the Breaks dialog and set page, column, and breaks for tables.

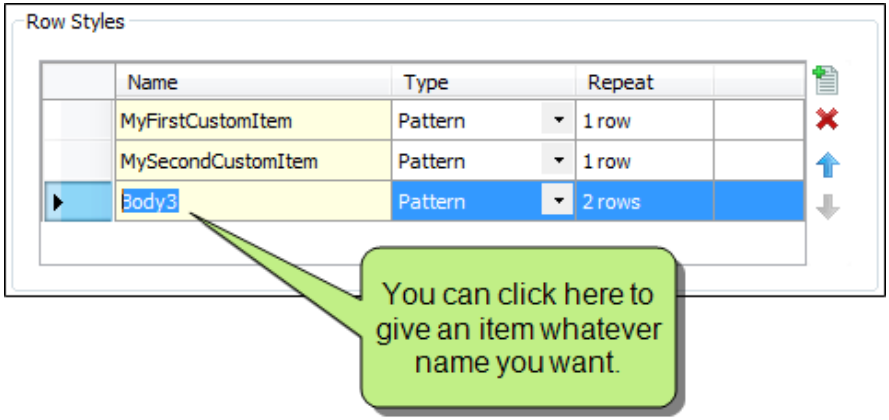
ROWS, COLUMNS, HEADER, AND FOOTER TABS

These tabs let you set properties for the various elements of the table. For any of these elements, you can add multiple repeatable patterns with different colors and text properties. Following are descriptions for the fields that appear on each tab.

ROW/COLUMN/HEADER/FOOTER STYLES

Displays the patterns for the row, column, header, or footer in the stylesheet. Each line represents a different pattern and how many times it is repeated in a table before the next pattern occurs.

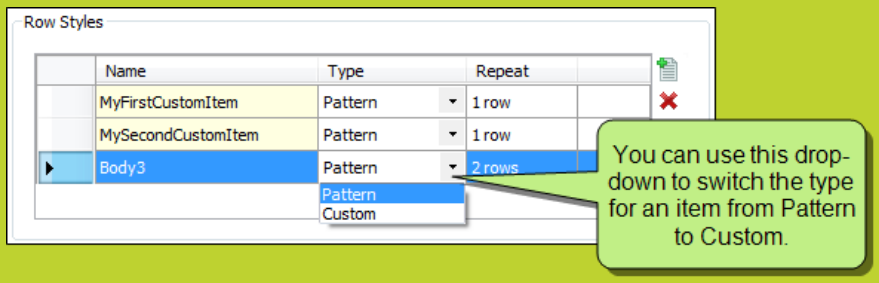
» **Name** Displays the name of each pattern. Depending on which tab you are working on, the default names of the patterns may be Body1, Body2, Body3, etc.… Column1, Column2, Column3, etc.… Header1, Header2, Header3, etc.… Footer1, Footer2, Footer3, etc. You can click in the cell, press F2, and enter a custom name for each pattern if you like.



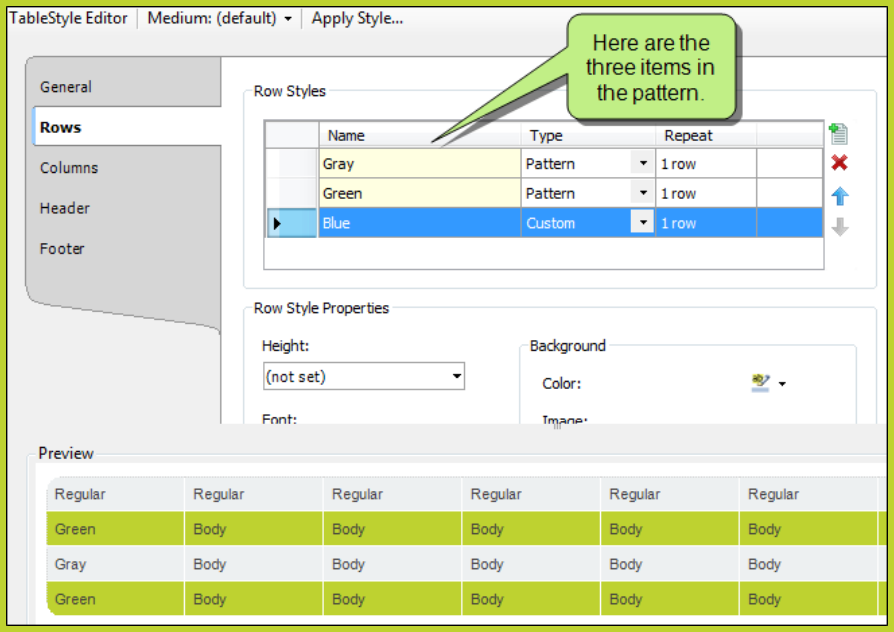
» **Type** Select a type for the item. Most of the time you will probably want to use the Pattern type. This means that the settings for that item will be added automatically to any table using that table stylesheet. But if an item has a Custom type, its settings will not be added to a table automatically; instead, you would need to apply that item manually to the particular areas of the table where you want to use it. The Custom type might be used if you want a particular style for most of your tables, but there might be some tables where the style needs to be changed somewhat. In those cases, you can manually override the style for those specific tables.

EXAMPLE

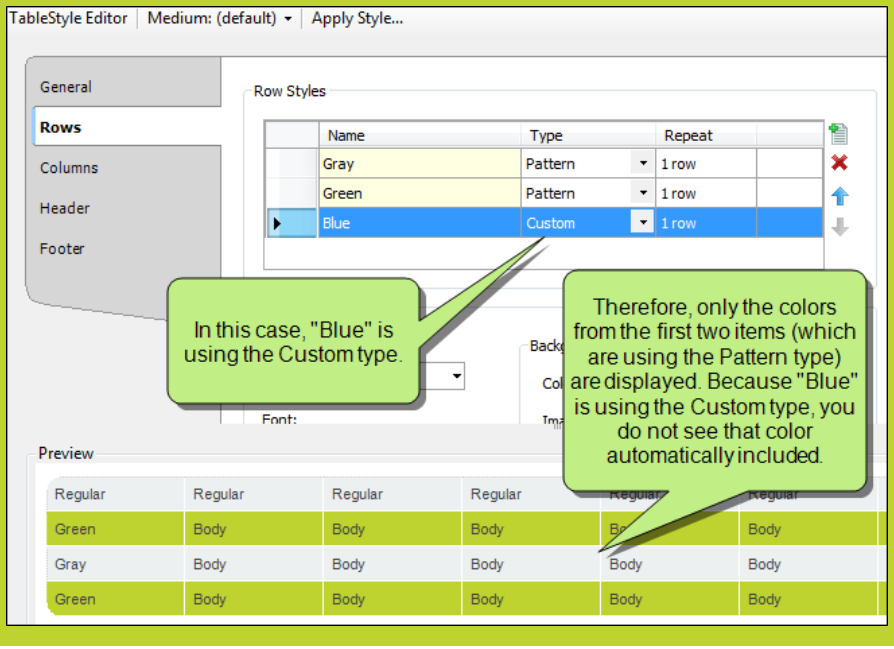
You can switch the type for an item using the drop down menu.



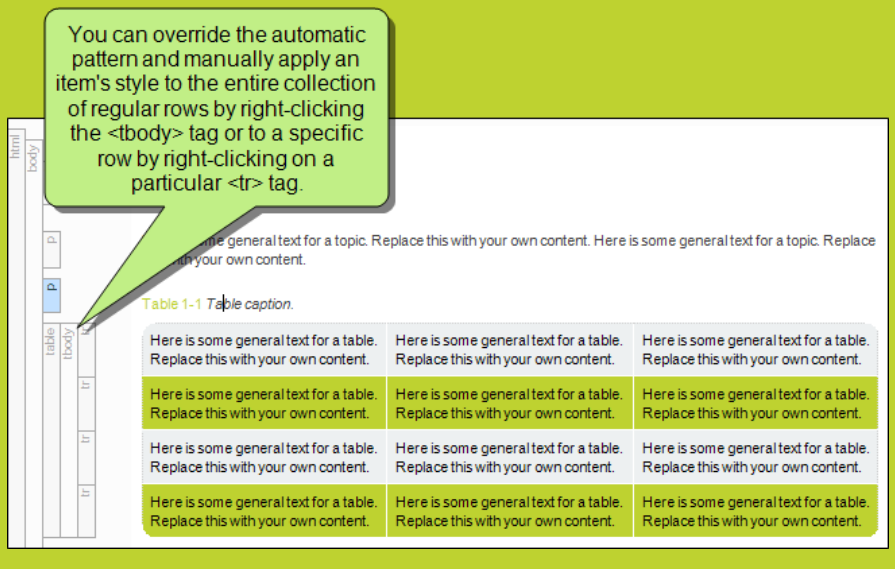
Let's say you have a table stylesheet with three pattern items on the Rows tab (Gray, Green, Blue), with alternating background colors.

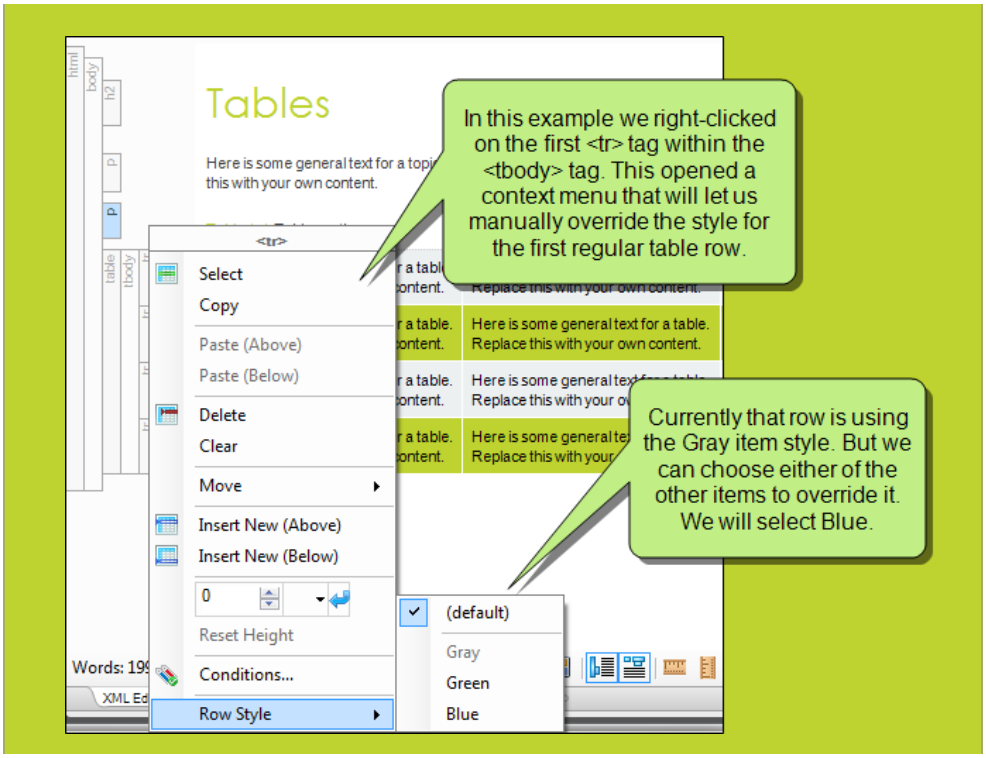


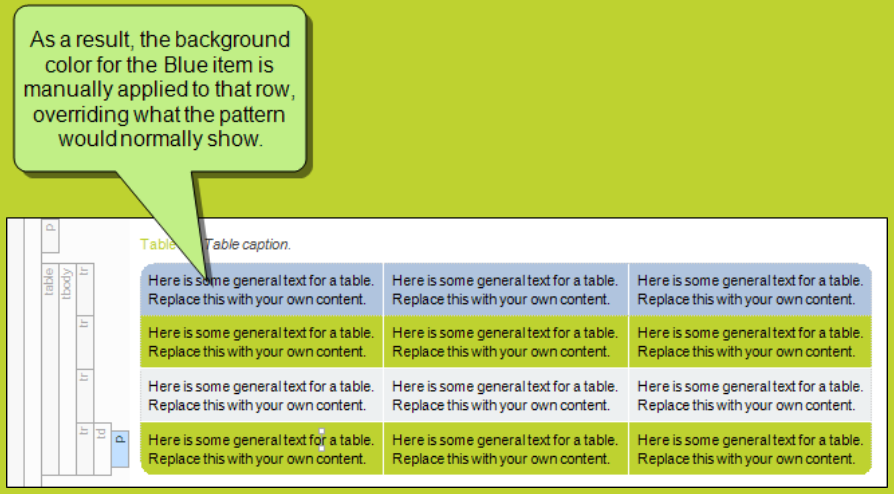
However, only the first two items are using the Pattern type. The third item is using the Custom type. Therefore, when you insert a table and use this stylesheet, the rows alternate between gray and green only.



This particular pattern was created on the Rows tab, which means that it displays only in your body rows, not in any header or footer rows. By right-clicking on the <tbody> tag or any of the <tr> tags within it, you can select Row Style from the context menu. From there, you can select any of the available items in the pattern to override what you already have in the table.

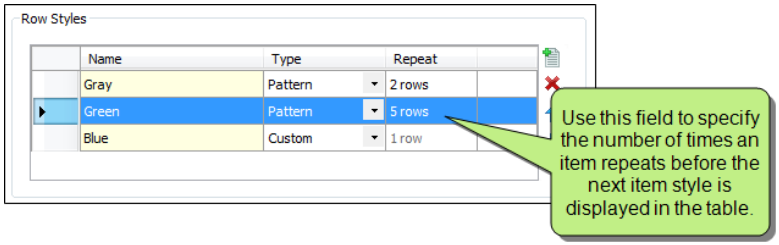



Tables
In this example we right-clicked on the first <tr> tag within the <tbody> tag. This opened a context menu that will let us manually override the style for the first regular table row.
Currently that row is using the Gray item style. But we can choose either of the other items to override it. We will select Blue.
<tr>
Select
Copy
Paste (Above)
Paste (Below)
Delete
Clear
Move
Insert New (Above)
Insert New (Below)
Reset Height
Conditions...
Row Style
(default)
Gray
Green
Blue



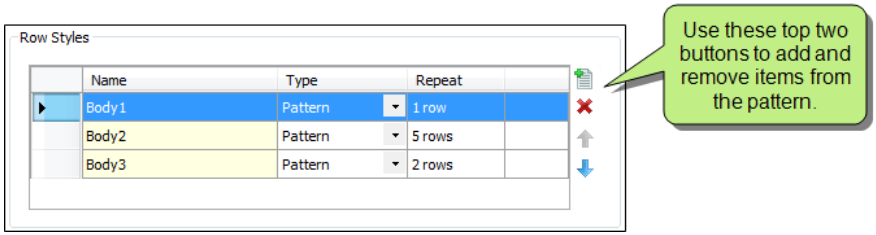
The only difference between the first two items (Gray and Green) and the third item (Blue) is that Blue can be applied only from this context menu manually. Gray and Breen are applied automatically, but can be applied manually from the context menu too.

» **Repeat** Click the up or down numbers to increase or decrease the number of times the pattern occurs in a table before the next pattern is displayed.



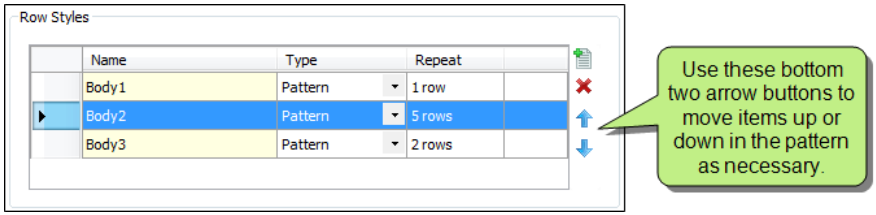
» Adds a new pattern. The new pattern is initially set to repeat just once, but you can change that in the "Repeat" cell.

» Removes the selected pattern from the list.



» Moves the selected pattern up in the list.

» Moves the selected pattern down in the list.



HEIGHT

Select a pattern from the section above. Then click this field to open a small popup, which lets you set properties for the height of the row or width of the column. In the lower-left field enter a number. In the lower-right field, select a unit of measurement (e.g., points, pixels, centimeters) for the number you entered. Then click **OK** to accept the settings, or click **Cancel** to close the window without accepting them.

FONT

Select a pattern from the section above. Then click this field to open a small popup, which lets you set font properties.

- **Weight** Select an option to change the weight of the font (e.g., bold). The numbers from 100 to 900 represent different levels of darkness. The number 400 is the same as a "normal" weight, and the number 700 is the same as the standard "bold" option. "Bolder" means the next weight that is assigned to a font that is darker than the inherited one. "Lighter" means the next weight that is assigned to a font that is lighter than the inherited one.
- **Style** Select an option to change the style of the font (e.g., italic).

  According to the World Wide Web Consortium (w3.org):

  > *The font style specifies whether the text is to be rendered using a normal, italic, or oblique face. Italic is a more cursive companion face to the normal face, but not so cursive as to make it a script face. Oblique is a slanted form of the normal face, and is more commonly used as a companion face to sans-serif. This definition avoids having to label slightly slanted normal faces as oblique, or normal Greek faces as italic.*
- **Color** Click this field and select a color for the text. For advanced color options, select **More colors** and use the fields in the Color Picker dialog.
- **Size** In the top field, select **Length**. Then in the lower-left field enter a number for the size of the text, and in the lower-right select a unit of measurement (e.g., points, pixels, centimeters) for the number.
- **Family** Click in this field and select a font family (e.g., Arial) for the text.

RULER

Select a pattern from the section above. Then click this field to open a small popup, which lets you set properties for a rule (i.e., horizontal line) between the rows or columns in the pattern. In the lower-left field enter a number for the size of the rule. In the lower-middle field, select a unit of measurement (e.g., points, pixels, centimeters) for the number you entered.In the upper-right field, select a color for the rule. In the lower-right field, select a type of line (e.g., solid, double, dashed) for the rule. Then click **OK** to accept the settings, or click **Cancel** to close the window without accepting them.

SEPARATOR

Select a pattern from the section above. Then click this field to open a small popup, which lets you set properties for a separator (i.e., a horizontal line) between the final row or column in the pattern and the first row or column in the next pattern. In the lower-left field enter a number for the size of the separator. In the lower-middle field, select a unit of measurement (e.g., points, pixels, centimeters) for the number you entered. In the upper-right field, select a color for the separator. In the lower-right field, select a type of line (e.g., solid, double, dashed) for the separator. Then click **OK** to accept the settings, or click **Cancel** to close the window without accepting them.

ALIGNMENT

Select an option for aligning text in the row or column horizontally.

- **Left** The text aligns at the left edge of each cell.
- **Center** The text aligns in the center of each cell.
- **Right** The text aligns at the right edge of each cell.
- **Justify** The text aligns both at the left and right edges of each cell.

VERTICAL ALIGNMENT

Select an option for aligning text in the row or column vertically.

- **Top** The text aligns at the top of each cell.
- **Middle** The text aligns in the middle of each cell.
- **Bottom** The text aligns at the bottom of each cell.

PRINT OPTIONS (ROWS ONLY)

Click the **Print Options** button to open the Breaks dialog and set page and column breaks for table row elements.

BACKGROUND

Use this area to specify the settings that you want for the background. In the **Color** field, click the down arrow and select a color from the popup. For advanced color options, select **More Colors** and use the fields in the Color Picker dialog. Next to the **Image** field, click ... . Select an image file to insert and click **OK**. If you want the background image to repeat, select one of the options from the **Repeat** field. You can also set the image position horizontally and vertically by using the **X** and **Y** fields.

CELL PADDING

Click in any of the individual fields (**Left**, **Right**, **Top**, **Bottom**) to specify the settings for the cell padding (the amount of space between the edge of the table cell and the content in the cell). In the left side of the field, enter a number for the amount of padding. In the right side of the field, select a unit of measurement (e.g., point, pixel, centimeter) for the number you entered. If you click the down arrow to the right of all the fields, the settings will be applied to all of the cell padding fields. When you click that down arrow, a small popup displays. Use the lower-left area of the popup to enter a number for the amount of padding. Use the lower-right area to select a unit of measurement.

PATTERN EXAMPLE

Let's say you want the rows in the table to alternate between having no background color and a green background color. In addition, you want a header row to have a blue background. To do this, you would complete the following steps:

a. Select the **Row** tab.

b. In the **Row Styles** section, click . There should now be two patterns (Body1 and Body2).

c. To make the patterns more identifiable, click in the **Name** cell (where "Body1" is shown) and press **F2**. Then replace the existing text and type `NoColor`.

d. Click in the **Name** cell (where "Body2" is shown) and press **F2**. Then replace the existing text and type `Green`.

e. The **Type** cell should already be set to "Pattern" for each, and the **Repeat** cell should already be set to "1" for each. Keep those fields set as they are.

f. Select the **Green** pattern row.

g. In the **Background/Color** field, select a green color.

h. Select the **Header** tab.

i. Click in the **Name** cell and press **F2**. Then replace the existing text and type `Blue`.

j. In the **Background/Color** field, select a blue color.

The Preview section at the bottom of the editor lets you see how the table elements look as you make changes.

3. Click to save your work.

Note: Alternatively, you can edit table styles in a regular stylesheet separately (see "Editing Table Styles in Regular Stylesheets" on page 369). For the differences between regular stylesheets, table stylesheets, and local properties—and when you should use one over the other—see "Regular Stylesheets, Table Stylesheets, or Local Properties?" on page 34

Setting Table Styles for Print Output

A table stylesheet allows you to single-source your formatting by setting the properties in one place and reusing them wherever you insert tables in your project. But what if you want the tables in online output to look one way and the tables in your printed output to look another way? Here are two options… **Solution #1—Two mediums:** This is the recommended solution. You can have one table stylesheet and use a medium to specify different settings for it—one medium is used for online output and another for print. **Solution #2—Two table stylesheets:** You can insert a single table at each location, using a special version of the table style for print-based output. This solution requires you to have two table stylesheets—one for online and one for print.

E X A M P L E S

Let's say you create a table stylesheet with a pattern design that displays the table with alternating green rows. The problem is that for printed output, you need the rows to display in light gray.

Suppose you decide to use the recommended solution (mediums). Let's say the target for online output is called Target A, and the one for print output is called Target B. the first step is to make sure you have two mediums. Suppose Target A is using the "default" medium, where the rows are set to use a green background. With the properties for Target A already set, you now need to specify style properties for Target B. Therefore, in the Table Style Editor, instead of selecting the "default" medium, you can select another medium (e.g., the "print" medium) and change the properties for the rows to light gray. It's the same table stylesheet and the same pattern that you are working with. The only difference is that one medium is telling Flare to display that table rows with a green background, and the other medium is telling it to use light gray. With Target A using the default medium and Target B using the other medium, the tables will display appropriately in each output.

If you decide instead to use the other solution (two table stylesheets), you first create a table stylesheet and specify settings in it appropriate for online output (e.g., green background for table rows). Then you create a secondary stylesheet. This extra table stylesheet will have design settings that are appropriate for printed output (e.g., light gray table rows). When you insert the table into your content (or edit an existing table), you select the original online table style and also select the special print version of the table style. If you generate any targets based on an online format (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus), the end user will see green rows in the table. However, if you generate any targets based on a print format (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML), the end user will see light gray rows in the table.

HOW TO CREATE A TABLE STYLE FOR PRINTED OUTPUT—TWO MEDIUMS

1. From the Resources\TableStyles subfolder in the Content Explorer, open the table stylesheet.
2. Set the properties to be used for the online output.
   a. In the local toolbar of the Table Style Editor, do one of the following:
      - In the **Medium** field, make sure **Medium: (default)** is selected.

        OR
      - Click the down arrow in the **Medium** field and select **Medium: non-print**.
   b. Use the various tabs in the editor to set properties for that medium.
3. Set the properties to be used for the printed output as follows:
   a. In the local toolbar of the Table Style Editor, click the down arrow in the **Medium** field and select **Medium: print** or **Medium: [name of print medium]**.
   b. Use the various tabs in the editor to set properties for that medium.
   c. Click to save your work.
4. Apply that table style to the appropriate tables throughout your project as follows:

   See "Applying Table Stylesheets to Tables" on page 523.
5. Associate the online medium with your online target as follows:
   a. Open the target to be used for online output (based on either the DotNet Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, or WebHelp Plus format).
   b. In the Target Editor, select the **Advanced** tab.
   c. In the **Stylesheet Medium** section, select the medium that you used for online output (e.g., default, non-print).
6. Associate the print medium with your print target as follows:
   a. Open the target to be used for print output (based on either the Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, or XHTML format).
   b. In the Target Editor, select the **Advanced** tab.
   c. In the **Stylesheet Medium** section, select the medium that you used for printed output (e.g., print).
7. Select **File>Save>Save All** (if using ribbons), select **File>Save All** (if using menus), or press **CTRL+SHIFT+S**.

HOW TO CREATE A TABLE STYLE FOR PRINTED OUTPUT—TWO TABLE STYLESHEETS

1. Create one table stylesheet to be used for online output and another to be used for printed output.

   Tip: If you want both tables to share most of the same settings, you can create the online table stylesheet first, make a copy of it for the print version, and then edit the settings in the copy as necessary. You can easily do this by selecting the original table stylesheet in the Content Explorer (Resources\TableStyles subfolder), pressing **CTRL+C**, pressing **CTRL+V**, and renaming the copy to reflect your needs.

2. Insert a table into a topic or edit an existing table.
3. In the Insert Table dialog (if inserting a new table) or the Table Properties dialog (if editing an existing table), click **Table Style** and from the drop-down select the table style to be used for the online output.
4. Click the down arrow next to the **Create Table Style** button and select **Print Style**. Click **OK** in the small dialog that opens. The Select Table Style dialog opens.
5. From the list, select the table style to be used for the printed output.
6. Click **OK**.
7. In the Insert Table or Table Properties dialog, click **OK**.
8. Select **File>Save>Save All** (if using ribbons), select **File>Save All** (if using menus), or press **CTRL+SHIFT+S**.

Note: If you used print table styles in the past and want to remove them now in favor of the medium method, you can use an option in the Apply Table Style dialog in the Table Style Editor. When this option is enabled, print table styles will be removed from any tables updated by this dialog.

CHAPTER 5

Stylesheet Mediums

You can single-source styles through the use of stylesheet mediums and table print styles. This chapter discusses the following:

The Basics 546
Selecting Stylesheet Mediums 551
Creating Stylesheet Mediums 554
Associating a Medium with a Target 555

The Basics

A medium is an alternative set of styles in a stylesheet that you use for different outputs. They are intended to be an exception to the default style. Mediums can be used in both regular stylesheets and table stylesheets.

One use for a medium is to have one group of style settings for online formats (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus) and a different group of settings for print-based formats (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). Therefore, you could use one medium for your online targets and use another medium for PDF and your other print-based targets.

E X A M P L E

Let's say you have text hyperlinks that are shown in blue font with an underline. That may be fine for Target A, but let's say you want this style to appear in black font with no underline for Target B. The solution is to use a stylesheet medium.

Suppose Target A is using the "default" medium, where the blue underline properties are specified. With the properties for Target A already set, you now need to specify style properties for Target B. Therefore, in the Stylesheet Editor, instead of selecting the "default" medium, you can select another medium (e.g., the "print" medium) and change the properties for the style to black with no underline. It's the same stylesheet and the same style that you are working with. The only difference is that one medium is telling Flare to display that content in blue with an underline, and the other medium is telling it to use black font with no underline. With Target A using the default medium and Target B using the other medium, the content will display appropriately in each output.

Stylesheet Mediums Provided

Flare provides you with the following stylesheet mediums. These are enough to satisfy the needs of most authors, but you can create additional mediums if necessary.

- **default** This is the standard medium. Any settings that you specify in the default medium "trickle down" automatically to the other mediums. However, you can override any setting in a specific medium.

  EXAMPLE

  Suppose you are using four different mediums (default, print, non-print, CustomA) in your project. Let's say you specify that the font color for the <p> style tag in the default medium should be red. If you were to then open any of the other three mediums, you would see that the font color for the <p> tag in each of those is also red. If you were to open the print medium and change the font color for the <p> tag to blue, that is the color that will be used for that medium. However, the <p> tag will continue to be displayed in red for the default, non-print, and CustomA mediums.

- **print** This medium is designed to be used for print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). When you create a print-based target, this medium is automatically associated with it (although you can select a different medium for the target if necessary).
- **non-print** If you are creating online output and do not want to use the default medium for it, you can use this medium instead. For example, you might want to use the default medium for three online targets that you are working on, but you want to create a fourth online target that uses a different set of styles. In that case, you can use the non-print medium for that fourth target (or you can create custom mediums if necessary).

The Print Medium and Page Layouts

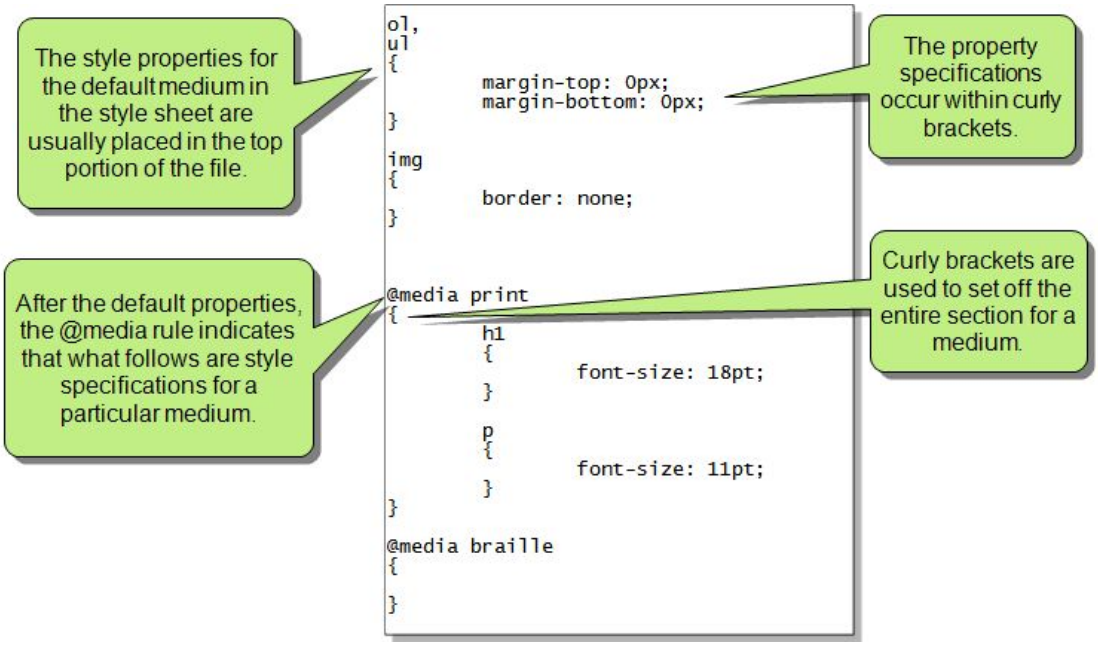
Page layouts render content using the Print medium settings in the stylesheet.

E X A M P L E

Let's say you have a style called "p.Section" and you apply this style to the text you have in a header frame in a page layout. In the Default style medium, the font color for this style is black, but in the Print medium it is red. It makes more sense to display the font for a page layout based on the Print medium, because that medium will most likely be used in the print-based output. Therefore, the text displays as red in the page layout.

Medium Organization and Printing

Different mediums in a CSS are set apart by the @media rule and sets of curly braces. This can be seen when you open the stylesheet source file; to do this, navigate to the CSS file in the Content Explorer, right-click on it, and select **Open with>Notepad**.



The placement of the medium section in the stylesheet affect which styles are used when you print topics. For example, if you are using the print medium and want those styles to be used when printing a topic from a web browser, the @media print section should be placed in the stylesheet after your default media section, because style properties lower in a CSS take precedence over properties placed above them. You can always move the medium sections around in the stylesheet (if you want them to be placed higher or lower in the file) by cutting and pasting them in Notepad.

For more information about mediums in a CSS, see **http://www.w3.org/TR/CSS2/media.html**.

Tasks Associated With Stylesheet Mediums

Following are the tasks that you might perform when working with stylesheet mediums.

- **Select in Editor** When you are modifying the properties of a style in the Stylesheet Editor or when you are working in the Table Style Editor, you need to let Flare know which medium your settings should be applied to. To do this, select the medium from the **Medium** drop-down list in the editor, then set the style properties as necessary. See "Selecting Stylesheet Mediums" on the following page.
- **Select in XML Editor** Flare lets you use two different layout modes when working in the XML Editor: Web Layout mode and Print Layout mode. The "default" and "print" mediums are tied to these two layout modes. This simply means that when you are working in Web Layout mode, the XML Editor displays the styles specified in the default medium. But if you switch to Print Layout mode, the XML Editor automatically displays the styles specified in the print medium. This is simply a way to let you see your content in the format that you are most likely concerned about at the moment. Of course, you can always select a specific medium in the XML Editor when using either layout mode. See "Selecting Stylesheet Mediums" on the following page. For more information about layout modes and the XML Editor, see the online Help and the *Topics Guide*.
- **Create** You may very well be able to meet all of your style editing needs by simply using the mediums provided by Flare (default, print, non-print). However, if necessary, you can add as many new custom mediums as you need. See "Creating Stylesheet Mediums" on page 554.
- **Associate With Targets** After you decide on a medium to use for output, you need to associate it with the target. After you build the target, the medium will be used to display the correct style settings in the output. See "Associating a Medium with a Target" on page 555.

Selecting Stylesheet Mediums

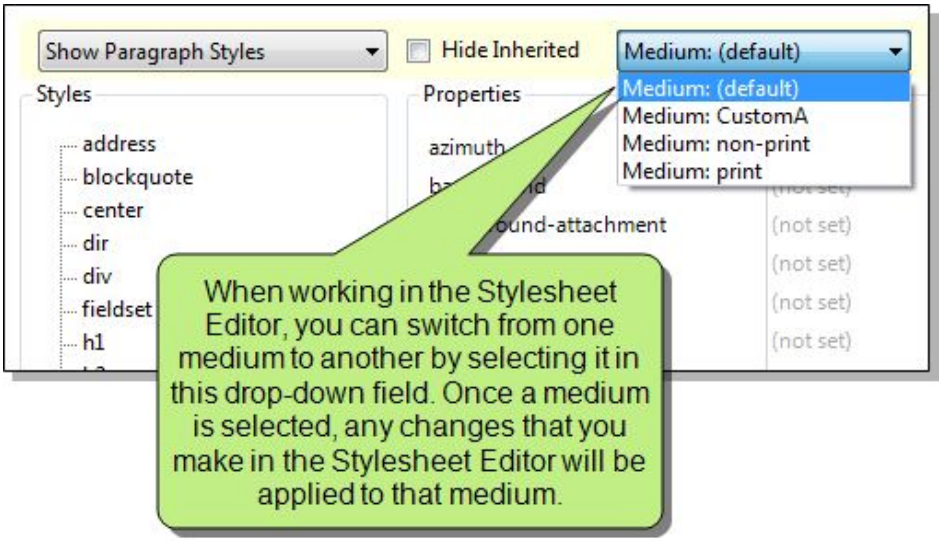
There are multiple places and purposes when it comes to selecting a stylesheet medium.

When Editing Styles

First, you can select a medium in the Stylesheet Editor when editing topic styles, or you can select a medium in the Table Style Editor when working with table styles. You need to do this in order to let Flare know which medium your style settings should be applied to.

HOW TO SELECT A MEDIUM IN THE STYLESHEET EDITOR

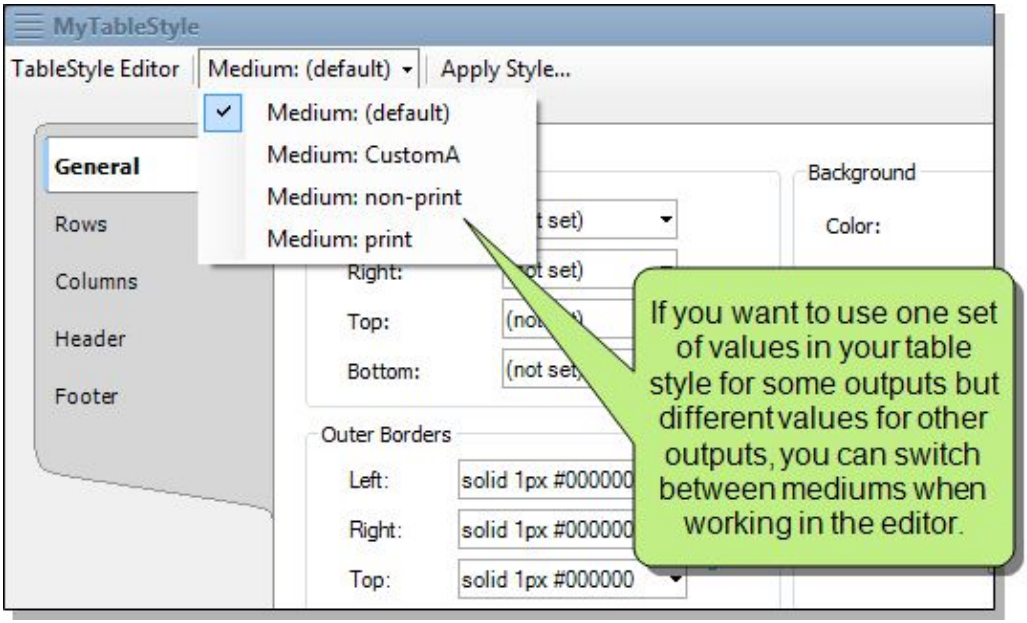
1. From the Content Explorer, open the stylesheet that you want to modify. By default, stylesheets are stored in the Resources\Stylesheets folder, but you can store them elsewhere if you like.
2. Click in the **Medium** drop-down list and select the appropriate medium.



3. Edit the styles for that medium as necessary.

HOW TO SELECT A MEDIUM IN THE TABLE STYLE EDITOR

1. Open the table stylesheet.
2. Click in the **Medium** drop-down list and select the appropriate medium.



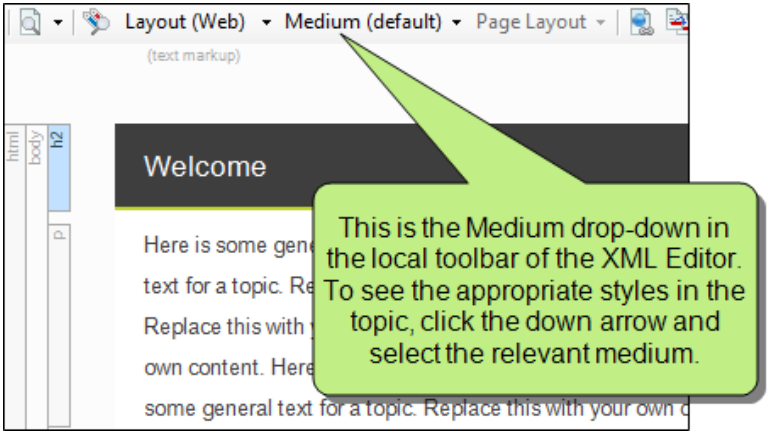
3. Edit the table style properties for that medium as necessary.

When Viewing or Editing Content

Second, you can select a medium in the XML Editor when viewing and editing content. Flare lets you use two different layout modes when working in the XML Editor: Web Layout mode and Print Layout mode. The "default" and "print" mediums are tied to these two layout modes. This simply means that when you are working in Web Layout mode, the XML Editor displays the styles specified in the default medium. But if you switch to Print Layout mode, the XML Editor automatically displays the styles specified in the print medium. This is simply a way to let you see your content in the format that you are most likely concerned about at the moment. Of course, you can always select a specific medium in the XML Editor when using either layout mode.

HOW TO SELECT A MEDIUM IN THE XML EDITOR

1. Open the content file (e.g., topic, snippet).
2. In the local toolbar, click in the **Medium** drop-down list and select the appropriate medium.



The look of the content changes to reflect the style settings for that medium.

This feature is simply intended to show you how particular styles make a topic look. By using this feature, you are not telling Flare to use that medium for the output for that topic. The way to do that is to associate the medium with a target. See "Associating a Medium with a Target" on page 555.

Creating Stylesheet Mediums

A few mediums are already provided in your stylesheet (i.e., default, print, non-print), but you can add as many new ones as you need.

HOW TO CREATE A STYLESHEET MEDIUM

1. Open a stylesheet.
2. In the local toolbar of the Stylesheet Editor, click Options and select **Add Medium**.
3. In the Rename Medium dialog, type a new name for the medium (without spaces).
4. Click **OK**.
5. Click to save your work.

Associating a Medium with a Target

After you decide on a medium for an output, you need to associate it with the target. After you build the target, the medium will be used to display the correct style settings in the output.

HOW TO ASSOCIATE A MEDIUM WITH A TARGET

1. Open the target.
2. In the Target Editor, click the **Advanced** tab.
3. Click the drop-down arrow in the **Medium** field, and select the stylesheet medium that you want to associate with the target.
4. Click to save your work.

Note: When you create a print-based target (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML), the "print" medium is automatically associated with that target (on the Advanced tab of the Target Editor). Of course, you can always select a different medium if you want.

CHAPTER 6

Skin Styles

In addition to regular and table stylesheets, you can use skin styles. These let you control the look of the online output window (e.g., navigation pane, TOC or browse sequence entries, index keywords). There are three kinds of skins:

- **Standard Skins** for WebHelp, WebHelp Plus, WebHelp AIR, DotNet Help, and Microsoft HTML Help outputs.
- **HTML5 Skins** for HTML5 output.
- **WebHelp Mobile Skins** for WebHelp Mobile output.

This chapter discusses the following:

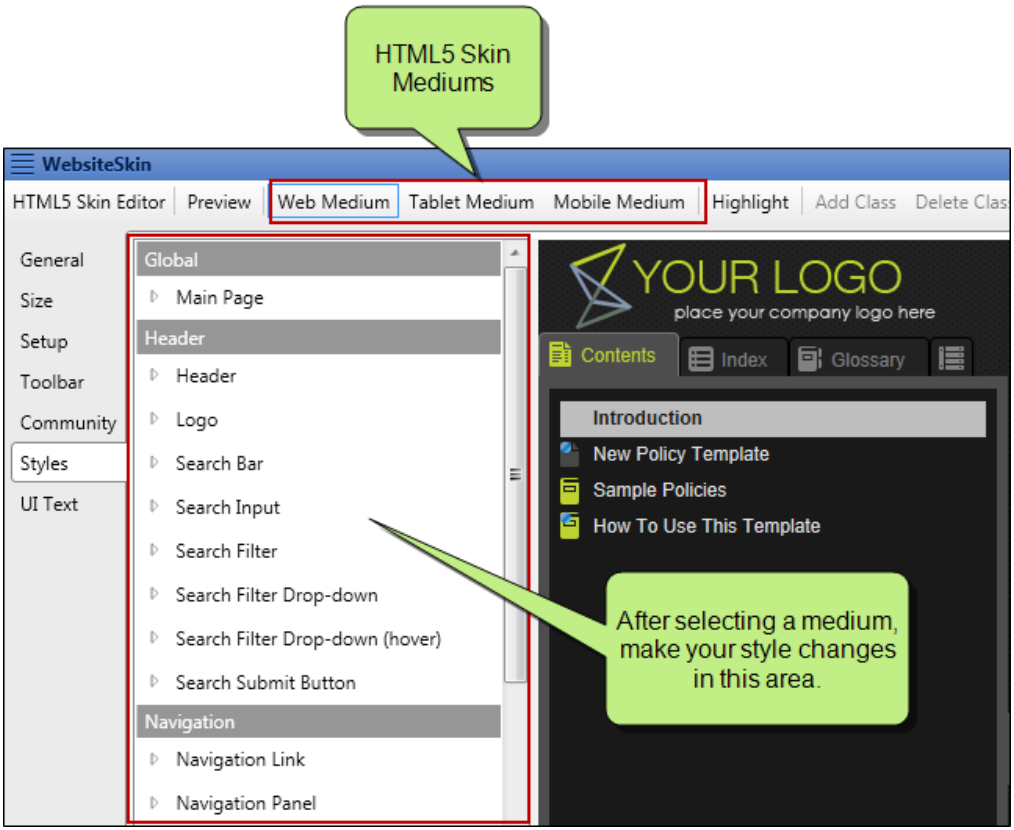
HTML5 Skin Styles 558
Standard Skin Styles 625
WebHelp Mobile Skin Styles 755

HTML5 Skin Styles

There are many ways to style your HTML5 skin. In addition, if you enable the skin to produce responsive output—meaning that the look of the output can automatically adjust depending on the size of the end user's device—there are some additional features for making the output look the way you want in those circumstances.

Mediums

To support responsive output, HTML5 skins come equipped with three mediums—Web, Tablet, and Mobile. You can use these mediums to specify different looks when necessary for the different devices people might be using to view your output.



- **Web** When you first open an HTML5 skin, **Web Medium** is selected. With that medium selected, any changes you make to the styles are applied to that medium. This means that when users are viewing your output on a regular browser, that's the look they will see.
- **Tablet** If you want to change the look that users see when viewing your output on a tablet, select **Tablet Medium** and make your style changes.
- **Mobile** And if you want to change the look that users see when viewing your output on a mobile phone, select **Mobile Medium** and make your style changes.

Similar to cascading stylesheets (CSS), there is a system of inheritance at work with skin mediums. The Web medium is the default. Most settings in that medium are inherited by the Tablet medium. In turn, settings in the Tablet medium are inherited by the Mobile medium. Therefore, if you want all of the mediums to share the same look (e.g., your company logo), you can set it once in the Web medium and it will automatically be used in all three. If you make any changes in the Tablet medium, those settings will override whatever had been inherited from the Web medium. Likewise, you can make changes in the Mobile medium, which will override any settings inherited from the Tablet medium.

Note: An exception to this inheritance is with navigation icon images. Because these icon images are often different sizes in the Web medium than in the other mediums, most navigation icon images do not pass down form the Web medium to the Tablet medium. However, the Tablet medium does inherit the icon image used for the "Mark as New" feature from the Web medium. Also, icon images are passed down from the Tablet medium to the Mobile medium.

Note: Within each medium, the icons under the TOC Entry style inherit from the icon settings in the Navigation Panel>TOC. Therefore, if no icons are set in the TOC Entry style classes in the Web medium, Flare will use the Navigation Panel>TOC icons in that medium. The same holds true for the Tablet medium; if no icons are set in the TOC Entry classes in the Tablet medium, they will be inherited from the Navigation Panel>TOC icons in the Tablet medium. And the same is the case with the Mobile medium.

Enabling Responsive Output

Enabling responsive output can be accomplished by clicking a check box in an HTML5 skin.

1. Open an HTML5 skin.
2. Select the **Setup** tab.
3. In the **Responsive Output Settings** section, select **Enable responsive output**.
4. (Optional) Responsive output works by automatically changing the display once the viewer reaches a certain width. You can change the maximum width at which the display changes from one medium to the next.
   - **Tablet-Max-Width** Enter the number of pixels for the maximum width of a Tablet view.
   - **Mobile-Max-Width** Enter the number of pixels for the maximum width of a Mobile (or phone) view.

E X A M P L E

Let's say you keep the default settings of 1279 pixels for the Tablet maximum width and 767 pixels for the Mobile maximum width.

If you generate output and view it in a regular browser with the window maximized, you will see the skin style settings for the Web medium.

You then click and drag the browser window to reduce it. Once the width of the browser window reaches 1279 pixels of width, the display changes to show the skin style settings associated with the Tablet medium.

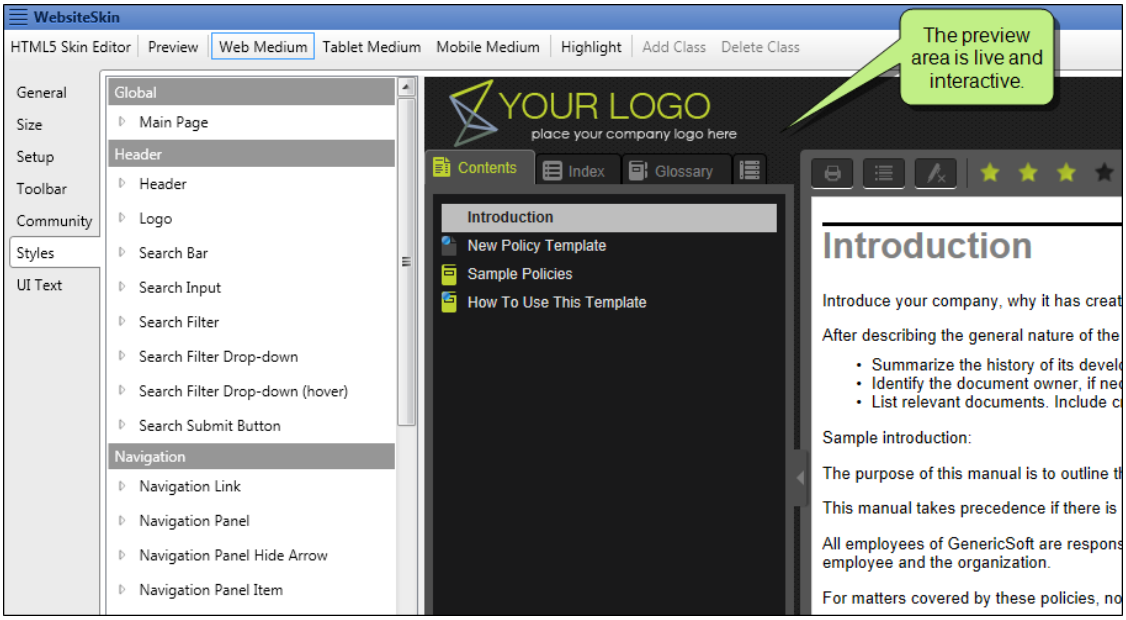
You continue to reduce the size of the browser window. Once the width reaches 767 pixels, the display changes to show the settings for the Mobile medium.

Therefore, the Web medium is named as it is because the largest size is usually meant for a regular web browser. The next size down is often used for tablets, such as iPads, so that medium is called "Tablet." And the smallest size is controlled by the Mobile medium, because a display that small is usually seen in mobile phones.

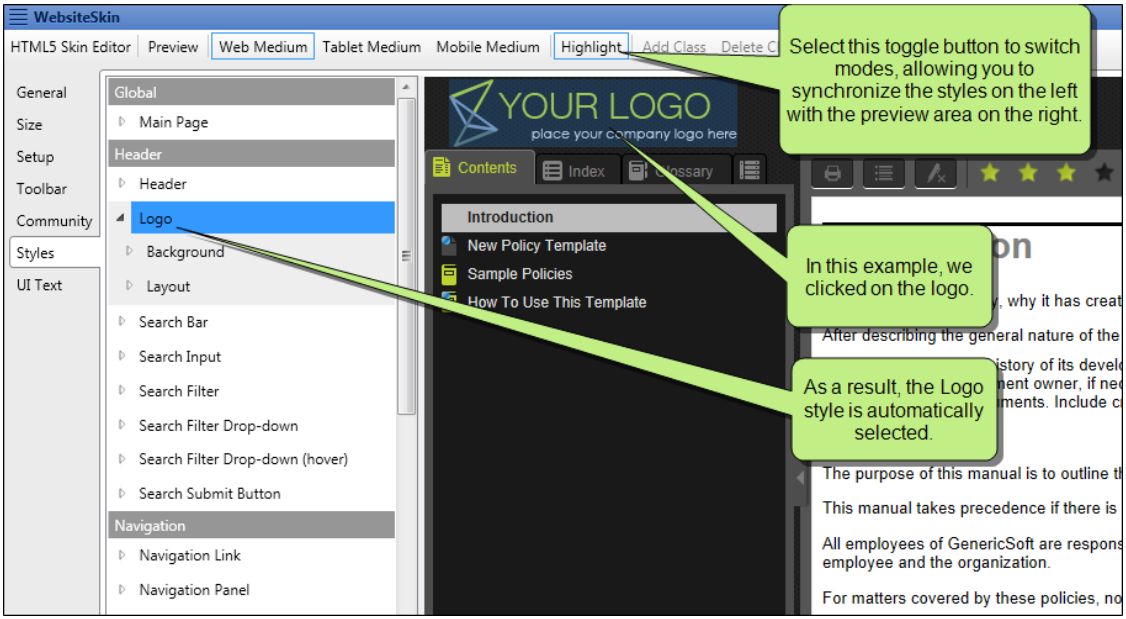
5. Click to save your work.

Interactive Live Preview

The preview area in the Styles tab of the HTML5 Skin Editor is more than just a static image. You can click in the preview to move around and open different areas.

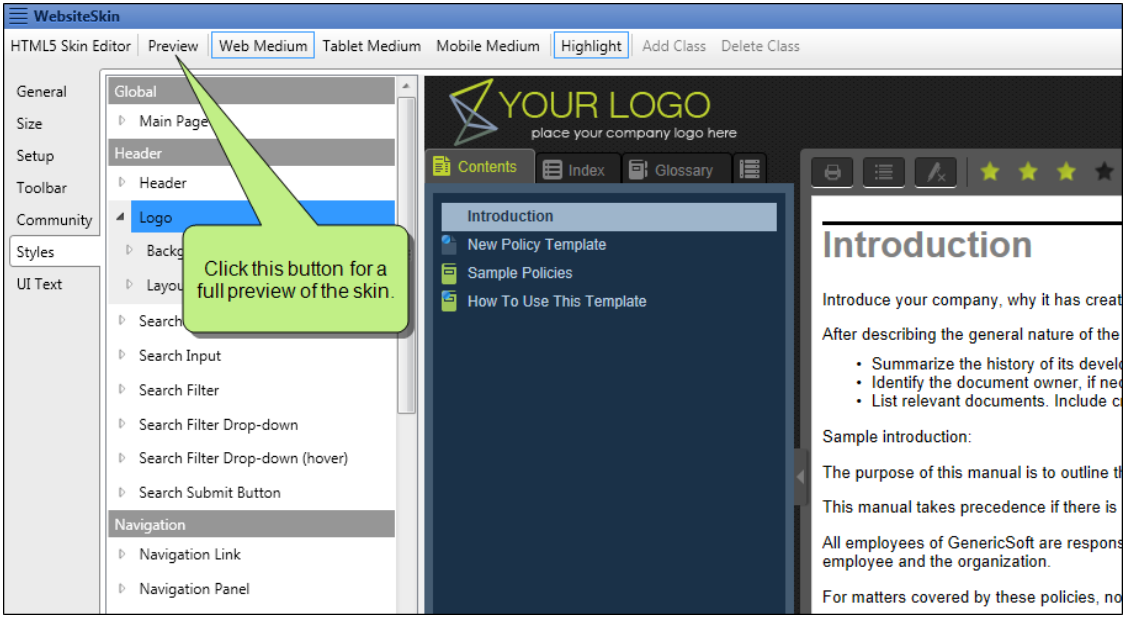


If you click **Highlight** in the local toolbar, the mode changes. As a result, different areas of the preview area become highlighted as you move the mouse over them. And when you click on an area, the corresponding style on the left is also selected. This makes it easier to know what styles you need to change in order to affect that part of the skin. The reverse is also true; as you click on styles, the corresponding area in the preview comes into focus if it is visible in the preview area.



After you make style changes, the preview changes accordingly.

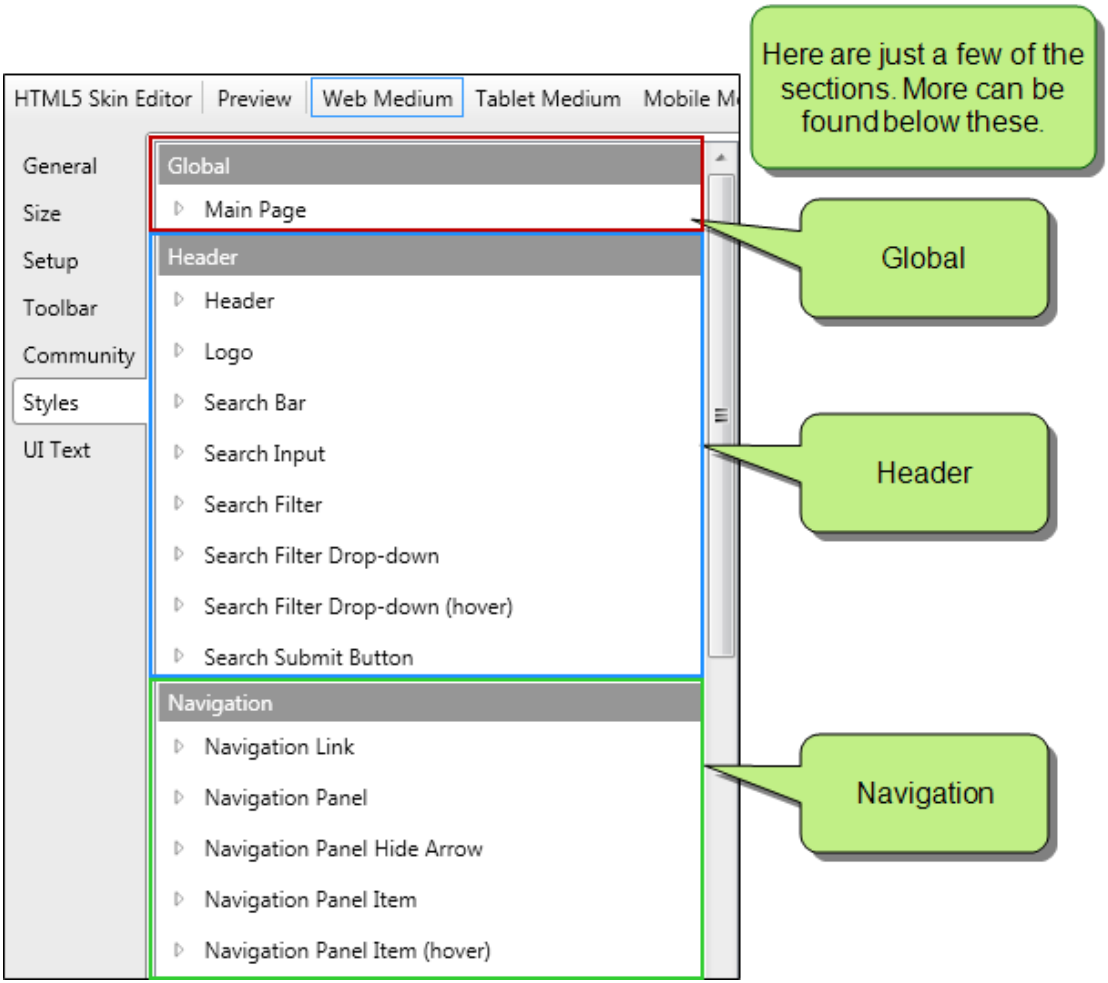
You can also click the full preview option in the local toolbar of the Skin Editor.



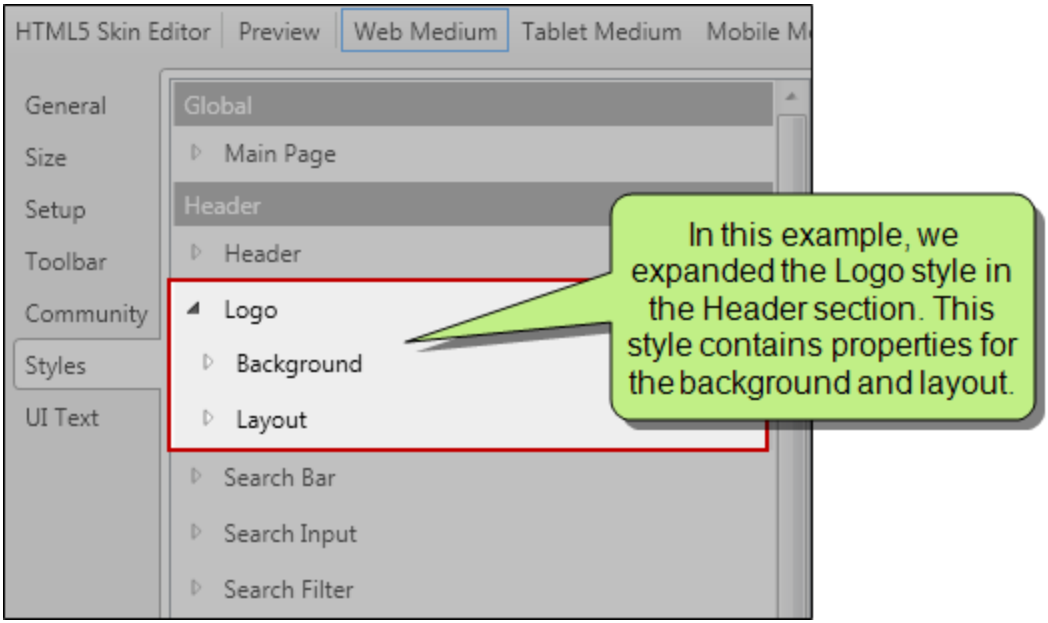
This full preview respects the responsive output setting in the skin. If you have responsive output enabled, the preview is also responsive. If you have the responsive output disabled, the preview is static.

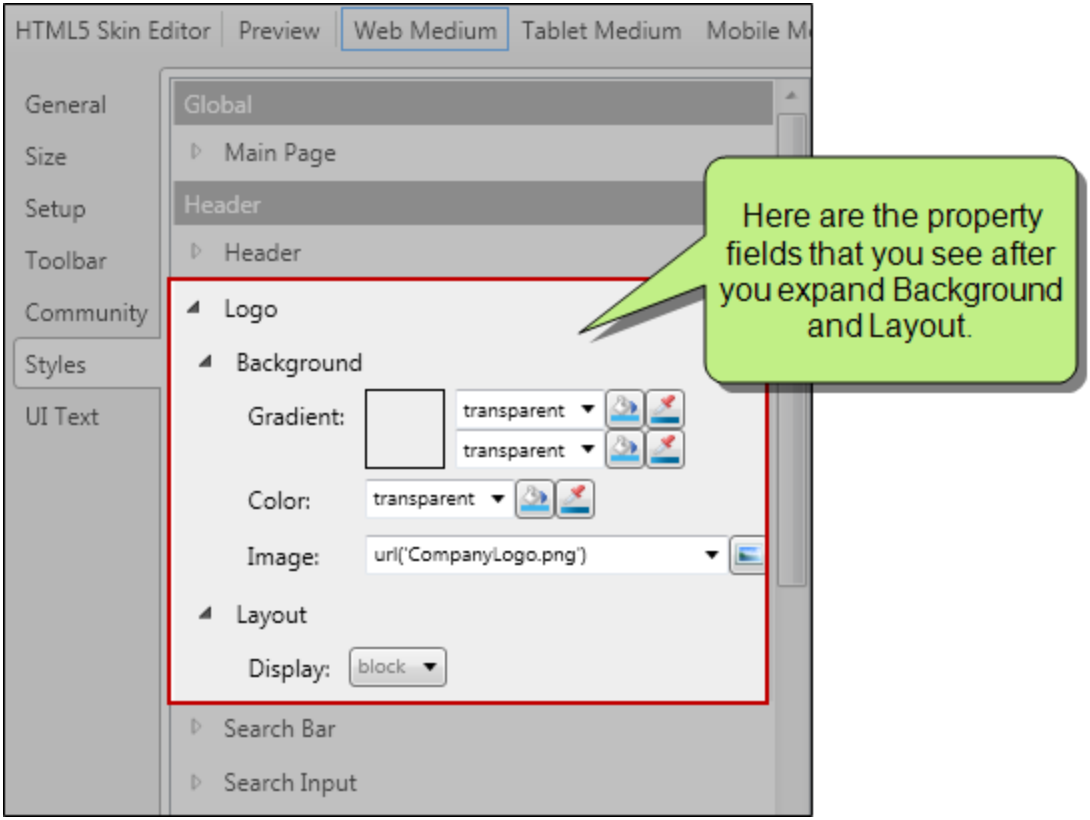
Style Sections and Root/Child Properties

When you open the Skin Editor to make changes to skin styles, you will see the styles organized in different sections.



Within these sections are the different styles you can adjust. You can expand any of these styles to see the properties within it that can be changed.



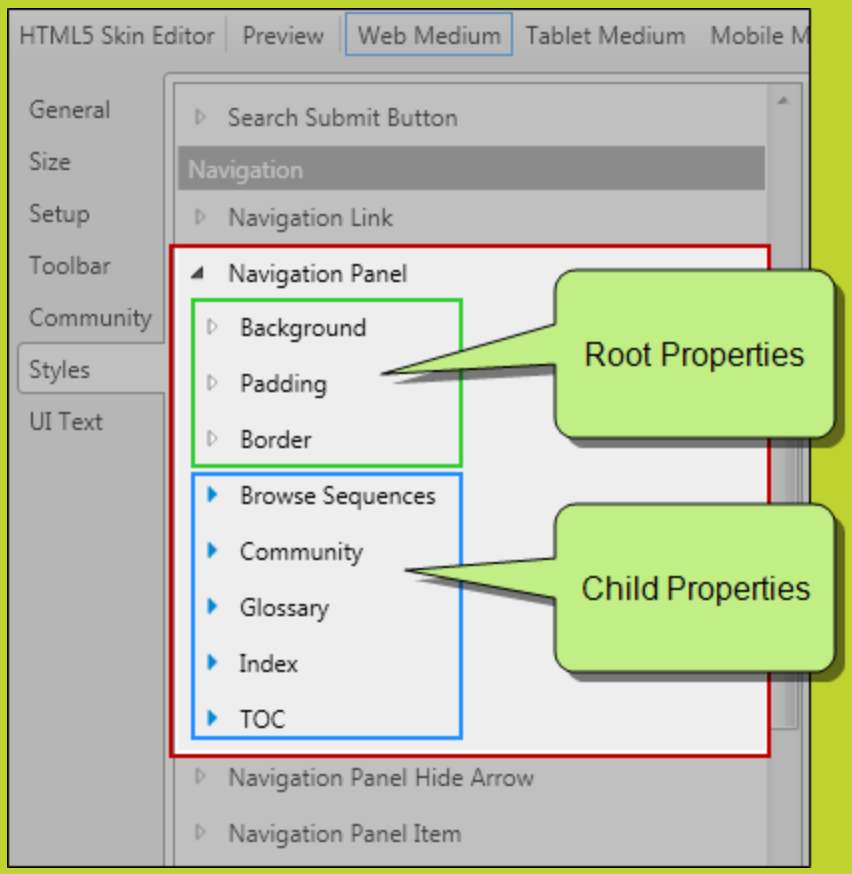


You may see two kinds of properties under a style—root and children.

Root properties are at the first level. If you make changes to a root style, all of the children styles below inherit those changes. So if you want all of the children to have the same setting, it's best to make your modifications to the root properties. The easiest way to tell the difference between root and children styles is by looking at the expand/collapse icons next to them; root styles have a white triangle icon, whereas children styles have a blue triangle icon.

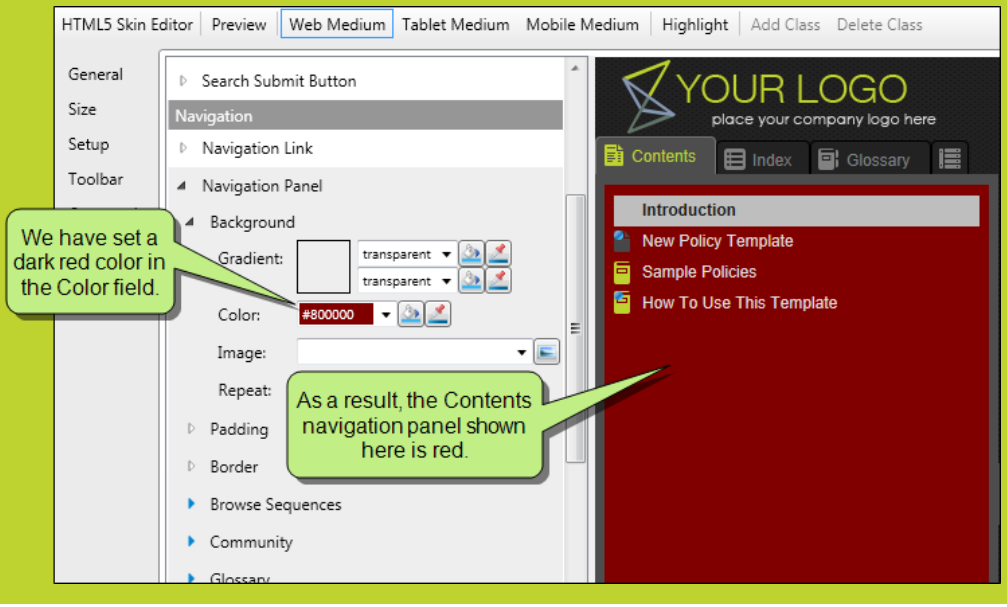
E X A M P L E

Let's say you want to change the background color of all of your navigation panels from black to dark red in the Web medium. First, in the **Navigation** section, you expand the **Navigation Panel** style. Under this style, you see three root property nodes—Background, Padding, and Border. Under these root nodes are five child nodes that represent each of the five kinds of panels you can include in your output—Browse Sequences, Community, Glossary, Index, TOC. (In the Tablet and Mobile mediums you would see Browse Sequences, Glossary, Index, Search Filters, and TOC.)

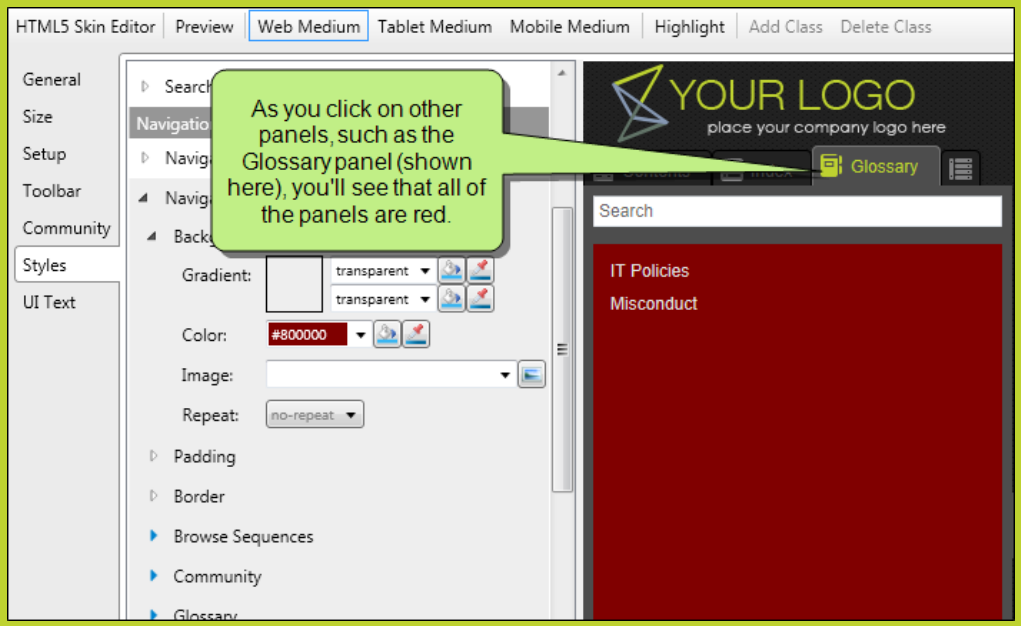


Because you want each of those five panels to have the same color, you expand the root **Background** node. There are a few different fields that can control the background color. There are Gradient fields that let you add an effect where the progresses from one to another in the panel. There is a Color field, which lets you add a color without a gradient. And then there is an Image field, which lets you select an image to display in the background. The Image field has the highest precedence, which means that if you enter settings in all of the Background fields, the image will win. Gradient has the next highest precedence. If you want to use the Color field, you need to make sure the Gradient fields are set to transparent and that there is no image selected.

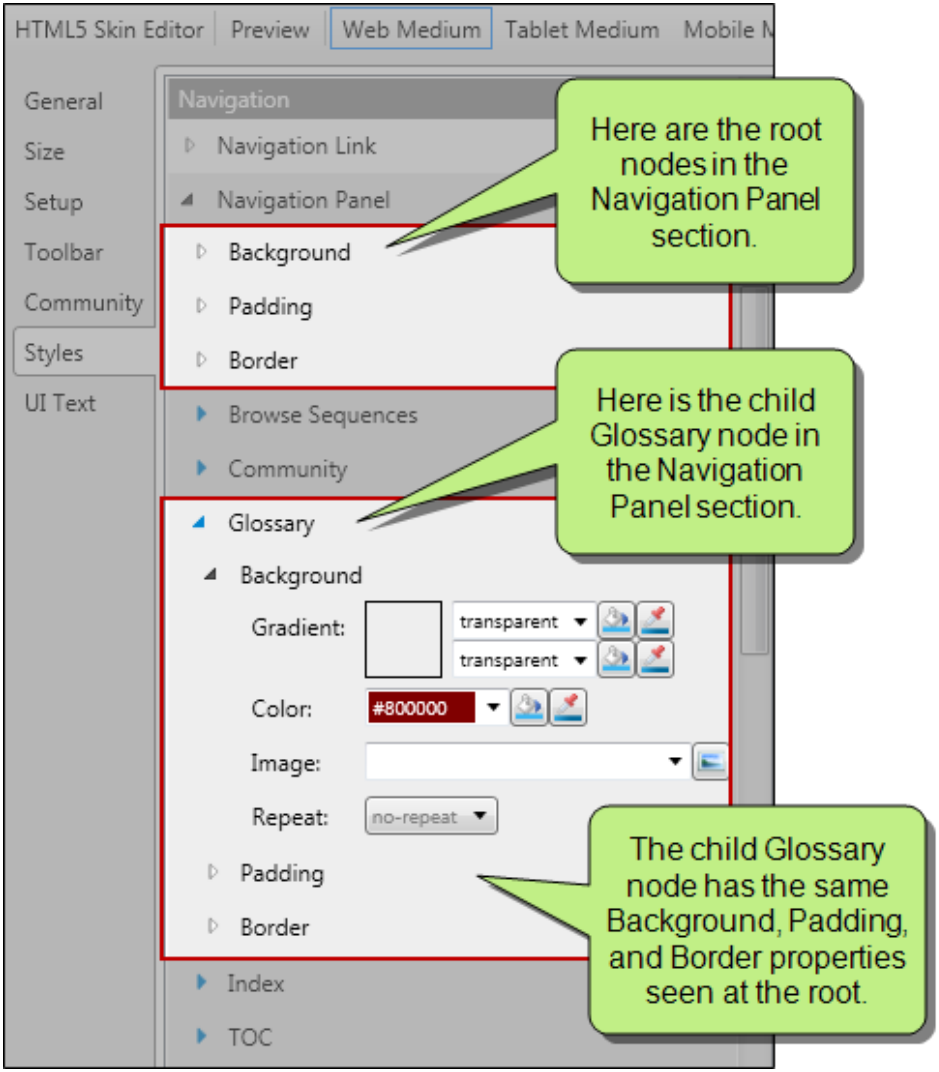
Let's say you use the Color field to choose a dark red color.



Regardless of the panel you select, it is red.



If you expand a child node, you will see the same properties that you see above in the root node.



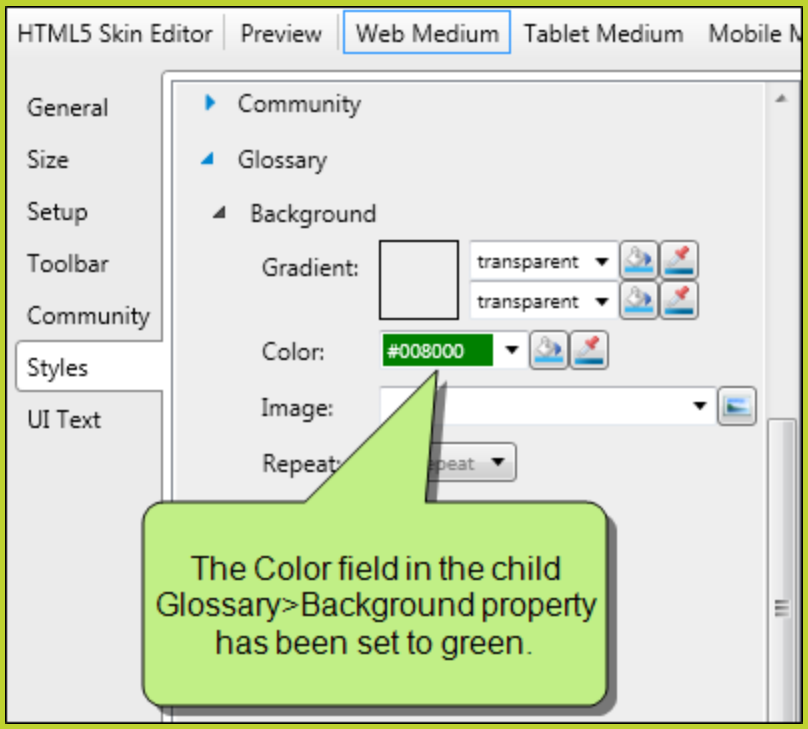
If you make changes to child properties, those settings override anything inherited from the root, and they pertain only to that child.

E X A M P L E

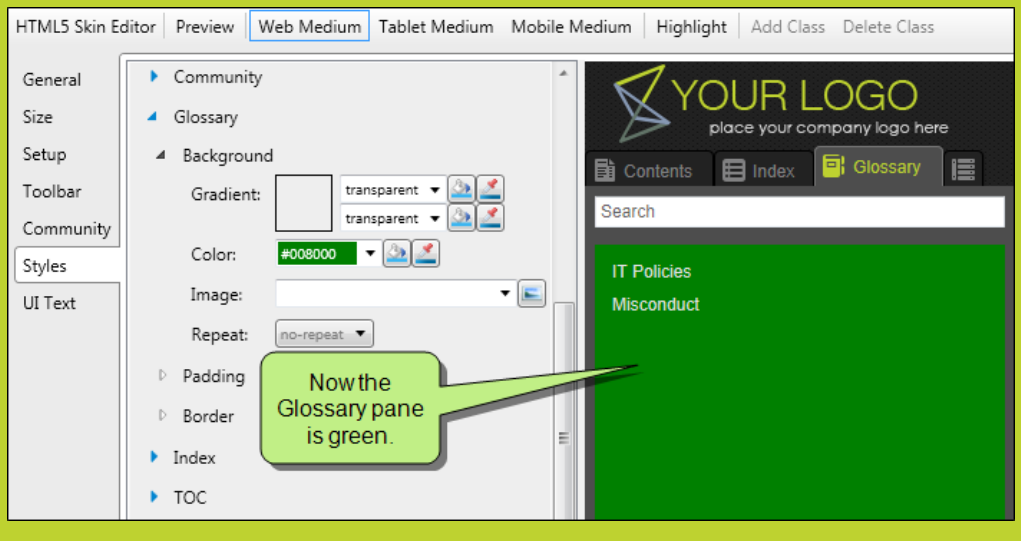
Let's say you have set the root Background property to show the navigation panel in dark red, as described in the previous example.

If you want the Glossary panel to show in green instead, you can expand the **Glossary** node, and then expand the **Background** property within it.

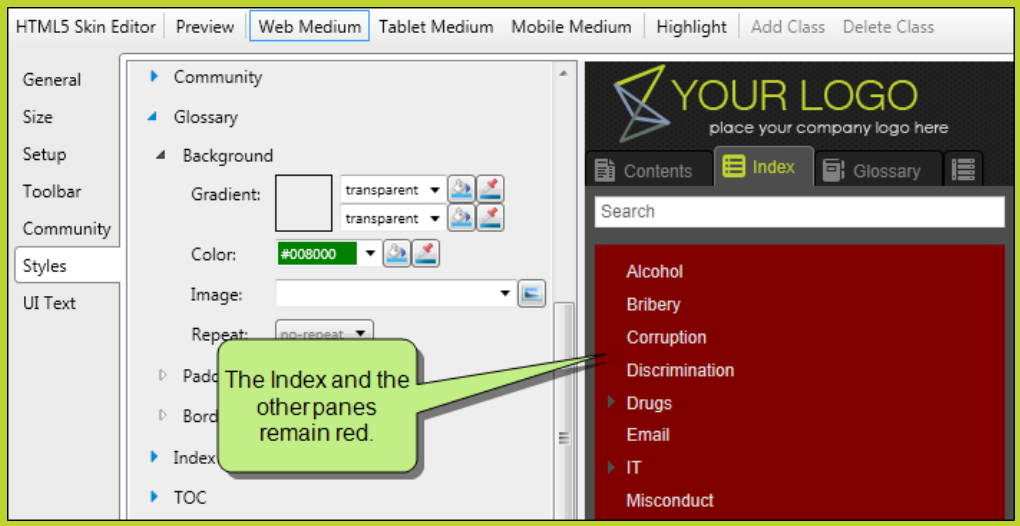
In the **Color** field, you select a green color.



As a result, the Glossary pane is green.

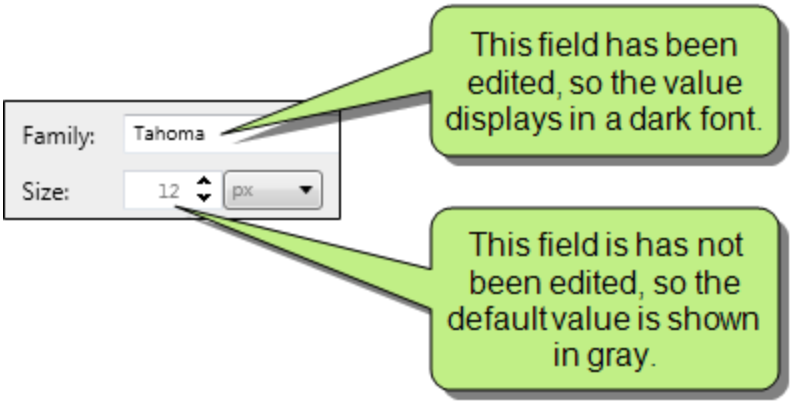


But all of the other panes remain red.



Default Values in Gray

When making changes to skin styles in HTML5 skins, you may notice that some fields display text or numbers in gray. This is the default value for that particular field. If you enter a different value, the font displays in a darker font.

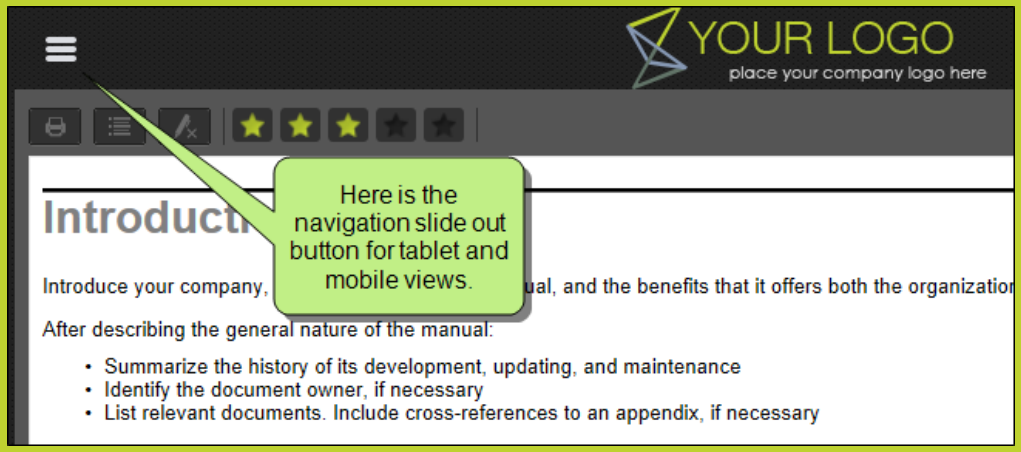


Medium-specific Styles

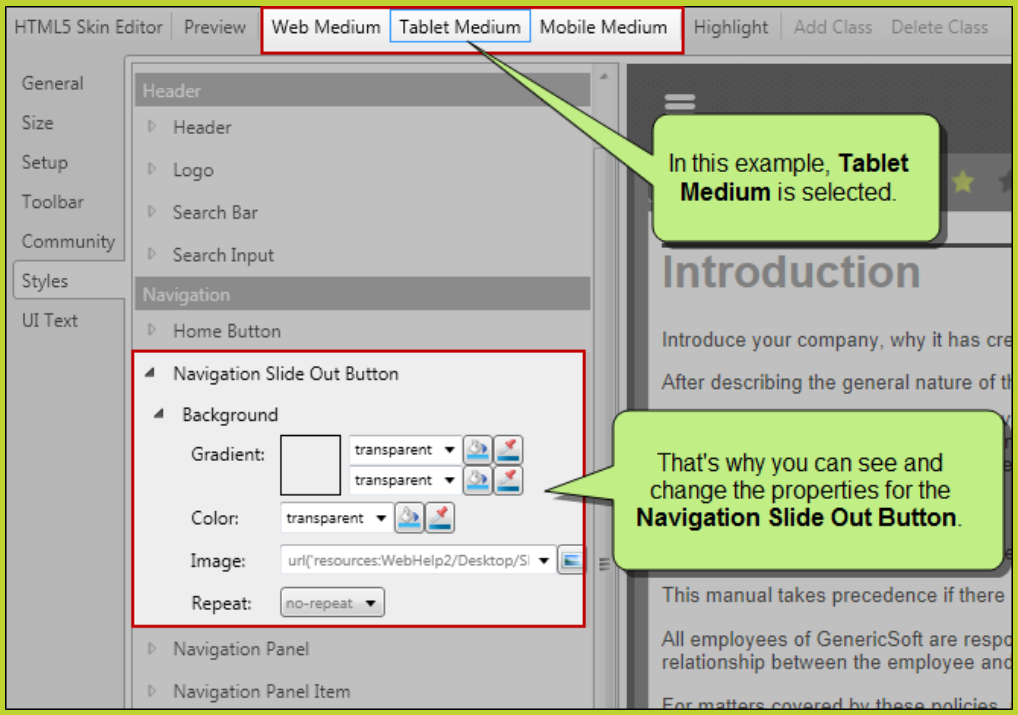
Responsive output allows you to place settings on styles using any of the three mediums—Web, Tablet, and Mobile. However, not all styles and properties are necessarily pertinent to all mediums. That's why only see some styles and properties when you have a particular medium selected and not another.

E X A M P L E

Let's say you want to change the slide out button that you see when the output is shown in a tablet or mobile phone size.



When you select either the **Tablet** or **Mobile Medium**, you can see and adjust the **Navigation Slide Out Button**.



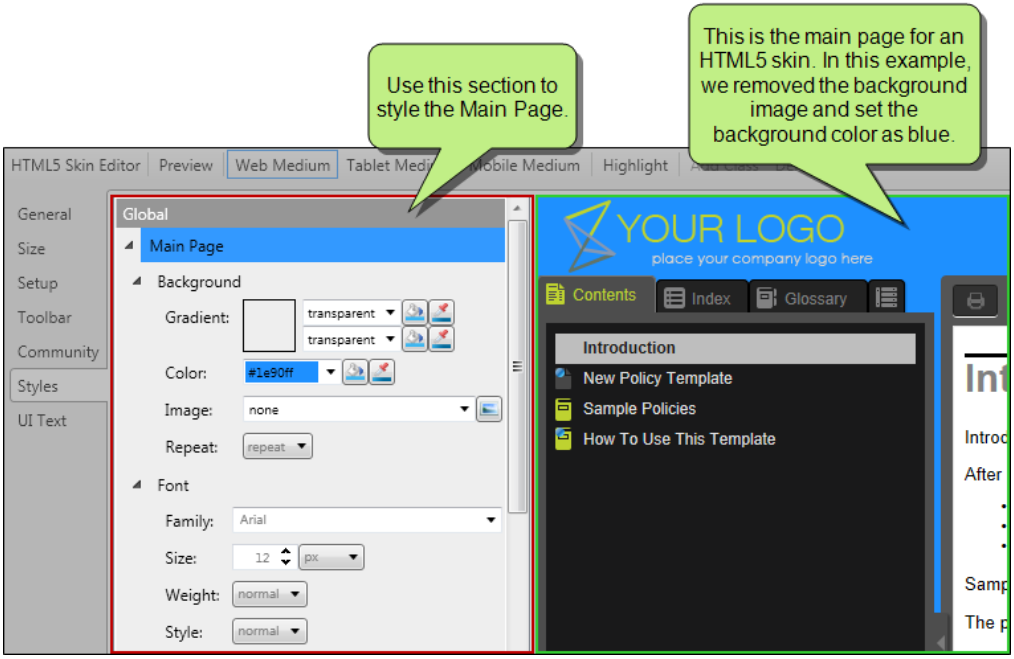
But when you select the Web medium, this style is not available because it isn't used in larger web browser views of the output.

Tasks for HTML5 Skins

You might perform the following style tasks if you are working in an HTML5 skin.

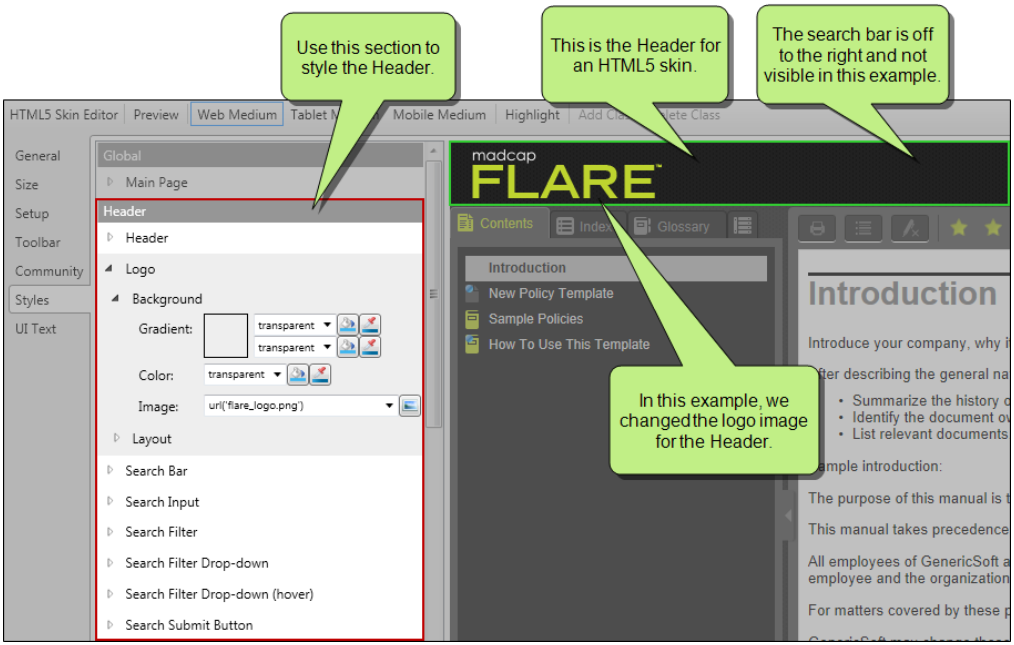
GLOBAL—MAIN PAGE

This section contains the Main Page style, which is the container for the header, navigation elements, and body. For example, this style allows you to control the background color for everything, including the thin line between the navigation panel and the body. See "Main Page in HTML5 Skins" on page 583.



HEADER

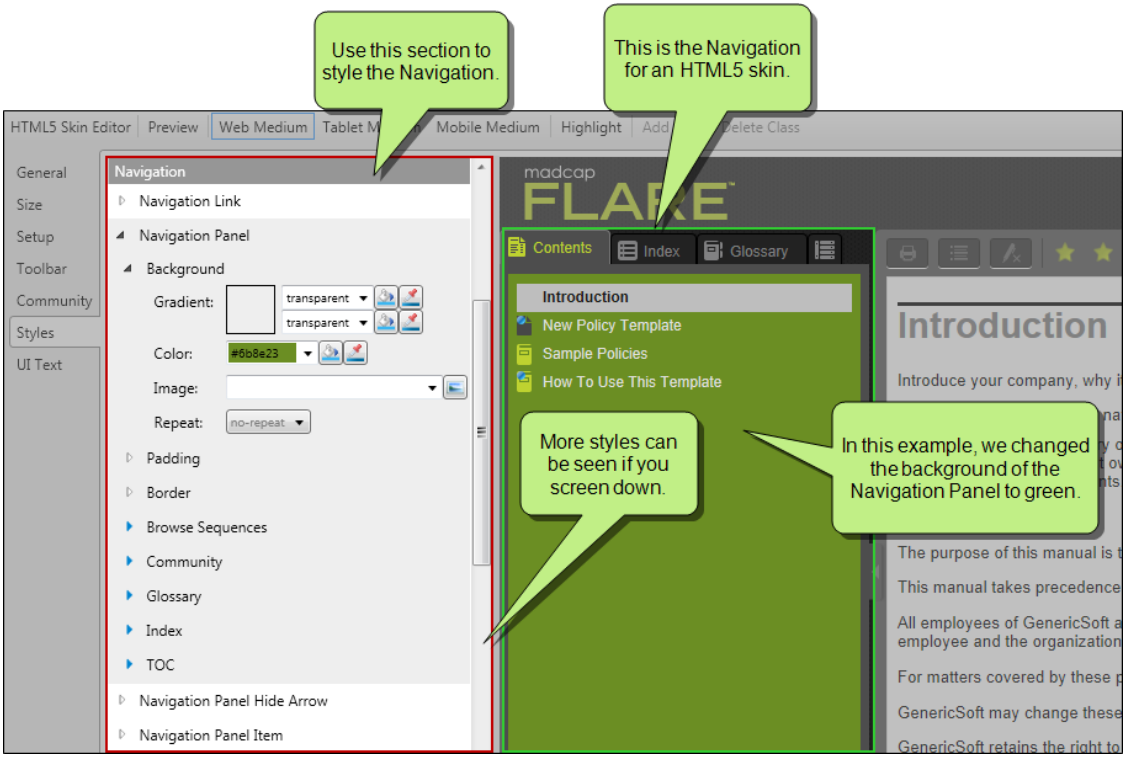
This is the area at the top of the screen, which displays a logo and the search bar. See "Headers in HTML5 Skins" on page 586.



Note: If you want to style items for search results, you can use the Search section in the Skin Editor.

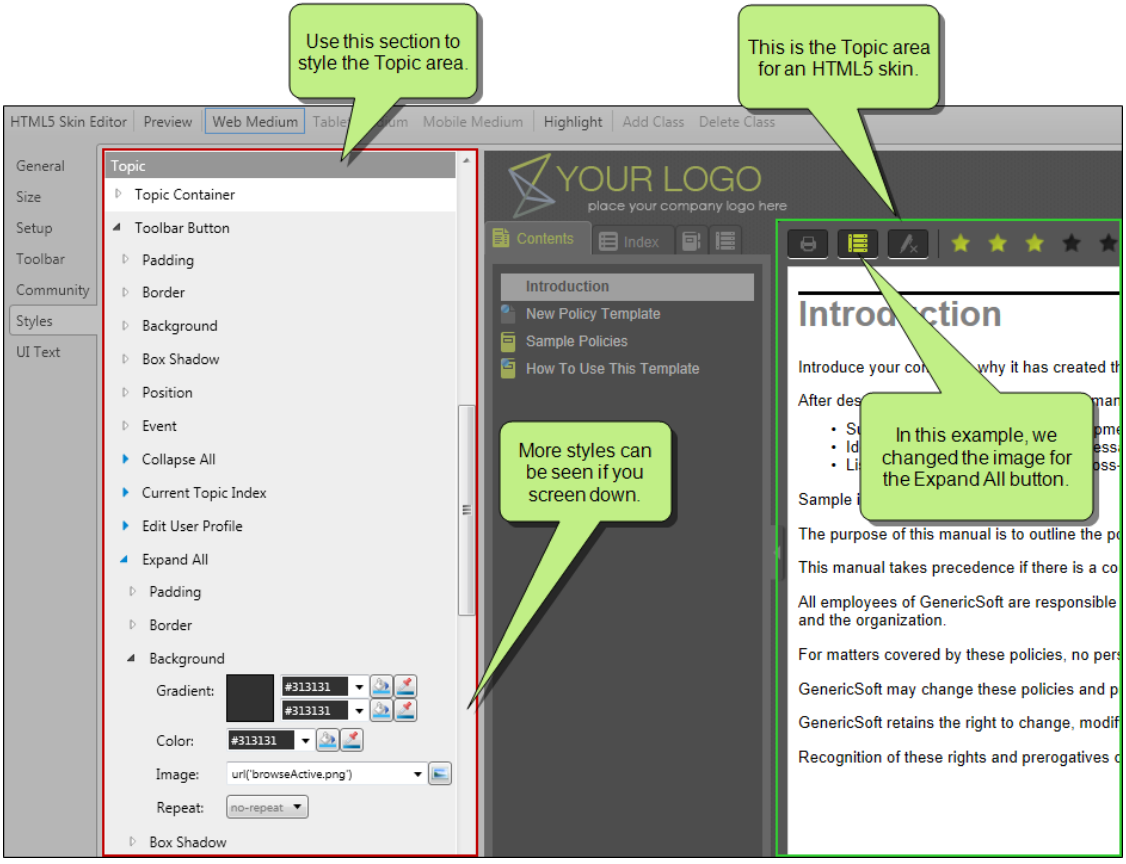
NAVIGATION

This section is used to control the look of navigation elements in the skin, which allow users to open different parts of your output. See "Navigation in HTML5 Skins" on page 592.



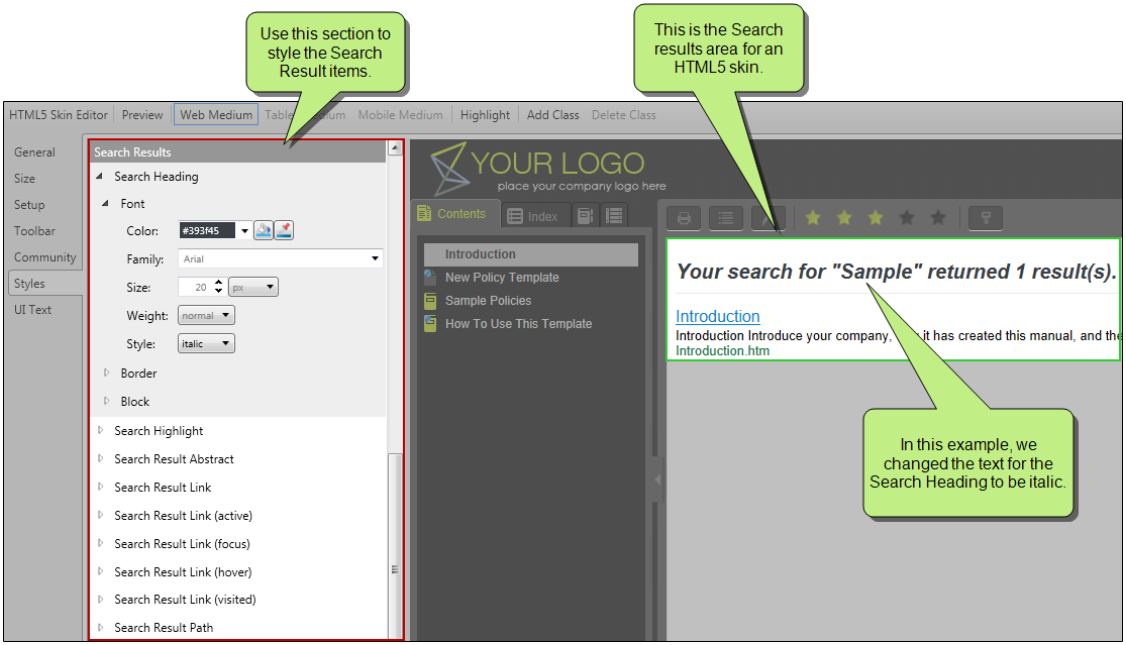
TOPICS

This section is used to control the look of the topic area of the output. This includes the container holding the topic content. It also includes the toolbar just above the topic content. See "Topics in HTML5 Skins" on page 604.



SEARCH RESULTS

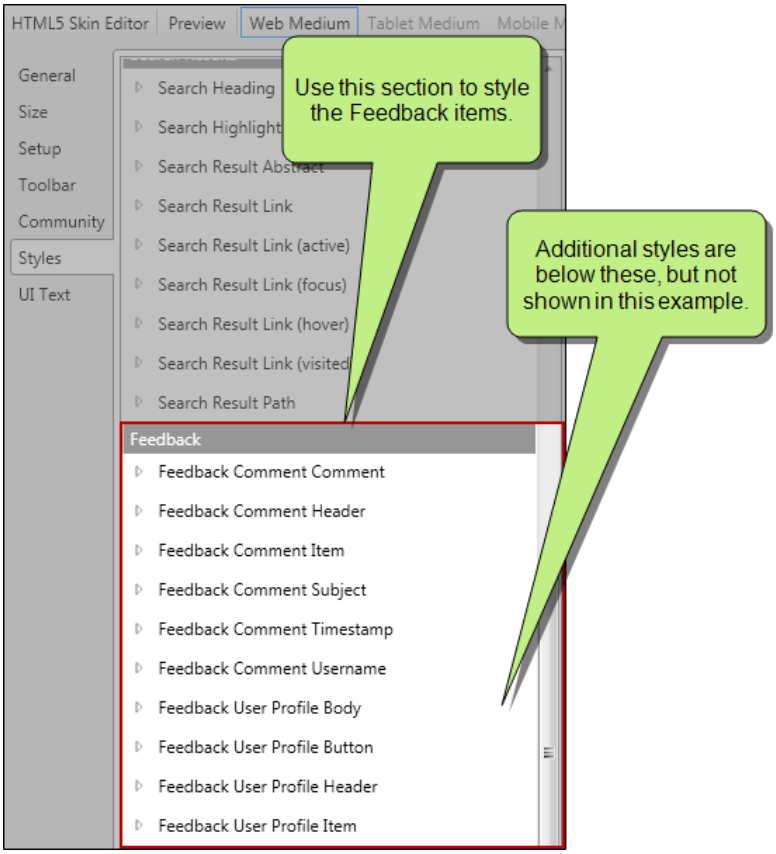
You can use an HTML5 skin to change the appearance of search result items. See "Search Results in HTML5 Skins" on page 612.



Note: If you want to style the search bar and its elements, you can use the Header section in the Skin Editor.

FEEDBACK

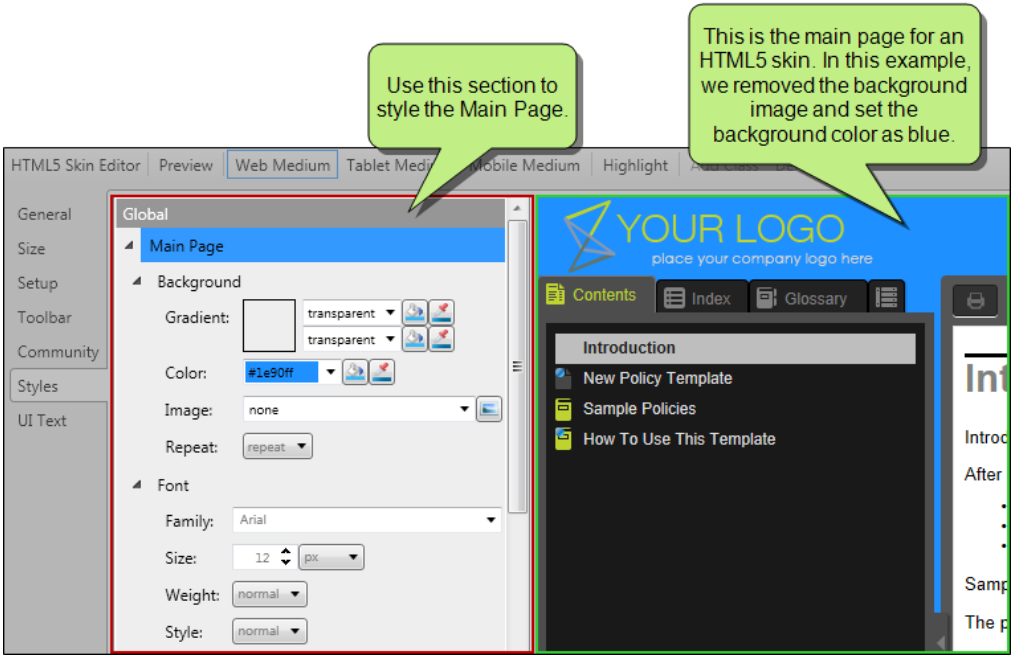
These are styles for elements that are displayed if you integrate your output with MadCap Feedback. See "Feedback in HTML5 Skins" on page 619.



Note: If you want to change labels for some of these styles, or if you want to display the output user interface in a particular language, you can use the UI Text tab in the Skin Editor.

Main Page in HTML5 Skins

This section contains the Main Page style, which is the container for the header, navigation elements, and body. For example, this style allows you to control the background color for everything, including the thin line between the navigation panel and the body.



HOW TO SPECIFY STYLE SETTINGS FOR THE MAIN PAGE IN HTML5

1. Open an HTML5 skin.
2. (Optional) If you are using responsive output, make sure you select the appropriate medium—Web, Tablet, or Mobile—in the local toolbar before making changes to styles. If the skin has not been enabled for responsive output, you can make changes only for the Web medium. For more information about these mediums and responsive output, see the online Help.
3. Select the **Styles** tab.
4. On the left side of the editor, in the **Global** section, expand the **Main Page** style.
5. Expand any of the nodes and complete the necessary fields.

   BACKGROUND

   You can change any of the following to affect the background:

   - **Gradient** This lets you change the background color using a progression effect. Select the beginning gradient color in the first field, and then select a second gradient color in the second field. You can use any of the following to enter or select a color.

transparent	You can type a hexadecimal number (e.g., #000000) directly in this field. Alternatively, you can click the down arrow and choose a color or make the background transparent.
	This opens the Color Picker dialog, which lets you choose a color in many ways.
	This temporarily adds a small bar above the cursor. As you move the cursor over any area of your computer screen, the color changes in the bar to reflect the color that is directly behind the tip of the cursor. When you click, that color is automatically loaded into the Color Picker dialog.

   - **Color** This lets you select a single color.
   - **Image** This lets you select an image for the background. Click and use the dialog to select an image file.
   - **Repeat** Use this field to tell Flare whether the image should repeat or not.

   Note: The Image field has the highest precedence, which means that if you enter settings in all of the Background fields, the image will win. Gradient has the next highest precedence. If you want to use the Color field, you need to make sure the Gradient fields are set to transparent and that there is no image selected.

FONT

You can change any of the following to affect the font:

- **Color** This lets you select a color for the font. You can use any of the following:

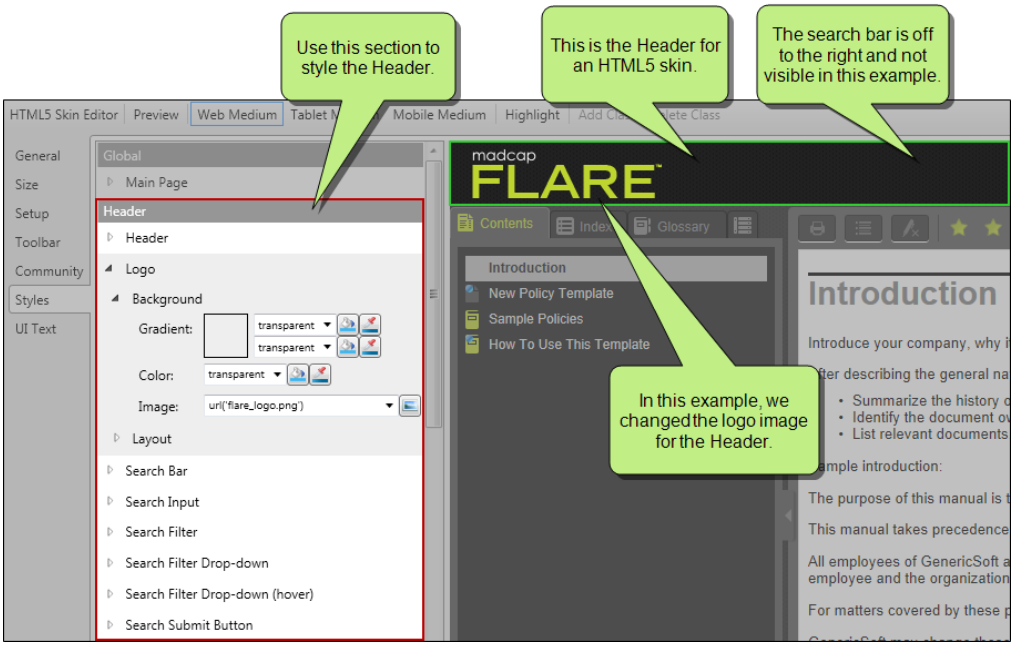
#000000	You can type a hexadecimal number (e.g., #000000) directly in this field. Alternatively, you can click the down arrow and choose a color.
	This opens the Color Picker dialog, which lets you choose a color in many ways.
	This temporarily adds a small bar above the cursor. As you move the cursor over any area of your computer screen, the color changes in the bar to reflect the color that is directly behind the tip of the cursor. When you click, that color is automatically loaded into the Color Picker dialog.

- **Family** You can select or type a specific font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, Verdana).
- **Size** You can change the size of the font. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).
- **Weight** You can click in this field and make the font normal or bold.
- **Style** You can change click in this field and make the font normal or italic.

6. Click to save your work.

Headers in HTML5 Skins

This is the area at the top of the screen, which displays a logo and the search bar.



HOW TO SPECIFY STYLE SETTINGS FOR HEADERS IN HTML5

1. Open an HTML5 skin.
2. (Optional) If you are using responsive output, make sure you select the appropriate medium—Web, Tablet, or Mobile—in the local toolbar before making changes to styles. If the skin has not been enabled for responsive output, you can make changes only for the Web medium. For more information about these mediums and responsive output, see the online Help.
3. Select the **Styles** tab.
4. On the left side of the editor, in the **Header** section, expand any of the following styles:

Style	Description
Header	This controls the entire header area.
Logo	This controls the logo in the header.
Search Bar	This controls the search bar in the header.
Search Input	This controls the text used when users perform searches.
Search Filter	This controls the look of the search filter area, if you have included one.
Search Filter Drop-down	This controls the drop-down portion of the search filter.
Search Filter Drop-down (hover)	This lets you change how the search filter drop-down looks when users hover over it.
Search Submit Button	This controls the look of the button used to initiate searches.

5. Expand any of the nodes and complete the necessary fields. The properties and fields that you see are different for each node. Following is a general list in alphabetical order:

BACKGROUND

You can change any of the following to affect the background:

- **Gradient** This lets you change the background color using a progression effect. Select the beginning gradient color in the first field, and then select a second gradient color in the second field. You can use any of the following to enter or select a color.

transparent	You can type a hexadecimal number (e.g., #000000) directly in this field. Alternatively, you can click the down arrow and choose a color or make the background transparent.
	This opens the Color Picker dialog, which lets you choose a color in many ways.
	This temporarily adds a small bar above the cursor. As you move the cursor over any area of your computer screen, the color changes in the bar to reflect the color that is directly behind the tip of the cursor. When you click, that color is automatically loaded into the Color Picker dialog.

- **Color** This lets you select a single color.
- **Image** This lets you select an image for the background. Click and use the dialog to select an image file.
- **Repeat** Use this field to tell Flare whether the image should repeat or not.

Note: The Image field has the highest precedence, which means that if you enter settings in all of the Background fields, the image will win. Gradient has the next highest precedence. If you want to use the Color field, you need to make sure the Gradient fields are set to transparent and that there is no image selected.

BORDER

You can change any of the following to affect the border on the element:

- **Border Edge Fields (Top, Right, Bottom, Left)** You can add a border line around any of the edges of the element. You can use any of the following. The first three fields are used to control the type and size of the border line. The last three fields are alternative ways to choose a color for the border.

solid	You can select a type of line for the border (e.g., solid, dashed, dotted).
1	Type a number in the field or use the arrows to increase or decrease it.
px	Click in this field and select a unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).
#000000	You can type a hexadecimal number (e.g., #000000) directly in this field. Alternatively, you can click the down arrow and choose a color.
	This opens the Color Picker dialog, which lets you choose a color in many ways.
	This temporarily adds a small bar above the cursor. As you move the cursor over any area of your computer screen, the color changes in the bar to reflect the color that is directly behind the tip of the cursor. When you click, that color is automatically loaded into the Color Picker dialog.

- **Border Radius Fields (Top Left, Top Right, Bottom Right, Bottom Left)** If you want the element to have rounded corners, you can enter values in any of these fields. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters). The higher the number, the more of a curve the corner will have.

BOX SHADOW

You can change any of the following to affect the box shadow on the element:

- **Horizontal Shadow Length** This is the position of the horizontal shadow. Negative values are allowed. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).
- **Vertical Shadow Length** This is the position of the vertical shadow. Negative values are allowed. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).
- **Shadow Blur Length** This is the blur distance. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).
- **Shadow Color** This lets you select a color for the shadow. You can use any of the following:

transparent	You can type a hexadecimal number (e.g., #000000) directly in this field. Alternatively, you can click the down arrow and choose a color or make the background transparent.
	This opens the Color Picker dialog, which lets you choose a color in many ways.
	This temporarily adds a small bar above the cursor. As you move the cursor over any area of your computer screen, the color changes in the bar to reflect the color that is directly behind the tip of the cursor. When you click, that color is automatically loaded into the Color Picker dialog.

- **Shadow Insert** This changes the shadow from an outer shadow (outset) to an inner shadow. Click in the field and select an option. If you select **false** the shadow will be outset. If you select **true** the shadow will be inset.

FONT

You can change any of the following to affect the font:

- **Color** This lets you select a color for the font. You can use any of the following:

#000000	You can type a hexadecimal number (e.g., #000000) directly in this field. Alternatively, you can click the down arrow and choose a color.
	This opens the Color Picker dialog, which lets you choose a color in many ways.
	This temporarily adds a small bar above the cursor. As you move the cursor over any area of your computer screen, the color changes in the bar to reflect the color that is directly behind the tip of the cursor. When you click, that color is automatically loaded into the Color Picker dialog.

- **Family** You can select or type a specific font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, Verdana).
- **Size** You can change the size of the font. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).
- **Weight** You can click in this field and make the font normal or bold.
- **Style** You can change click in this field and make the font normal or italic.

HEIGHT

You enter a height for the element. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).

LAYOUT

You can click in the **Display** field and choose whether to show the element (block) or not (none).

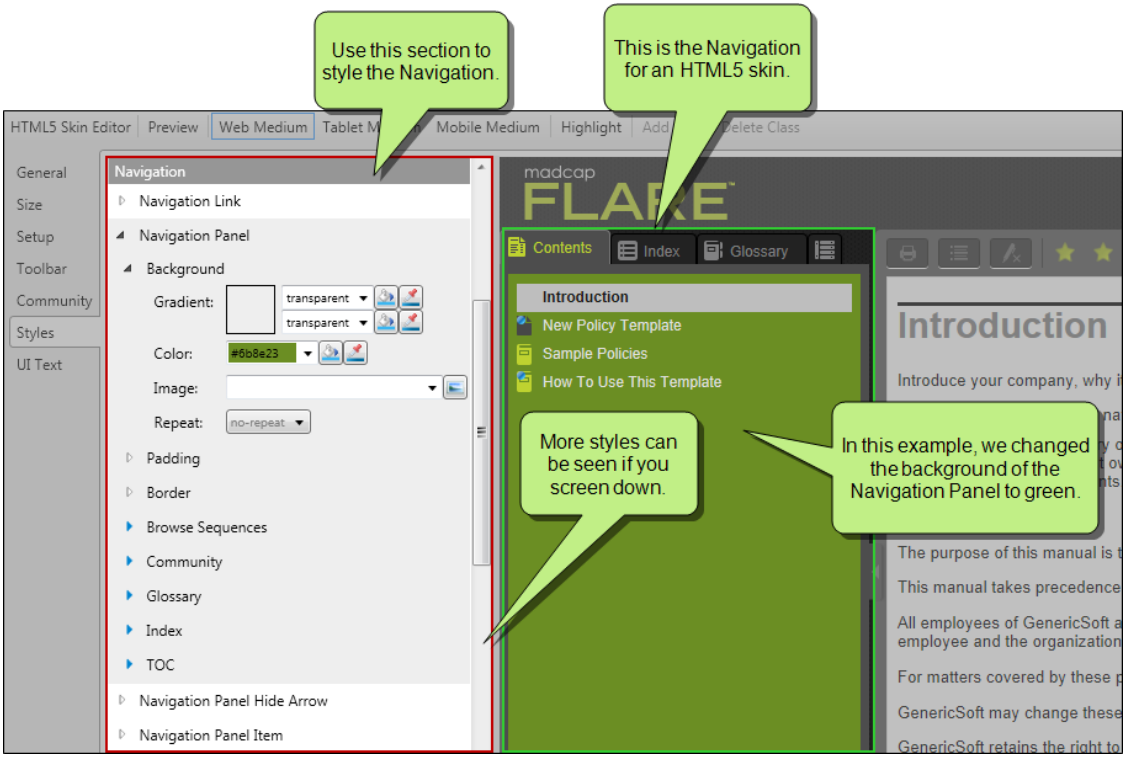
6. Click to save your work.

Note: For HTML5 logos, the following image types are supported: PNG, BMP, JPEG, TIF, TIFF, and GIF.

Note: If you want to style items for search results, you can use the Search section in the Skin Editor. See "Search Results in HTML5 Skins" on page 612.

Navigation in HTML5 Skins

This section is used to control the look of navigation elements in the skin, which allow users to open different parts of your output.



HOW TO SPECIFY STYLE SETTINGS FOR NAVIGATION ELEMENTS IN HTML5

1. Open an HTML5 skin.
2. (Optional) If you are using responsive output, make sure you select the appropriate medium—Web, Tablet, or Mobile—in the local toolbar before making changes to styles. If the skin has not been enabled for responsive output, you can make changes only for the Web medium. For more information about these mediums and responsive output, see the online Help.
3. Select the **Styles** tab.
4. On the left side of the editor, in the **Navigation** section, expand any of the following styles:

Style	Description
Home Button	This controls the button that users see in the slide out in Tablet and Mobile views.
Navigation Link	These are links that users may see at the top or bottom of topics if they open those topics as standalone files. In order to add these links to the output, you must enable them on the Setup tab of the Skin Editor. This style has properties both at the root and on children nodes. For more information about root and children properties, see "Style Sections and Root/Child Properties" on page 564.
Navigation Slide Out Button	This controls the button that people use in Tablet and Mobile views to access the slide out navigation.

Style	Description
Navigation Panel	This controls the panel area that contains the following elements: Browse Sequence, Community, Glossary, Index, Search Filters, and TOC. This style has properties both at the root and on children nodes. For more information about root and children properties, see "Style Sections and Root/Child Properties" on page 564. **Note:** The TOC node under the Navigation Panel style lets you change icons in *general* for all books/topics in a TOC. If instead you want to change the book or topic icons only for *specific* entries in your TOC, use the TOC Entry style instead, creating classes for it. **Note:** The Community element is available only in the Web medium. **Note:** The Search Filters element is available only in the Tablet and Mobile mediums.
Navigation Panel Hide Arrow	This controls the look of the arrow button that is shown on the divider between the navigation elements and content in Web view. Users can click this button to show or hide the navigation elements.
Navigation Panel Item	This controls the look of text in navigation panel elements.
Navigation Panel Item (hover)	This controls the look of text in navigation panel elements when a user hovers over it.
Navigation Panel Item (selected)	This controls the look of text in navigation panel elements when it is selected.

Style	Description
Navigation Panel Search Bar	This controls the look of the search field that users see in some navigation elements (e.g., Index, Glossary).
Navigation Tab	This controls the look of the tab area at the top of each navigation element. For example, you might want to change the height or width, or you might want to change the tab layout to specify whether the tab should show an image then text, text then an image, text only, or an image only. If you want to change other characteristics, such as the color or the icon images themselves, you need to use either the Navigation Tab (active) or Navigation Tab (inactive) style. This style has properties both at the root and on children nodes. For more information about root and children properties, see "Style Sections and Root/Child Properties" on page 564.
Navigation Tab (active)	This controls the look of the tab area at the top of each navigation element when the tab is selected. This style has properties both at the root and on children nodes. For more information about root and children properties, see "Style Sections and Root/Child Properties" on page 564.
Navigation Tab (inactive)	This controls the look of the tab area at the top of each navigation element when the tab is not selected. This style has properties both at the root and on children nodes. For more information about root and children properties, see "Style Sections and Root/Child Properties" on page 564.

Style	Description
Toc Entry	These are the images that users see for *specific* books or topics when they open your table of contents (TOC) in the output. Keep these important points in mind when you use the TOC Entry style. » **Specifying icons at the root of the TOC Entry style itself will do nothing.** Instead, you must create *classes* of the TOC Entry style and select the icons for those classes. Steps for this are given below. » **The purpose of this style is to choose book or topic icons only for specific entries in your TOC, not for all of them.** For example, you might want most of your TOC books to be blue, but there is one that you want to be red. To make that red book, you would create a class on the TOC Entry style and select a red book image for it. If instead you want to change the icons in *general* for all books/topics in a TOC, expand the Navigation Panel style, and set the icons on the TOC node. ***HOW TO CREATE A STYLE CLASS FOR TOC ENTRIES IN HTML5*** 1. Select the **Toc Entry** style. 2. In the local toolbar, click **Add Class**. 3. Give the class a name (e.g., RedBook), and click **OK**. A new node with that name is added under the Toc Entry style. 4. Use the fields under the new node to choose images. 5. Click to save your work.
Index Highlight	This is the highlighting that is seen when a user begins typing in the Index search field.
Glossary Highlight	This is the highlighting that is seen when a user begins typing in the Glossary search field.
Glossary Item Definition	This controls the look of definition text in the Glossary pane. If you want to change the look of the glossary terms, you need to use the Navigation Panel Item style.

5. Expand any of the nodes and complete the necessary fields. The properties and fields that you see are different for each node. Following is a general list in alphabetical order:

BACKGROUND

You can change any of the following to affect the background:

- **Gradient** This lets you change the background color using a progression effect. Select the beginning gradient color in the first field, and then select a second gradient color in the second field. You can use any of the following to enter or select a color.

transparent	You can type a hexadecimal number (e.g., #000000) directly in this field. Alternatively, you can click the down arrow and choose a color or make the background transparent.
	This opens the Color Picker dialog, which lets you choose a color in many ways.
	This temporarily adds a small bar above the cursor. As you move the cursor over any area of your computer screen, the color changes in the bar to reflect the color that is directly behind the tip of the cursor. When you click, that color is automatically loaded into the Color Picker dialog.

- **Color** This lets you select a single color.
- **Image** This lets you select an image for the background. Click and use the dialog to select an image file.
- **Repeat** Use this field to tell Flare whether the image should repeat or not.

Note: The Image field has the highest precedence, which means that if you enter settings in all of the Background fields, the image will win. Gradient has the next highest precedence. If you want to use the Color field, you need to make sure the Gradient fields are set to transparent and that there is no image selected.

BLOCK

This is the container (or "block") holding content in an element. You can change any of the following to affect the block:

- **Line Height** This is how tall the container is that holds the content. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).
- **Text Align** This changes the alignment of the content. Click in the field and select an option (center, justify, left, right).

BORDER

You can change any of the following to affect the border on the element:

- **Border Edge Fields (Top, Right, Bottom, Left)** You can add a border line around any of the edges of the element. You can use any of the following. The first three fields are used to control the type and size of the border line. The last three fields are alternative ways to choose a color for the border.

solid	You can select a type of line for the border (e.g., solid, dashed, dotted).
1	Type a number in the field or use the arrows to increase or decrease it.
px	Click in this field and select a unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).
#000000	You can type a hexadecimal number (e.g., #000000) directly in this field. Alternatively, you can click the down arrow and choose a color.
	This opens the Color Picker dialog, which lets you choose a color in many ways.
	This temporarily adds a small bar above the cursor. As you move the cursor over any area of your computer screen, the color changes in the bar to reflect the color that is directly behind the tip of the cursor. When you click, that color is automatically loaded into the Color Picker dialog.

- **Border Radius Fields (Top Left, Top Right, Bottom Right, Bottom Left)** If you want the element to have rounded corners, you can enter values in any of these fields. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters). The higher the number, the more of a curve the corner will have.

BOTTOM

You can change any of the following to affect the font for the navigation link when it appears at the bottom of a topic:

- **Color** This lets you select a color for the font. You can use any of the following:

#000000	You can type a hexadecimal number (e.g., #000000) directly in this field. Alternatively, you can click the down arrow and choose a color.
	This opens the Color Picker dialog, which lets you choose a color in many ways.
	This temporarily adds a small bar above the cursor. As you move the cursor over any area of your computer screen, the color changes in the bar to reflect the color that is directly behind the tip of the cursor. When you click, that color is automatically loaded into the Color Picker dialog.

- **Family** You can select or type a specific font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, Verdana).
- **Size** You can change the size of the font. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).
- **Weight** You can click in this field and make the font normal or bold.
- **Style** You can change click in this field and make the font normal or italic.

FONT

You can change any of the following to affect the font:

- **Color** This lets you select a color for the font. You can use any of the following:

#000000	You can type a hexadecimal number (e.g., #000000) directly in this field. Alternatively, you can click the down arrow and choose a color.
	This opens the Color Picker dialog, which lets you choose a color in many ways.
	This temporarily adds a small bar above the cursor. As you move the cursor over any area of your computer screen, the color changes in the bar to reflect the color that is directly behind the tip of the cursor. When you click, that color is automatically loaded into the Color Picker dialog.

- **Family** You can select or type a specific font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, Verdana).

- **Size** You can change the size of the font. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).
- **Weight** You can click in this field and make the font normal or bold.
- **Style** You can change click in this field and make the font normal or italic.

GENERAL

You can change the color for the element.

#000000	You can type a hexadecimal number (e.g., #000000) directly in this field. Alternatively, you can click the down arrow and choose a color.
	This opens the Color Picker dialog, which lets you choose a color in many ways.
	This temporarily adds a small bar above the cursor. As you move the cursor over any area of your computer screen, the color changes in the bar to reflect the color that is directly behind the tip of the cursor. When you click, that color is automatically loaded into the Color Picker dialog.

GLOSSARY

You can expand the **Layout** node, click in the **Display** field, and choose whether to show the search bar in the Glossary pane. If you want to show it, select **block**. If you do not want to show it, select **none**.

HEIGHT

You enter a height for the element. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).

ICON

You can click and select a different image to be used for the element.

ICONS

You can click and select a different image for any of the following TOC entry icons:

- **Closed Book Icon** You can select a different icon image for the book items in the TOC when they are closed.
- **Open Book Icon** You can select a different icon image for the book items in the TOC when they are open (or selected).
- **Topic Icon** You can select a different icon image for the topic items in the TOC.
- **Mark As New Icon** You can select a different icon image for the topic items in the TOC when they are marked as new.

Important: If you are setting these under the Toc Entry style (instead of the Navigation Panel style), you must first create a class of the Toc Entry style and then choose the images for that class. *Selecting images in the root fields under Toc Entry will do nothing.* To create a class, select **Toc Entry** and in the local toolbar click **Add Class**. You will also need to open your TOC, right-click on an entry, select **Properties**, and on the **General** tab choose the **Style Class** that you created.

INDEX

You can expand the **Layout** node, click in the **Display** field, and choose whether to show the search bar in the Index pane. If you want to show it, select **block**. If you do not want to show it, select **none**.

LAYOUT

You can click in the **Display** field and choose whether to show the element (block) or not (none).

PADDING

You can change the padding for any of the sides on the element (Left, Right, Top, Bottom). In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).

POSITION

You can change the position of the element, meaning its width and height:

- **Width** You enter a width for the element. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).
- **Height** You enter a height for the element. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).

TAB LAYOUT

You can change what appears in the navigation tabs and their order. Click the **Layout** field and select one of the layout options (TextOnly, ImageOnly, TextThenImage, ImageThenText).

Note: One of the benefits of having image icons on the navigation tabs is that it lets users drag the pane to reduce its width more than they could otherwise. The text disappears, and tooltips on the image icons let you know what a particular tab contains.

TEXT SHADOW

You can change any of the following to affect the text shadow on the element:

- **Shadow Visibility** You can click in this field and choose to make the shadow either hidden or visible.
- **Horizontal Shadow Length** This is the position of the horizontal shadow. Negative values are allowed. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).
- **Vertical Shadow Length** This is the position of the vertical shadow. Negative values are allowed. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).
- **Shadow Blur Length** This is the blur distance. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).
- **Shadow Color** This lets you select a color for the shadow. You can use any of the following:

transparent	You can type a hexadecimal number (e.g., #000000) directly in this field. Alternatively, you can click the down arrow and choose a color or make the background transparent.
	This opens the Color Picker dialog, which lets you choose a color in many ways.
	This temporarily adds a small bar above the cursor. As you move the cursor over any area of your computer screen, the color changes in the bar to reflect the color that is directly behind the tip of the cursor. When you click, that color is automatically loaded into the Color Picker dialog.

TOP

You can change any of the following to affect the font for the navigation link when it appears at the top of a topic:

- **Color** This lets you select a color for the font. You can use any of the following:

#000000	You can type a hexadecimal number (e.g., #000000) directly in this field. Alternatively, you can click the down arrow and choose a color.
	This opens the Color Picker dialog, which lets you choose a color in many ways.
	This temporarily adds a small bar above the cursor. As you move the cursor over any area of your computer screen, the color changes in the bar to reflect the color that is directly behind the tip of the cursor. When you click, that color is automatically loaded into the Color Picker dialog.

- **Family** You can select or type a specific font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, Verdana).
- **Size** You can change the size of the font. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).
- **Weight** You can click in this field and make the font normal or bold.
- **Style** You can change click in this field and make the font normal or italic.

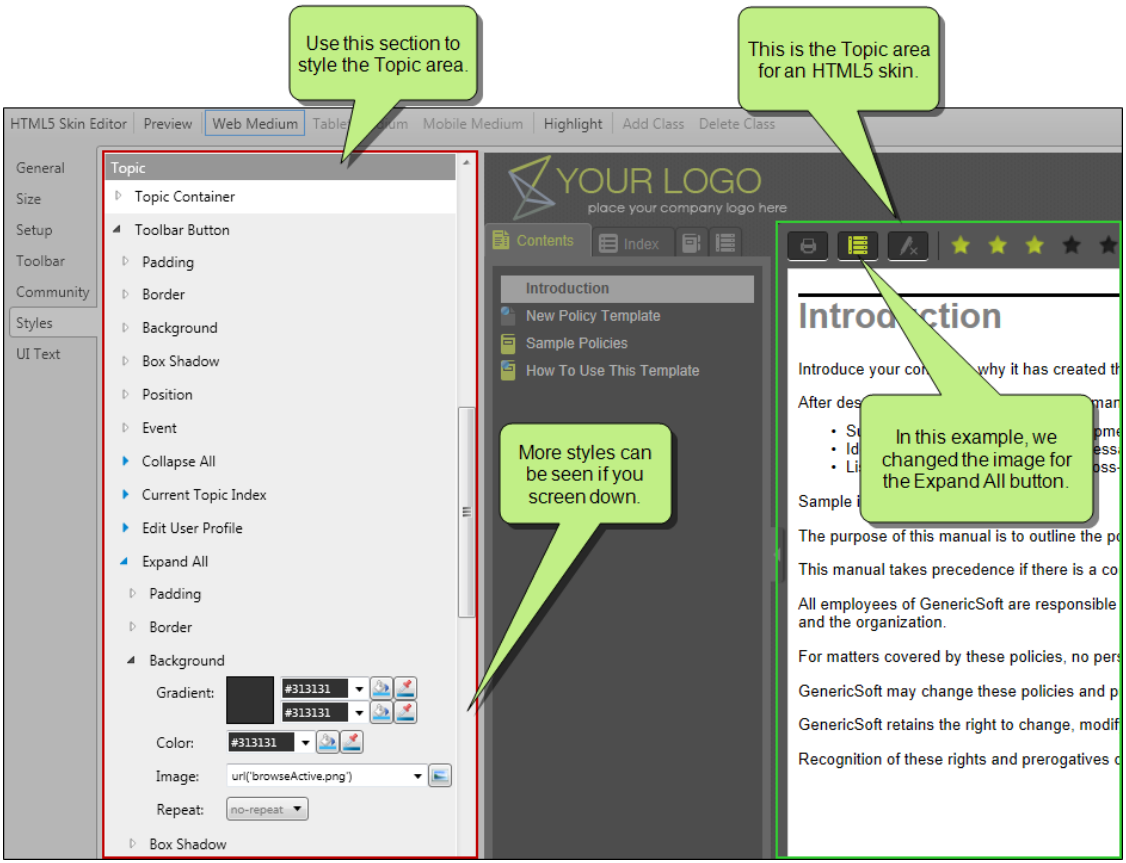
6. Click to save your work.

Note: In order to see navigation items in the output, you must make sure they are added to the skin. For more information see the online Help.

Note: You can also use the UI Text tab in the Skin Editor to change labels for these styles, including default values.

Topics in HTML5 Skins

This section is used to control the look of the topic area of the output. This includes the container holding the topic content. It also includes the toolbar just above the topic content.



HOW TO SPECIFY STYLE SETTINGS FOR THE TOPIC AREA IN HTML5

1. Open an HTML5 skin.
2. (Optional) If you are using responsive output, make sure you select the appropriate medium—Web, Tablet, or Mobile—in the local toolbar before making changes to styles. If the skin has not been enabled for responsive output, you can make changes only for the Web medium. For more information about these mediums and responsive output, see the online Help.
3. Select the **Styles** tab.
4. On the left side of the editor, in the **Topic** section, expand any of the following styles:

Style	Description
Topic Container	This is the container holding topics in the output.

Style	Description
Toolbar Button	These are the buttons and other elements that are part of toolbars that you can add to output. The Toolbar Button style has properties both at the root and on children nodes. If you want the setting(s) to be applied to all of the items (except the separator), select the Toolbar Button style itself. Otherwise, expand any of the child styles to apply settings to them individually. For more information about root and children properties, see "Style Sections and Root/Child Properties" on page 564. Following are the child styles that control individual elements in the toolbar: » **Collapse All** Lets users collapse all elements such as togglers, drop-down effects, and expanding text effects in a topic (if they are expanded). This toggles with the Expand All button. » **Current Topic Index** Lets users see the display for the current topic in the sequence. This is typically used in conjunction with the "Next Topic" and "Previous Topic" buttons when the topic in question exists in a browse sequence. Flare finds the current topic in a browse sequence and display its position in relation to the rest of the topics in that sequence. (The root node is used to determine the count; in other words, if there are "child" topics in the sequence structure under the current topic, they will be included in the count.) » **Edit User Profile** Lets users edit their Pulse or Feedback registration profile settings. This toggles with the Login button. The Edit User Profile button is shown if the user is already logged in. » **Expand All** Lets users expand all elements such as togglers, drop-down effects, and expanding text effects in a topic (if they are not yet expanded). This toggles with the Collapse All button. » **Login** Lets users log in to Pulse or Feedback, if you have integrated it with the output. This toggles with the Edit User Profile button. The Login button is shown if the user is not yet logged in. » **Next Topic** Lets users open the next topic in the sequence. First, Flare attempts to find the current topic in a browse sequence and navigate to the next topic from there. If you do not have a browse sequence, Flare looks at the position of the current topic in your table of contents (TOC) and opens the next topic after it. » **Previous Topic** Lets users open the previous topic in the sequence. First, Flare attempts to find the current topic in a browse sequence and navigate to the previous topic from there. If you do not have a browse sequence, Flare looks at the position of the current topic in your table of contents (TOC) and opens the previous topic before it.

Style	Description
	» **Print** Lets users open the Print dialog so that they can send the open topic to the printer. » **Remove Highlight** After a user performs a quick search in a topic, the search text found in the topic is highlighted. This button lets users turn the highlights off. » **Topic Ratings (full)** Displays ratings for a topic (if you have incorporated your output with MadCap Pulse or Feedback). For example, if a topic has been rated three out of five stars, "Topic Ratings (full)" lets you control how the three stars look. » **Topic Ratings (empty)** This shows an empty rating (by default a non-colored star). For example, if a topic has been rated three out of five stars, "Topic Ratings (empty)" lets you control how the two stars look.
Toolbar Button Separator	This controls any separators that you may have added to the toolbar. A separator is the divider between the toolbar buttons and the navigation pane.

Note: In order to see these items in the output, you must include a WebHelp toolbar or topic toolbar in your project. For more information see the online Help.

Note: You can add a custom toolbar button class by clicking **Toolbar Button** and in the local toolbar selecting **Add Class**.

5. Expand any of the nodes and complete the necessary fields. The properties and fields that you see are different for each node. Following is a general list in alphabetical order:

BACKGROUND

You can change any of the following to affect the background:

- **Gradient** This lets you change the background color using a progression effect. Select the beginning gradient color in the first field, and then select a second gradient color in the second field. You can use any of the following to enter or select a color.

transparent	You can type a hexadecimal number (e.g., #000000) directly in this field. Alternatively, you can click the down arrow and choose a color or make the background transparent.
	This opens the Color Picker dialog, which lets you choose a color in many ways.
	This temporarily adds a small bar above the cursor. As you move the cursor over any area of your computer screen, the color changes in the bar to reflect the color that is directly behind the tip of the cursor. When you click, that color is automatically loaded into the Color Picker dialog.

- **Color** This lets you select a single color.
- **Image** This lets you select an image for the background. Click and use the dialog to select an image file.
- **Repeat** Use this field to tell Flare whether the image should repeat or not.

Note: The Image field has the highest precedence, which means that if you enter settings in all of the Background fields, the image will win. Gradient has the next highest precedence. If you want to use the Color field, you need to make sure the Gradient fields are set to transparent and that there is no image selected.

BORDER

You can change any of the following to affect the border on the element:

- **Border Edge Fields (Top, Right, Bottom, Left)** You can add a border line around any of the edges of the element. You can use any of the following. The first three fields are used to control the type and size of the border line. The last three fields are alternative ways to choose a color for the border.

solid	You can select a type of line for the border (e.g., solid, dashed, dotted).
1	Type a number in the field or use the arrows to increase or decrease it.
px	Click in this field and select a unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).
#000000	You can type a hexadecimal number (e.g., #000000) directly in this field. Alternatively, you can click the down arrow and choose a color.
	This opens the Color Picker dialog, which lets you choose a color in many ways.
	This temporarily adds a small bar above the cursor. As you move the cursor over any area of your computer screen, the color changes in the bar to reflect the color that is directly behind the tip of the cursor. When you click, that color is automatically loaded into the Color Picker dialog.

- **Border Radius Fields (Top Left, Top Right, Bottom Right, Bottom Left)** If you want the element to have rounded corners, you can enter values in any of these fields. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters). The higher the number, the more of a curve the corner will have.

BOX SHADOW

You can change any of the following to affect the box shadow on the element:

- **Horizontal Shadow Length** This is the position of the horizontal shadow. Negative values are allowed. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).
- **Vertical Shadow Length** This is the position of the vertical shadow. Negative values are allowed. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).
- **Shadow Blur Length** This is the blur distance. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).
- **Shadow Color** This lets you select a color for the shadow. You can use any of the following:

transparent	You can type a hexadecimal number (e.g., #000000) directly in this field. Alternatively, you can click the down arrow and choose a color or make the background transparent.
	This opens the Color Picker dialog, which lets you choose a color in many ways.
	This temporarily adds a small bar above the cursor. As you move the cursor over any area of your computer screen, the color changes in the bar to reflect the color that is directly behind the tip of the cursor. When you click, that color is automatically loaded into the Color Picker dialog.

- **Shadow Insert** This changes the shadow from an outer shadow (outset) to an inner shadow. Click in the field and select an option. If you select **false** the shadow will be outset. If you select **true** the shadow will be inset.

EVENT

You can provide a command for the item when it is clicked by the user.

E X A M P L E

Let's say you want to provide a command for an item (e.g., so that clicking the button opens a website). The following command opens the MadCap Software website when a user clicks the button:

```
window.open("http://www.madcapsoftware.com");
```

GENERAL

You can change the color for the element.

#000000	You can type a hexadecimal number (e.g., #000000) directly in this field. Alternatively, you can click the down arrow and choose a color.
	This opens the Color Picker dialog, which lets you choose a color in many ways.
	This temporarily adds a small bar above the cursor. As you move the cursor over any area of your computer screen, the color changes in the bar to reflect the color that is directly behind the tip of the cursor. When you click, that color is automatically loaded into the Color Picker dialog.

PADDING

You can change the padding for any of the sides on the element (Left, Right, Top, Bottom). In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).

POSITION

You can change the position of the element, meaning its width and height:

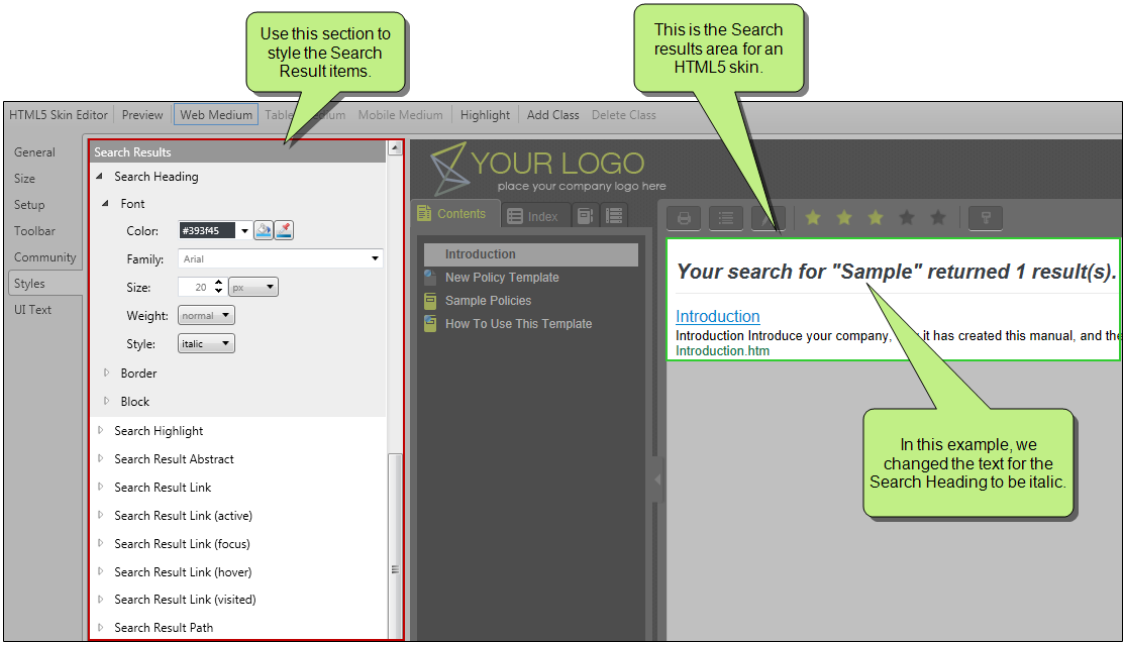
- **Width** You enter a width for the element. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).
- **Height** You enter a height for the element. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).

6. Click to save your work.

Note: You can also use the UI Text tab in the Skin Editor to change labels for some of these styles.

Search Results in HTML5 Skins

You can use an HTML5 skin to change the appearance of the search result items.



HOW TO SPECIFY STYLE SETTINGS FOR SEARCH RESULTS IN HTML5

1. Open an HTML5 skin.
2. (Optional) If you are using responsive output, make sure you select the appropriate medium—Web, Tablet, or Mobile—in the local toolbar before making changes to styles. If the skin has not been enabled for responsive output, you can make changes only for the Web medium. For more information about these mediums and responsive output, see the online Help.
3. Select the **Styles** tab.
4. On the left side of the editor, in the **Search Results** section, expand any of the following styles:

Style	Description
Search Heading	This is the heading at the beginning of the search results, indicating how many search results were found.

Style	Description
Search Highlight	When users perform searches in your online output, the keywords that are found are highlighted in the topics. The background for each term found in a topic is highlighted in a different color. In Flare you can use styles to change not only the color background, but other settings as well (e.g., font style, text decoration). The Search Highlight style has properties both at the root and on children nodes. If you want the setting(s) to be applied to all of the items, complete the fields under the Search Highlight style itself. Otherwise, expand any of the child styles (Search Highlight 01 to 10) to apply settings to them individually. Each search highlight style is numbered to coordinate with the order search terms are entered. For example, the style named "Search Highlight 01" will be used for matches to the first search term entered and "Search Highlight 10" would coordinate with the tenth entered term. You can customize up to 10 highlight colors. For more information about root and children properties, see "Style Sections and Root/Child Properties" on page 564. **E X A M P L E** Let's say that, for "Search Highlight 01" in ths skin, you change the background color to blue. For "Search Highlight 02," you change the background color to orange. And for "Search Highlight 03," you change the background color to yellow. If a user enters "topic information help find" in the search field, the term "topic" will be displayed with a blue background everywhere it occurs in a topic. The term "information" will be displayed with an orange background, and the term "help" will be displayed with a yellow background. The term "find" will be displayed with the default background color specified by Flare (since you did not change it). If another user enters "help find topic information" in the search field, the term "help" will be displayed with a blue background. The term "find" will be displayed with an orange background, and the term "topic" will be displayed with a yellow background. The term "information" will be displayed with the default background color specified by Flare (since you did not change it).
Search Result Abstract	This is the opening paragraph text for a search result, giving you context.

Style	Description
Search Result Link	This is the link at the top of the search result.
Search Result Link (active)	This is the search result link when it is in an active state.
Search Result Link (focus)	This is the search result link when it has focus.
Search Result Link (hover)	This is the search result link when a user hovers over it.
Search Result Link (visited)	This is the search result link after it has been selected.
Search Result Path	This shows the path to the file containing the search result.

5. Expand any of the nodes and complete the necessary fields. The properties and fields that you see are different for each node. Following is a general list in alphabetical order:

BACKGROUND

You can change any of the following to affect the background:

- **Gradient** This lets you change the background color using a progression effect. Select the beginning gradient color in the first field, and then select a second gradient color in the second field. You can use any of the following to enter or select a color.

transparent	You can type a hexadecimal number (e.g., #000000) directly in this field. Alternatively, you can click the down arrow and choose a color or make the background transparent.
	This opens the Color Picker dialog, which lets you choose a color in many ways.
	This temporarily adds a small bar above the cursor. As you move the cursor over any area of your computer screen, the color changes in the bar to reflect the color that is directly behind the tip of the cursor. When you click, that color is automatically loaded into the Color Picker dialog.

- **Color** This lets you select a single color.
- **Image** This lets you select an image for the background. Click and use the dialog to select an image file.
- **Repeat** Use this field to tell Flare whether the image should repeat or not.

Note: The Image field has the highest precedence, which means that if you enter settings in all of the Background fields, the image will win. Gradient has the next highest precedence. If you want to use the Color field, you need to make sure the Gradient fields are set to transparent and that there is no image selected.

BLOCK

This is the container (or "block") holding content in an element. You can change any of the following to affect the block:

- **Line Height** This is how tall the container is that holds the content. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).
- **Text Align** This changes the alignment of the content. Click in the field and select an option (center, justify, left, right).

BORDER

You can change any of the following to affect the border on the element:

- **Border Edge Fields (Top, Right, Bottom, Left)** You can add a border line around any of the edges of the element. You can use any of the following. The first three fields are used to control the type and size of the border line. The last three fields are alternative ways to choose a color for the border.

solid	You can select a type of line for the border (e.g., solid, dashed, dotted).
1	Type a number in the field or use the arrows to increase or decrease it.
px	Click in this field and select a unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).
#000000	You can type a hexadecimal number (e.g., #000000) directly in this field. Alternatively, you can click the down arrow and choose a color.
	This opens the Color Picker dialog, which lets you choose a color in many ways.
	This temporarily adds a small bar above the cursor. As you move the cursor over any area of your computer screen, the color changes in the bar to reflect the color that is directly behind the tip of the cursor. When you click, that color is automatically loaded into the Color Picker dialog.

- **Border Radius Fields (Top Left, Top Right, Bottom Right, Bottom Left)** If you want the element to have rounded corners, you can enter values in any of these fields. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters). The higher the number, the more of a curve the corner will have.

FONT

You can change any of the following to affect the font:

- **Color** This lets you select a color for the font. You can use any of the following:

#000000	You can type a hexadecimal number (e.g., #000000) directly in this field. Alternatively, you can click the down arrow and choose a color.
	This opens the Color Picker dialog, which lets you choose a color in many ways.
	This temporarily adds a small bar above the cursor. As you move the cursor over any area of your computer screen, the color changes in the bar to reflect the color that is directly behind the tip of the cursor. When you click, that color is automatically loaded into the Color Picker dialog.

- **Family** You can select or type a specific font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, Verdana).
- **Size** You can change the size of the font. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).
- **Weight** You can click in this field and make the font normal or bold.
- **Style** You can change click in this field and make the font normal or italic.

TEXT DECORATION

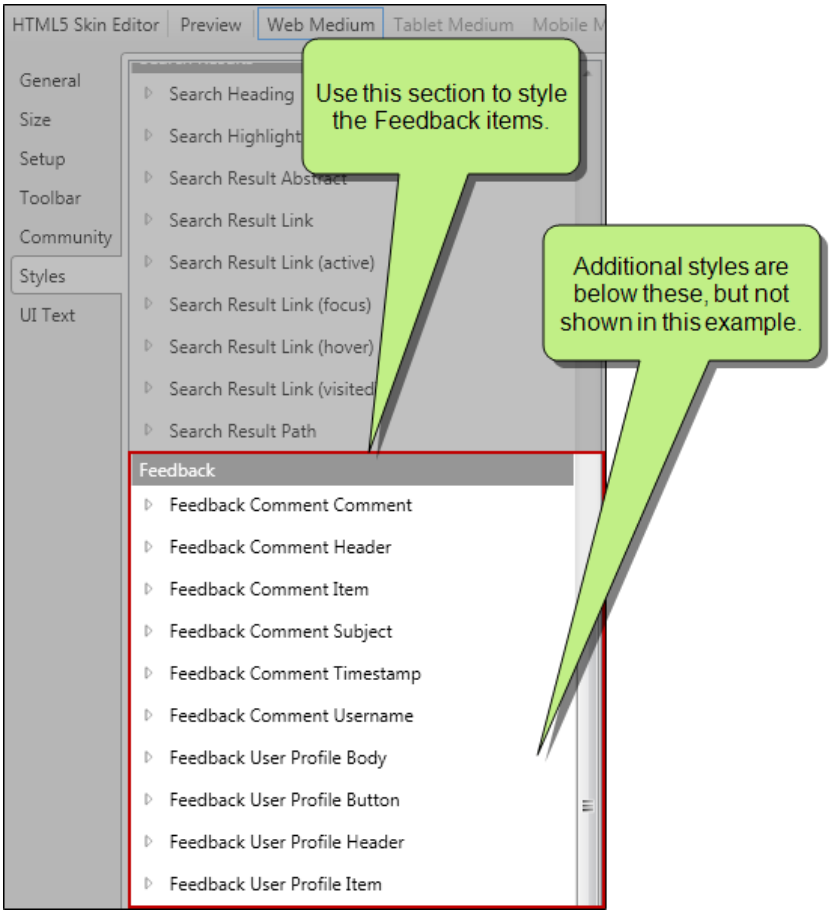
You can click in the **Decoration** field and select a text decoration (e.g., underline, line-through, overline, underline).

6. Click to save your work.

Note: If you want to style the search bar and its elements, you can use the Header section in the Skin Editor. See "Headers in HTML5 Skins" on page 586.

Feedback in HTML5 Skins

If you integrate your output with MadCap Feedback, you can use styles in a skin to control different elements.



HOW TO SPECIFY STYLE SETTINGS FOR FEEDBACK IN HTML5

1. Open an HTML5 skin.
2. If you are using responsive output, make sure you select **Web Medium** in the local toolbar. Feedback integration is not supported in the Tablet and Mobile views, although topic rating stars will display in the topic toolbar. For more information about these mediums and responsive output, see the online Help.
3. Select the **Styles** tab.
4. On the left side of the editor, in the **Feedback** section, expand any of the following styles:

Style	Description
Feedback Comment Comment	This lets you control the look of topic comment text.
Feedback Comment Header	This lets you control the look of the header text that appears above comments in a topic.
Feedback Comment Item	This lets you control the look of the container displaying the contents, including header and the comments.
Feedback Comment Subject	This lets you control the look of the subject text that appears just above a comment.
Feedback Comment Timestamp	This lets you control the look of the date and time that appears in a comment.
Feedback Comment Username	This lets you control the look of the user's name that appears in a comment.
Feedback User Profile Body	This lets you control the look of the interface used for creating a profile.

Style	Description
Feedback User Profile Button	This lets you control the look of the buttons in the interface that is used for creating a profile.
Feedback User Profile Header	This lets you control the look of the header text in the interface that is used for creating a profile.
Feedback User Profile Item	The Feedback User Profile dialog always includes a "Username" and "E-mail Address" field. In addition to those fields, you can add many others by using the Community tab in the Skin Editor. Once you've added the fields, you can edit the Feedback User Profile Item style in the skin to specify which fields are required for users to complete. The Feedback User Profile Item style has properties both at the root and on children nodes. In addition to the many standard fields that can be included (e.g., Address1, City, Department, Occupation), you can add up to 10 custom fields (e.g., Custom1, Custom2, Custom3), which can be used for any kind of field not already available. If you want the setting(s) to be applied to all of the items, complete the **General>Required** field under the Feedback User Profile Item style itself. Otherwise, expand any of the child styles (Address1, Address2, Birthdate, etc.) to apply settings to them individually. For more information about root and children properties, see "Style Sections and Root/Child Properties" on page 564.
Feedback User Profile Item Group	This lets you control the look of the container holding fields in the interface when creating a profile.
Feedback User Profile Item Input	This lets you control the look of the text that users type in fields when creating a profile.
Feedback User Profile Item Label	This lets you control the look of the field label text in the interface that is used for creating a profile.

5. Expand any of the nodes and complete the necessary fields. The properties and fields that you see are different for each node. Following is a general list in alphabetical order:

BACKGROUND

You can change any of the following to affect the background:

- **Gradient** This lets you change the background color using a progression effect. Select the beginning gradient color in the first field, and then select a second gradient color in the second field. You can use any of the following to enter or select a color.

transparent	You can type a hexadecimal number (e.g., #000000) directly in this field. Alternatively, you can click the down arrow and choose a color or make the background transparent.
	This opens the Color Picker dialog, which lets you choose a color in many ways.
	This temporarily adds a small bar above the cursor. As you move the cursor over any area of your computer screen, the color changes in the bar to reflect the color that is directly behind the tip of the cursor. When you click, that color is automatically loaded into the Color Picker dialog.

- **Color** This lets you select a single color.
- **Image** This lets you select an image for the background. Click and use the dialog to select an image file.
- **Repeat** Use this field to tell Flare whether the image should repeat or not.

Note: The Image field has the highest precedence, which means that if you enter settings in all of the Background fields, the image will win. Gradient has the next highest precedence. If you want to use the Color field, you need to make sure the Gradient fields are set to transparent and that there is no image selected.

BORDER

You can change any of the following to affect the border on the element:

- **Border Edge Fields (Top, Right, Bottom, Left)** You can add a border line around any of the edges of the element. You can use any of the following. The first three fields are used to control the type and size of the border line. The last three fields are alternative ways to choose a color for the border.

solid	You can select a type of line for the border (e.g., solid, dashed, dotted).
1	Type a number in the field or use the arrows to increase or decrease it.
px	Click in this field and select a unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).
#000000	You can type a hexadecimal number (e.g., #000000) directly in this field. Alternatively, you can click the down arrow and choose a color.
	This opens the Color Picker dialog, which lets you choose a color in many ways.
	This temporarily adds a small bar above the cursor. As you move the cursor over any area of your computer screen, the color changes in the bar to reflect the color that is directly behind the tip of the cursor. When you click, that color is automatically loaded into the Color Picker dialog.

- **Border Radius Fields (Top Left, Top Right, Bottom Right, Bottom Left)** If you want the element to have rounded corners, you can enter values in any of these fields. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters). The higher the number, the more of a curve the corner will have.

FONT

You can change any of the following to affect the font:

- **Color** This lets you select a color for the font. You can use any of the following:

#000000	You can type a hexadecimal number (e.g., #000000) directly in this field. Alternatively, you can click the down arrow and choose a color.
	This opens the Color Picker dialog, which lets you choose a color in many ways.
	This temporarily adds a small bar above the cursor. As you move the cursor over any area of your computer screen, the color changes in the bar to reflect the color that is directly behind the tip of the cursor. When you click, that color is automatically loaded into the Color Picker dialog.

- **Family** You can select or type a specific font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, Verdana).
- **Size** You can change the size of the font. In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).
- **Weight** You can click in this field and make the font normal or bold.
- **Style** You can change click in this field and make the font normal or italic.

GENERAL

You can click in the **Required** field and choose whether to make the element required (true) or not (false).

PADDING

You can change the padding for any of the sides on the element (Left, Right, Top, Bottom). In the first field type a number or use the arrows. Then click in the second field and select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters).

6. Click to save your work.

Note: In order to see these items in the output, you must enable Feedback with your output. For more information see the online Help.

Note: You can also use the UI Text tab in the Skin Editor to change labels for some of these styles.

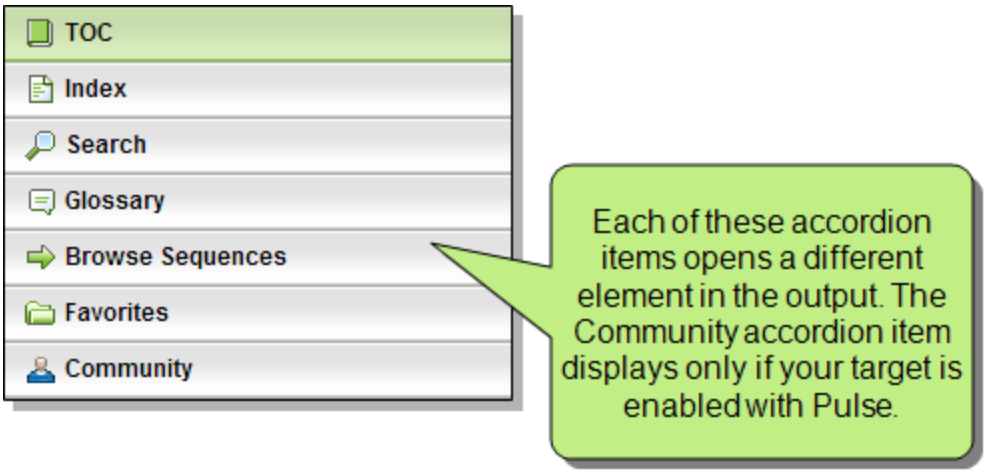
Standard Skin Styles

This feature is supported in DotNet Help, Microsoft HTML Help, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, and WebHelp Plus output.

You might perform the following style tasks if you are working in a Standard skin.

ACCORDION ITEMS

These are the navigation items that display in the output, allowing users to open different elements of your output, such as the table of contents, index, glossary, community (for Pulse), and more. Some of the more common properties you might edit when it comes to accordion items are the icons, text labels, font, and background color. See "Accordion Items in Standard Skins" on page 641.

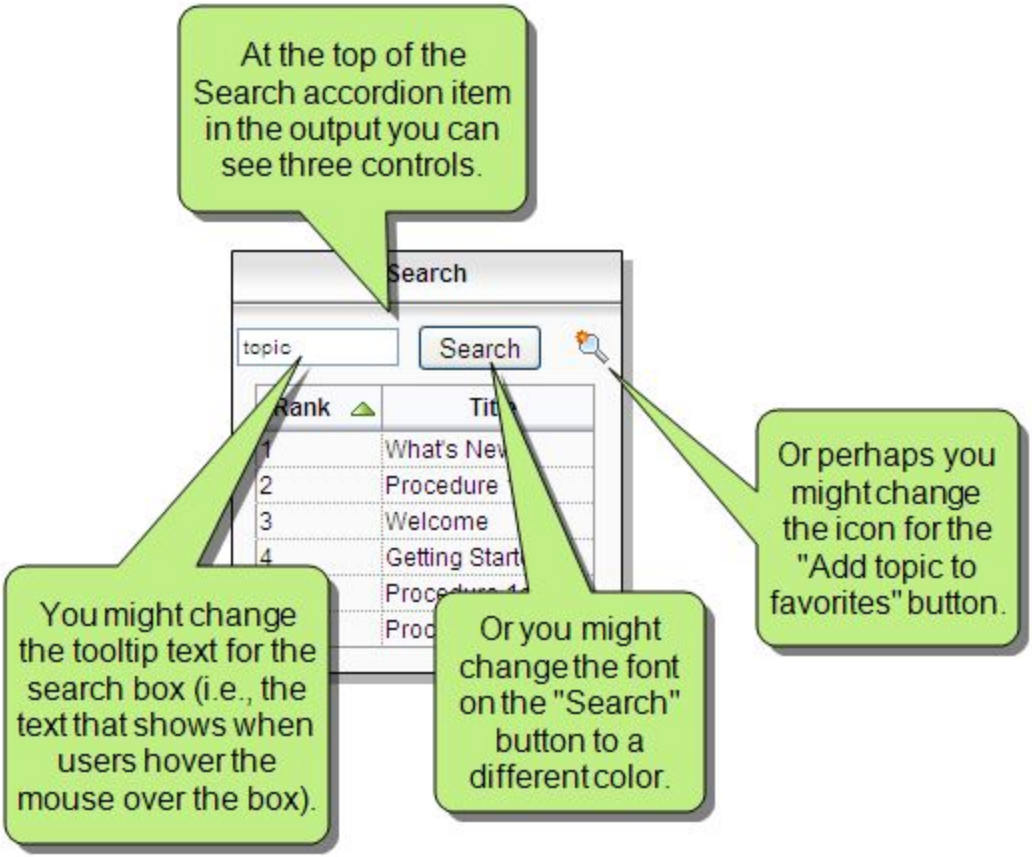


Note: In order to see these items in the output, you must make sure they are added to the skin. For more information see the online Help.

Note: These styles are supported only in WebHelp, WebHelp Plus, and WebHelp AIR outputs.

CONTROLS

These are controls that display in the output, such as various buttons, labels, and the input boxes. Usually these controls are displayed within the various accordion items (e.g., the search box, "Search" button, and "Add topic to favorites" button that are shown at the top of the Search accordion item). Some of the more common properties you might edit when it comes to controls are the icons, text labels, tooltips, font, and background color. See "Controls in Standard Skins" on page 649.

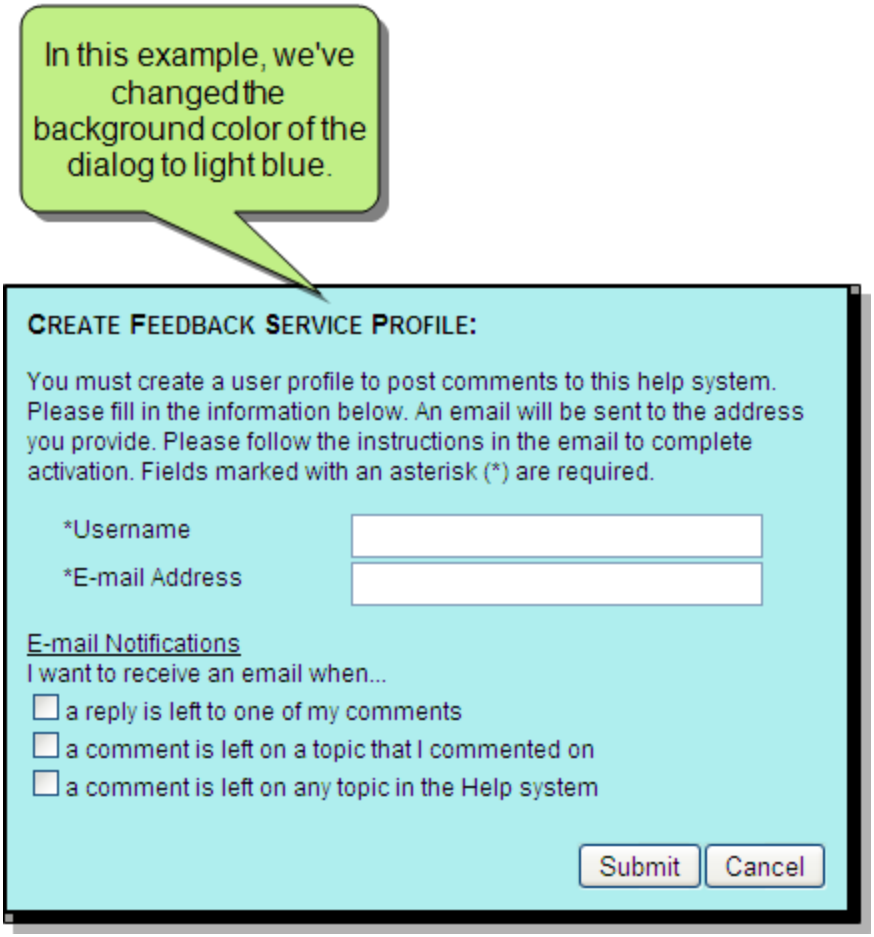


Note: In order to see these items in the output, you must make sure they are added to the skin (e.g., you must add accordion items or enable Feedback). For more information see the online Help.

Note: Styles for many of the controls are supported only in WebHelp, WebHelp Plus, and WebHelp AIR outputs. The controls related to MadCap Feedback are supported only in WebHelp, WebHelp Plus, and Microsoft HTML Help.

DIALOGS

These are the dialogs that users might see if you have enabled MadCap Feedback for your output. The dialogs are used for actions such as registering as a Feedback user, adding comments, and replying to comments. Some of the more common properties you might edit when it comes to Feedback dialogs are field and other text labels, font, messages (e.g., email), and background color. See "Dialogs in Standard Skins" on page 678.

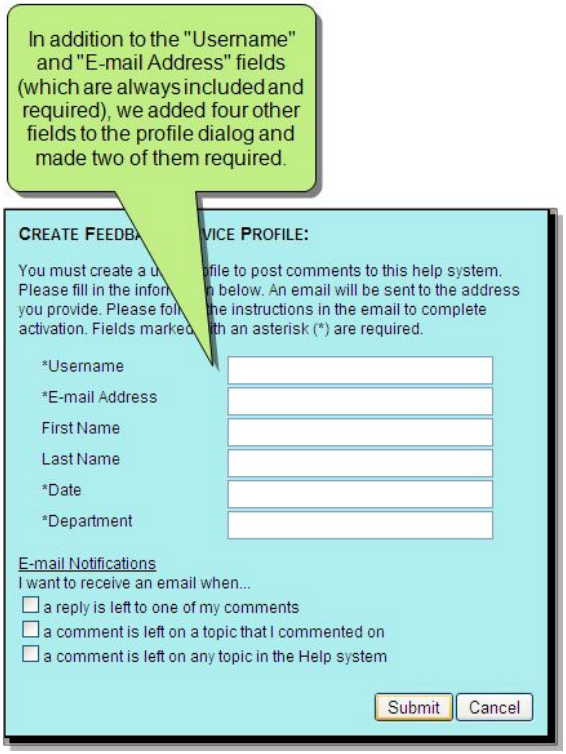


Note: In order to see these items in the output, you must enable Feedback with your output. For more information see the online Help.

Note: These styles are supported only in WebHelp, WebHelp Plus, and Microsoft HTML Help outputs.

FEEDBACK USER PROFILE ITEMS

These are fields that can be added to the Feedback user profile dialog. The dialog always includes a "Username" and "E-mail Address" field. In addition to those fields, you can add many others by using the Community tab in the Skin Editor. Once you've added the fields, you can edit the skin styles for those items. You can change the field labels, specify whether they should be required, and enter a default value for a field. See "Feedback User Profile Items in Standard Skins" on page 692.

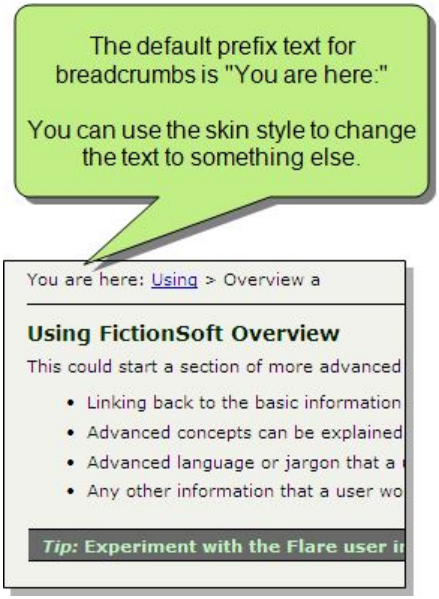


Note: In order to see these items in the output, you must enable Feedback with your output and add the necessary fields to the user profile. For more information see the online Help.

Note: These styles are supported only in WebHelp, WebHelp Plus, and Microsoft HTML Help outputs.

FORMATS

These are navigation elements that you might include in your project (e.g., cross-references, breadcrumbs, keyword links, related topics links, concept links). For most of these elements, you can use the skin style to change the link or prefix text. For cross-references, you can change text as well as formats (i.e., how the link is constructed). See "Formats in Standard Skins" on page 699.

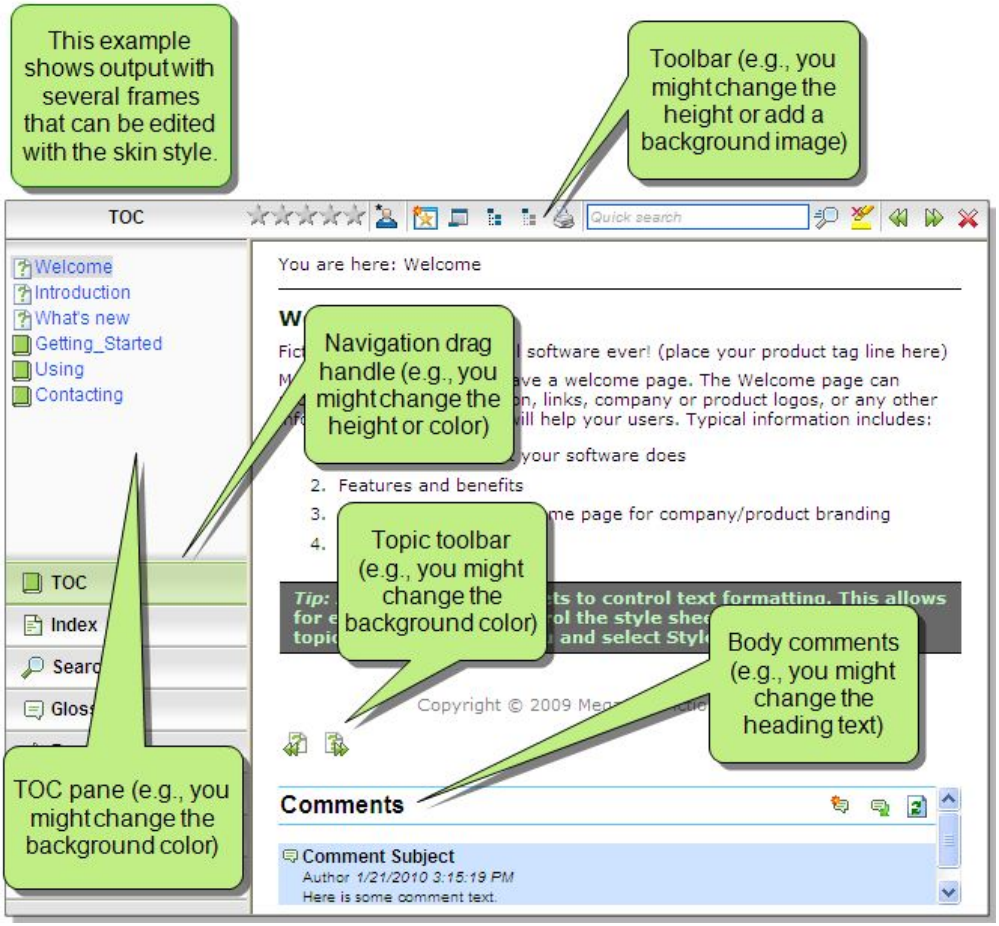


Note: In order to see these items in the output, you must include them in your project. For more information see the online Help.

Note: Most of these styles are supported only in WebHelp, WebHelp Plus, and WebHelp AIR outputs. However, the cross-reference styles are designed for print-based outputs (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML).

FRAMES

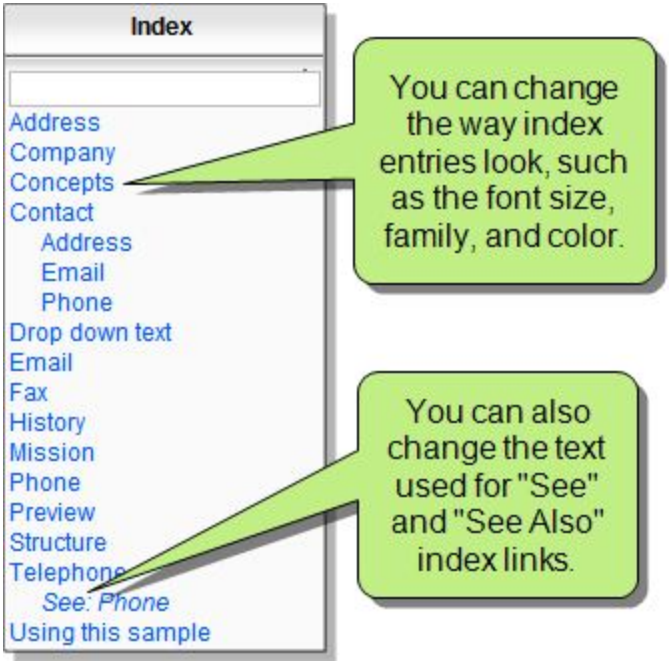
These are the containers of the navigation items that display in the output when you include elements such as accordion items, toolbars, and Feedback at the end of topics. Some of the more common properties you might edit when it comes to frames are the background and height. See "Frames in Standard Skins" on page 711.



Note: In order to see these items in the output, you must include them in your project. For more information see the online Help.

INDEX ENTRIES

This is the text that users see when they open your index in the output. Some of the more common properties you might edit when it comes to index entries are the font settings, as well as the text used for index links. See "Index Entries in Standard Skins" on page 726.

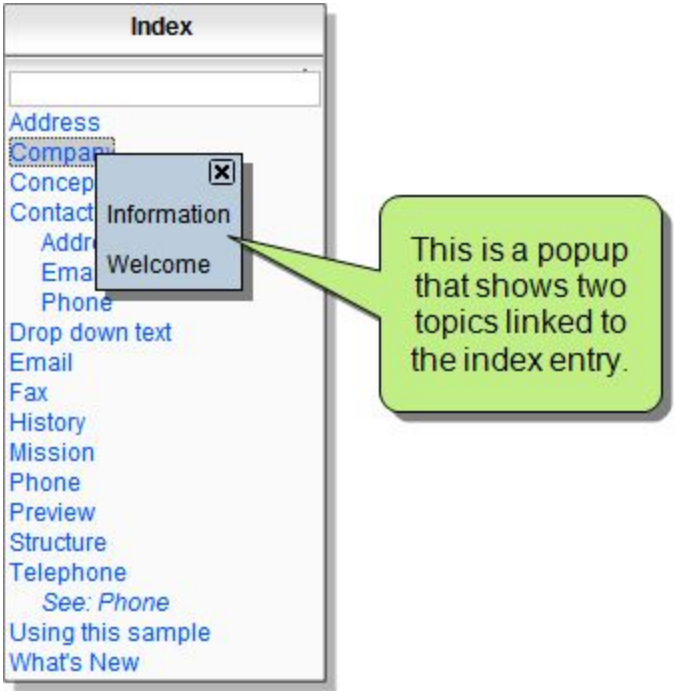


Note: In order to see these items in the output, you must include them in your project. For more information see the online Help.

Note: These styles are supported only in WebHelp, WebHelp Plus, and WebHelp AIR.

INDEX ENTRY POPUPS

These are the popups that users see when they click an index entry that links to more than one topic. Some of the more common properties you might edit when it comes to index entries are the font settings and background color. See "Index Entry Popups in Standard Skins" on page 730.

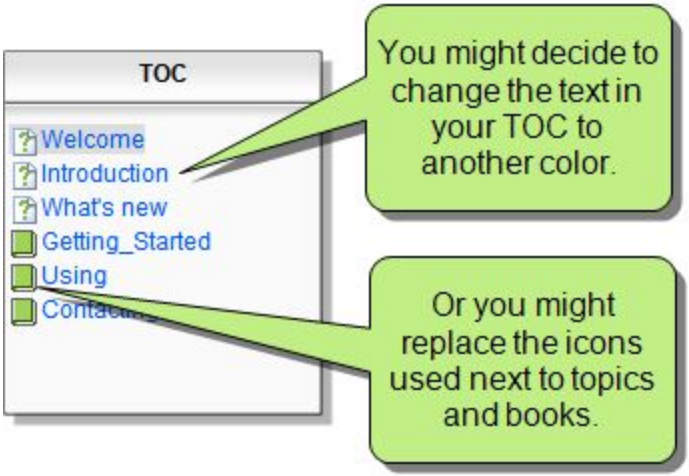


Note: In order to see these items in the output, you must include an index in your project. For more information see the online Help.

Note: These styles are supported only in WebHelp, WebHelp Plus, and WebHelp AIR.

TOC ENTRIES

This is the text that users see when they open your table of contents (TOC) in the output. Some of the more common properties you might edit when it comes to TOC entries are the font settings, as well as icons. See "TOC Entries in Standard Skins" on page 735.

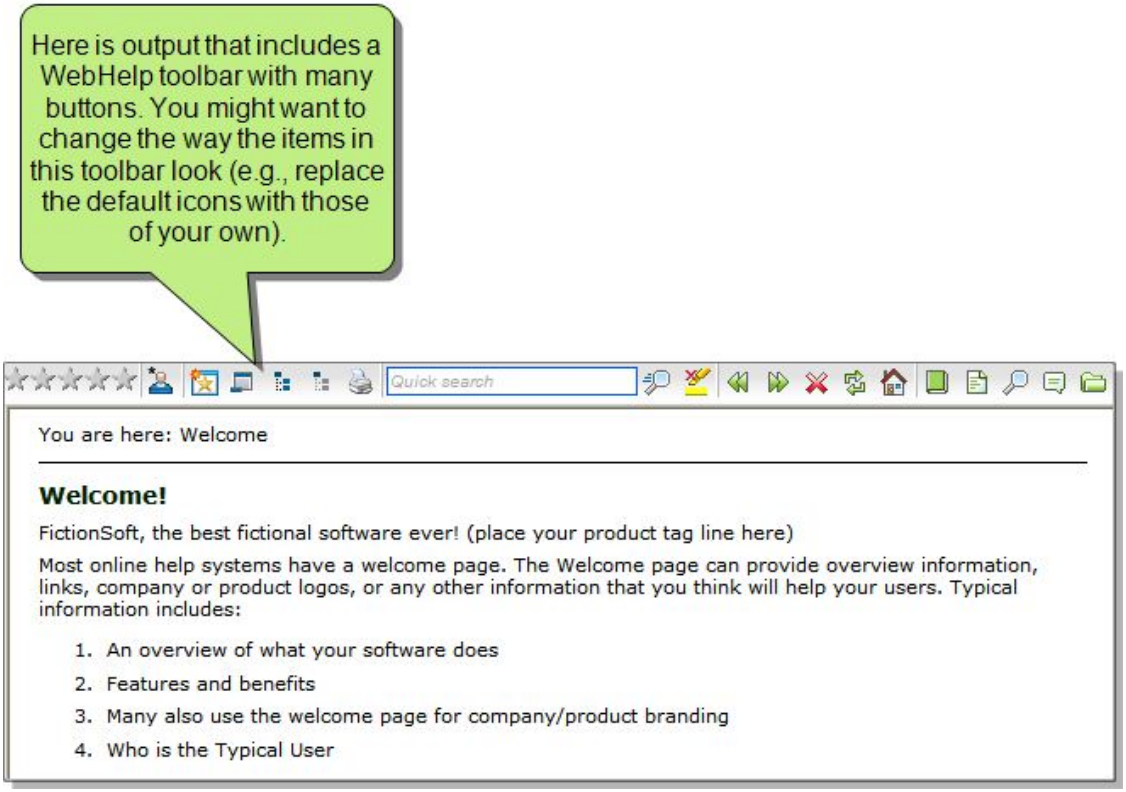


Note: In order to see these items in the output, you must include a TOC in your project. For more information see the online Help.

Note: These styles are supported only in WebHelp, WebHelp Plus, and WebHelp AIR.

TOOLBAR ITEMS

These are the buttons and other elements that are part of WebHelp and topic toolbars that you can add to output. Some of the more common properties you might edit when it comes to toolbar items are the icons, font settings, background, borders, and click behavior. See "Toolbar Items in Standard Skins" on page 740.



Note: In order to see these items in the output, you must include a WebHelp toolbar or topic toolbar in your project. For more information see the online Help.

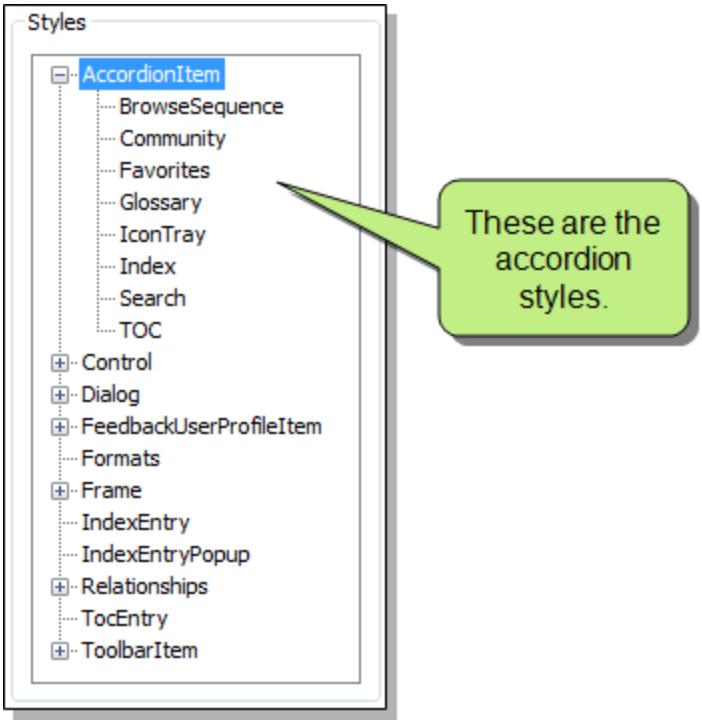
Note: These styles are supported in WebHelp, WebHelp Plus, WebHelp AIR, DotNet Help, and Microsoft HTML Help.

Accordion Items in Standard Skins

You can add various accordion items in your output, allowing users to open different elements of your output, such as the table of contents, index, glossary, community (for Pulse), and more. You can change the appearance of these accordion items by modifying style settings in the skin that you use for the output.

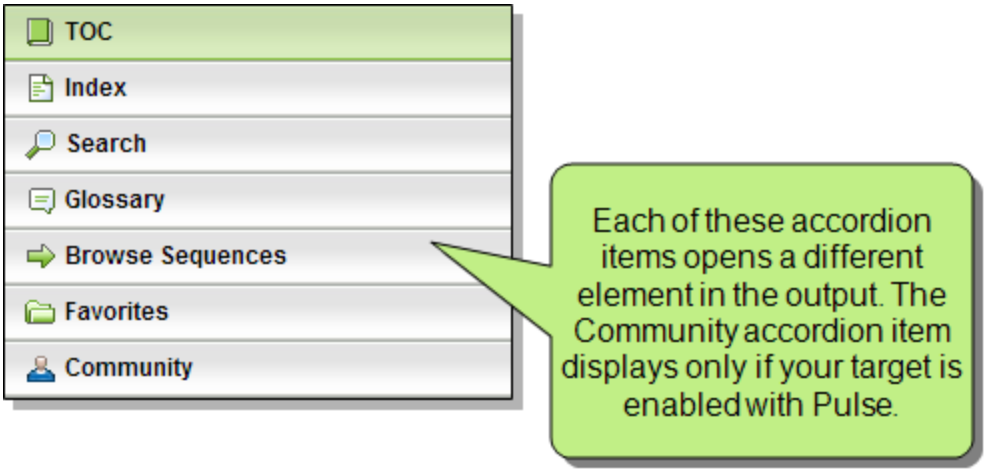
HOW TO SPECIFY STYLE SETTINGS FOR ACCORDION ITEMS

1. Open a Standard skin.
2. Select the **Styles** tab.
3. In the **Styles** section, expand the **Accordion Item** node.

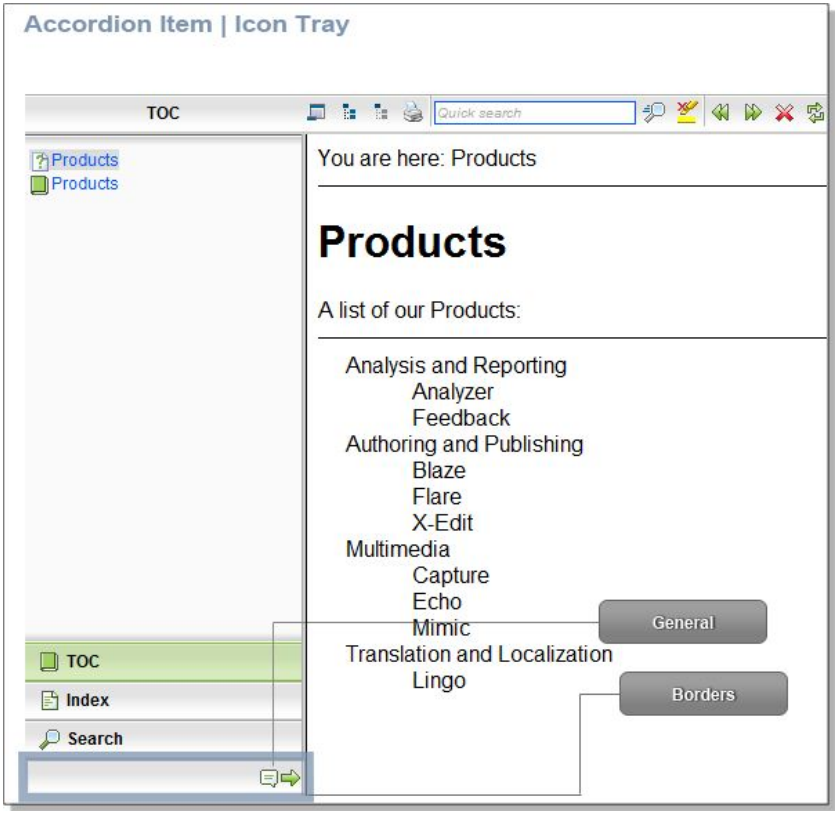


4. Select the item that you want to edit. If you want the setting(s) to be applied to all of the items, select the **Accordion Item** node itself.

   The items under this node represent the different accordions that can be added to your output.



The **IconTray** item represents the rectangle at the bottom of these items. If the area is resized so that only a certain number of accordions can be shown, the other items are represented by small icons and contained within the icon tray. In the following example, we've added a thick red border around the icon tray.



5. Select the **Property Groups** or **Alphabetical List** option to display the properties for the style item.
6. In the **Properties** section, set the values for the properties that you want modify.

BACKGROUND GRADIENT

To change the background color of the accordion area:

» Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Background Gradient** field to apply a color progression effect. The background changes from one color to another. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, click the down arrow next to the **Start** field and select a color to use at the beginning of the gradient. Then click the down arrow next to the **End** field and select the color to use at the end of the gradient. Finally, click the down arrow next to the **Style** field and select a direction for the gradient effect or choose "solid." Click **OK** to accept the settings. When you click off the properties field, a small icon is displayed in the field, showing how the effect will look. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

BACKGROUND GRADIENT HOVER

To change the background color of the accordion area when the end user hovers the mouse over it:

» Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Background Gradient Hover** field to apply a color progression effect. The background changes from one color to another. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, click the down arrow next to the **Start** field and select a color to use at the beginning of the gradient. Then click the down arrow next to the **End** field and select the color to use at the end of the gradient. Finally, click the down arrow next to the **Style** field and select a direction for the gradient effect or choose "solid." Click **OK** to accept the settings. When you click off the properties field, a small icon is displayed in the field, showing how the effect will look. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

BACKGROUND IMAGE

To add a background image to the accordion area:

» Expand the **Font** property group on the right and select an image in the **Background Image** field. Click the down arrow in this field and then select **Browse for Image** to find and select an image file.

BACKGROUND IMAGE HOVER

To add a background image to the accordion area when the end user hovers the mouse over it:

» Expand the **Font** property group on the right and select an image in the **Background Image Hover** field. Click the down arrow in this field and then select **Browse for Image** to find and select an image file.

BORDERS

To add or change borders for the item:

- Expand the **Borders** property group on the right and change the value in any of the fields. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the width of the border in the lower-left field. You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-left drop-down arrow. You can select a color for the border using the upper-right drop-down arrow. And you can select the type of line for the border (e.g., solid, dashed, dotted) using the lower-right drop-down arrow.

FONT COLOR

To change the color of the font:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

FONT FAMILY

To select a specific font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, Verdana):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Family** field. After you click in the field, the Font Family Picker dialog opens. Use this dialog to select the font family and click **OK**.

FONT SIZE

To change the size of the font:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Size** field. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the size of the font in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

FONT STYLE

To change the style of the font (e.g., make it italic):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Style** field. Click the down arrow and select either **italic** or **normal**.

FONT WEIGHT

To change the weight of the font (e.g., make it bold):

» Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Weight** field. Click the down arrow and select either **bold** or **normal**.

ICON

To select a different icon image:

» Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and select an image from the **Icon** field. Click the down arrow in this field and then select **Browse for Image** to find and select an image file.

ITEM HEIGHT

To change the height of the item:

» Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **ItemHeight** field. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the item height in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

LABEL

To change the text that appears on the item:

» Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Label** field.

7. Click to save your work.

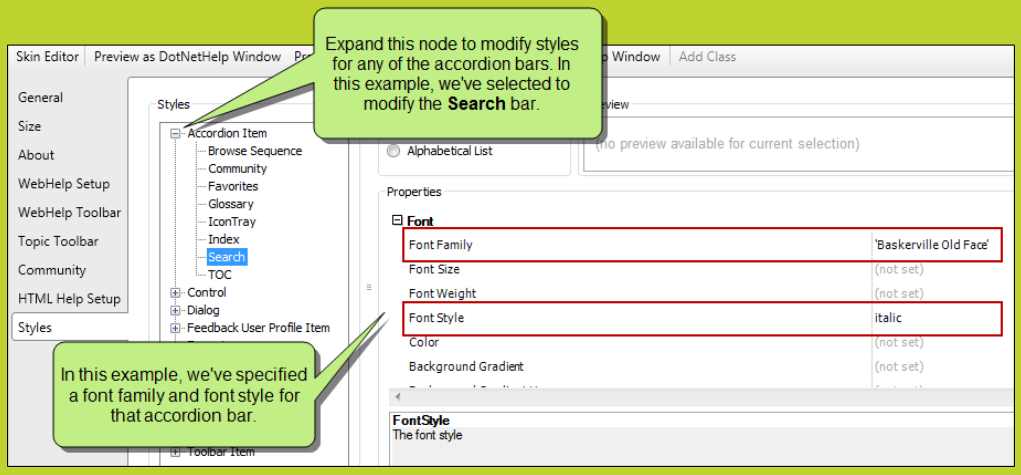
EXAMPLE—ACCORDION BARS (FONT, BACKGROUND COLOR)

Let's say that you want to change the font used for the text in the Search accordion bar to Baskerville Old Face. In addition, you want to set the background color for the accordion bar to green.

In that case, you would do the following:

1. Expand the **Accordion Item** node.
2. Select **Search**.
3. On the right side, make sure **Property Groups** is selected.
4. Expand the **Font** group.
5. Click in the cell to the right of **Font Family**.
6. In the Font Family Picker dialog, select **Installed Families**.
7. Find and select **Baskerville Old Face**.
8. Click **OK**.
9. Click in the cell to the right of **Background Gradient**.
10. In the small popup, click on the down arrow next to **Start**.
11. Select a green color.
12. Since we only want a solid background color, click **OK**.
13. Click to save your work.

When you are finished in the Skin Editor, it will look something like this:

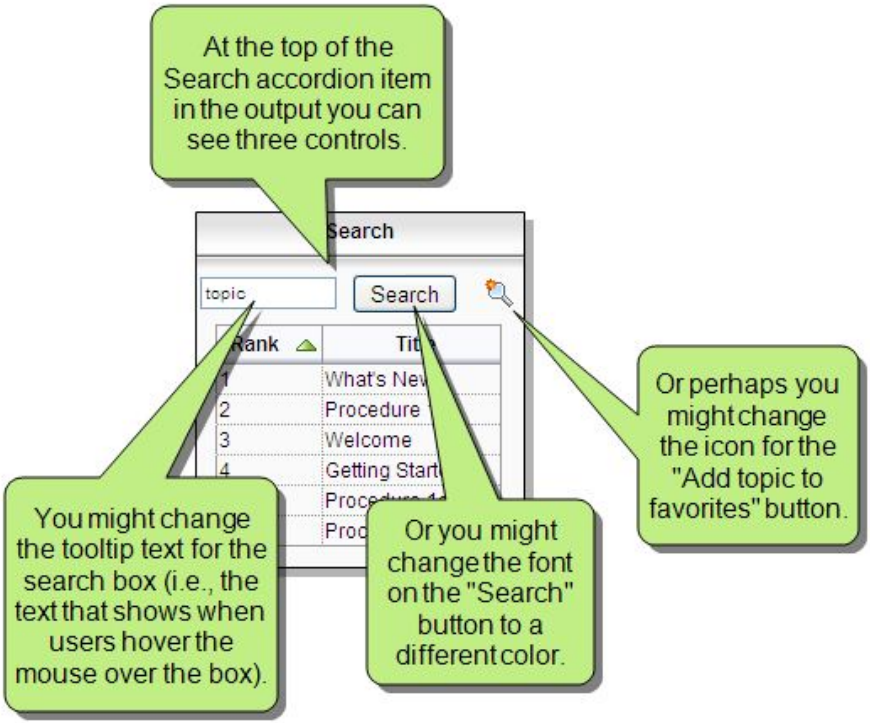


Controls in Standard Skins

This feature is supported in Microsoft HTML Help, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, and WebHelp Plus output.

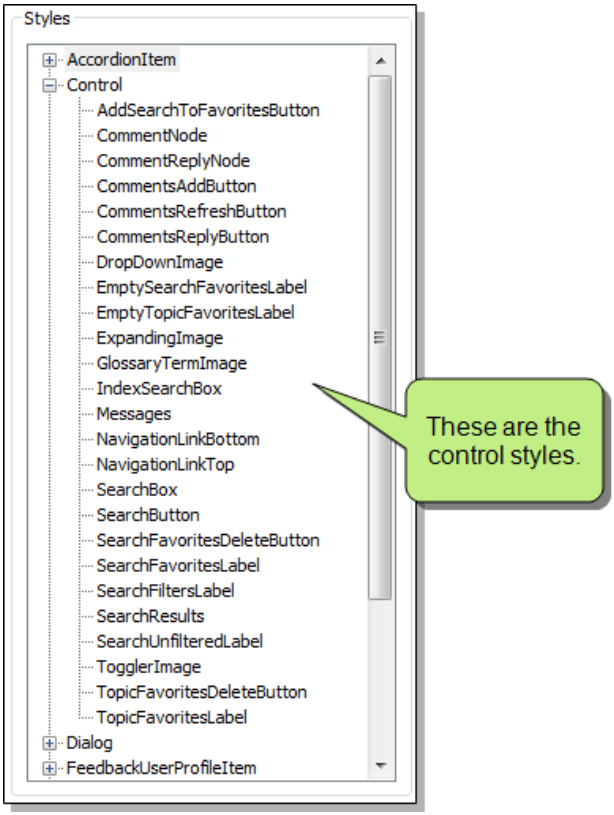
Various controls may be part of the skin in your output, such as buttons, labels, and the input boxes. Usually these controls are displayed within the various accordion items (e.g., the search box, "Search" button, and "Add topic to favorites" button that are shown at the top of the Search accordion item).

Styles for many of the controls are supported only in WebHelp, WebHelp Plus, and WebHelp AIR outputs. The controls related to MadCap Feedback are supported only in WebHelp, WebHelp Plus, and Microsoft HTML Help.



HOW TO SPECIFY STYLE SETTINGS FOR CONTROLS

1. Open a Standard skin.
2. Select the **Styles** tab.
3. In the **Styles** section, expand the **Control** node.

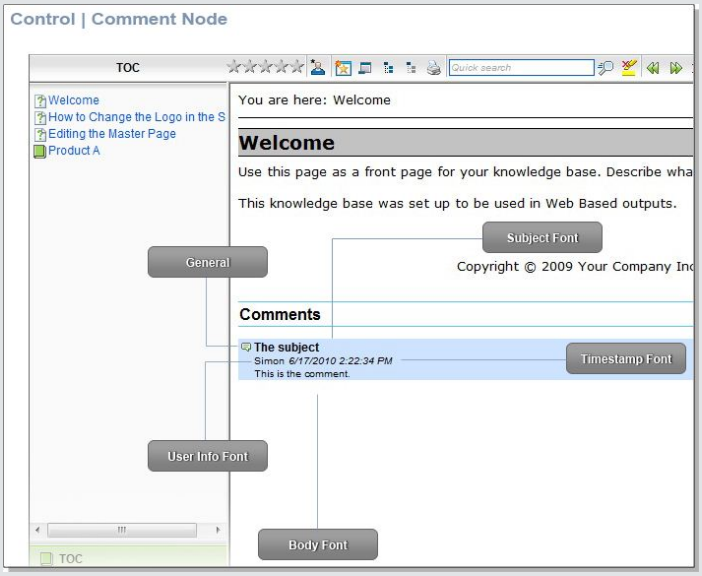


4. Select the item that you want to edit. If you want the setting(s) to be applied to all of the items, select the **Control** node itself.

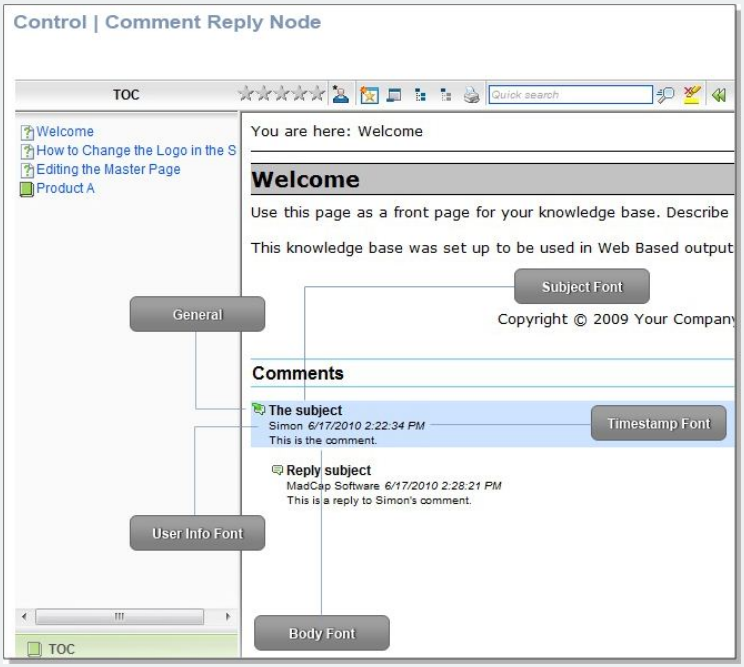
   The items under this node represent the different kinds of controls that may be found in your output.

Add Search To Favorites Button	This is the button at the top of the Search pane that lets users add their search string to the Favorites pane.

Comment Node	This is the area that shows MadCap Feedback comments in the output. In order to use this feature, you must enable MadCap Feedback.



Comment Reply Node	This is the area that shows MadCap Feedback comments that have received replies. In order to use this feature, you must enable MadCap Feedback.

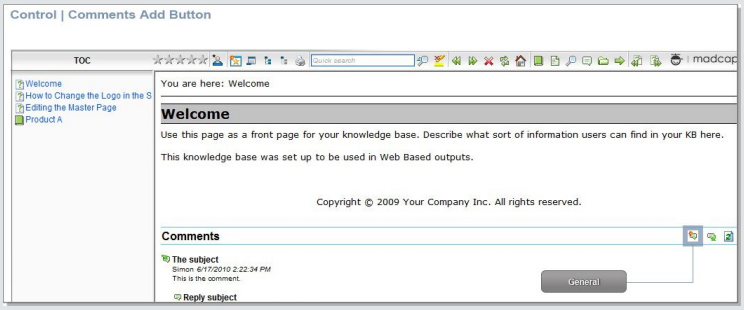


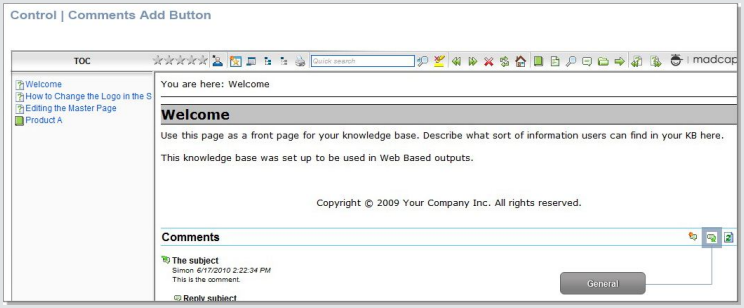
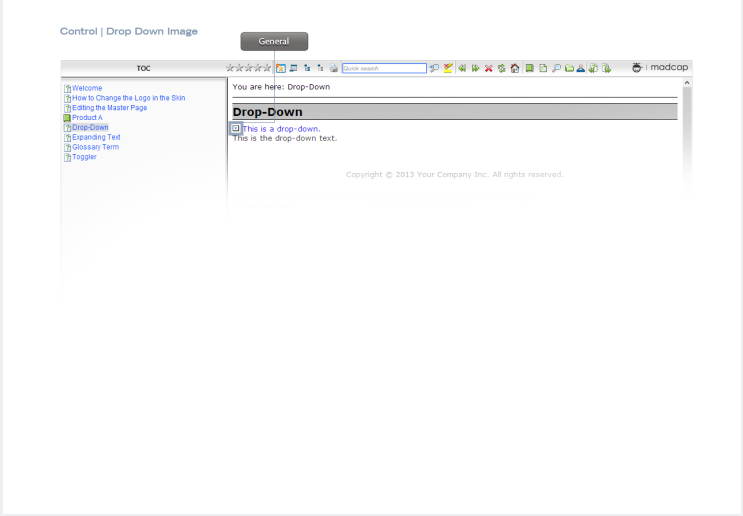
Comments Add Button

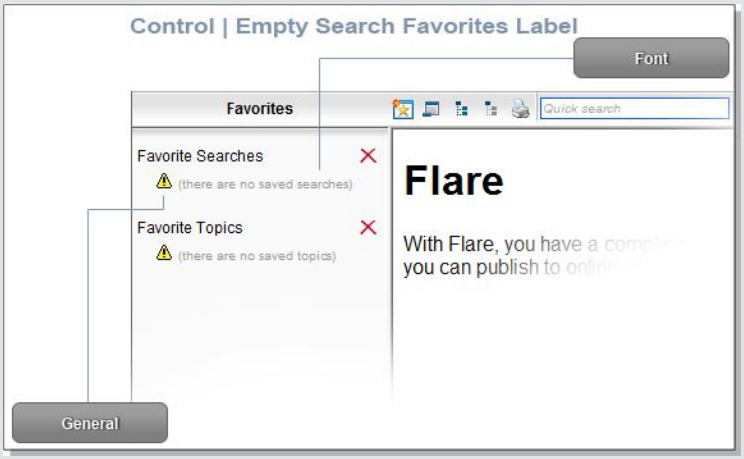
Comments Refresh Button

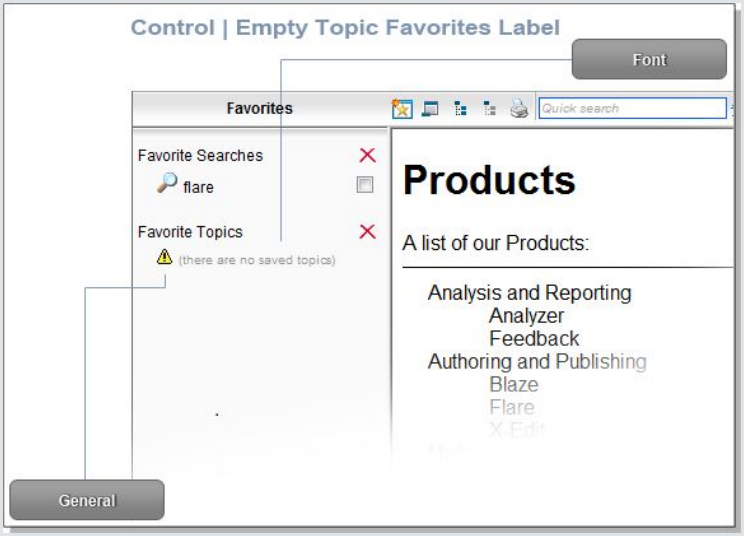
Comments Reply Button

These are buttons at the top of the Comments area that let users add, reply to, and refresh MadCap Feedback comments. In order to use this feature, you must enable MadCap Feedback.

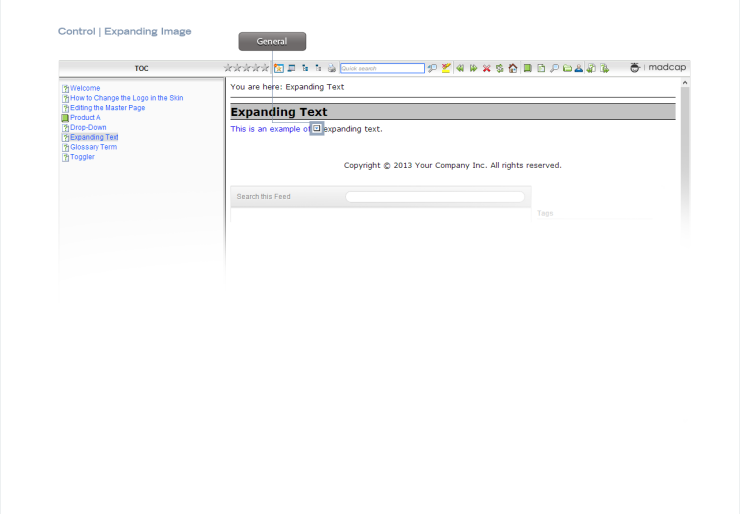


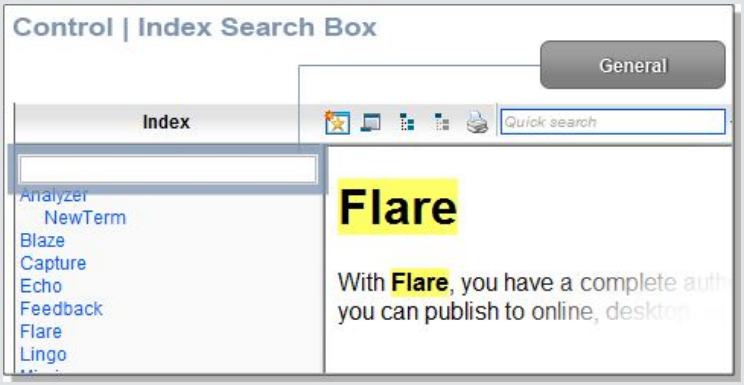
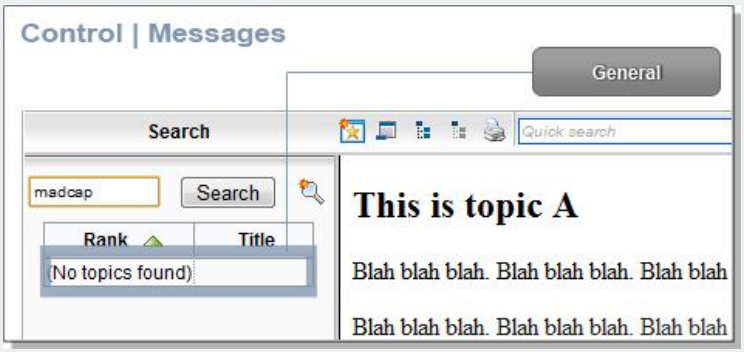
	
DropDown Image	This is the hotspot image that is used for drop-down effects. 

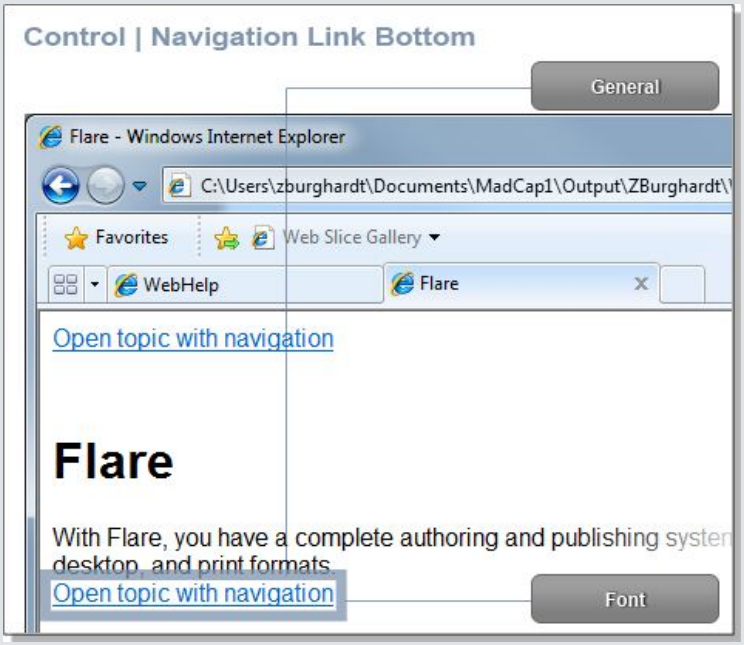
Empty Search Favorites Label **Empty Topic Favorites Label**	These are the text labels that users see if they open the Favorites pane and no favorite searches or topics have yet been saved. 

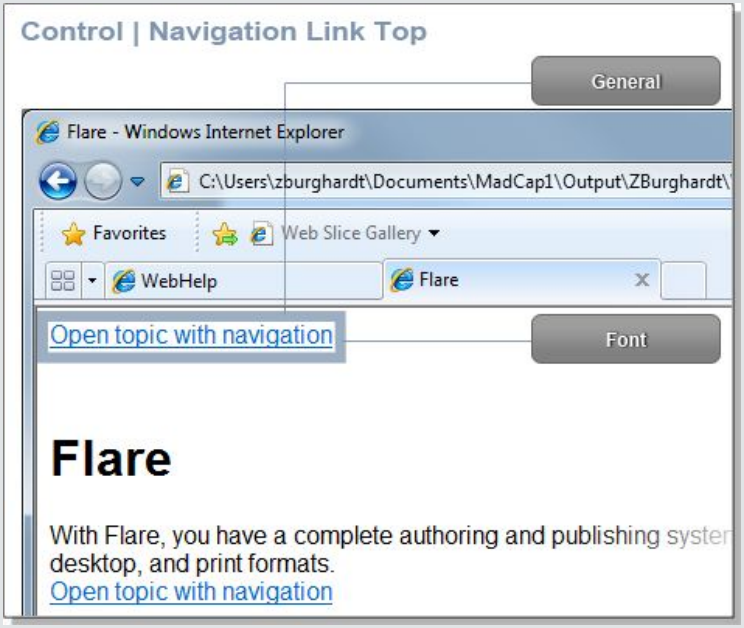

Control | Empty Topic Favorites Label
Font
Favorites
Quick search
Favorite Searches
flare
Favorite Topics
(there are no saved topics)
Products
A list of our Products:
Analysis and Reporting
Analyzer
Feedback
Authoring and Publishing
Blaze
Flare
General

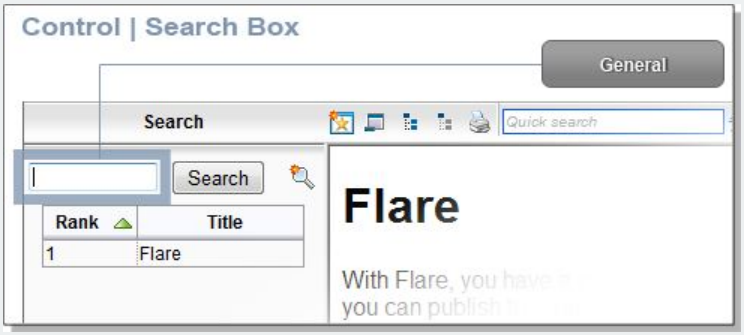
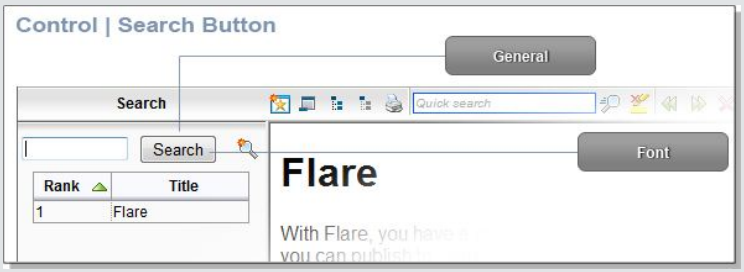
Expanding Image	This is the hotspot image that is used for expanding text effects.

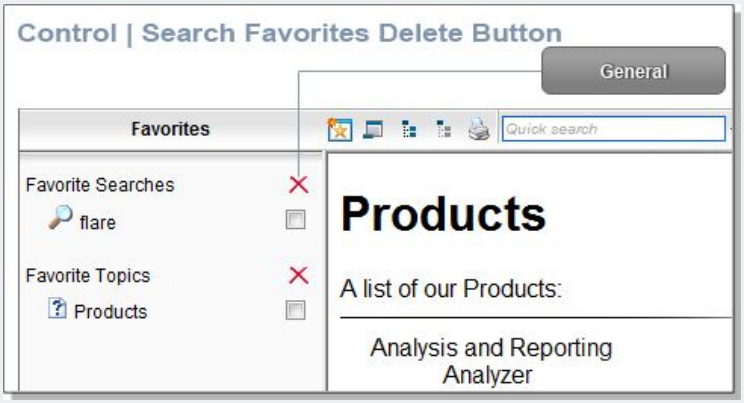
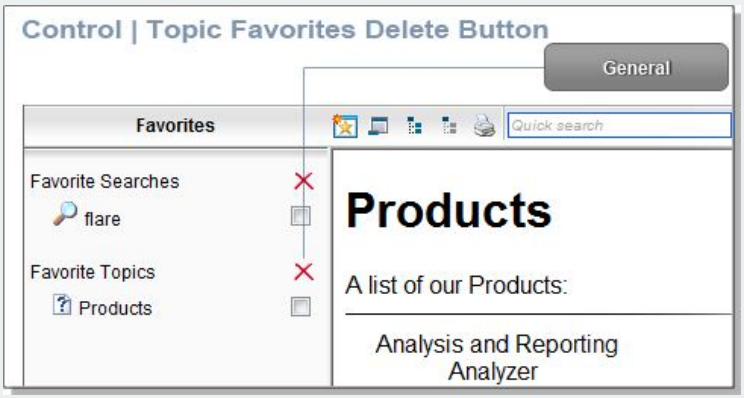


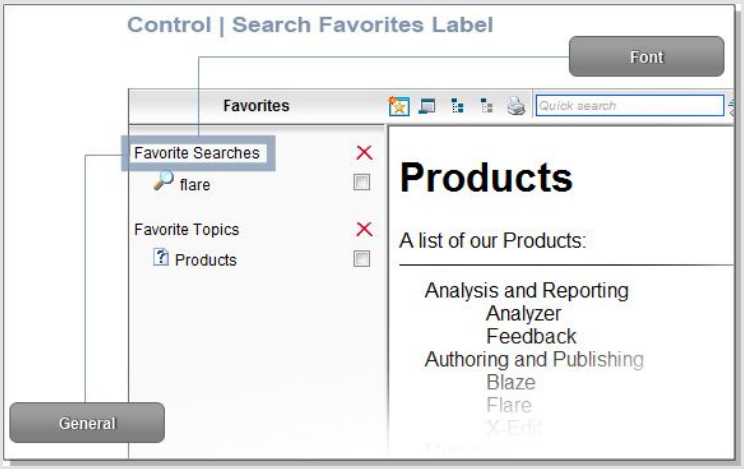
Index Search Box	This is the field in the Index pane where users enter words to search for in the index. You can provide a floating tooltip for this field, which displays when users hover the cursor over it. 
Messages	These are the text labels that users see when certain messages are displayed (e.g., if they search for a term and no topics are found). 

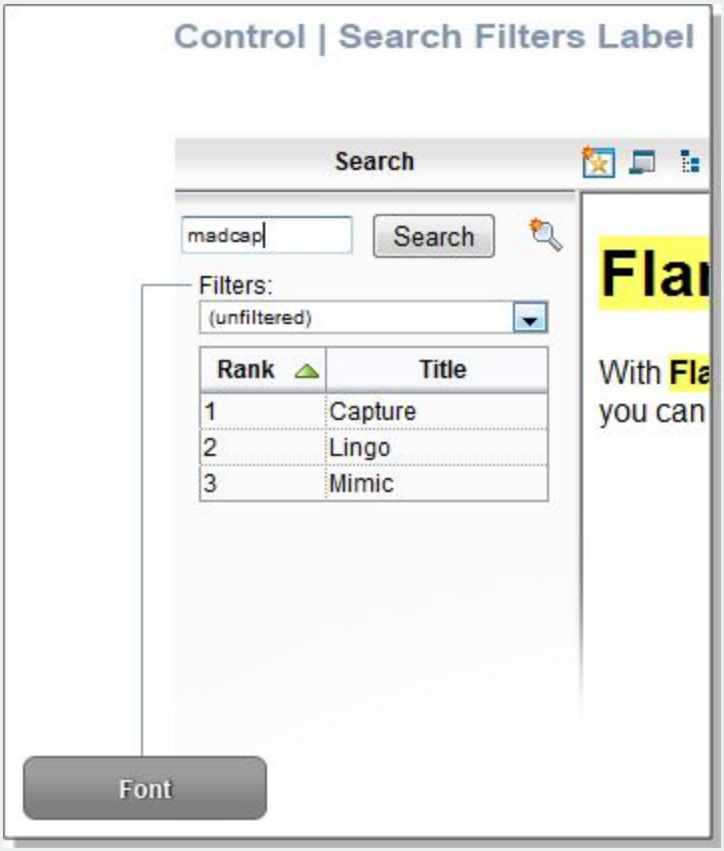
Navigation Link Bottom **Navigation Link Top**	These are the navigation links that users may see at the top or bottom of topics if they open those topics as standalone files. In order to add these links to the output, you must enable them on the WebHelp Setup tab of the Skin Editor. 

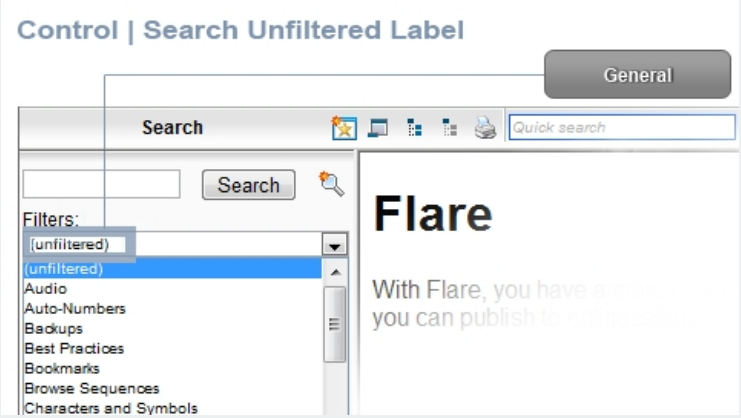

Control | Navigation Link Top
General
Flare - Windows Internet Explorer
C:\Users\zburghardt\Documents\MadCap1\Output\ZBurghardt\
Favorites
Web Slice Gallery
WebHelp
Flare
Open topic with navigation
Font
Flare
With Flare, you have a complete authoring and publishing syster
desktop, and print formats.
Open topic with navigation

Search Box	This is the field in the Search pane where users enter words to include in a search. You can provide a floating tooltip for this field, which displays when users hover the cursor over it. 
Search Button	This is the button in the Search pane that people use to initiate a search. 

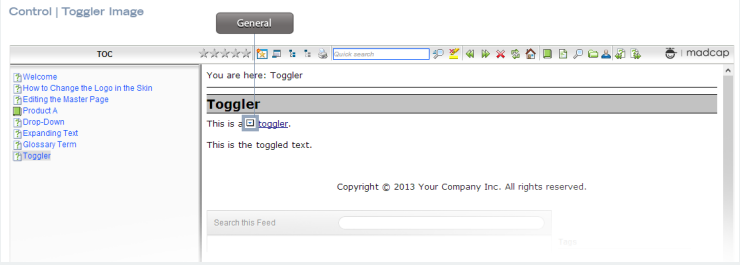
Search Favorites Delete Button **Topic Favorites Delete Button**	These are the buttons in the Favorites pane that people use to delete saved search strings or topics.  

Search Favorites Label **Topic Favorites Label**	These are the labels in the Favorites pane that are shown at the top of the favorite searches and topics. 

Search Filters Label **Search Unfiltered Label**	These are the labels in the Search pane that are used to identify search filters. In order to see these labels in the output, you must include search filters in your project. 


Control | Search Unfiltered Label
General
Search
Quick search
Search
Filters:
(unfiltered)
(unfiltered)
Audio
Auto-Numbers
Backups
Best Practices
Bookmarks
Browse Sequences
Characters and Symbols
Flare
With Flare, you have a
you can publish to

Search Results	These are the labels in the Search pane that are used to identify search results.

Toggler Image	This is the hotspot image that is used for toggler effects. 

5. Select the **Property Groups** or **Alphabetical List** option to display the properties for the style item.
6. In the **Properties** section, set the values for the properties that you want modify.

BACKGROUND COLOR

To change the background color of the item:

» Expand the **General** property group on the right and change the value in the **Background Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

BODY FONT COLOR

To change the color of the font used for the body of a MadCap Feedback comment:

» Expand the **BodyFont** property group on the right and change the value in the **Body Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

BODY FONT FAMILY

To select a specific font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, Verdana) used for the body of a MadCap Feedback comment:

» Expand the **BodyFont** property group on the right and change the value in the **Body Font Family** field. After you click in the field, the Font Family Picker dialog opens. Use this dialog to select the font family and click **OK**.

BODY FONT SIZE

To change the size of the font used for the body of a MadCap Feedback comment:

- Expand the **BodyFont** property group on the right and change the value in the **Body Font Size** field. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the size of the font in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

BODY FONT STYLE

To change the style of the font (e.g., make it italic) used for the body of a MadCap Feedback comment:

- Expand the **BodyFont** property group on the right and change the value in the **Body Font Style** field. Click the down arrow and select either **italic** or **normal**.

BODY FONT WEIGHT

To change the weight of the font (e.g., make it bold) used for the body of a MadCap Feedback comment:

- Expand the **BodyFont** property group on the right and change the value in the **Body Font Weight** field. Click the down arrow and select either **bold** or **normal**.

COLLAPSED ALT TEXT

To change the alternate (alt) text that is associated with the item when it is in a collapsed state:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **CollapsedAltText** field.

EXPANDED ALT TEXT

To change the alternate (alt) text that is associated with the item when it is in an expanded state:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **ExpandedAltText** field.

FONT BACKGROUND COLOR

To change the color of the area behind the font:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Background Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

FONT COLOR

To change the color of the font:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

FONT FAMILY

To select a specific font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, Verdana):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Family** field. After you click in the field, the Font Family Picker dialog opens. Use this dialog to select the font family and click **OK**.

FONT SIZE

To change the size of the font:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Size** field. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the size of the font in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

FONT STYLE

To change the style of the font (e.g., make it italic):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Style** field. Click the down arrow and select either **italic** or **normal**.

FONT WEIGHT

To change the weight of the font (e.g., make it bold):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Weight** field. Click the down arrow and select either **bold** or **normal**.

HOVER ICON

To select a different icon image to be used when the user hovers the cursor over the item:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and select an image from the **Hover Icon** field. Click the down arrow in this field and then select **Browse for Image** to find and select an image file.

ICON

To select a different icon image:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and select an image from the **Icon** field. Click the down arrow in this field and then select **Browse for Image** to find and select an image file.

LABEL

To change the text that appears on the item:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Label** field.

MESSAGES INVALID TOKEN

To change the text for the message that displays when an invalid search is performed:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Invalid Token** field.

E X A M P L E

If a user wants to search for "topics and images," but does not enter the search string correctly (e.g., entering "topics and," leaving off the second term), an invalid token will result.

MESSAGES LOADING

To change the text for the message that displays when the search pane is loading data:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Loading** field.

MESSAGES LOADING ALTERNATE TEXT

To change the alternate text for the message that displays when the search pane is loading data—can be used to describe the image being loaded:

» Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Loading Alternate Text** field.

MESSAGES NO TOPICS FOUND

To change the text for the message that displays when no topics are found in a search:

» Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **No Topics Found** field.

MESSAGES QUICK SEARCH EXTERNAL

To change the text for the message that displays when the "Quick Search" feature is disabled in external topics.

» Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Quick Search External** field.

Note: The default message is "Quick search is disabled in external topics." You can modify the message to say whatever you want, or to localize it for your audience.

MESSAGES QUICK SEARCH IE 5.5

To change the text for the message informing users that the "Quick Search" feature is disabled in Internet Explorer 5.5 (due to limitations with that browser):

» Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Quick Search IE 5.5** field.

Note: You can modify the message to say whatever you want, or to localize it for your audience.

MESSAGES REMOVE HIGHLIGHT IE 5.5

To change the text for the message informing users that the "Search Highlight Removal" feature is disabled in Internet Explorer 5.5 (due to limitations with that browser):

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Remove Highlight IE 5.5** field.

> **Note:** You can modify the message to say whatever you want, or to localize it for your audience.

PRESSED ICON

To select a different icon image to be used when the item is pressed:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and select an image from the **Pressed Icon** field. Click the down arrow in this field and then select **Browse for Image** to find and select an image file.

RANK LABEL

To change the text that appears at the top of the column used to display the ranking of topics found after a search:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Rank Label** field.

SUBJECT FONT COLOR

To change the color of the font used for the subject of a MadCap Feedback comment:

- Expand the **SubjectFont** property group on the right and change the value in the **Subject Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

SUBJECT FONT FAMILY

To select a specific font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, Verdana) used for the subject of a MadCap Feedback comment:

» Expand the **SubjectFont** property group on the right and change the value in the **Subject Font Family** field. After you click in the field, the Font Family Picker dialog opens. Use this dialog to select the font family and click **OK**.

SUBJECT FONT SIZE

To change the size of the font used for the subject of a MadCap Feedback comment:

» Expand the **SubjectFont** property group on the right and change the value in the **Subject Font Size** field. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the size of the font in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

SUBJECT FONT STYLE

To change the style of the font (e.g., make it italic) used for the subject of a MadCap Feedback comment:

» Expand the **SubjectFont** property group on the right and change the value in the **Subject Font Style** field. Click the down arrow and select either **italic** or **normal**.

SUBJECT FONT WEIGHT

To change the weight of the font (e.g., make it bold) used for the subject of a MadCap Feedback comment:

» Expand the **SubjectFont** property group on the right and change the value in the **Subject Font Weight** field. Click the down arrow and select either **bold** or **normal**.

TABLE SUMMARY

To change the text for a table summary, which is used by screen readers to assist with accessibility:

» Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Table Summary** field.

TEXT IMAGE RELATION

To select the location of a label in relation to the image used for the item:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and select an option from the **Text Image Relation** field. You can select any of the following:
  - **ImageAboveText** This displays the button image on top of the label text.
  - **ImageBeforeText** This displays the button image to the left of the label text.
  - **Overlay** This displays the label text and the button image in the same space.
  - **TextAboveImage** This displays the label text on top of the button image.
  - **TextBeforeImage** This displays the label text to the left of the button image.

TIME STAMP FONT COLOR

To change the color of the font used for the time stamp in a MadCap Feedback comment:

- Expand the **TimestampFont** property group on the right and change the value in the **Timestamp Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

TIME STAMP FONT FAMILY

To select a specific font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, Verdana) used for the time stamp in a MadCap Feedback comment:

- Expand the **TimestampFont** property group on the right and change the value in the **Timestamp Font Family** field. After you click in the field, the Font Family Picker dialog opens. Use this dialog to select the font family and click **OK**.

TIME STAMP FONT SIZE

To change the size of the font used for the time stamp in a MadCap Feedback comment:

- Expand the **TimestampFont** property group on the right and change the value in the **Timestamp Font Size** field. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the size of the font in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

TIME STAMP FONT STYLE

To change the style of the font (e.g., make it italic) used for the time stamp in a MadCap Feedback comment:

- Expand the **TimestampFont** property group on the right and change the value in the **Timestamp Font Style** field. Click the down arrow and select either **italic** or **normal**.

TIME STAMP FONT WEIGHT

To change the weight of the font (e.g., make it bold) used for the time stamp in a MadCap Feedback comment:

- Expand the **TimestampFont** property group on the right and change the value in the **Timestamp Font Weight** field. Click the down arrow and select either **bold** or **normal**.

TITLE LABEL

To change the text that appears at the top of the column used to display the names of topics found after a search:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Title Label** field.

TOOLTIP

To change the tooltip text that appears when users hover the cursor over the item:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Tooltip** field.

USER INFO FONT COLOR

To change the color of the font used for the user information in a MadCap Feedback comment:

- Expand the **UserInfoFont** property group on the right and change the value in the **UserInfoColor** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

USER INFO FONT FAMILY

To select a specific font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, Verdana) used for the user information in a MadCap Feedback comment:

» Expand the **UserInfoFont** property group on the right and change the value in the **User Info Font Family** field. After you click in the field, the Font Family Picker dialog opens. Use this dialog to select the font family and click **OK**.

USER INFO FONT SIZE

To change the size of the font used for the user information in a MadCap Feedback comment:

» Expand the **UserInfoFont** property group on the right and change the value in the **User Info Font Size** field. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the size of the font in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

USER INFO FONT STYLE

To change the style of the font (e.g., make it italic) used for the user information in a MadCap Feedback comment:

» Expand the **UserInfoFont** property group on the right and change the value in the **User Info Font Style** field. Click the down arrow and select either **italic** or **normal**.

USER INFO FONT WEIGHT

To change the weight of the font (e.g., make it bold) used for the user information in a MadCap Feedback comment:

» Expand the **UserInfoFont** property group on the right and change the value in the **User Info Font Weight** field. Click the down arrow and select either **bold** or **normal**.

7. Click to save your work.

Dialogs in Standard Skins

This feature is supported in Microsoft HTML Help, WebHelp, and WebHelp Plus output.

If you have enabled MadCap Feedback for your output, there are some dialogs that people will use for actions such as registering, adding comments, and replying to comments.

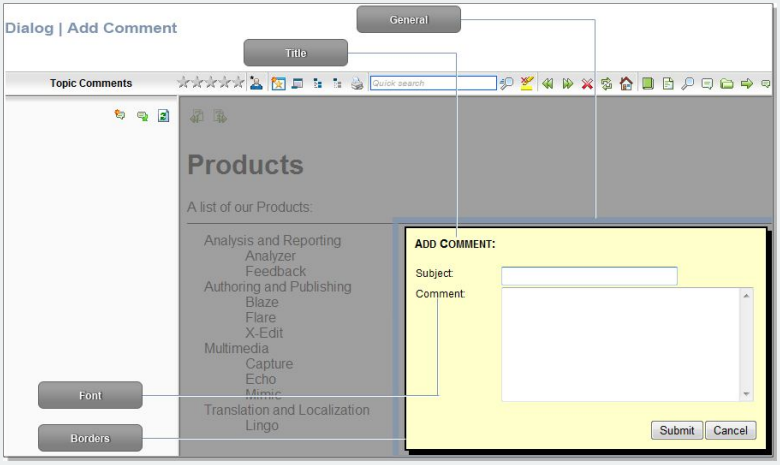
HOW TO SPECIFY STYLE SETTINGS FOR DIALOGS

1. Open a Standard skin.
2. Select the **Styles** tab.
3. In the **Styles** section, expand the **Dialog** node.

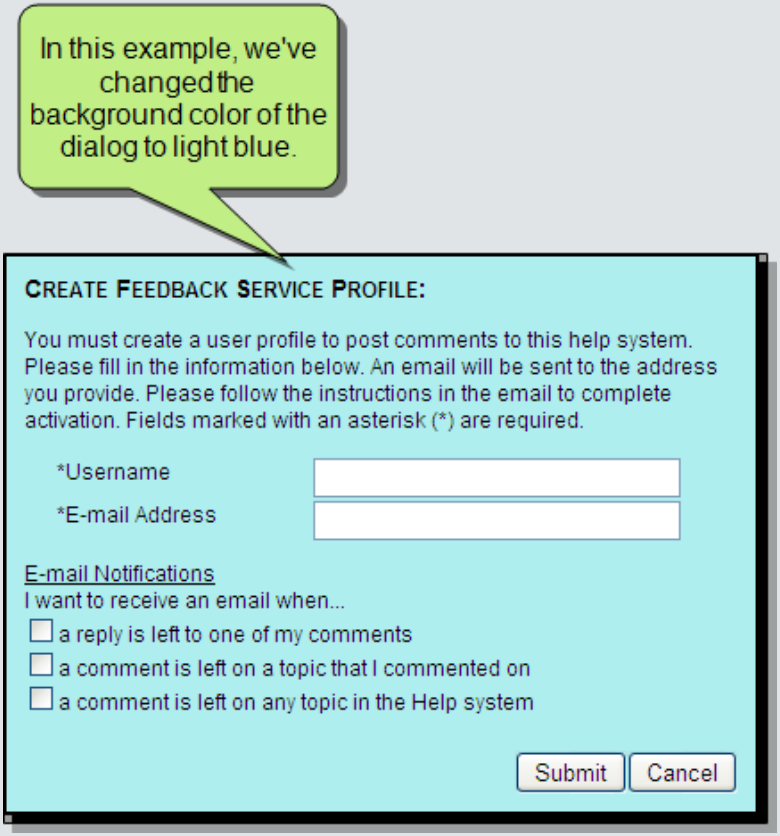
4. Select the item that you want to edit. If you want the setting(s) to be applied to all of the items, select the **Dialog** node itself.

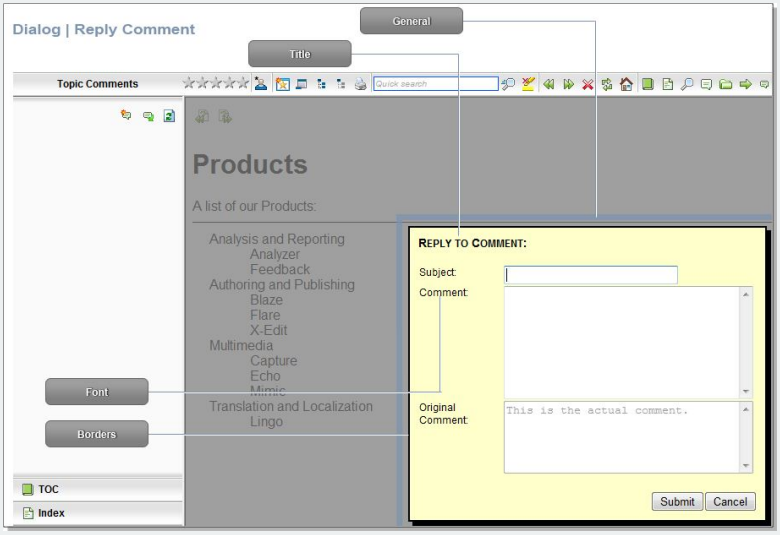
   The items under this node represent the different kinds of Feedback dialogs that may be found in your output.

Add Comment	This is the dialog used when people add feedback comments to a topic.



Register User	This is the dialog used when new end users register in order to submit feedback in your output.



	Note: The "Register User" item lets you modify label text for fields in the Create Feedback Service Profile dialog. However, the "Feedback User Profile Item" node (see "Feedback User Profile Items in Standard Skins" on page 692) does the same thing. So what's the difference? The "Register User" property in this node is the old way to accomplish this; the "Feedback User Profile Item" node is the new way. In order to be backwards compatible with earlier versions, the duplicate properties remain available in the Dialog/Register User node. The software will first look to any settings that you have provided in the Feedback User Profile Item node. Then it will look to settings entered in the Dialog/Register User node.
Reply Comment	This is the dialog used when people reply to feedback comments for a topic. 

5. Select the **Property Groups** or **Alphabetical List** option to display the properties for the style item.

6. In the **Properties** section, set the values for the properties that you want modify.

BACKGROUND COLOR

To change the background color of the item:

» Expand the **General** property group on the right and change the value in the **Background Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

BORDERS

To add or change borders for the item:

» Expand the **Borders** property group on the right and change the value in any of the fields. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the width of the border in the lower-left field. You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-left drop-down arrow. You can select a color for the border using the upper-right drop-down arrow. And you can select the type of line for the border (e.g., solid, dashed, dotted) using the lower-right drop-down arrow.

CANCEL BUTTON LABEL

To change the text that appears on the "Cancel" button:

» Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Cancel Button Label** field.

COMMENT LABEL

To change the text that appears next to the "comment" field:

» Expand the **Labels** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Comment Label** field.

COMMENT REPLY NOTIFICATION LABEL

Next to the first email notification check box in the Create Feedback Service Profile dialog, users see the following text:

a reply is left to one of my comments

To change the text:

» Expand the **Options** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Comment Reply Notification Label** field.

COMMENT SAME TOPIC NOTIFICATION LABEL

Next to the second email notification check box in the Create Feedback Service Profile dialog, users see the following text:

a comment is left on a topic that I commented on

To change the text:

- Expand the **Options** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Comment Same Topic Notification Label** field.

COMMENT SAME HELP SYSTEM NOTIFICATION LABEL

Next to the third email notification check box in the Create Feedback Service Profile dialog, users see the following text:

a comment is left on any topic in the Help system

To change the text:

- Expand the **Options** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Comment Same Help System Notification Label** field.

COUNTRY LABEL

To change the text that appears next to the "country" field:

- Expand the **Labels** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Country Label** field.

EMAIL ADDRESS LABEL

To change the text that appears next to the "email address" field:

- Expand the **Labels** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Email Address Label** field.

EMAIL NOTIFICATIONS GROUP LABEL

At the beginning of the email notification check boxes in the Create Feedback Service Profile dialog, users see the following text:

E-mail Notifications

To change the text:

- Expand the **Options** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Email Notifications Group Label** field.

EMAIL NOTIFICATIONS HEADING LABEL

After the group label, just above the email notification check boxes in the Create Feedback Service Profile dialog, users see the following text:

I want to receive an email when…

To change the text:

- Expand the **Options** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Email Notifications Heading Label** field.

FIRST NAME LABEL

To change the text that appears next to the "first name" field:

- Expand the **Labels** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **First Name Label** field.

FONT COLOR

To change the color of the font:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

FONT FAMILY

To select a specific font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, Verdana):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Family** field. After you click in the field, the Font Family Picker dialog opens. Use this dialog to select the font family and click **OK**.

FONT SIZE

To change the size of the font:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Size** field. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the size of the font in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

FONT STYLE

To change the style of the font (e.g., make it italic):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Style** field. Click the down arrow and select either **italic** or **normal**.

FONT WEIGHT

To change the weight of the font (e.g., make it bold):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Weight** field. Click the down arrow and select either **bold** or **normal**.

GENDER LABEL

To change the text that appears next to the "gender" field:

- Expand the **Labels** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Gender Label** field.

GENDER LABEL—FEMALE

To change the text that represents the "female" option in the "gender" drop-down field:

- Expand the **Labels** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Gender Female Name** field.

If you include the Gender option in your registration dialog, you might use this field to localize the text in other languages.

GENDER LABEL—MALE

To change the text that represents the "male" option in the "gender" drop-down field:

- Expand the **Labels** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Gender Male Name** field.

If you include the Gender option in your registration dialog, you might use this field to localize the text in other languages.

LAST NAME LABEL

To change the text that appears next to the "last name" field:

- Expand the **Labels** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Last Name Label** field.

MESSAGE—COMMENT LENGTH EXCEEDED

To change the text that appears in the message that users see when their comments are too long:

- Expand the **Messages** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Comment Length Exceeded** field.

MESSAGE—EDIT PROFILE REGISTRATION

If you configure MadCap Feedback so that users must register before submitting comments, people will see the following message in the dialog when updating their profiles:

You must create a user profile to post comments to this help system. Please fill in the information below. An email will be sent to the address you provide. Please follow the instructions in the email to complete activation.

To change the text for this message:

- Expand the **Messages** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Edit Profile Registration** field.

MESSAGE—MISSING REQUIRED FIELD

When users fail to complete a required field in the Create Feedback Service Profile dialog, they see a message. If you do not enter text, the default for the message is used. This default text is as follows:

Please enter a value for: [name of field].:

- Expand the **Messages** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Missing Required Field** field.

MESSAGE—REGISTRATION

If you configure MadCap Feedback so that users must register before submitting comments, certain information is provided to those users, both in the registration dialog and in a popup message that follows. You can modify the text as needed. In the registration dialog, users see the following default text:

You must create a user profile to post comments to this help system. Please fill in the information below. An email will be sent to the address you provide. Please follow the instructions in the email to complete activation.

To change the text for this message:

» Expand the **Messages** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Registration** field.

MESSAGE—REGISTRATION SUBMIT

In the popup message that follows the initial registration message, users see the following default text:

Your information has been sent to MadCap Software. When the information has been processed, you will receive an email with a link to a verification page. Click this link, or copy and paste the link into your web browser to complete the registration.

To change the text for this message:

» Expand the **Messages** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Registration Submit** field.

MESSAGE—REGISTRATION SUBMIT NOTE

In the popup message that follows the initial registration message, users see the following note:

NOTE: Some service providers have email filtering software that may cause the notification email to be sent to your junk email folder. If you do not receive a notification email, please check this folder to see if it has been sent there.

To change the text for this message:

» Expand the **Messages** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Registration Submit Note** field.

MESSAGE—UPDATE SUCCESS

When users successfully update their Feedback comment profiles, they see a message. If you do not enter text, the default is used. This default text is as follows:

Your profile was updated successfully!

To change the text for this message:

» Expand the **Messages** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Update Success** field.

ORIGINAL COMMENT LABEL

To change the text that appears next to the "original comment" field:

» Expand the **Labels** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Original Comment Label** field.

POSTAL CODE LABEL

To change the text that appears next to the "postal code" field:

» Expand the **Labels** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Postal Code Label** field.

SHADOW COLOR

To change the color of the shadow for the item:

» Expand the **General** property group on the right and change the value in the **Shadow Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

SHADOW DISTANCE

To change the distance that the shadow extends from the edge of the item (in pixels):

» Expand the **General** property group on the right and enter a value with the measurement in the **Shadow Distance** field (e.g., 10 px).

SHADOW OPACITY

To change the opacity (transparency) of the shadow for the item, ranging between 0 and 100 (the lower the number, the more transparent):

- Expand the **General** property group on the right and enter a value in the **Shadow Opacity** field (e.g., 65).

SUBJECT LABEL

To change the text that appears next to the "subject" field:

- Expand the **Labels** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Subject Label** field.

SUBMIT BUTTON LABEL

To change the text that appears on the "Submit" button:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Submit Button Label** field.

TITLE FONT COLOR

To change the color of the font used for the title:

- Expand the **Title** property group on the right and change the value in the **Title Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

TITLE FONT FAMILY

To select a specific font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, Verdana) used for the title:

- Expand the **Title** property group on the right and change the value in the **Title Font Family** field. After you click in the field, the Font Family Picker dialog opens. Use this dialog to select the font family and click **OK**.

TITLE FONT SIZE

To change the size of the font used for the title:

- Expand the **Title** property group on the right and change the value in the **Title Font Size** field. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the size of the font in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

TITLE FONT STYLE

To change the style of the font (e.g., make it italic) used for the title:

- Expand the **Title** property group on the right and change the value in the **Title Font Style** field. Click the down arrow and select either **italic** or **normal**.

TITLE FONT VARIANT

To change the variant of the font (e.g., small caps) used for the title:

- Expand the **Title** property group on the right and change the value in the **Title Font Variant** field. Click the down arrow and select either **normal** or **small-caps**.

TITLE FONT WEIGHT

To change the weight of the font (e.g., make it bold) used for the title:

- Expand the **Title** property group on the right and change the value in the **Title Font Weight** field. Click the down arrow and select either **bold** or **normal**.

TITLE LABEL

To change the text that appears in the title:

- Expand the **Title** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Title Label** field.

USER NAME LABEL

To change the text that appears next to the "user name" field:

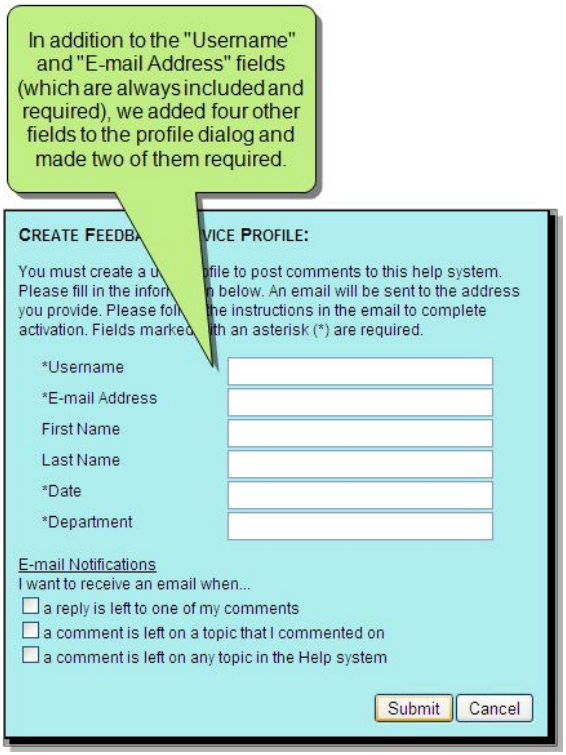
» Expand the **Labels** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Username Label** field.

7. Click to save your work.

Feedback User Profile Items in Standard Skins

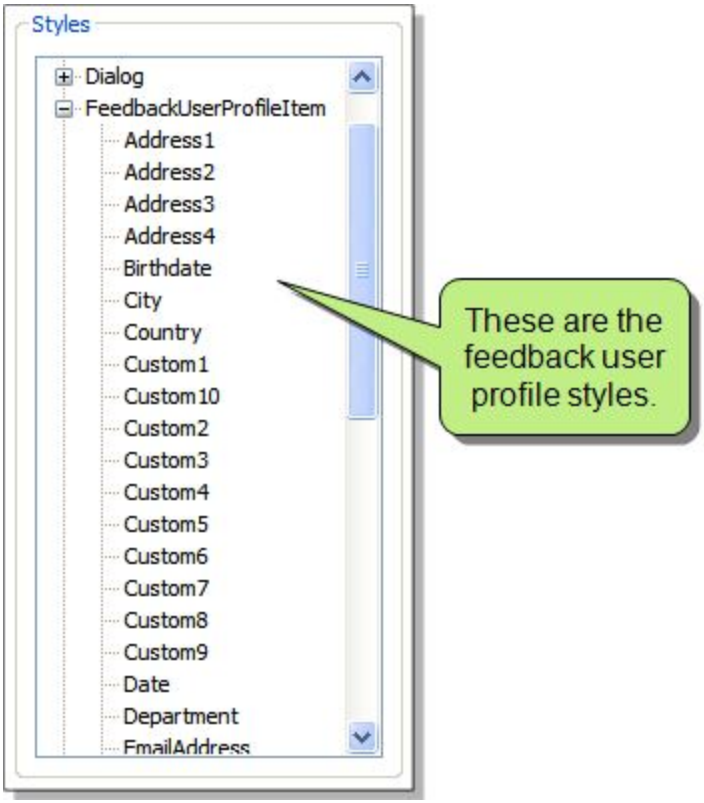
This feature is supported in Microsoft HTML Help, WebHelp, and WebHelp Plus output.

When users submit MadCap Feedback comments, they must complete the Create Feedback Service Profile dialog (unless you have enabled anonymous comments). You can specify which fields are included in this dialog. In addition, you can use the Styles tab in the skin to change the text for each of those fields, as well as to specify which fields are required and whether a field should have a default value.



HOW TO SPECIFY STYLE SETTINGS FOR FEEDBACK USER PROFILE ITEMS

1. Open a Standard skin.
2. Select the **Styles** tab.
3. In the **Styles** section, expand the **Feedback User Profile Item** node.



4. Select the item that you want to edit. If you want the setting(s) to be applied to all of the items, select the **Feedback User Profile Item** node itself.

   The items under this node represent the different fields that can be included in the Create Service Profile dialog. In addition to the many standard fields that can be included (e.g., Address1, City, Department, Occupation), you

can add up to 10 custom fields (e.g., Custom1, Custom2, Custom3), which can be used for any kind of field not already available.

5. Select the **Property Groups** or **Alphabetical List** option to display the properties for the style item.
6. In the **Properties** section, set the values for the properties that you want modify.

DEFAULT VALUE

To enter a default value for the item—the user will see this text in the field initially (e.g., perhaps you would enter "United States" as the default value for the Country field):

» Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **DefaultValue** field.

GENDER LABEL—FEMALE

To change the text that represents the "female" option in the "gender" drop-down field (this property displays only if you have selected the "Gender" style first):

» Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Gender Female Name** field.

If you include the gender option in your registration dialog, you might use this field to localize the text in other languages.

GENDER LABEL—MALE

To change the text that represents the "male" option in the "gender" drop-down field (this property displays only if you have selected the "Gender" style first):

» Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Gender Male Name** field.

If you include the gender option in your registration dialog, you might use this field to localize the text in other languages.

LABEL

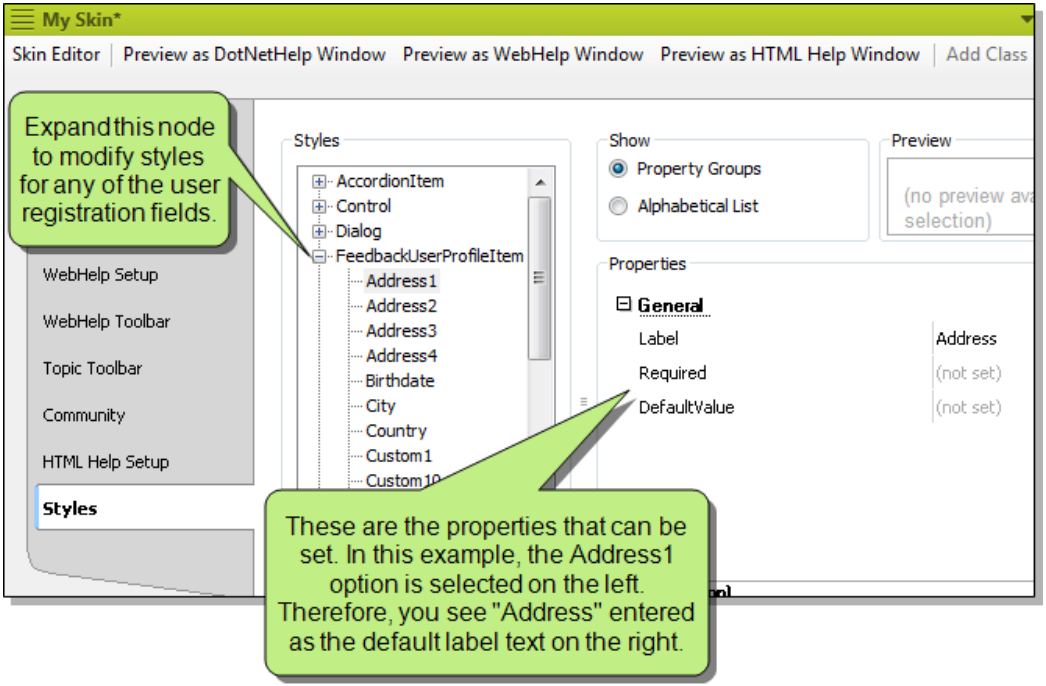
To change the text that appears on the item:

» Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Label** field.

REQUIRED

To specify whether the field should be required (i.e., end users must complete the field to move on):

» Expand the **General** property group on the right and change the value in the **Required** field. Click the down arrow and select either **false** (not required) or **true** (required).



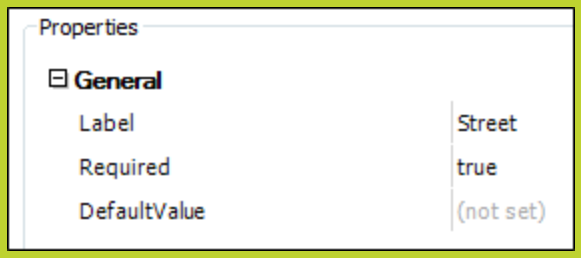
7. Click to save your work.

E X A M P L E

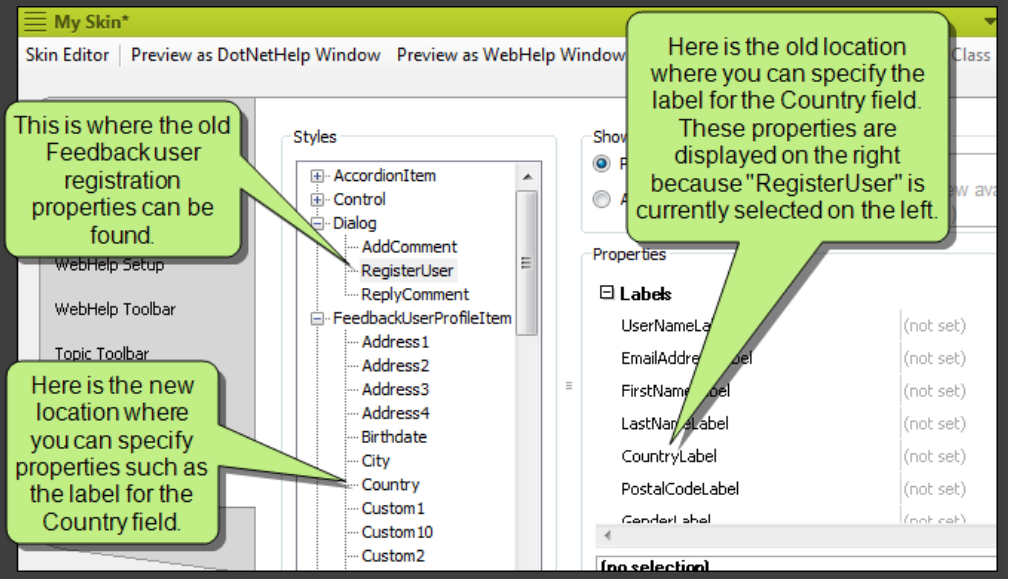
Let's say that you have already used the Feedback User Profile tab in the Skin Editor to add several fields to your Feedback registration dialog, including the Address1 field. Maybe you want to change the label text that is displayed next to that field in the dialog. In that case, you can click to the right of the **Label** field and type something else (e.g., **Street**).

In addition, let's say that you want the Address1 field to be required; end users must complete it in order to move on. In that case, you can click to the right of the **Required** field and select **true**.

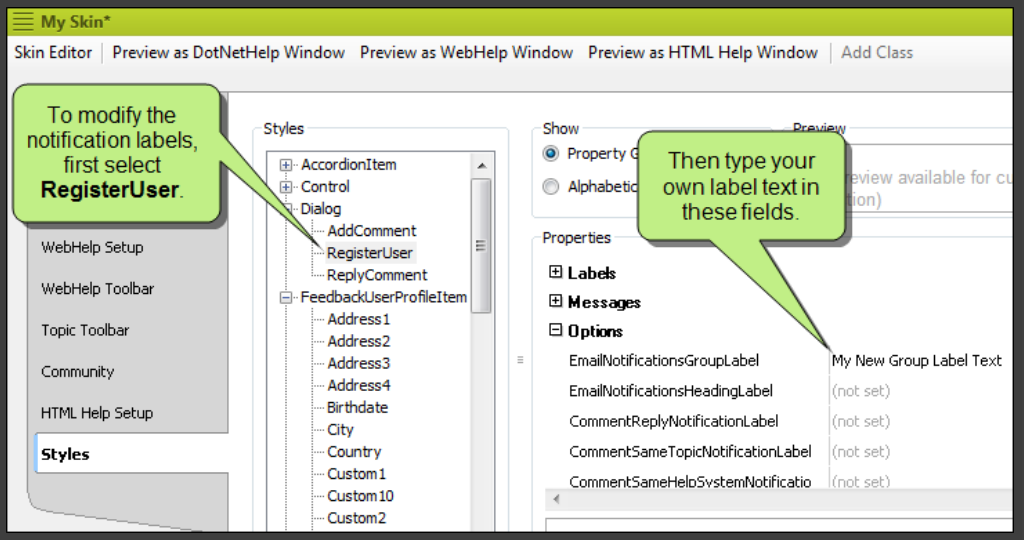
When you are finished, it would look like this:



Note: In order to be backwards compatible with earlier versions, some properties are also still available in the Dialog/Register User node (see "Dialogs in Standard Skins" on page 678). The software will first look to any settings that you have provided in the Feedback User Profile Item node. Then it will look to settings entered in the Dialog/Register User node.



If you want to modify the labels next to the email notification fields in the Create Feedback Service Profile dialog, you need to expand the **Dialog** node and then select **Register User**. In the **Properties** section on the right, expand the **Options** group and change any of the values for the email notification fields.



Formats in Standard Skins

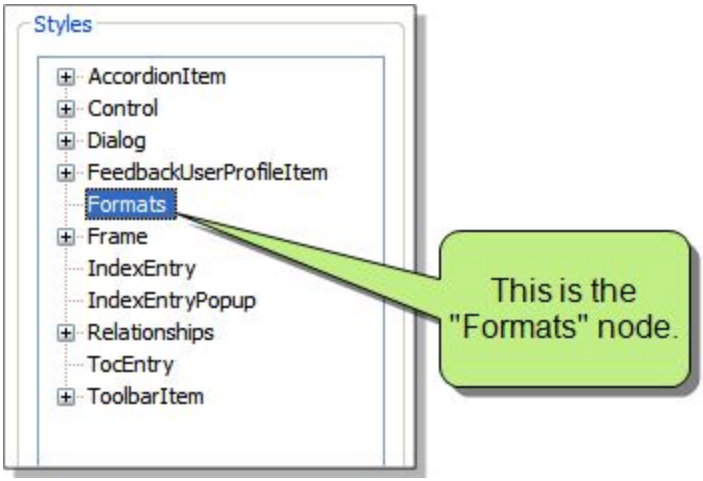
This feature is supported in WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Plus, and to a certain extent in all print outputs (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML).

These are navigation elements that you might include in your project (e.g., cross-references, breadcrumbs, keyword links, related topics links, concept links). For most of these elements, you can use the skin style to change the link or prefix text. For cross-references, you can change text as well as formats (i.e., how the link is constructed).

Styles for many of the formats are supported only in WebHelp, WebHelp Plus, and WebHelp AIR outputs. The formats related to cross-references are supported in print-based outputs (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML).

HOW TO SPECIFY STYLE SETTINGS FOR FORMATS

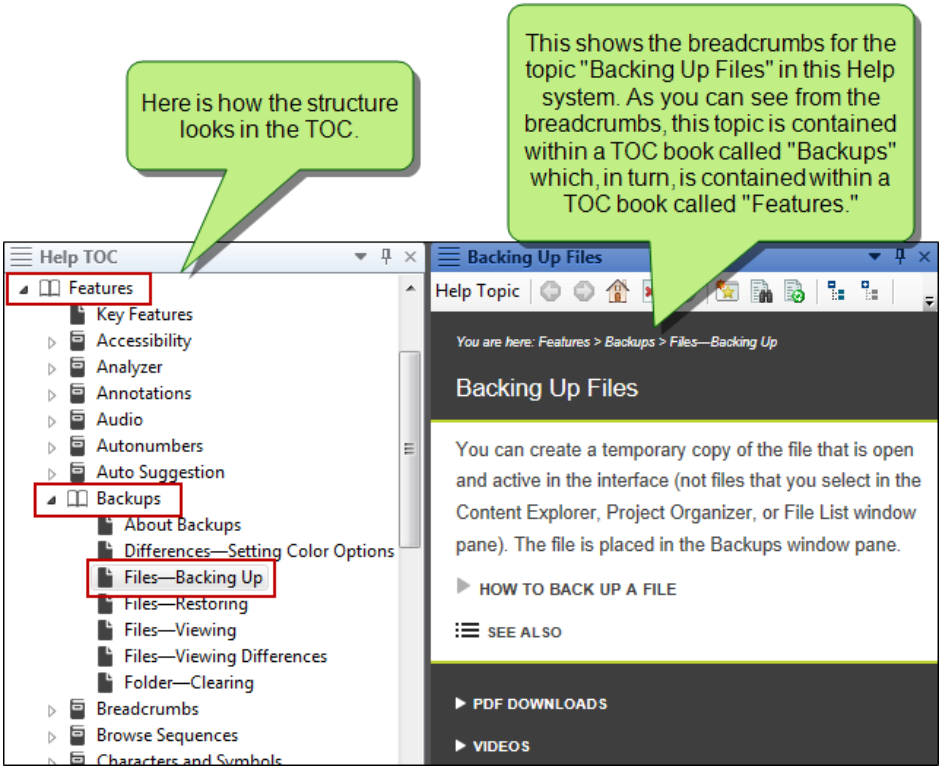
1. Open a Standard skin.
2. Select the **Styles** tab.
3. In the **Styles** section, select the **Formats** node.



Properties for the following elements are shown on the right side of the tab.

BREADCRUMBS

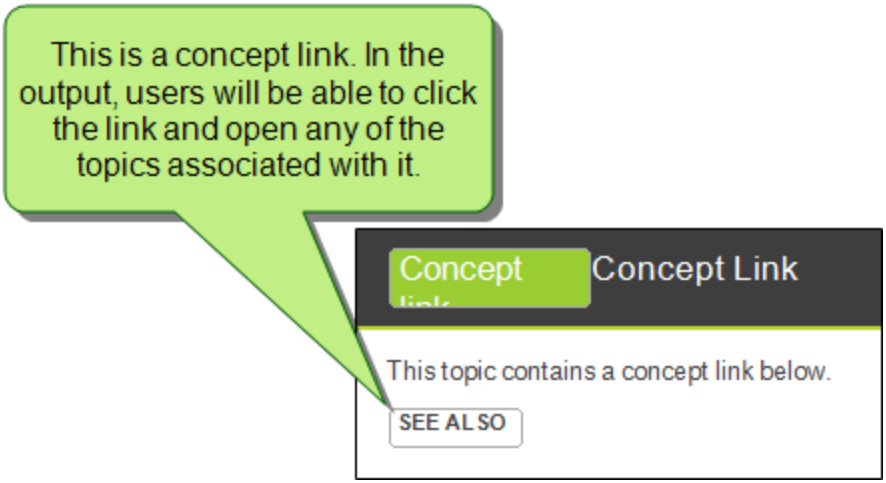
In the output, this is a "trail of breadcrumbs" composed of the table of contents (TOC) entries above the current topic in the TOC hierarchy.



In the skin you can change the prefix text ("You are here") for the breadcrumbs.

CONCEPT LINKS

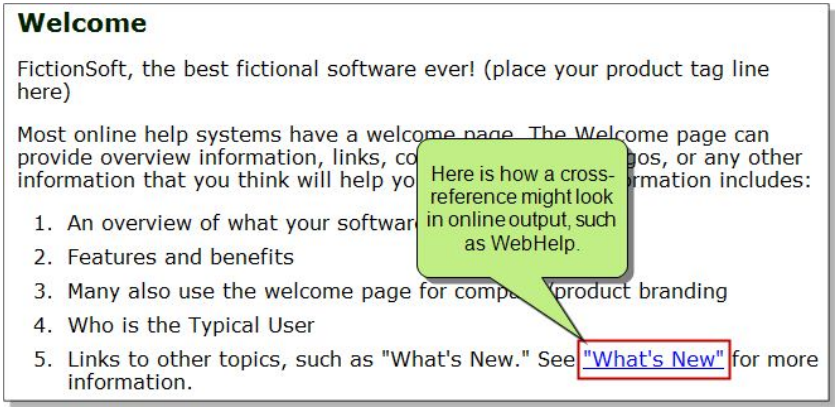
This is a navigation link that lets users open topics that you've determined are related to the current topic. It is similar to the related topics link. However, whereas you associate a related topics link with specific individual topics (usually for a one-time use), you associate a concept link with a group of topics (to be reused in different topics). One great benefit of this type of link is that, if you later want to add or delete topics from the group, you only need to do so in one place and the changes are applied to every topic containing that concept link.

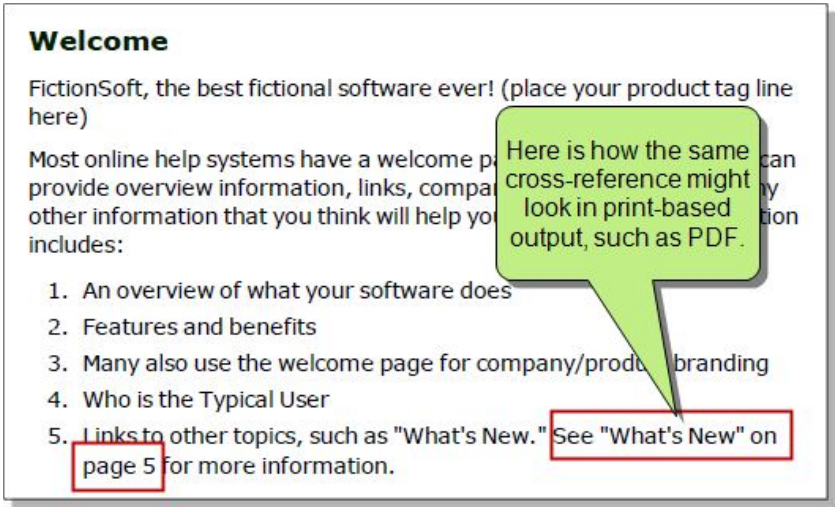


In the skin you can change the text that displays on the link ("See Also").

CROSS-REFERENCES

A cross-reference is a navigation link that lets you connect text in one topic to another topic (or a bookmark within a topic). This is somewhat similar to a text hyperlink. However, cross-references differ from hyperlinks in a few ways. They are based on format commands

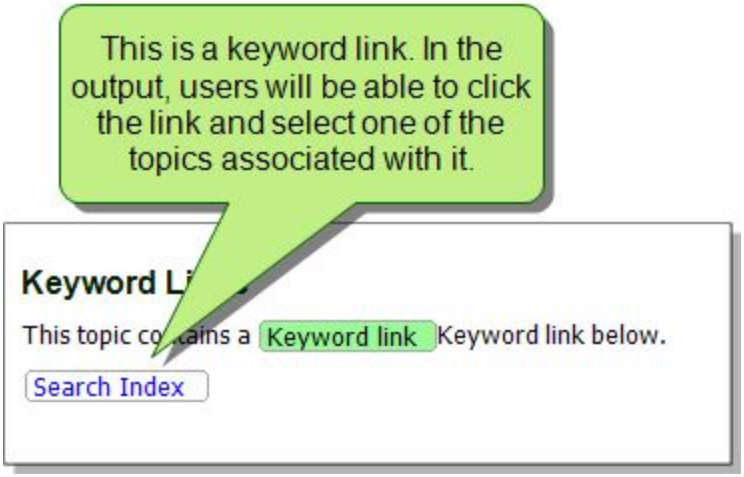




In the skin you can change the cross-reference format used for either online or print-based output. If you are creating context-sensitive cross-references, use a language skin instead of a regular skin.

KEYWORD LINKS

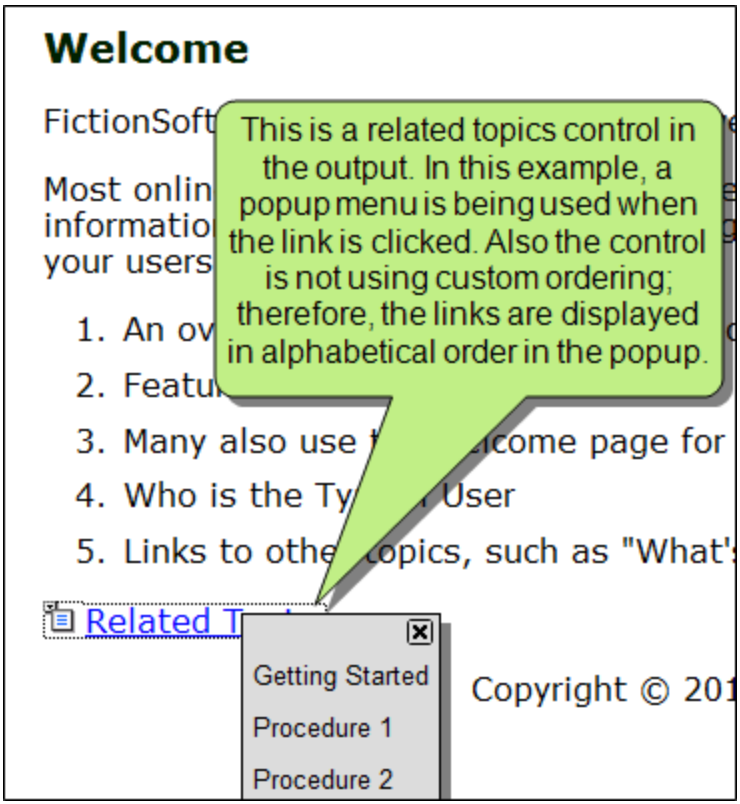
This is a navigation link that lets users open topics related to the current topic based on index keywords that they share.

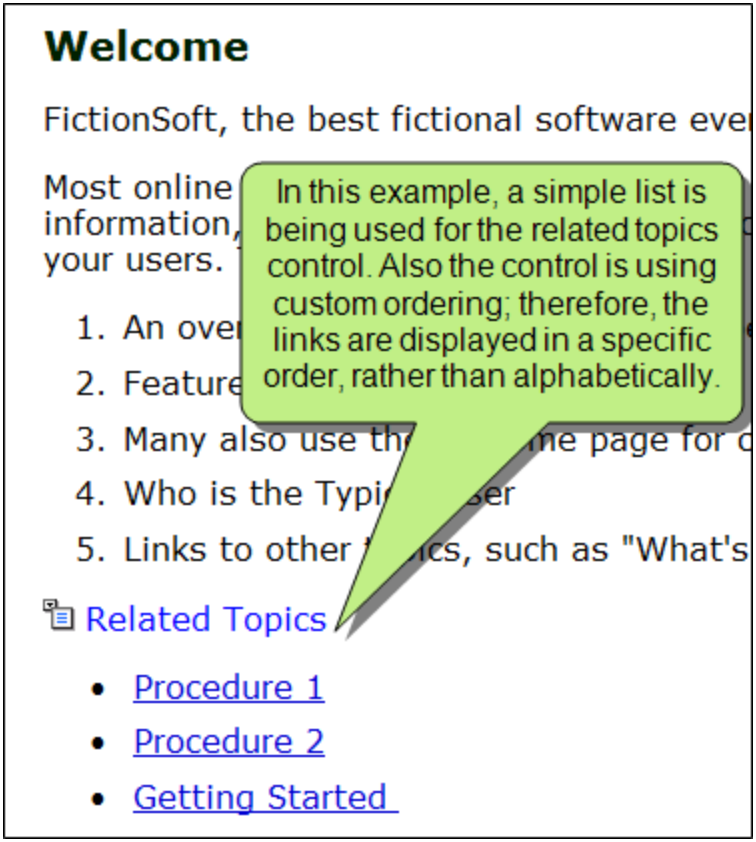


In the skin you can change the text that displays on the link ("Search Index").

RELATED TOPICS

This is a Help control that provides users with list of links to topics that you've specified as being related to the current topic. This is similar to a concept link. You should use a related topics link if you are applying it to a topic that you want to associate with specific topics but you do not plan to reuse the same link in other topics.





In the skin you can change the text that displays on the link ("Related Topics").

4. Select the **Property Groups** or **Alphabetical List** option to display the properties for the node.
5. In the **Properties** section, set the values for the properties that you want modify.

ABOVE REFERENCE

To change the text used when the destination appears above a cross-reference on the same page of print-based output:

» Expand the **Cross-Reference** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Above Reference** field.

BELOW REFERENCE

To change the text used when the destination appears below a cross-reference on the same page of print-based output:

» Expand the **Cross-Reference** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Below Reference** field.

BREADCRUMBS PREFIX

To change the text used at the beginning of a trail of breadcrumbs in online output:

» Expand the **Breadcrumbs** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Breadcrumbs prefix** field.

CONCEPT LINK

To change the text used on a concept link in online output:

» Expand the **Concept Link** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Link Text** field.

FORMAT

To change the command structure of a cross-reference when used in online output:

» Expand the **Cross-Reference** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Format** field, including any format commands. For a list of commands that you can use, see "Editing Cross-Reference Style Formats" on page 88.

FORMAT FOR PRINT

To change the command structure of a cross-reference when used in print-based output:

» Expand the **Cross-Reference** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Format for Print** field, including any format commands. For a list of commands that you can use, see "Editing Cross-Reference Style Formats" on page 88.

KEYWORD LINK

To change the text used on a keyword link in online output:

» Expand the **Keyword Link** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Link Text** field.

ON FACING PAGE REFERENCE

To change the text used when the destination appears on a page adjacent to a cross-reference (e.g., link is on the left page and destination is on the right page) in print-based output:

» Expand the **Cross-Reference** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **On Facing Page Reference** field.

ON NEXT PAGE REFERENCE

To change the text used when the destination appears on the page just after a cross-reference in print-based output:

» Expand the **Cross-Reference** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **On Next Page Reference** field.

ON PAGE REFERENCE

To change the text used when the destination appears more than one page away from a cross-reference in print-based output:

» Expand the **Cross-Reference** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **On Page Reference** field.

ON PREVIOUS PAGE REFERENCE

To change the text used when the destination appears on the page just before a cross-reference in print-based output:

» Expand the **Cross-Reference** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **On Previous Page Reference** field.

RELATED TOPICS

To change the text used on a related topics link in online output:

» Expand the **Related Topics** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Link Text** field.

6. Click to save your work.

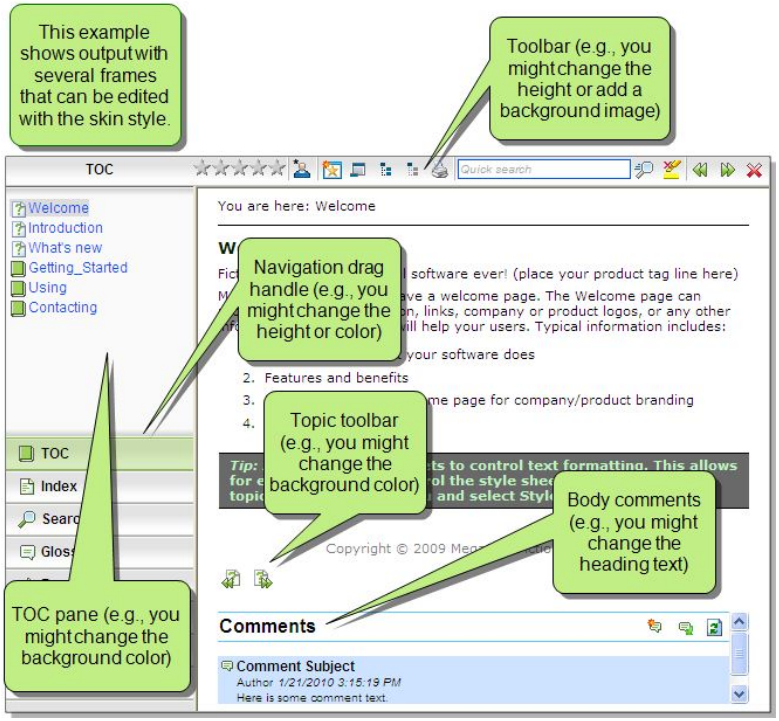
Note: You can also set the format for elements in a regular stylesheet. If you do so, those settings override conflicting settings in the skin.

Frames in Standard Skins

This feature is supported in DotNet Help, Microsoft HTML Help, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, and WebHelp Plus output.

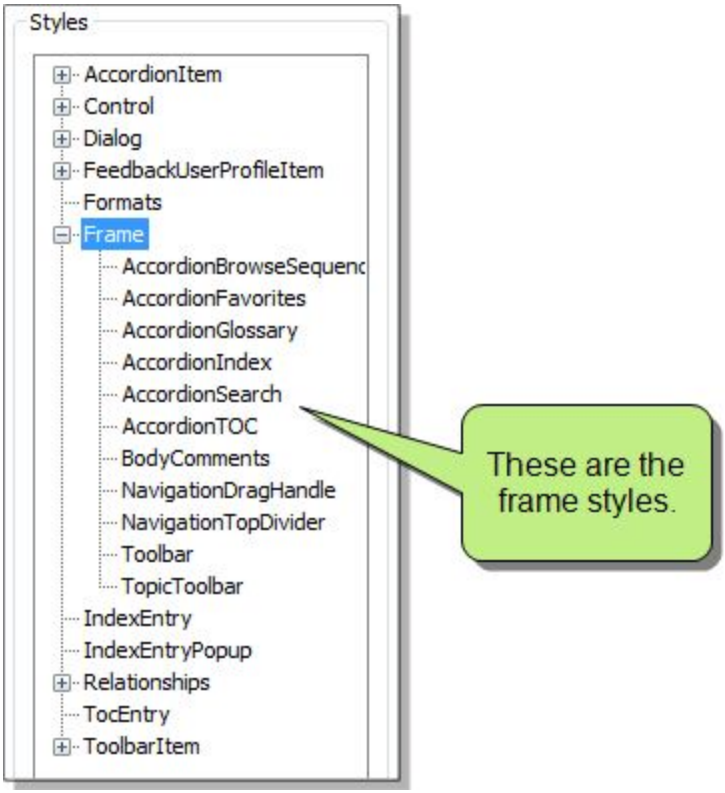
When it comes to skins, frames refer to the "containers" of the navigation items that display in the output when you include elements such as accordion items, toolbars, and Feedback at the end of topics. In order to see these items in the output, you must include them in your project.

Some of these styles are supported only in WebHelp, WebHelp Plus, and WebHelp AIR.



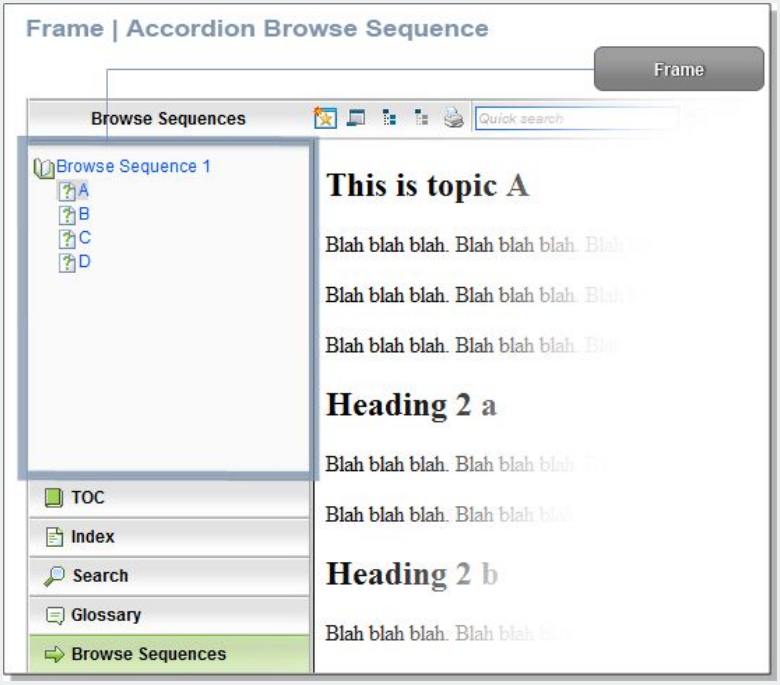
HOW TO SPECIFY STYLE SETTINGS FOR FRAMES

1. Open a Standard skin.
2. Select the **Styles** tab.
3. In the **Styles** section, expand the **Frame** node.

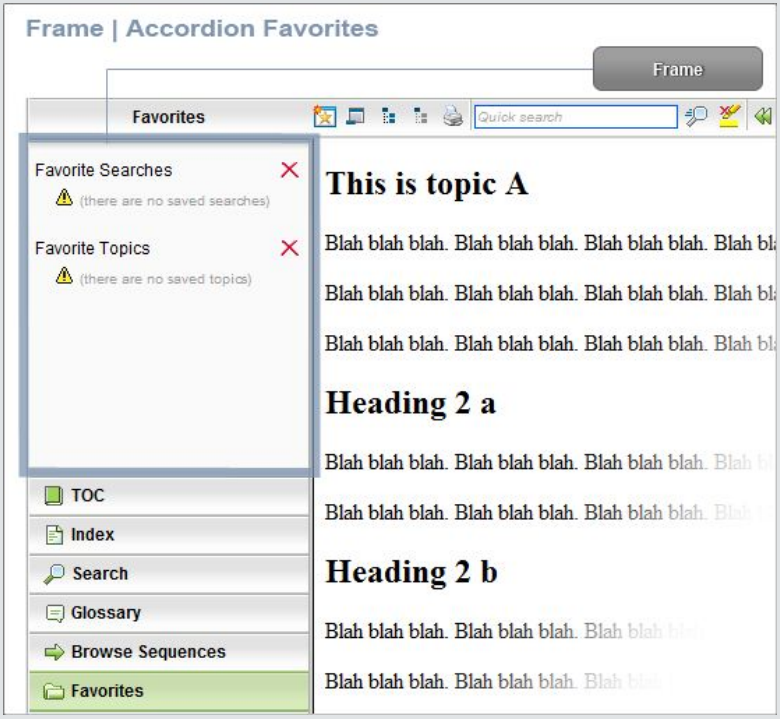


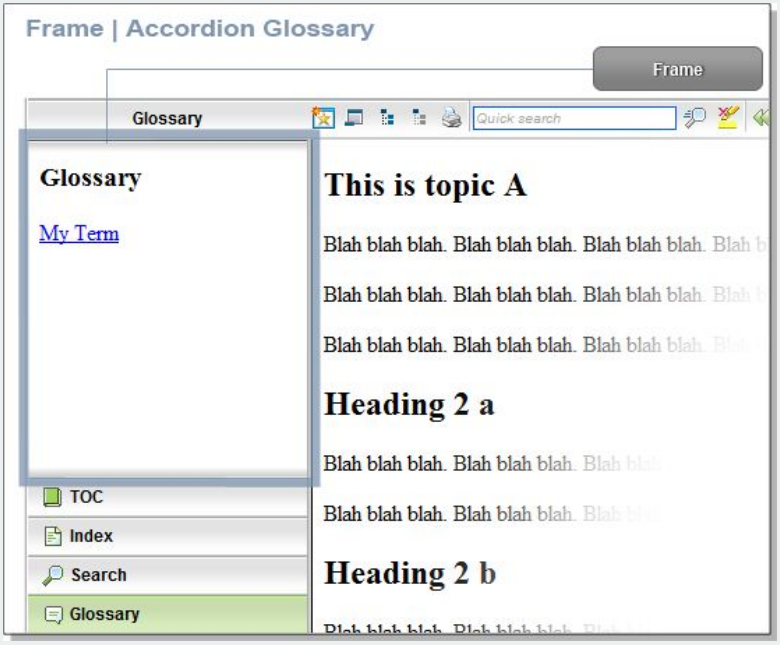
4. Select the item that you want to edit. If you want the setting(s) to be applied to all of the items, select the **Frame** node itself.

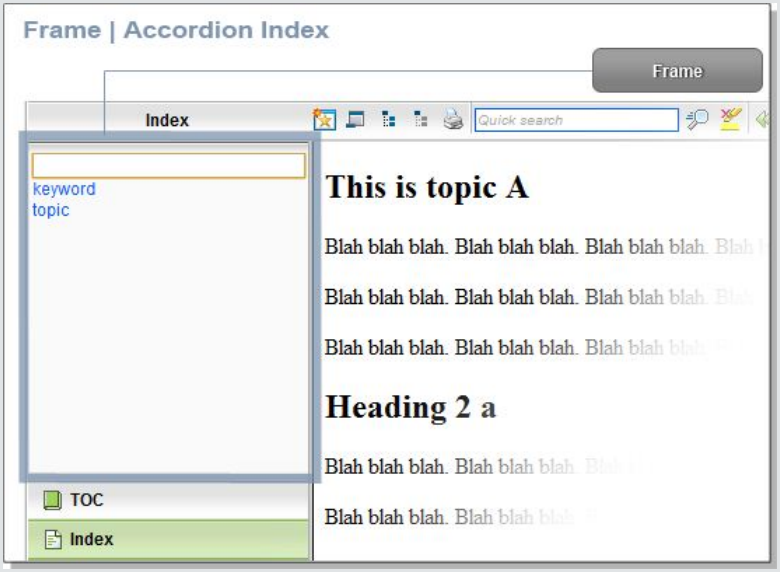
   The items under this node represent the different kinds of frames that may be found in your output.

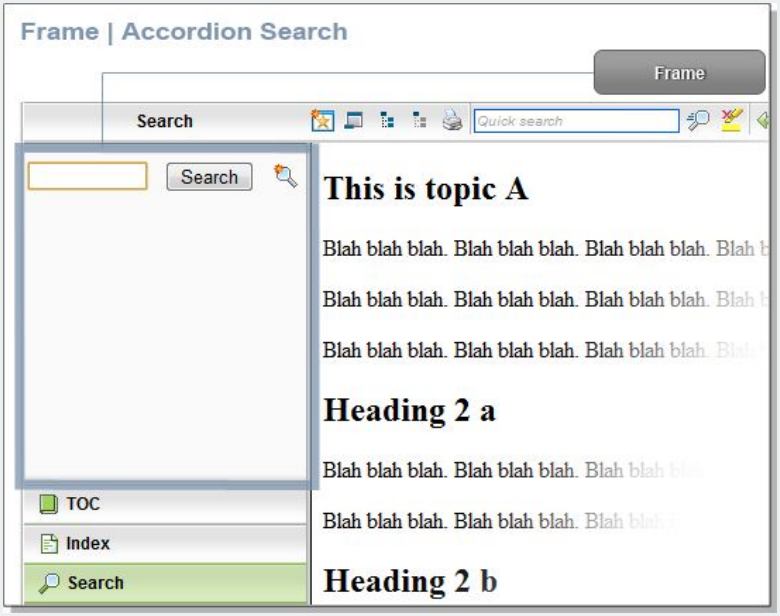
Accordion Browse Sequence	This is the frame that holds the browse sequences. 

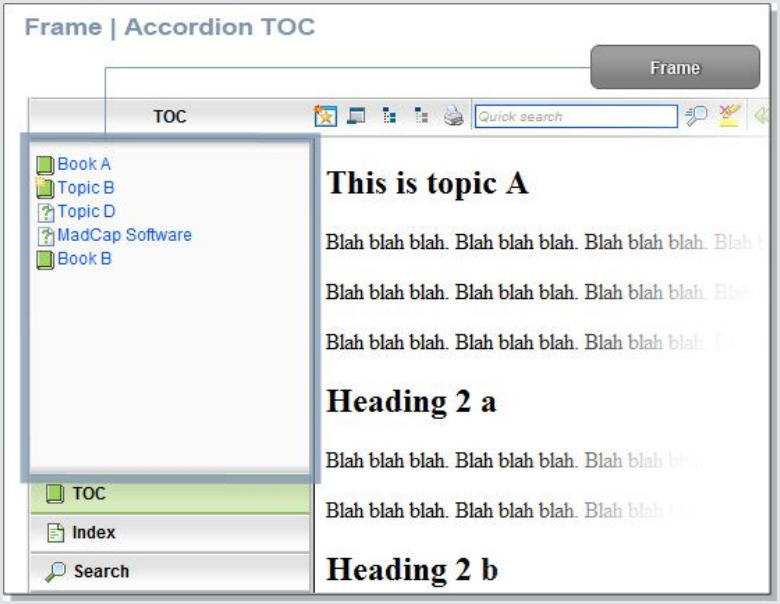
Accordion Favorites	This is the frame that holds the search string and topic favorites.



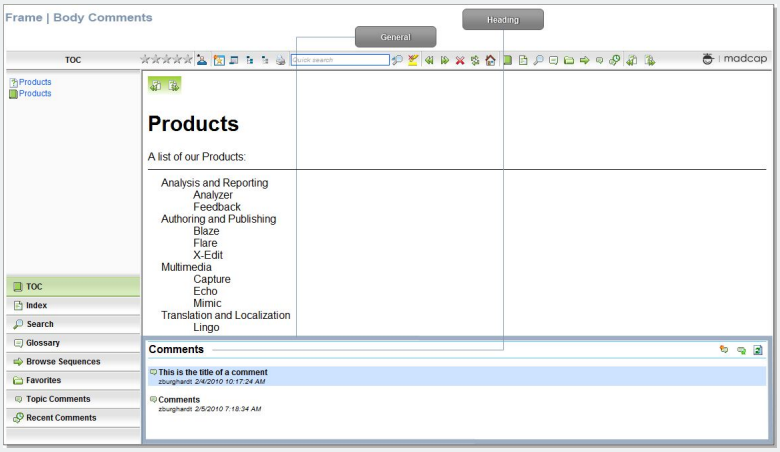
Accordion Glossary	This is the frame that holds the glossary. 

Accordion Index	This is the frame that holds the index. 

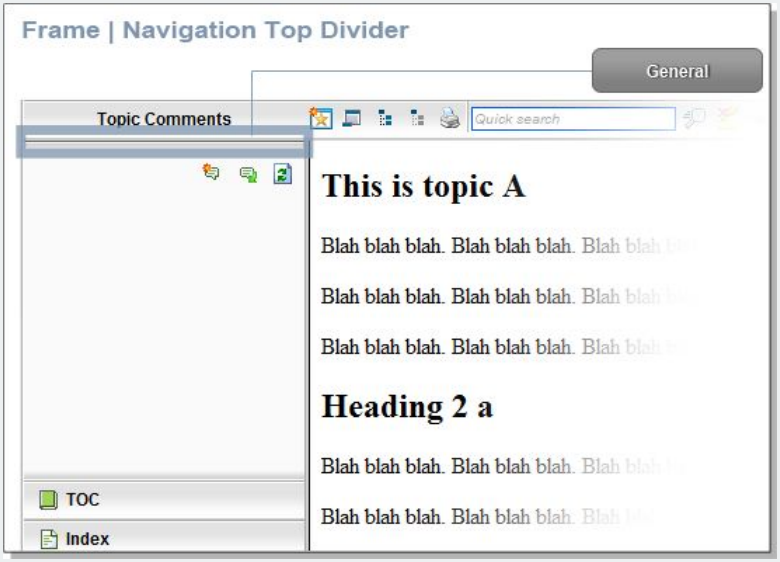
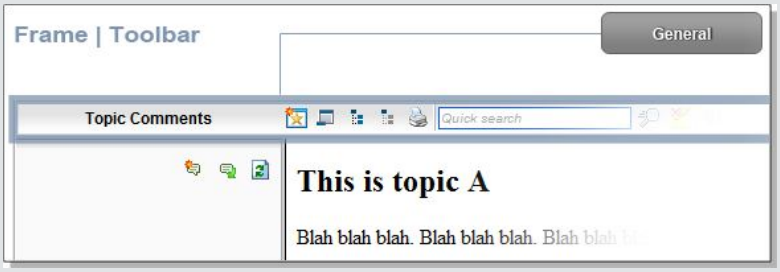
Accordion Search	This is the frame that holds the search fields and results. 

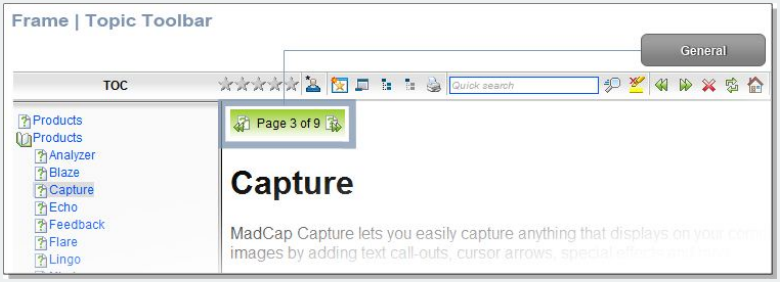
Accordion TOC	This is the frame that holds the table of contents (TOC). 

Body Comments	This is the frame that holds the topic comments associated with MadCap Feedback at the bottom of topics.



Navigation Drag Handle	This is the divider between the active navigation feature and the navigation bars. Users can click the handle of this divider and drag it to adjust the space in the navigation pane.

Navigation Top Divider	This is the top edge of the navigation pane. 
Toolbar	This is the frame that holds the WebHelp toolbar. 

Topic Toolbar	This is the frame that holds a custom topic toolbar. 

5. Select the **Property Groups** or **Alphabetical List** option to display the properties for the style item.
6. In the **Properties** section, set the values for the properties that you want modify.

BACKGROUND COLOR

To change the background color of the item:

» Expand the **Frame** or **General** property group (depending on the item you selected) on the right and change the value in the **Background Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

BACKGROUND GRADIENT

To change the background gradient color of the item:

» Expand the **General** property group on the right and change the value in the **Background Gradient** field to apply a color progression effect. The background changes from one color to another. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, click the down arrow next to the **Start** field and select a color to use at the beginning of the gradient. Then click the down arrow next to the **End** field and select the color to use at the end of the gradient. Finally, click the down arrow next to the **Style** field and select a direction for the gradient effect or choose "solid." Click **OK** to accept the settings. When you click off the properties field, a small icon is displayed in the field, showing how the effect will look. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

BACKGROUND GRADIENT PRESSED

To change the background gradient color of the item when it is pressed:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right and change the value in the **Background Gradient Pressed** field to apply a color progression effect. The background changes from one color to another. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, click the down arrow next to the **Start** field and select a color to use at the beginning of the gradient. Then click the down arrow next to the **End** field and select the color to use at the end of the gradient. Finally, click the down arrow next to the **Style** field and select a direction for the gradient effect or choose "solid." Click **OK** to accept the settings. When you click off the properties field, a small icon is displayed in the field, showing how the effect will look. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

BACKGROUND IMAGE

To add a background image to the item:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right and select an image in the **Background Image** field. Click the down arrow in this field and then select **Browse for Image** to find and select an image file.

BACKGROUND IMAGE PRESSED

To add a background image to the item when it is pressed:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right and select an image in the **Background Image Pressed** field. Click the down arrow in this field and then select **Browse for Image** to find and select an image file.

BORDERS

To add or change borders for the item:

- Expand the **Heading** property group on the right and change the value in any of the "Border" fields (e.g., Border Left, Border Right). Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the width of the border in the lower-left field. You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-left drop-down arrow. You can select a color for the border using the upper-right drop-down arrow. And you can select the type of line for the border (e.g., solid, dashed, dotted) using the lower-right drop-down arrow.

FONT COLOR

To change the color of the font for the item heading:

- Expand the **Heading** property group on the right and change the value in the **Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

FONT FAMILY

To select a specific font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, Verdana) for the item heading:

- Expand the **Heading** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Family** field. After you click in the field, the Font Family Picker dialog opens. Use this dialog to select the font family and click **OK**.

FONT SIZE

To change the size of the font for the item heading:

- Expand the **Heading** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Size** field. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the size of the font in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

FONT STYLE

To change the style of the font (e.g., make it italic) for the item heading:

- Expand the **Heading** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Style** field. Click the down arrow and select either **italic** or **normal**.

FONT WEIGHT

To change the weight of the font (e.g., make it bold) for the item heading:

- Expand the **Heading** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Weight** field. Click the down arrow and select either **bold** or **normal**.

HEIGHT

To change the height of the item:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right and change the value in the **Height** field. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the item height in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

LABEL

To change the heading text that appears on the item:

- Expand the **Heading** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Label** field.

SCROLLING FOR ACCESSIBILITY

To enable scrolling in order to make the toolbar accessible:

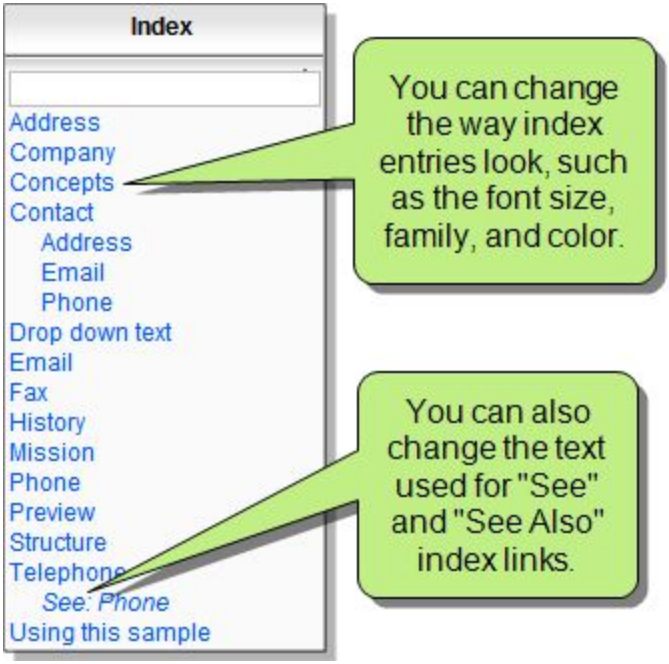
- Expand the **Frame** property group on the right side of the editor. Click in the cell to the right of **Scrolling** and select **auto**. For more information on this option, see the online Help.

7. Click to save your work.

Index Entries in Standard Skins

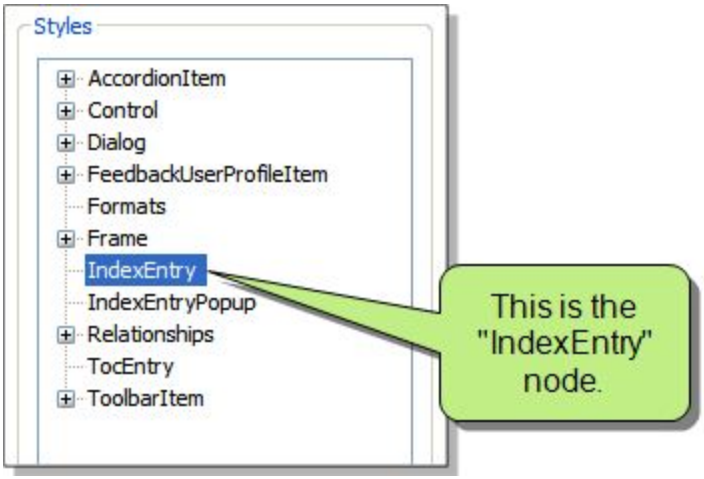
This feature is supported in WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, and WebHelp Plus output.

Using a skin, you can modify the appearance of index entries in online output. In order to see these items in the output, you must include them in your project.



HOW TO SPECIFY STYLE SETTINGS FOR INDEX ENTRIES

1. Open a Standard skin.
2. Select the **Styles** tab.
3. In the **Styles** section, select the **Index Entry** node.



4. Select the **Property Groups** or **Alphabetical List** option to display the properties for the node.
5. In the **Properties** section, set the values for the properties that you want modify.

   FONT BACKGROUND COLOR

   To change the color of the area behind the font:

   » Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Background Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

FONT COLOR

To change the color of the font:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

FONT FAMILY

To select a specific font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, Verdana):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Family** field. After you click in the field, the Font Family Picker dialog opens. Use this dialog to select the font family and click **OK**.

FONT SIZE

To change the size of the font:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Size** field. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the size of the font in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

FONT STYLE

To change the style of the font (e.g., make it italic):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Style** field. Click the down arrow and select either **italic** or **normal**.

FONT WEIGHT

To change the weight of the font (e.g., make it bold):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Weight** field. Click the down arrow and select either **bold** or **normal**.

SEE REFERENCE

To change the text that appears on "See" index links:

» Expand the **Labels** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **See Reference** field.

SEE ALSO REFERENCE

To change the text that appears on "See Also" index links:

» Expand the **Labels** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **See Also Reference** field.

SELECTION BACKGROUND COLOR

To change the color of the area behind the font after the index entry has been selected:

» Expand the **Selection** property group on the right and change the value in the **Selection Background Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

SELECTION COLOR

To change the color of the font after the index entry has been selected:

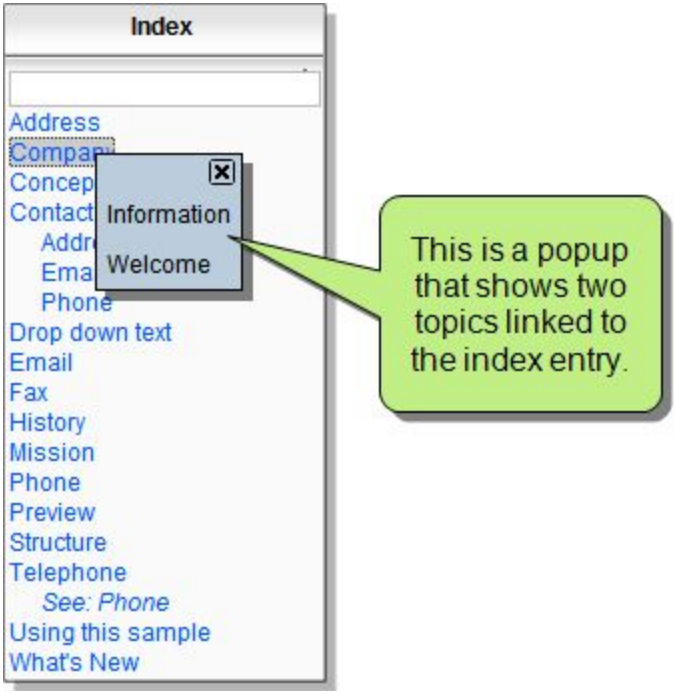
» Expand the **Selection** property group on the right and change the value in the **Selection Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

6. Click to save your work.

Index Entry Popups in Standard Skins

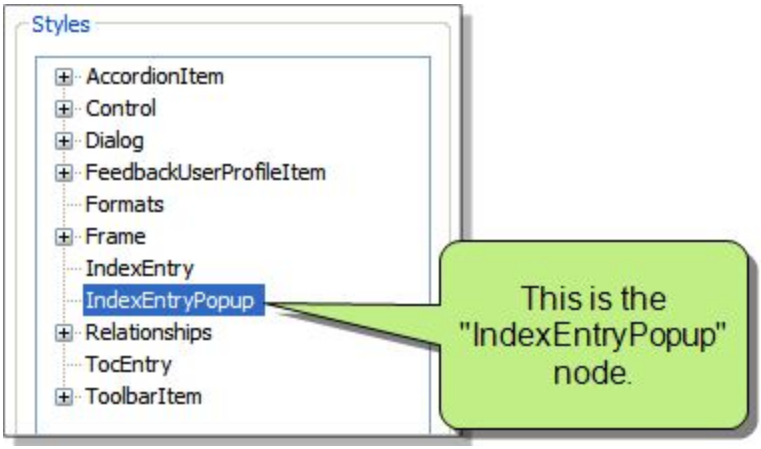
This feature is supported in WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, and WebHelp Plus output.

Using a skin, you can modify the appearance of index entry popups in online output. These are the popups that users see when they click an index entry that links to more than one topic. In order to see these items in the output, you must include them in your project.



HOW TO SPECIFY STYLE SETTINGS FOR INDEX ENTRY POPUPS

1. Open a Standard skin.
2. Select the **Styles** tab.
3. In the **Styles** section, select the **Index Entry Popup** node.



4. Select the **Property Groups** or **Alphabetical List** option to display the properties for the node.
5. In the **Properties** section, set the values for the properties that you want modify.

   FONT BACKGROUND COLOR

   To change the color of the area behind the font:

   » Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Background Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

FONT COLOR

To change the color of the font:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

FONT FAMILY

To select a specific font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, Verdana):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Family** field. After you click in the field, the Font Family Picker dialog opens. Use this dialog to select the font family and click **OK**.

FONT SIZE

To change the size of the font:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Size** field. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the size of the font in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

FONT STYLE

To change the style of the font (e.g., make it italic):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Style** field. Click the down arrow and select either **italic** or **normal**.

FONT WEIGHT

To change the weight of the font (e.g., make it bold):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Weight** field. Click the down arrow and select either **bold** or **normal**.

HOVER FONT BACKGROUND COLOR

To change the color of the area behind the font when users hover over it:

- Expand the **HoverFont** property group on the right and change the value in the **Hover Background Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

HOVER FONT COLOR

To change the color of the font when users hover over it:

- Expand the **HoverFont** property group on the right and change the value in the **Hover Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

HOVER FONT FAMILY

To select a specific font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, Verdana) when users hover over it:

- Expand the **HoverFont** property group on the right and change the value in the **Hover Font Family** field. After you click in the field, the Font Family Picker dialog opens. Use this dialog to select the font family and click **OK**.

HOVER FONT SIZE

To change the size of the font when users hover over it:

- Expand the **HoverFont** property group on the right and change the value in the **Hover Font Size** field. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the size of the font in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

HOVER FONT STYLE

To change the style of the font (e.g., make it italic) when users hover over it:

- Expand the **HoverFont** property group on the right and change the value in the **Hover Font Style** field. Click the down arrow and select either **italic** or **normal**.

HOVER FONT WEIGHT

To change the weight of the font (e.g., make it bold) when users hover over it:

» Expand the **HoverFont** property group on the right and change the value in the **Hover Font Weight** field. Click the down arrow and select either **bold** or **normal**.

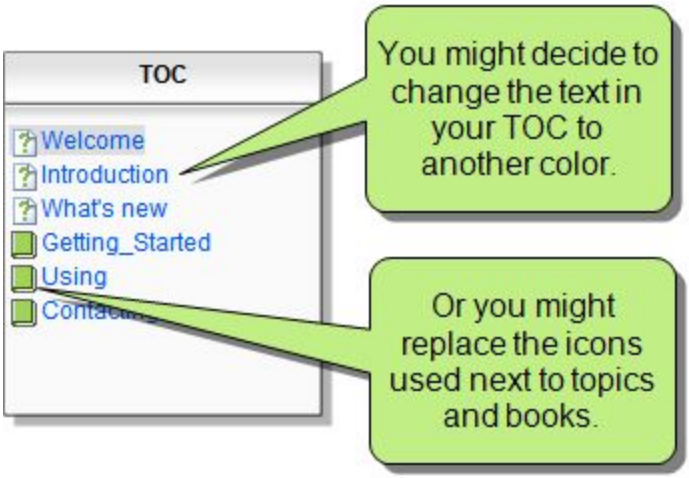
6. Click to save your work.

TOC Entries in Standard Skins

This feature is supported in Microsoft HTML Help, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, and WebHelp Plus output.

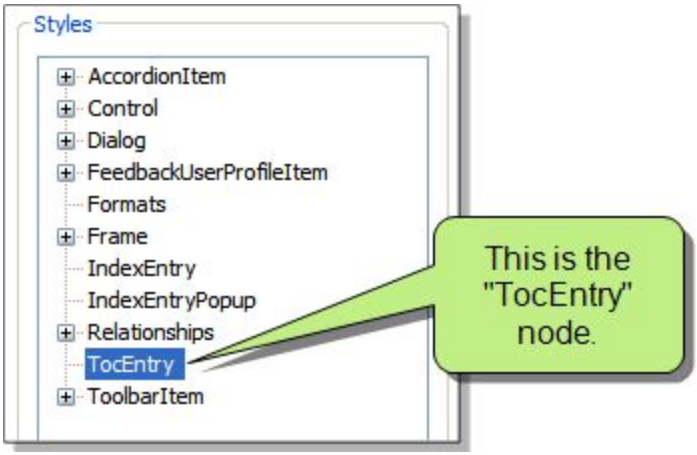
Using a skin, you can modify the appearance of table of contents (TOC) entries in online output. In order to see these items in the output, you must include them in your project.

Styles for many of the TOC entries are supported only in WebHelp, WebHelp Plus, and WebHelp AIR outputs. However, there is one icon style that is supported only in Microsoft HTML Help.



HOW TO SPECIFY STYLE SETTINGS FOR TOC ENTRIES

1. Open a Standard skin.
2. Select the **Styles** tab.
3. In the **Styles** section, select the **Toc Entry** node.



4. Select the **Property Groups** or **Alphabetical List** option to display the properties for the node.
5. In the **Properties** section, set the values for the properties that you want modify.

   BOOK ICON

   To select a different icon image for the book items in the TOC:

   » Expand the **TocIcons** property group on the right side of the editor and select an image from the **Book Icon** field. Click the down arrow in this field and then select **Browse for Image** to find and select an image file.

   BOOK ICON ALTERNATE TEXT

   To change the alternate text for the book icon:

   » Expand the **TocIcons** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Book Icon Alternate Text** field.

BOOK OPEN ICON

To select a different icon image for the book items in the TOC when they are open (or selected):

- Expand the **TocIcons** property group on the right side of the editor and select an image from the **Book Open Icon** field. Click the down arrow in this field and then select **Browse for Image** to find and select an image file.

BOOK OPEN ICON ALTERNATE TEXT

To change the alternate text for the book icons in the TOC when they are open (or selected):

- Expand the **TocIcons** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Book Open Icon Alternate Text** field.

FONT BACKGROUND COLOR

To change the color of the area behind the font:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Background Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

FONT COLOR

To change the color of the font:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

FONT FAMILY

To select a specific font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, Verdana):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Family** field. After you click in the field, the Font Family Picker dialog opens. Use this dialog to select the font family and click **OK**.

FONT SIZE

To change the size of the font:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Size** field. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the size of the font in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

FONT STYLE

To change the style of the font (e.g., make it italic):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Style** field. Click the down arrow and select either **italic** or **normal**.

FONT WEIGHT

To change the weight of the font (e.g., make it bold):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Weight** field. Click the down arrow and select either **bold** or **normal**.

HTML HELP ICON INDEX

To select a different icon image for the items in HTML Help:

- Expand the **TocIcons** property group on the right side of the editor and select an image from the **Html Help Icon Index** field.

MARK AS NEW

To specify whether all TOC icons to include an asterisk (indicating a new entry). This feature is not supported in DotNet Help.

- Expand the **TocIcons** property group on the right and change the value in the **Mark As New** field. Click the down arrow and select either **false** or **true**.

MARK AS NEW ALTERNATE TEXT

- Expand the **TocIcons** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Mark As New Icon Alternate Text** field.

TOPIC ICON

To select a different icon image for the topic items in the TOC:

» Expand the **TocIcons** property group on the right side of the editor and select an image from the **Topic Icon** field. Click the down arrow in this field and then select **Browse for Image** to find and select an image file.

TOPIC ICON ALTERNATE TEXT

To change the alternate text for the topic icon:

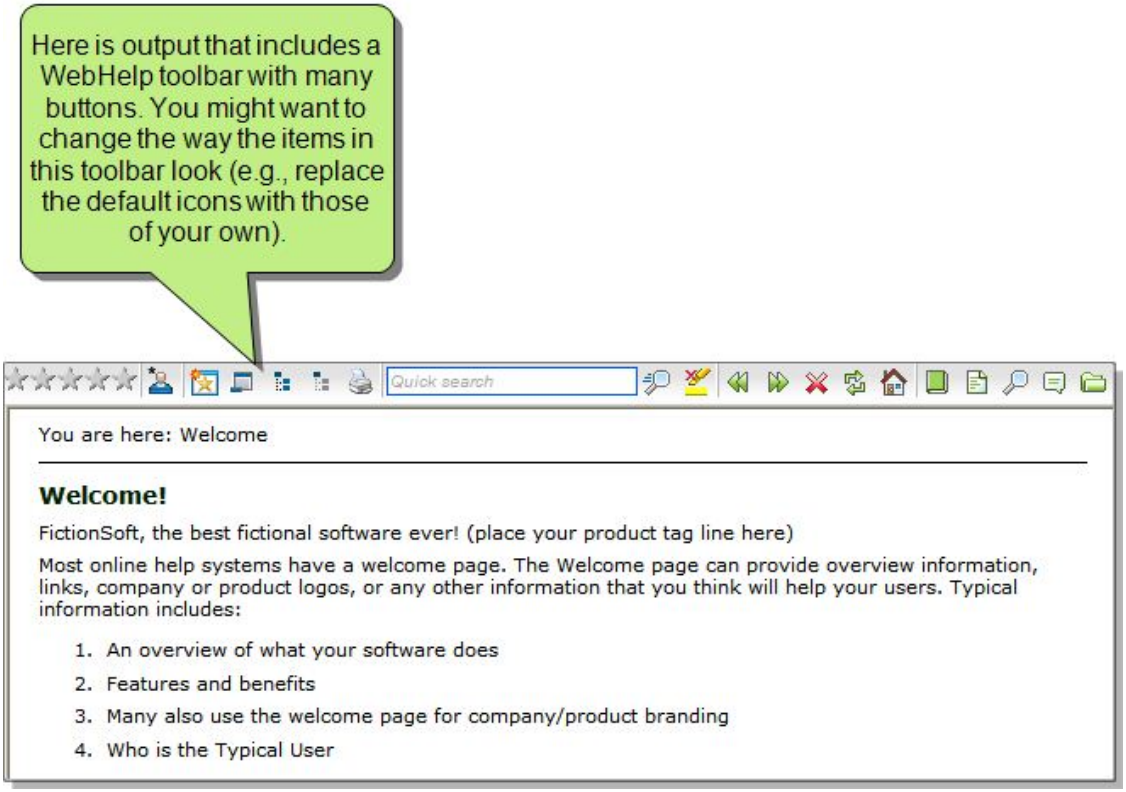
» Expand the **TocIcons** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Topic Icon Alternate Text** field.

6. Click to save your work.

Toolbar Items in Standard Skins

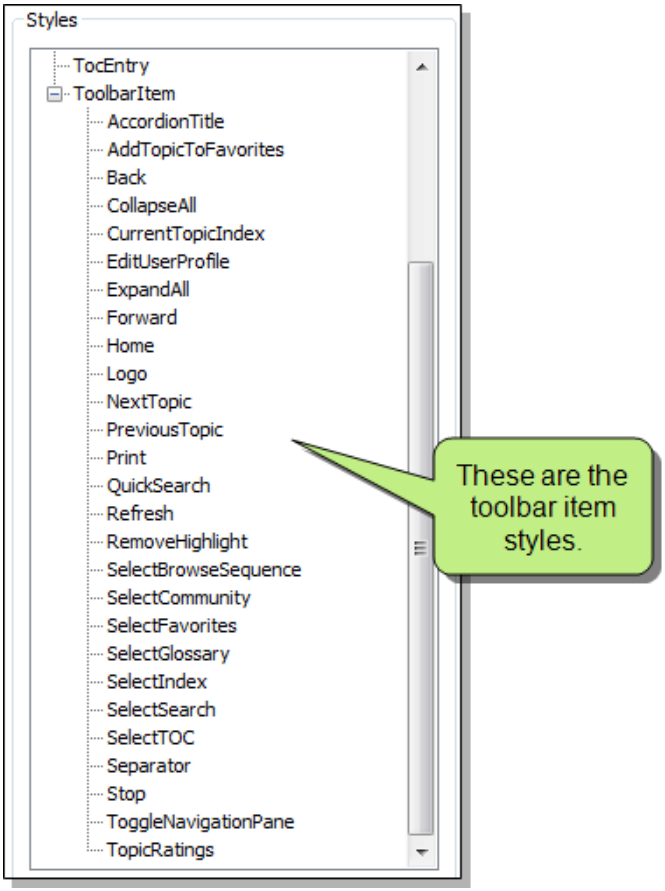
This feature is supported in DotNet Help, Microsoft HTML Help, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, and WebHelp Plus output.

Using a skin, you can modify the appearance of WebHelp toolbars and topic toolbars that you include in your output.



HOW TO SPECIFY STYLE SETTINGS FOR TOOLBAR ITEMS

1. Open a Standard skin.
2. Select the **Styles** tab.
3. In the **Styles** section, expand the **Toolbar Item** node.



4. Select the item that you want to edit. If you want the setting(s) to be applied to all of the items, select the **Toolbar Item** node itself.

   The items under this node represent the different kinds of toolbar items that may be found in your output.

   ACCORDION TITLE

   Displays the name of the accordion item, which is next to the WebHelp toolbar.

   ADD TOPIC TO FAVORITES

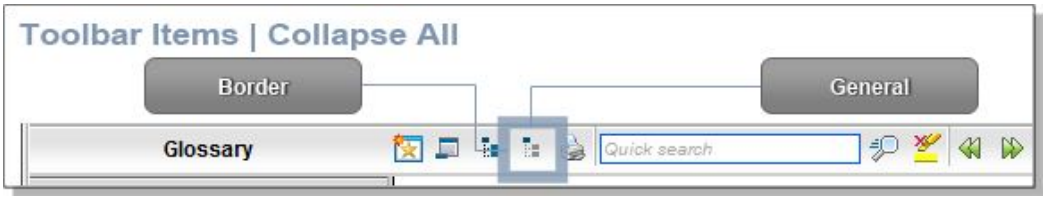
   Lets users add the active topic to the Favorites pane so that they can quickly access the topic in the future.

   BACK

   Lets users open the topic that was viewed previously.

COLLAPSE ALL

Lets users collapse all elements such as togglers, drop-down effects, and expanding text effects in a topic (if they are expanded).



CURRENT TOPIC INDEX

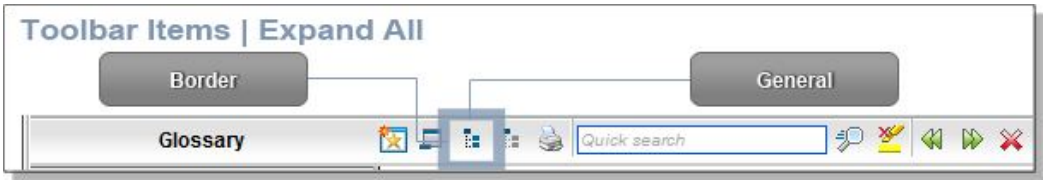
Lets users see the display for the current topic in the sequence. This label is typically used in conjunction with the "Next Topic" and "Previous Topic" buttons when the topic in question exists in a browse sequence. Flare finds the current topic in a browse sequence and display its position in relation to the rest of the topics in that sequence. (The root node is used to determine the count; in other words, if there are "child" topics in the sequence structure under the current topic, they will be included in the count.)

EDIT USER PROFILE

Lets users edit their Feedback registration profile settings.

EXPAND ALL

Lets users expand all elements such as togglers, drop-down effects, and expanding text effects in a topic (if they are not yet expanded).



FORWARD

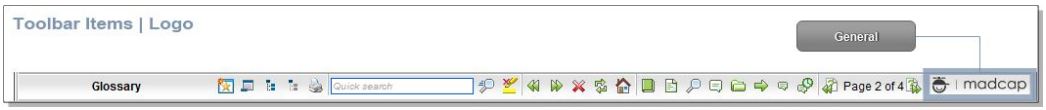
Lets users open the next topic in a previously viewed sequence.

HOME

Lets users open a designated home page (such as your company's website).

LOGO

Displays a logo.



NEXT TOPIC

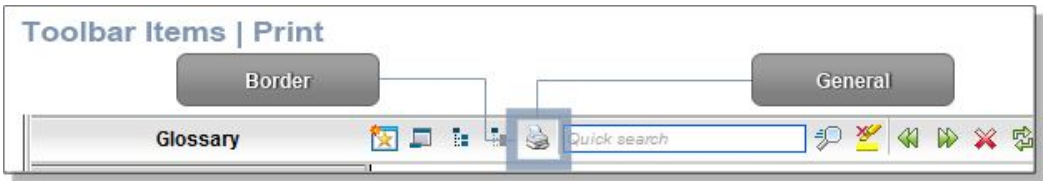
Lets users open the next topic in the sequence. First, Flare attempts to find the current topic in a browse sequence and navigate to the next topic from there. If you do not have a browse sequence, Flare looks at the position of the current topic in your table of contents (TOC) and opens the next topic after it.

PREVIOUS TOPIC

Lets users open the previous topic in the sequence. First, Flare attempts to find the current topic in a browse sequence and navigate to the previous topic from there. If you do not have a browse sequence, Flare looks at the position of the current topic in your table of contents (TOC) and opens the previous topic before it.

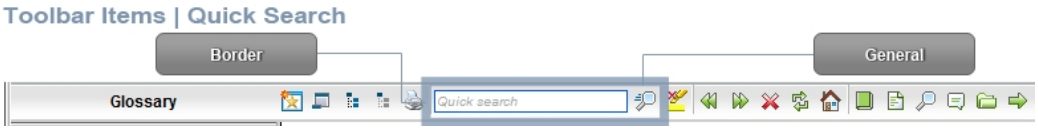
PRINT

Lets users open the Print dialog so that they can send the open topic to the printer.



QUICK SEARCH

Lets users initiate a search in the active topic for the word or phrase that has been typed in the field next to the button.



REFRESH

Lets users initiate a search in the active topic for the word or phrase that has been typed in the field next to the button.

REMOVE HIGHLIGHT

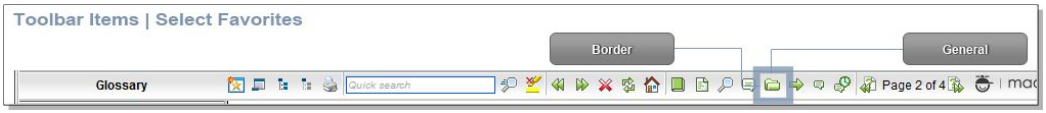
After a user performs a quick search in a topic, the search text found in the topic is highlighted. This button lets users turn the highlights off.

SELECT BROWSE SEQUENCE

Lets users open the Browse Sequence feature.

SELECT FAVORITES

Lets users open the Favorites feature.



SELECT GLOSSARY

Lets users open the Glossary feature.

SELECT INDEX

Lets users open the Index feature.

SELECT SEARCH

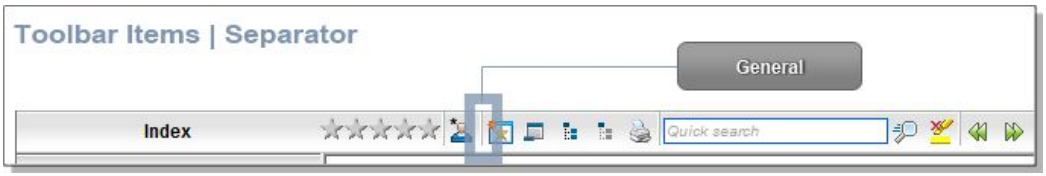
Lets users open the Search feature.

SELECT TOC

Lets users open the TOC feature.

SEPARATOR

This is the divider between the toolbar buttons and the navigation pane.



STOP

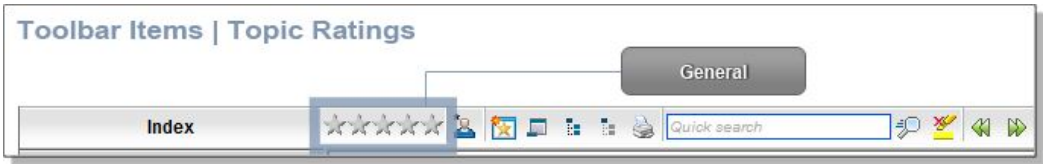
Lets users prevent a page from downloading file information.

TOGGLE NAVIGATION PANE

Lets users toggle between hiding and showing the navigation pane in the output window.

TOPIC RATINGS

Lets users submit ratings for a topic (if you have incorporated your output with MadCap Feedback).



5. Select the **Property Groups** or **Alphabetical List** option to display the properties for the style item.
6. In the **Properties** section, set the values for the properties that you want modify.

ABOUT BOX ALTERNATE TEXT

To change the alternate text for the logo's "About" box:

» Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **About Box Alternate Text** field.

BORDERS

To add or change borders for the item:

» Expand the **Borders** property group on the right and change the value in any of the "Border" fields (e.g., Border Left, Border Right). Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the width of the border in the lower-left field. You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-left drop-down arrow. You can select a color for the border using the upper-right drop-down arrow. And you can select the type of line for the border (e.g., solid, dashed, dotted) using the lower-right drop-down arrow.

CONTROL TYPE

To change the control type for the item (i.e., you can select any type of button that can be added to the toolbar):

» Expand the **Type** property group on the right and select an item in the **Control Type** field.

EMPTY ICON

To select a different "empty" icon image for the "Topic Ratings":

» Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and select an image from the **Empty Icon** field. Click the down arrow in this field and then select **Browse for Image** to find and select an image file.

By default the button displays five stars. This image represents the area of the button that is not rated (e.g., if readers give the topic "two out of five stars," this image fills the space of the three empty stars).

FONT BACKGROUND COLOR

To change the color of the area behind the font:

» Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Background Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

FONT BACKGROUND GRADIENT

To change the background color of the item:

» Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Background Gradient** field to apply a color progression effect. The background changes from one color to another. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, click the down arrow next to the **Start** field and select a color to use at the beginning of the gradient. Then click the down arrow next to the **End** field and select the color to use at the end of the gradient. Finally, click the down arrow next to the **Style** field and select a direction for the gradient effect or choose "solid." Click **OK** to accept the settings. When you click off the properties field, a small icon is displayed in the field, showing how the effect will look. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

FONT BACKGROUND GRADIENT HOVER

To change the background color of the item when the end user hovers over it:

» Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Background Gradient Hover** field to apply a color progression effect. The background changes from one color to another. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, click the down arrow next to the **Start** field and select a color to use at the beginning of the gradient. Then click the down arrow next to the **End** field and select the color to use at the end of the gradient. Finally, click the down arrow next to the **Style** field and select a direction for the gradient effect or choose "solid." Click **OK** to accept the settings. When you click off the properties field, a small icon is displayed in the field, showing how the effect will look. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

FONT BACKGROUND GRADIENT PRESSED

To change the background color of the item when the end user presses it:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Background Gradient Pressed** field to apply a color progression effect. The background changes from one color to another. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, click the down arrow next to the **Start** field and select a color to use at the beginning of the gradient. Then click the down arrow next to the **End** field and select the color to use at the end of the gradient. Finally, click the down arrow next to the **Style** field and select a direction for the gradient effect or choose "solid." Click **OK** to accept the settings. When you click off the properties field, a small icon is displayed in the field, showing how the effect will look. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

FONT COLOR

To change the color of the font:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

FONT FAMILY

To select a specific font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, Verdana):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Family** field. After you click in the field, the Font Family Picker dialog opens. Use this dialog to select the font family and click **OK**.

FONT SIZE

To change the size of the font:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Size** field. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the size of the font in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

FONT STYLE

To change the style of the font (e.g., make it italic):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Style** field. Click the down arrow and select either **italic** or **normal**.

FONT WEIGHT

To change the weight of the font (e.g., make it bold):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Weight** field. Click the down arrow and select either **bold** or **normal**.

FULL ICON

To select a different "full" icon image for the "Topic Ratings":

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and select an image from the **Full Icon** field. Click the down arrow in this field and then select **Browse for Image** to find and select an image file.

  By default the button displays five stars. This image represents the area of the button that has been rated completely (e.g., if readers give the topic "two out of five stars," this image fills the space of the two stars).

HOVER ICON

To select a different icon image to be used when the user hovers the cursor over the item:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and select an image from the **Hover Icon** field. Click the down arrow in this field and then select **Browse for Image** to find and select an image file.

ICON

To select a different icon image:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and select an image from the **Icon** field. Click the down arrow in this field and then select **Browse for Image** to find and select an image file.

LABEL

To change the text that appears on the item:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Label** field.

LOGO ALTERNATE TEXT

To change the alternate text for the logo:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Logo Alternate Text** field.

ON CLICK

To provide a command for the item when it is clicked by the user:

» Expand the **Type** or **General** property group on the right and enter a command in the **OnClick** field.

E X A M P L E

Let's say you want to provide a command for an item (e.g., so that clicking the button opens a website). The following command opens the MadCap Software website when a user clicks the button:

```
window.open("http://www.madcapsoftware.com");
```

PADDING

To add or change padding (space around) the item:

» Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in any of the "Padding" fields (e.g., Padding Left, Padding Right). Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the amount of padding in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

PRESSED ICON

To select a different icon image to be used when the item is pressed:

» Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and select an image from the **Pressed Icon** field. Click the down arrow in this field and then select **Browse for Image** to find and select an image file.

RATING SUBMITTED MESSAGE

To change the text that appears after users rate a topic:

» Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Rating Submitted Message** field.

SEARCH BOX TOOLTIP

To change the tooltip text that appears when users hover the cursor over the search field:

» Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Search Box Tooltip** field.

SEPARATOR ALTERNATE TEXT

To change the alternate text for the separator:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Separator Alternate Text** field.

SHOW TOOLTIP

To change the tooltip text that appears when users hover over the "Toggle Navigation Pane" button (when the navigation pane is hidden):

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Show Tooltip** field.

TEXT IMAGE RELATION

To select the location of a label in relation to the image used for the item:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and select an option from the **Text Image Relation** field. You can select any of the following:
  - **ImageAboveText** This displays the button image on top of the label text.
  - **ImageBeforeText** This displays the button image to the left of the label text.
  - **Overlay** This displays the label text and the button image in the same space.
  - **TextAboveImage** This displays the label text on top of the button image.
  - **TextBeforeImage** This displays the label text to the left of the button image.

TOOLTIP

To change the tooltip text that appears when users hover the cursor over the item:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Tooltip** field.

7. Click to save your work.

WebHelp Mobile Skin Styles

You might perform the following style tasks if you are working in a WebHelp Mobile skin.

HEADER

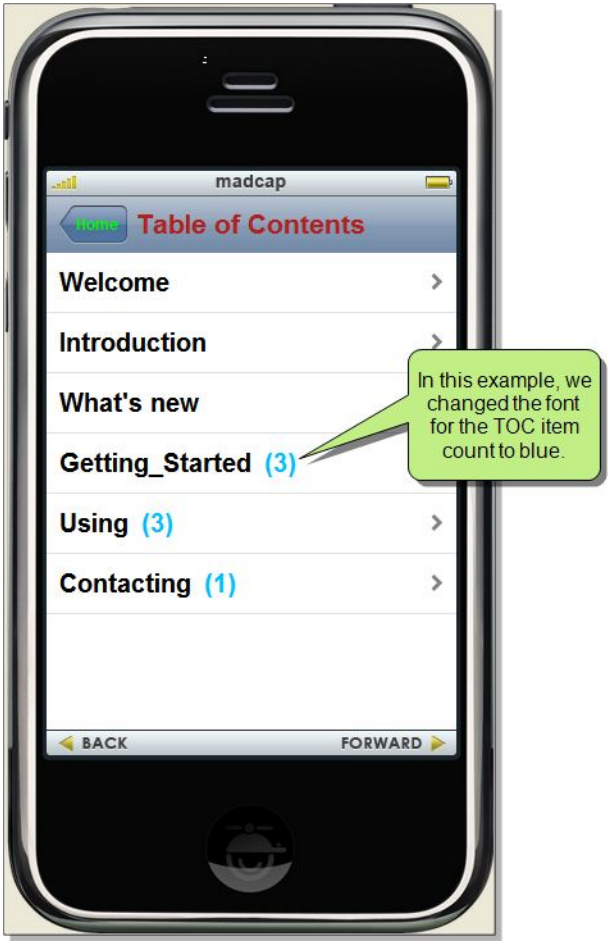
This is the area at the top of the screen, which displays the caption text that you provide on the General tab; it then displays text for the different elements as you click on items (e.g., Table of Contents, Index). Some of the more common properties you might edit when it comes to the header are the font settings, border, padding, background, and positioning (height). See "Headers in WebHelp Mobile Skins" on page 762.

HOME BUTTON

This is the Home button at the top of the screen, which lets users navigate to the starting screen of the documentation. Some of the more common properties you might edit when it comes to the Home button are the font settings, background image, and label. See "Home Buttons in WebHelp Mobile Skins" on page 766.

ITEM COUNT

These are the numbers in parentheses that may be displayed next to items. They tell users how many sub-items will be seen if they click on the item. You can edit font settings for the item count elements. See "Item Counts in WebHelp Mobile Skins" on page 769.



NAVIGATION ELEMENTS

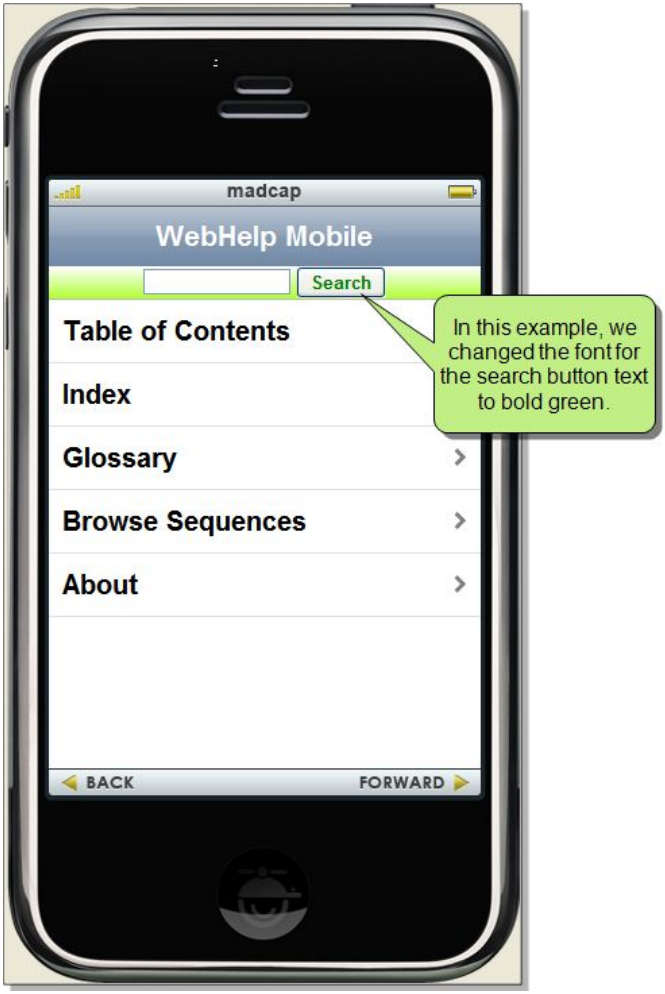
These are the areas that let users move around to find information. Some of the more common properties you might edit when it comes to the navigation elements are the font settings, border, padding, background, positioning (height), and icons. See "Navigation Elements in WebHelp Mobile Skins" on page 772.

SEARCH BAR

This is the bar that holds the search field and button. Some of the more common properties you might edit when it comes to the header are the border, background, and positioning (height). See "Search Bars in WebHelp Mobile Skins" on page 779.

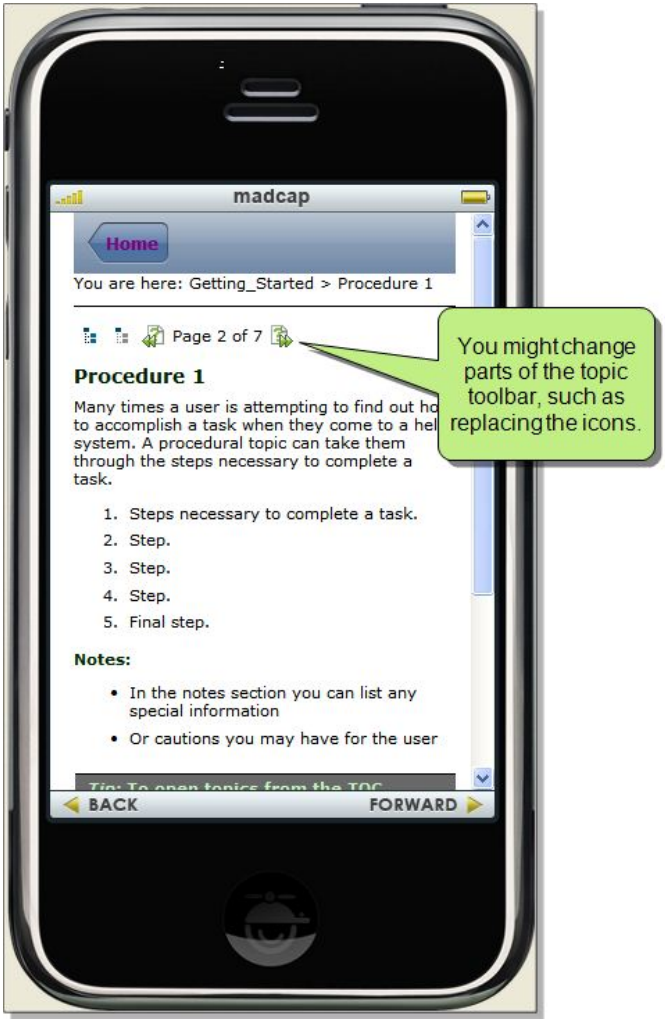
SEARCH BUTTON

This is the button that lets users initiate a search for content. Some of the more common properties you might edit when it comes to the header are the font, background color, and label. See "Search Buttons in WebHelp Mobile Skins" on page 782.



TOOLBAR ITEMS

These are the buttons and other elements that are part of the topic toolbar that you can add to output. Some of the more common properties you might edit when it comes to toolbar items are the icons, font settings, and click behavior. See "Toolbar Items in WebHelp Mobile Skins" on page 785.

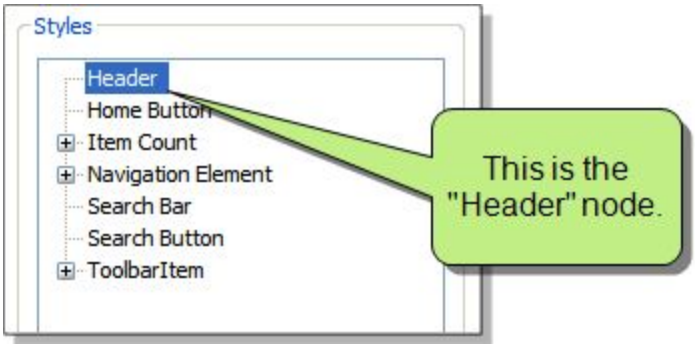


Headers in WebHelp Mobile Skins

In WebHelp Mobile a header is the area at the top of the screen, which displays the caption text that you provide on the General tab; it then displays text for the different elements as you click on items (e.g., Table of Contents, Index). You can use a WebHelp Mobile skin to change its appearance.

HOW TO SPECIFY STYLE SETTINGS FOR HEADERS

1. Open a WebHelp Mobile skin.
2. Select the **Styles** tab.
3. In the **Styles** section, select the **Header** node.



4. Select the **Property Groups** or **Alphabetical List** option to display the properties for the node.
5. In the **Properties** section, set the values for the properties that you want modify.

   ##### *BACKGROUND COLOR*

   To change the background color of the header area using a solid color:

   - Expand the **Background** property group on the right and change the value in the **Background Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

   ##### *BACKGROUND GRADIENT*

   To change the background color of the header area using a progression effect:

   - Expand the **Background** property group on the right and change the value in the **Background Gradient** field to apply a color progression effect. The background changes from one color to another. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, click the down arrow next to the **Start** field and select a color to use at the beginning of the gradient. Then click the down arrow next to the **End** field and select the color to use at the end of the gradient. Finally, click the down arrow next to the **Style** field and select a direction for the gradient effect or choose "solid." Click **OK** to accept the settings. When you click off the prop-

erties field, a small icon is displayed in the field, showing how the effect will look. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

BACKGROUND IMAGE

To add a background image to the header area:

- Expand the **Background** property group on the right and select an image in the **Background Image** field. Click the down arrow in this field and then select **Browse for Image** to find and select an image file.

BORDERS

To add or change borders for the item:

- Expand the **Borders** property group on the right and change the value in any of the fields. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the width of the border in the lower-left field. You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-left drop-down arrow. You can select a color for the border using the upper-right drop-down arrow. And you can select the type of line for the border (e.g., solid, dashed, dotted) using the lower-right drop-down arrow.

FONT COLOR

To change the color of the font:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

FONT FAMILY

To select a specific font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, Verdana):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Family** field. After you click in the field, the Font Family Picker dialog opens. Use this dialog to select the font family and click **OK**.

FONT SIZE

To change the size of the font:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Size** field. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the size of the font in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

FONT STYLE

To change the style of the font (e.g., make it italic):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Style** field. Click the down arrow and select either **italic** or **normal**.

FONT WEIGHT

To change the weight of the font (e.g., make it bold):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Weight** field. Click the down arrow and select either **bold** or **normal**.

HEIGHT

To change the height of the header area:

- Expand the **Position** property group on the right and change the value in the **Height** field. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the item height in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

PADDING

To add or change padding (space around) the item:

- Expand the **Padding** property group on the right and change the value in any of the "Padding" fields (e.g., Padding Left, Padding Right). Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the amount of padding in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

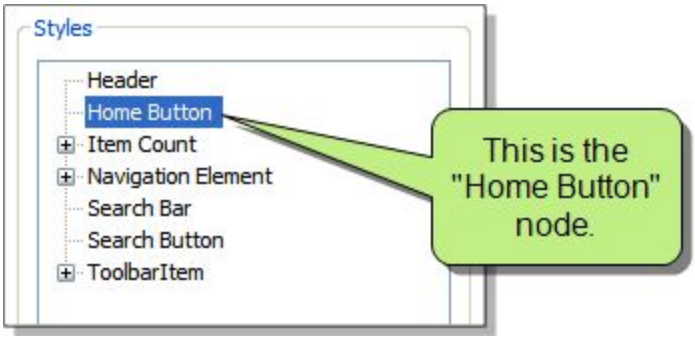
6. Click to save your work.

Home Buttons in WebHelp Mobile Skins

In WebHelp Mobile a "Home" button is at the top of the screen. It lets users navigate to the starting screen of the documentation. You can use a WebHelp Mobile skin to change its appearance.

HOW TO SPECIFY STYLE SETTINGS FOR HOME BUTTONS

1. Open a WebHelp Mobile skin.
2. Select the **Styles** tab.
3. In the **Styles** section, select the **Home Button** node.



4. Select the **Property Groups** or **Alphabetical List** option to display the properties for the node.
5. In the **Properties** section, set the values for the properties that you want modify.

BACKGROUND IMAGES

To change the background images:

» Expand the **Background Images** property group on the right and select an image in any of the fields (**Left Edge**, **Center Slice**, **Right Edge**). Click the down arrow in this field and then select **Browse for Image** to find and select an image file.

Why are there three image fields instead of one? The reason is that the width of the middle of the button may need to change based on the label that you enter. In other words, the longer the label text, the wider the button needs to be to accommodate it. So if you have a very long label, the middle image (Center Slice) will be repeated to make up the space.

FONT COLOR

To change the color of the font:

» Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

FONT FAMILY

To select a specific font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, Verdana):

» Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Family** field. After you click in the field, the Font Family Picker dialog opens. Use this dialog to select the font family and click **OK**.

FONT SIZE

To change the size of the font:

» Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Size** field. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the size of the font in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

FONT STYLE

To change the style of the font (e.g., make it italic):

» Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Style** field. Click the down arrow and select either **italic** or **normal**.

FONT WEIGHT

To change the weight of the font (e.g., make it bold):

» Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Weight** field. Click the down arrow and select either **bold** or **normal**.

LABEL

To change the text that appears on the item:

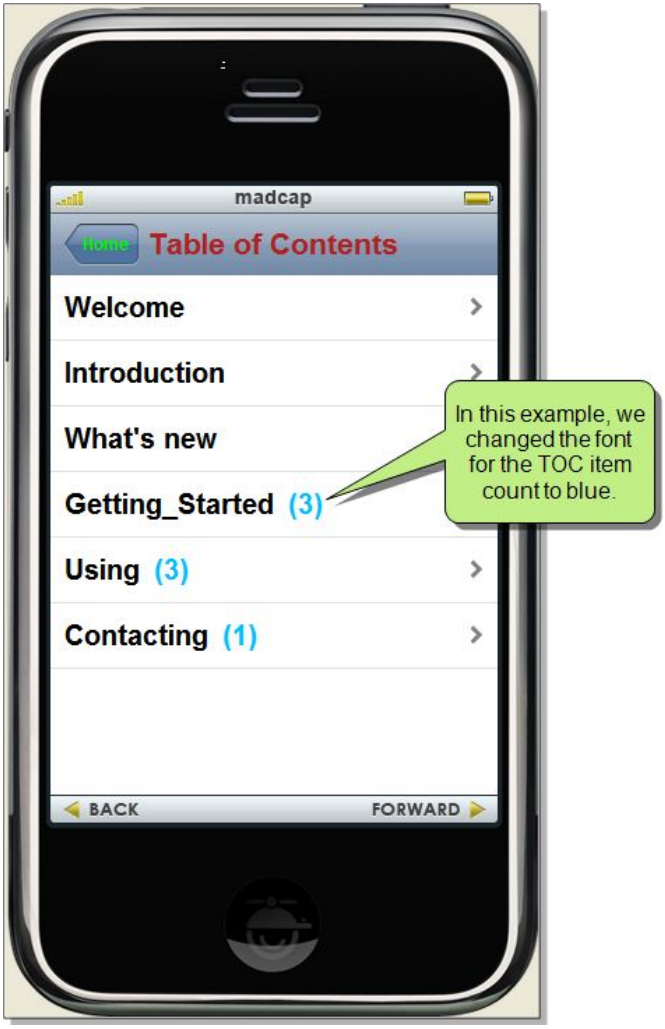
» Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Label** field.

6. Click to save your work.

Note: If you maintain the height of the header area, the preferred size for the Home button is the same as the existing button, which is 47px wide x 30px high (assuming the label is “Home”). However, you can also configure the height of the header area and therefore use a Home button image that is taller. See "Headers in WebHelp Mobile Skins" on page 762.

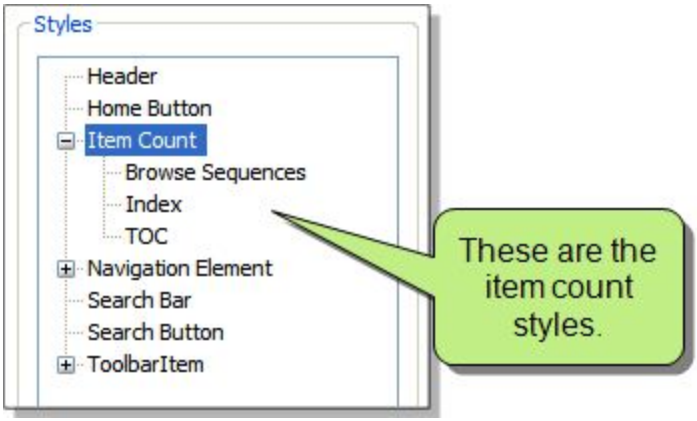
Item Counts in WebHelp Mobile Skins

In WebHelp Mobile item counts are the numbers in parentheses that may be displayed next to items. They tell users how many sub-items will be seen if they click on the item. You can use a WebHelp Mobile skin to edit font settings for the item count elements.



HOW TO SPECIFY STYLE SETTINGS FOR ITEM COUNTS

1. Open a WebHelp Mobile skin.
2. Select the **Styles** tab.
3. In the **Styles** section, expand the **Item Count** node.



4. Select the item that you want to edit. If you want the setting(s) to be applied to all of the items, select the **ItemCount** node itself.

   The items under this node represent the places where item counts occur—in browse sequences, indexes, and TOCs.

5. Select the **Property Groups** or **Alphabetical List** option to display the properties for the node.
6. In the **Properties** section, set the values for the properties that you want modify.

   FONT COLOR

   To change the color of the font:

   - Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

FONT FAMILY

To select a specific font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, Verdana):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Family** field. After you click in the field, the Font Family Picker dialog opens. Use this dialog to select the font family and click **OK**.

FONT SIZE

To change the size of the font:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Size** field. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the size of the font in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

FONT STYLE

To change the style of the font (e.g., make it italic):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Style** field. Click the down arrow and select either **italic** or **normal**.

FONT WEIGHT

To change the weight of the font (e.g., make it bold):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Weight** field. Click the down arrow and select either **bold** or **normal**.

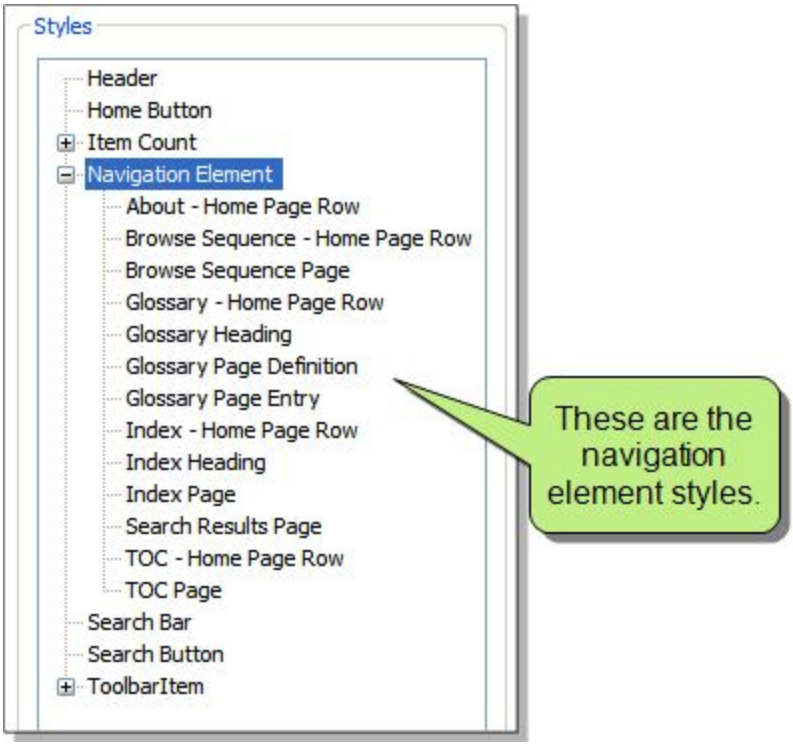
7. Click to save your work.

Navigation Elements in WebHelp Mobile Skins

In WebHelp Mobile navigation elements are the areas that let users move around to find information. You can use a WebHelp Mobile skin to change their appearance.

HOW TO SPECIFY STYLE SETTINGS FOR NAVIGATION ELEMENTS

1. Open a WebHelp Mobile skin.
2. Select the **Styles** tab.
3. In the **Styles** section, expand the **Navigation Element** node.



4. Select the item that you want to edit. If you want the setting(s) to be applied to all of the items, select the **Navigation Element** node itself.

   The items under this node represent the different kinds of navigation elements that may be found in your output.

About - Home Page Row	This is the row on the Home page that lets users open the "About" image.
Browse Sequence - Home Page Row	This is the row on the Home page that lets users open the browse sequence.
Browse Sequence Page	This is the page that displays the browse sequence.
Glossary - Home Page Row	This is the row on the Home page that lets users open the glossary.
Glossary Heading **Glossary Page Entry** **Glossary Page Definition**	The Glossary Heading displays the letter of the alphabet for the entries that follow. The Glossary Page Entry is the area that displays each glossary term. The Glossary Page Definition is the text describing each glossary term.
Index - Home Page Row	This is the row on the Home page that lets users open the index.
Index Heading **Index Page**	The Index Heading displays the letter of the alphabet for the entries that follow. The Index Page is the area that displays each index term.
Search Results Page	This is the page that displays search results.
TOC - Home Page Row	This is the row on the Home page that lets users open the TOC.

TOC Page	This is the page that displays the TOC.

5. Select the **Property Groups** or **Alphabetical List** option to display the properties for the node.
6. In the **Properties** section, set the values for the properties that you want modify.

BACKGROUND COLOR

To change the background color of the header area using a solid color:

» Expand the **Background** property group on the right and change the value in the **Background Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

BACKGROUND GRADIENT

To change the background color of the header area using a progression effect:

» Expand the **Background** property group on the right and change the value in the **Background Gradient** field to apply a color progression effect. The background changes from one color to another. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, click the down arrow next to the **Start** field and select a color to use at the beginning of the gradient. Then click the down arrow next to the **End** field and select the color to use at the end of the gradient. Finally, click the down arrow next to the **Style** field and select a direction for the gradient effect or choose "solid." Click **OK** to accept the settings. When you click off the properties field, a small icon is displayed in the field, showing how the effect will look. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

BACKGROUND IMAGE

To add a background image to the header area:

» Expand the **Background** property group on the right and select an image in the **Background Image** field. Click the down arrow in this field and then select **Browse for Image** to find and select an image file.

BORDERS

To add or change borders for the item:

» Expand the **Borders** property group on the right and change the value in any of the fields. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the width of the border in the lower-left field. You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-left drop-down arrow. You can select a color for the border using the upper-right drop-down arrow. And you can select the type of line for the border (e.g., solid, dashed, dotted) using the lower-right drop-down arrow.

FONT COLOR

To change the color of the font:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

FONT FAMILY

To select a specific font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, Verdana):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Family** field. After you click in the field, the Font Family Picker dialog opens. Use this dialog to select the font family and click **OK**.

FONT SIZE

To change the size of the font:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Size** field. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the size of the font in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

FONT STYLE

To change the style of the font (e.g., make it italic):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Style** field. Click the down arrow and select either **italic** or **normal**.

FONT WEIGHT

To change the weight of the font (e.g., make it bold):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Weight** field. Click the down arrow and select either **bold** or **normal**.

HEIGHT

To change the height of the header area:

- Expand the **Position** property group on the right and change the value in the **Height** field. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the item height in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

ICON—NAVIGATION ARROW

To select a different image to be used instead of the navigation arrow that appears at the end of each row:

- Expand the **Icons** property group on the right side of the editor and select an image from the **Navigation Arrow** field. Click the down arrow in this field and then select **Browse for Image** to find and select an image file.

LABEL

To change the text that appears on the item:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Label** field.

NO RESULTS FOUND STRING

To change the text that appears when no search results are found:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **No Results Found String** field.

PADDING

To add or change padding (space around) the item:

- Expand the **Padding** property group on the right and change the value in any of the "Padding" fields (e.g., Padding Left, Padding Right). Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the amount of padding in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

SEARCH ERROR STRING

To change the text that appears when an error occurs during the search:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Search Error String** field.

SEE REFERENCE

To change the text that appears on "See" index links:

- Expand the **Labels** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **See Reference** field.

SEE ALSO REFERENCE

To change the text that appears on "See Also" index links:

» Expand the **Labels** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **See Also Reference** field.

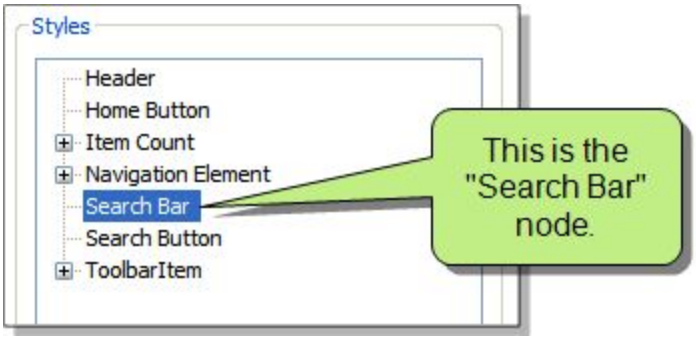
7. Click to save your work.

Search Bars in WebHelp Mobile Skins

In WebHelp Mobile a search bar is the area that holds the search field and button. You can use a WebHelp Mobile skin to change its appearance.

HOW TO SPECIFY STYLE SETTINGS FOR SEARCH BARS

1. Open a WebHelp Mobile skin.
2. Select the **Styles** tab.
3. In the **Styles** section, select the **Search Bar** node.



4. Select the **Property Groups** or **Alphabetical List** option to display the properties for the node.
5. In the **Properties** section, set the values for the properties that you want modify.

BACKGROUND COLOR

To change the background color of the item area using a solid color:

» Expand the **Background** property group on the right and change the value in the **Background Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

BACKGROUND IMAGE

To add a background image to the item:

» Expand the **Background** property group on the right and select an image in the **Background Image** field. Click the down arrow in this field and then select **Browse for Image** to find and select an image file.

BORDERS

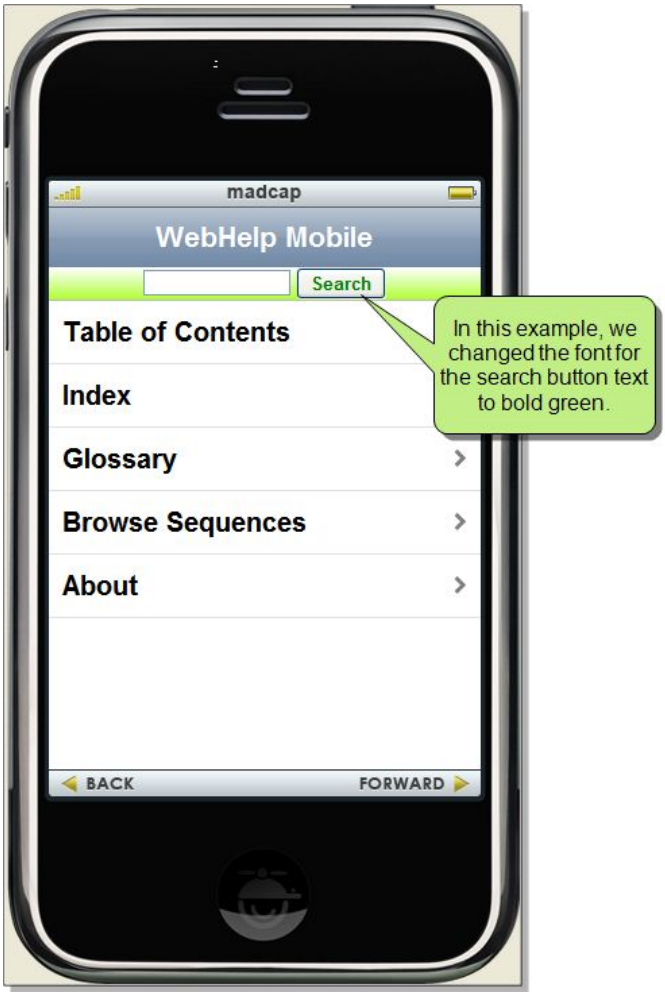
To add or change borders for the item:

» Expand the **Borders** property group on the right and change the value in any of the fields. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the width of the border in the lower-left field. You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-left drop-down arrow. You can select a color for the border using the upper-right drop-down arrow. And you can select the type of line for the border (e.g., solid, dashed, dotted) using the lower-right drop-down arrow.

6. Click to save your work.

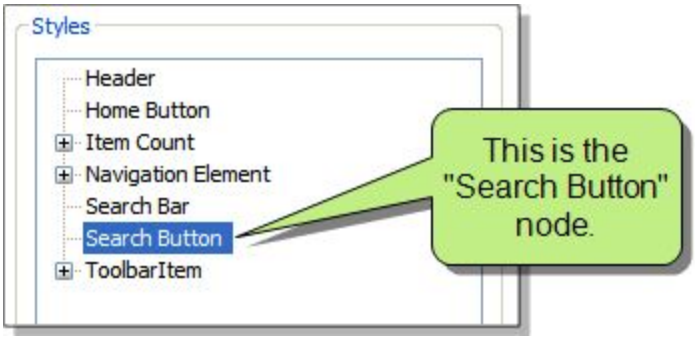
Search Buttons in WebHelp Mobile Skins

In WebHelp Mobile the "Search" button lets users initiate a search for information. You can use a WebHelp Mobile skin to change its appearance.



HOW TO SPECIFY STYLE SETTINGS FOR SEARCH BUTTONS

1. Open a WebHelp Mobile skin.
2. Select the **Styles** tab.
3. In the **Styles** section, select the **Search Button** node.



4. Select the **Property Groups** or **Alphabetical List** option to display the properties for the node.
5. In the **Properties** section, set the values for the properties that you want modify.

BACKGROUND COLOR

To change the background color of the item area using a solid color:

» Expand the **Background** property group on thClick the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.e right and change the value in the **Background Color** field.

FONT COLOR

To change the color of the font:

» Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

FONT FAMILY

To select a specific font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, Verdana):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Family** field. After you click in the field, the Font Family Picker dialog opens. Use this dialog to select the font family and click **OK**.

FONT SIZE

To change the size of the font:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Size** field. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the size of the font in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

FONT STYLE

To change the style of the font (e.g., make it italic):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Style** field. Click the down arrow and select either **italic** or **normal**.

FONT WEIGHT

To change the weight of the font (e.g., make it bold):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Weight** field. Click the down arrow and select either **bold** or **normal**.

LABEL

To change the text that appears on the item:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Label** field.

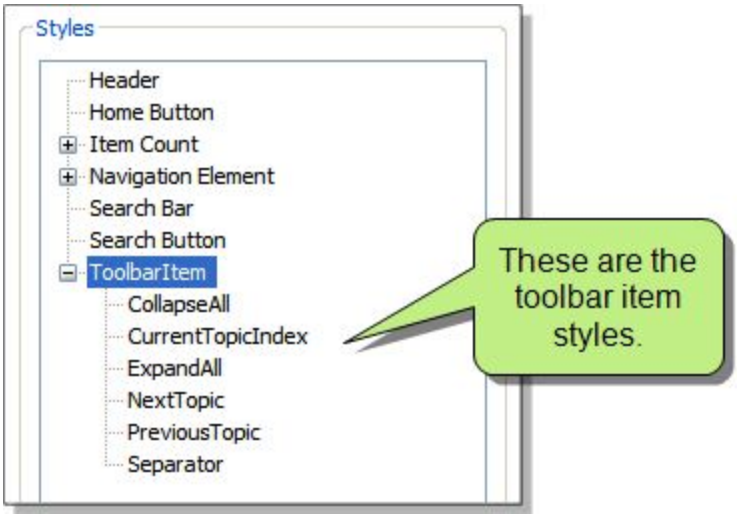
6. Click to save your work.

Toolbar Items in WebHelp Mobile Skins

Using a skin, you can modify the appearance of topic toolbars that you include in your output.

HOW TO SPECIFY STYLE SETTINGS FOR TOOLBAR ITEMS IN WEBHELP MOBILE

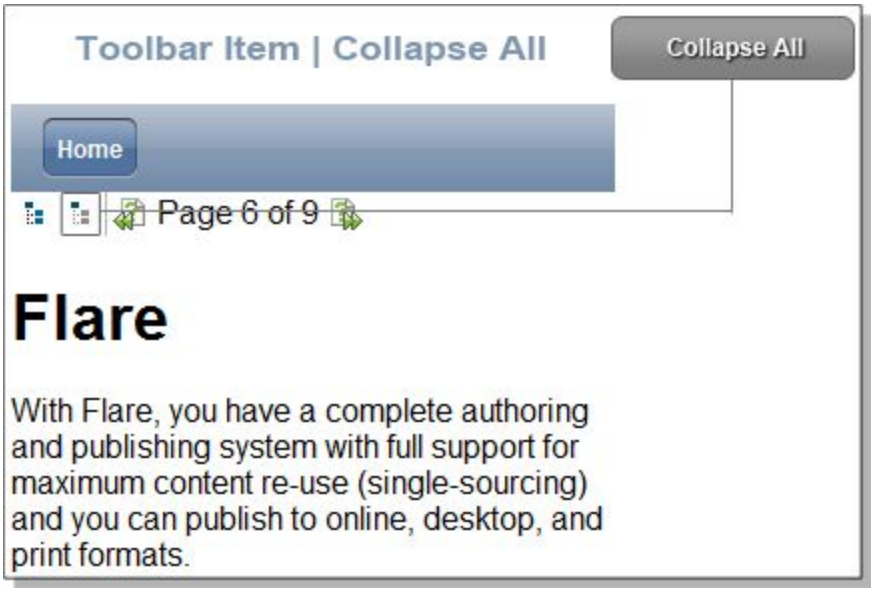
1. Open a Mobile skin.
2. Select the **Styles** tab.
3. In the **Styles** section, expand the **Toolbar Item** node.



4. Select the item that you want to edit. If you want the setting(s) to be applied to all of the items, select the **Toolbar Item** node itself. The items under this node represent the different kinds of toolbar items that may be found in your output.

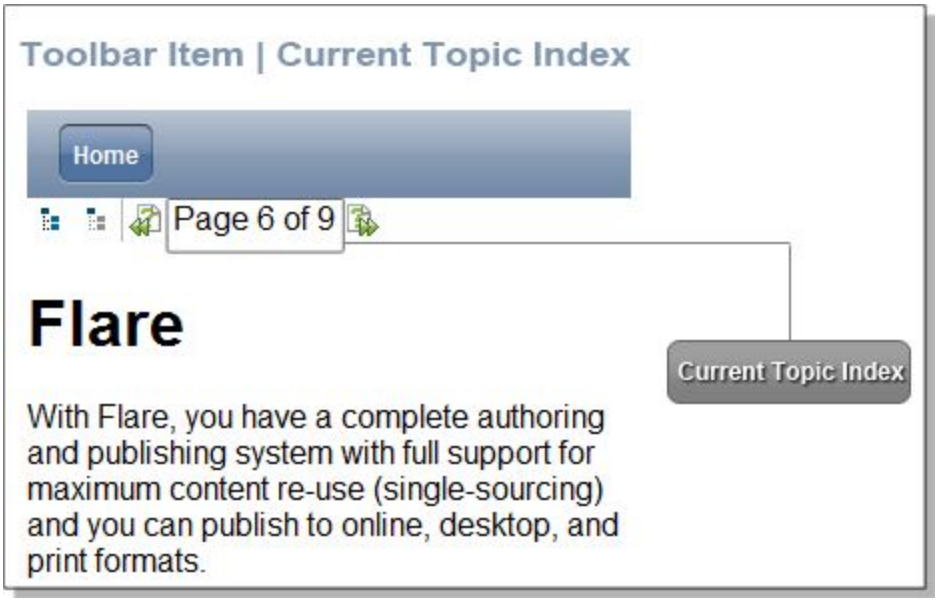
   COLLAPSE ALL

   Lets users collapse all elements such as togglers, drop-down effects, and expanding text effects in a topic (if they are expanded).



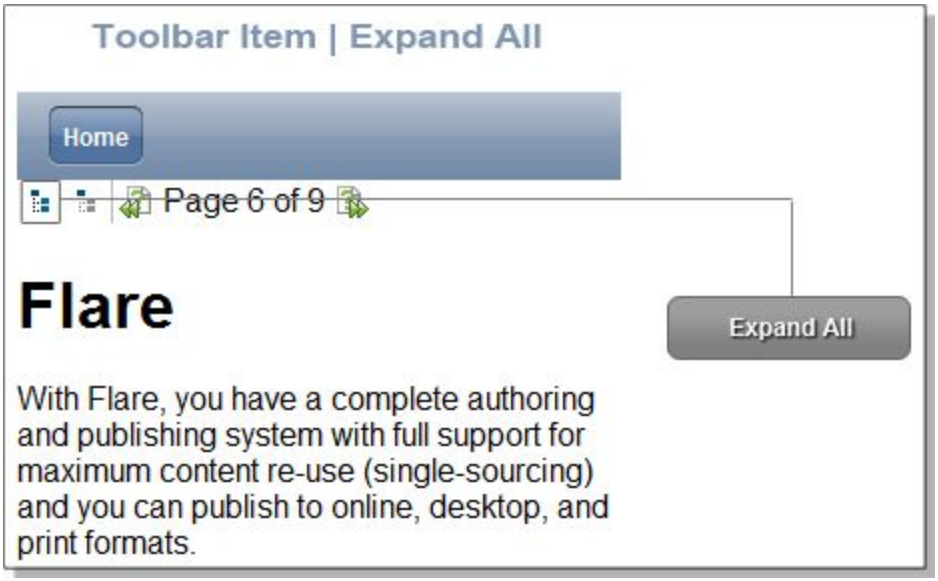
CURRENT TOPIC INDEX

Lets users see the display for the current topic in the sequence. This is typically used in conjunction with the "Next Topic" and "Previous Topic" buttons when the topic in question exists in a browse sequence. Flare finds the current topic in a browse sequence and display its position in relation to the rest of the topics in that sequence. (The root node is used to determine the count; in other words, if there are "child" topics in the sequence structure under the current topic, they will be included in the count.)



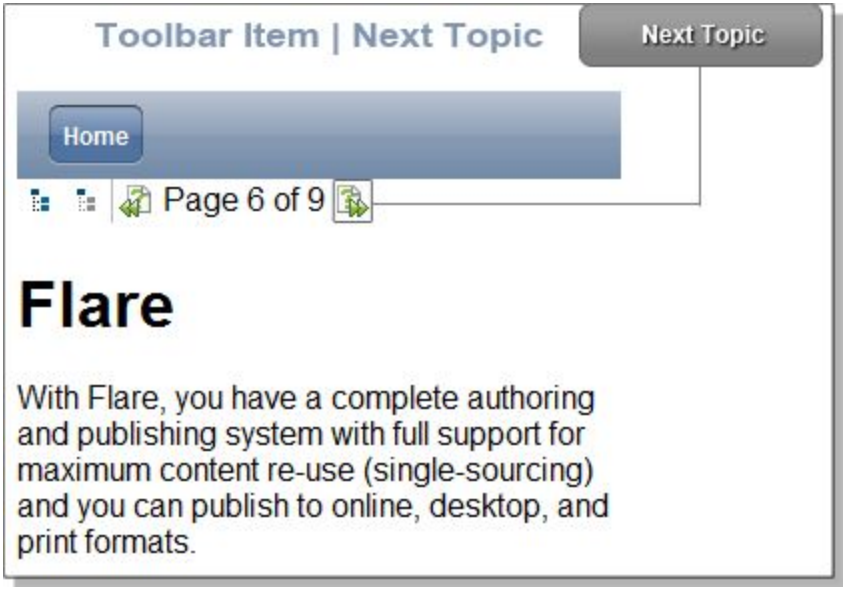
EXPAND ALL

Lets users expand all elements such as togglers, drop-down effects, and expanding text effects in a topic (if they are not yet expanded).



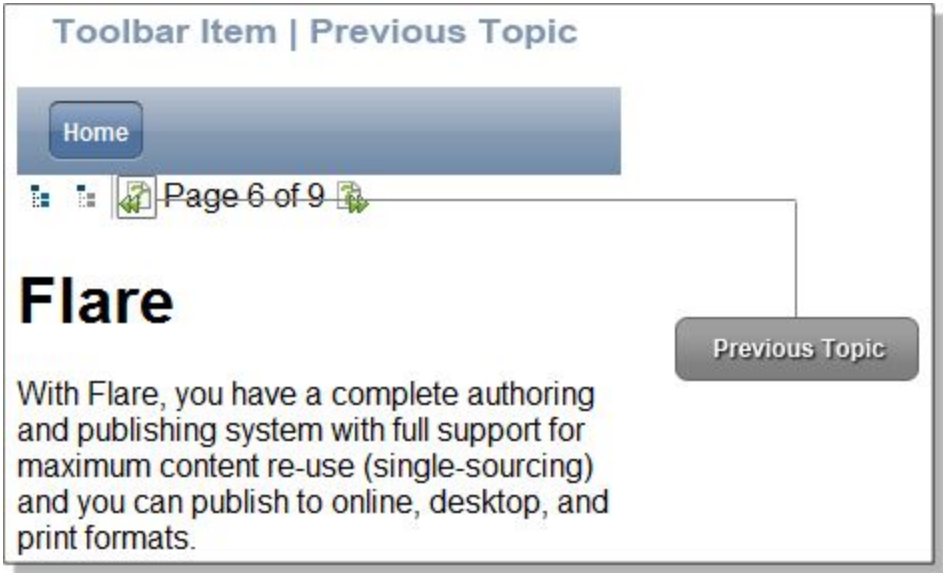
NEXT TOPIC

Lets users open the next topic in the sequence. First, Flare attempts to find the current topic in a browse sequence and navigate to the next topic from there. If you do not have a browse sequence, Flare looks at the position of the current topic in your table of contents (TOC) and opens the next topic after it.



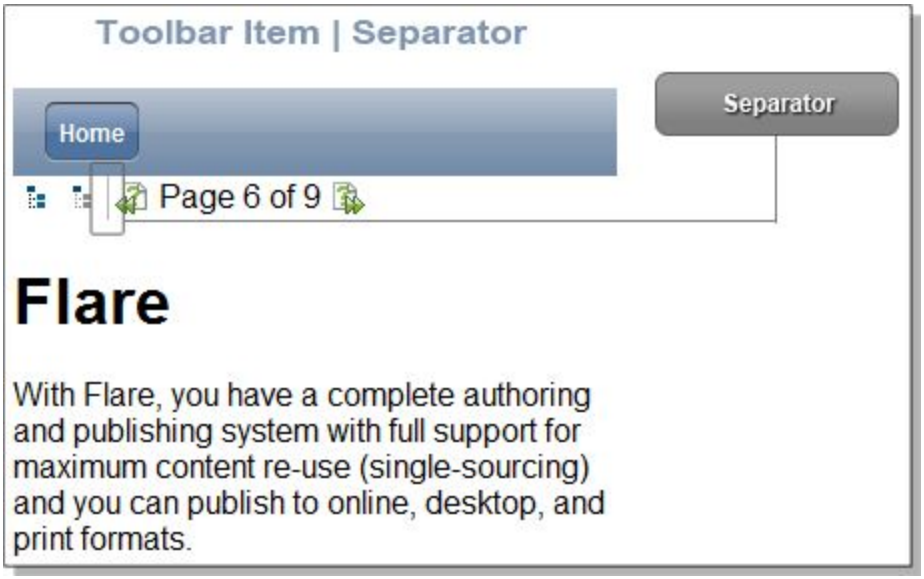
PREVIOUS TOPIC

Lets users open the previous topic in the sequence. First, Flare attempts to find the current topic in a browse sequence and navigate to the previous topic from there. If you do not have a browse sequence, Flare looks at the position of the current topic in your table of contents (TOC) and opens the previous topic before it.



SEPARATOR

This is the divider between the toolbar buttons and the navigation pane.



5. Select the **Property Groups** or **Alphabetical List** option to display the properties for the style item.
6. In the **Properties** section, set the values for the properties that you want modify.

CONTROL TYPE

To change the control type for the item (i.e., you can select any type of button that can be added to the toolbar):

» Expand the **Type** property group on the right and select an item in the **Control Type** field.

FONT BACKGROUND COLOR

To change the color of the area behind the font:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Background Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.0

FONT BACKGROUND GRADIENT

To change the background color of the item:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Background Gradient** field to apply a color progression effect. The background changes from one color to another. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, click the down arrow next to the **Start** field and select a color to use at the beginning of the gradient. Then click the down arrow next to the **End** field and select the color to use at the end of the gradient. Finally, click the down arrow next to the **Style** field and select a direction for the gradient effect or choose "solid." Click **OK** to accept the settings. When you click off the properties field, a small icon is displayed in the field, showing how the effect will look. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

FONT COLOR

To change the color of the font:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Color** field. Click the down arrow to open a color palette window. You can click a color shown, or you can click **More colors** and select a different color or create a custom color. If you are change the color for a style item that also has a gradient, the gradient properties have precedence over the solid color.

FONT FAMILY

To select a specific font family (e.g., Arial, Tahoma, Verdana):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Family** field. After you click in the field, the Font Family Picker dialog opens. Use this dialog to select the font family and click **OK**.

FONT SIZE

To change the size of the font:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Size** field. Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the size of the font in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

FONT STYLE

To change the style of the font (e.g., make it italic):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Style** field. Click the down arrow and select either **italic** or **normal**.

FONT WEIGHT

To change the weight of the font (e.g., make it bold):

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in the **Font Weight** field. Click the down arrow and select either **bold** or **normal**.

ICON

To select a different icon image:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and select an image from the **Icon** field. Click the down arrow in this field and then select **Browse for Image** to find and select an image file.

LABEL

To change the text that appears on the item:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Label** field.

ON CLICK

To provide a command for the item when it is clicked by the user:

- Expand the **Type** or **General** property group on the right and enter a command in the **OnClick** field.

E X A M P L E

Let's say you want to provide a command for an item (e.g., so that clicking the button opens a website). The following command opens the MadCap Software website when a user clicks the button:

```
window.open("http://www.madcapsoftware.com");
```

PADDING

To add or change padding (space around) the item:

- Expand the **Font** property group on the right and change the value in any of the "Padding" fields (e.g., Padding Left, Padding Right). Click the down arrow to open a small window. In this window, you can enter the amount of padding in the lower-left field (either type a number or use the up and down arrows). You can select the unit of measurement (e.g., pixels, points, centimeters) using the lower-right drop-down arrow. You can return to the default setting by using the upper-right drop-down arrow.

SEPARATOR ALTERNATE TEXT

To change the alternate text for the separator:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and enter new text in the **Separator Alternate Text** field.

TEXT IMAGE RELATION

To select the location of a label in relation to the image used for the item:

- Expand the **General** property group on the right side of the editor and select an option from the **Text Image Relation** field. You can select any of the following.
  - **ImageAboveText** This displays the button image on top of the label text.
  - **ImageBeforeText** This displays the button image to the left of the label text.
  - **Overlay** This displays the label text and the button image in the same space.
  - **TextAboveImage** This displays the label text on top of the button image.
  - **TextBeforeImage** This displays the label text to the left of the button image.

7. Click to save your work.

APPENDIX A

MadCap-Specific Styles

In addition to the many standard styles from W3C, you might notice several unique-looking tags that begin with the word "MadCap" (e.g., MadCap|footnote, MadCap|toggler).

These special styles have been added to the Flare user interface in order to support some of the unique features available only in MadCap Software products.

Following is a list of MadCap-specific styles.

Tag	Description	See These Topics
MadCap|annotation	Modifies the look of content in a topic to which an annotation (i.e., internal topic comment) points. For example, you might want annotated text to be displayed in the XML Editor with red font and a yellow background. This does not change the text as it will be shown in the output, but rather only as it is displayed in the XML Editor.	For more information see the online Help.
MadCap|bodyProxy	Modifies the look of the "container" holding topic content. For example, you might edit this style to add a border around all topic content.	For more information see the online Help.
MadCap|breadcrumbsProxy	Modifies the look of breadcrumbs in online output.	"Breadcrumbs" on page 84
MadCap|concept	Modifies the look of concepts that have been inserted in the XML Editor (when markers are turned on). This does not affect the output.	For more information see the online Help.
MadCap|conceptLink	Modifies the look (e.g., font, color, wording) of a concept (See Also) link heading. When you do this, the style changes for all concept links in any topics in your project.	"Help Controls" on page 137
MadCap|conceptLinkControlList	Modifies the look of the entire list (element) when concept links are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup.	"Help Controls" on page 137
MadCap|conceptLinkControlListItem	Modifies the look of individual items in the list (elements) when concept links are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup.	"Help Controls" on page 137
MadCap|conceptLinkControlListItemLink	Modifies the look of links in the list (<a> elements) when concept links are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup.	"Help Controls" on page 137

Tag	Description	See These Topics
MadCap|conceptsProxy	Modifies the look of the "container" holding a generated list of concepts.	"Lists of Concepts" on page 178
MadCap|conditionalText	Modifies the look of content in the XML Editor that has a condition tag applied to it. For example, you might want conditioned content to stand out with a larger font so you can easily spot it while editing content. This does not affect the output.	For more information see the online Help.
MadCap|dropdown	Modifies the entire container holding a drop-down effect, including the image that is shown when a drop-down effect is open or closed.	"Drop-Down Text" on page 104
MadCap|dropDownBody	Modifies the content that is shown when users open a drop-down effect.	"Drop-Down Text" on page 104
MadCap|dropDownHead	Modifies the text in the first paragraph of a drop-down effect (i.e., the paragraph where the drop-down link is located).	"Drop-Down Text" on page 104
MadCap|dropDownHotspot	Modifies the specific text that you select in the first paragraph of a drop-down effect to serve as the link for opening the drop-down body. If you do not select specific text in the first paragraph to serve as the hotspot, the entire first paragraph is used as the hotspot.	"Drop-Down Text" on page 104
MadCap|endnoteBlock	Modifies the container (or block) holding individual endnote comments. For example, if you want to add a border around each endnote comment created from an endnotes proxy, you would use this style.	"Footnotes" on page 113

Tag	Description	See These Topics
MadCap|endnotesBlock	Modifies the container (or block) holding all endnote comments. For example, if you want to add a border around the collection of all endnote comments created from an endnotes proxy, you would use this style.	"Footnotes" on page 113
MadCap|endnotesProxy	Modifies the appearance of the text portion of the endnotes proxy.	For more information see the online Help.
MadCap|equation	Modifies the appearance of all equations.	"Equations" on page 106
MadCap|expanding	Modifies the entire container holding an expanding text effect, including the image that is shown when an expanding text effect is open or closed.	"Expanding Text" on page 111
MadCap|expandingBody	Modifies the expanded text portion of an expanding text effect (i.e., the area that is displayed or hidden when users click the hotspot link).	"Expanding Text" on page 111
MadCap|expandingHead	Modifies the hotspot portion of an expanding text effect.	"Expanding Text" on page 111
MadCap|footnote	Modifies both the footnote number (or symbol) where it is inserted in the topic, as well as the number and accompanying comment text (at the bottom of the page, or wherever else you specify its location).	"Footnotes" on page 113
MadCap|footnoteBlock	Modifies the container (or block) holding individual footnote comments. For example, if you want to add a border around each footnote comment on a page, you would use this style.	"Footnotes" on page 113

Tag	Description	See These Topics
MadCap|footnotesBlock	Modifies the container (or block) holding all footnote comments. For example, if you want to add a border around the collection of all footnote comments on a page, you would use this style.	"Footnotes" on page 113
MadCap|glossaryProxy	Modifies the look of the "container" holding a generated glossary.	"Glossaries" on page 129
MadCap|glossaryTerm	Modifies the look of glossary term links.	"Glossaries" on page 129
MadCap|helpControlList	Modifies the look of the *entire list* (element) when Help control links are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup. This is a general style that controls all three types of Help control links—concept, keyword, and related topics. Alternatively, you can set properties on each specific style—MadCap|conceptLinkControlList, MadCap|keywordLinkControlList, or MadCap|relatedTopicsControlList.	"Help Controls" on page 137 "Editing Keyword Links" on page 142 "Editing Related Topics Links" on page 145
MadCap|helpControl ListItem	Modifies the look of *individual items in the list* (elements) when Help control links are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup. This is a general style that controls all three types of Help control links—concept, keyword, and related topics. Alternatively, you can set properties on each specific style—MadCap|conceptLinkControlListItem, MadCap|keywordLinkControlListItem, or MadCap|relatedTopicsControlListItem.	"Help Controls" on page 137 "Editing Keyword Links" on page 142 "Editing Related Topics Links" on page 145

Tag	Description	See These Topics
MadCap|helpControl ListItemLink	Modifies the look of *links in the list* (<a> elements) when Help control links are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup. This is a general style that controls all three types of Help control links—concept, keyword, and related topics. Alternatively, you can set properties on each specific style—MadCap|conceptLinkControlListItemLink, MadCap|keywordLinkControlListItemLink, or MadCap|relatedTopicsControlListItemLink.	"Help Controls" on page 137 "Editing Keyword Links" on page 142 "Editing Related Topics Links" on page 145
MadCap|helpControl Menu	Modifies the look of links (i.e., menu items) that users see when they click a concept link, keyword link, or related topics control. This style is grouped with the "Dynamic Effects Styles" (which you can select from the drop-down list in the upper-left corner of the Stylesheet Editor). This particular style controls the *entire list* when you are using the *popup menu* method for displaying Help control links.	"Help Controls" on page 137 "Editing Keyword Links" on page 142 "Editing Related Topics Links" on page 145
MadCap|helpControl MenuItem	Modifies the look of links (i.e., menu items) that users see when they click a concept link, keyword link, or related topics control. This style is grouped with the "Dynamic Effects Styles" (which you can select from the drop-down list in the upper-left corner of the Stylesheet Editor). This particular style controls the *individual list items* when you are using the *popup menu* method for displaying Help control links.	"Help Controls" on page 137 "Editing Keyword Links" on page 142 "Editing Related Topics Links" on page 145
MadCap|indexProxy	Modifies the look of the "container" holding a generated index for print-based output.	"Indexes" on page 168

Tag	Description	See These Topics
MadCap|keyword	Modifies the look of index keywords that have been inserted in the XML Editor (when markers are turned on). This does not affect the output.	For more information see the online Help.
MadCap|keywordLink	Modifies the look (e.g., font, color, wording) of a keyword link heading. When you do this, the style changes for all keyword links in any topics in your project.	"Editing Keyword Links" on page 142
MadCap|keywordLink ControlList	Modifies the look of the entire list (element) when keyword links are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup.	"Editing Keyword Links" on page 142
MadCap|keywordLink ControlListItem	Modifies the look of individual items in the list (elements) when keyword links are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup.	"Editing Keyword Links" on page 142
MadCap|keywordLink ControlListItemLink	Modifies the look of links in the list (<a> elements) when keyword links are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup.	"Editing Keyword Links" on page 142
MadCap|listOfProxy	Modifies the look of the "container" holding a generated list of elements.	" Lists of Elements" on page 182
MadCap|miniTocProxy	Modifies the look of the "container" holding a generated mini-TOC.	"Mini-TOCs" on page 239
MadCap|pageFooter	Modifies the look of the content contained in a page footer used in master pages for Adobe FrameMaker and Microsoft Word output.	For more information see the online Help.
MadCap|pageHeader	Modifies the look of the content contained in a page header used in master pages for Adobe FrameMaker and Microsoft Word output.	For more information see the online Help.

Tag	Description	See These Topics
MadCap|popup	Modifies the look of the container holding a text popup link. For example, you can modify this style to place a border around the link.	"Text Popups" on page 459
MadCap|popupBody	Modifies the popup text portion of an popup text effect (i.e., the area that is displayed or hidden when users click the hotspot link).	"Text Popups" on page 459
MadCap|popupHead	Modifies the hotspot portion of a popup text effect.	"Text Popups" on page 459
MadCap|qrCode	Modifies the appearance of all QR codes.	"QR Codes" on page 339
MadCap|relatedTopics	Modifies the look (e.g., font, color, wording) of a related topics link heading. When you do this, the style changes for all related topics links in any topics in your project.	"Editing Related Topics Links" on page 145
MadCap|relatedTopics ControlList	Modifies the look of the entire list (element) when related topics are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup.	"Editing Related Topics Links" on page 145
MadCap|relatedTopics ControlListItem	Modifies the look of individual items in the list (elements) when related topics are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup.	"Editing Related Topics Links" on page 145
MadCap|relatedTopics ControlListItemLink	Modifies the look of links in the list (<a> elements) when related topics are displayed in a list, rather than in a popup.	"Editing Related Topics Links" on page 145

Tag	Description	See These Topics
MadCap|relationships Heading	Modifies the look of headings used in relationship links. There are three classes of this style that you can edit. If you edit the main MadCap|relationshipsHeading style, the look of all of the classes are affected. However, you can also edit the look of each class if you want. » **concept** This class lets you change the look of the heading that is displayed above any concept links (i.e., any topics found in the "concept" column of the relationships table). » **reference** This class lets you change the look of the heading that is displayed above any reference links (i.e., any topics found in the "reference" column of the relationships table). » **task** This class lets you change the look of the heading that is displayed above task links (i.e., topics found in the "task" column of the relationships table).	"Relationship Links" on page 349
MadCap|relationships Item	Modifies the look of link items created from a relationships table.	"Relationship Links" on page 349
MadCap|relationships Proxy	Modifies the look of the "container" holding the content from a generated relationships table.	"Relationship Links" on page 349
MadCap|shortcut	Modifies the look (e.g., font, color) of a shortcut control link. When you edit the style for a shortcut control, the style changes for all shortcut controls in any topics in your project.	For more information see the online Help.
MadCap|slide	Modifies the look of the containers holding individual slides.	"Slideshows" on page 362

Tag	Description	See These Topics
MadCap|slideshow	Modifies the look of the container holding the entire slideshow. Keep in mind that if you have competing styles set, those set in the MadCap|slide style take precedence. For example, if you set the background on MadCap|slideshow to blue and the background on MadCap|slide to yellow, the background will be yellow. But if you then change the background for MadCap|slide to (default), the background will show as blue.	"Slideshows" on page 362
MadCap|slideshowBullet	Modifies the look of the series of dots (or "bullets") used to navigate to specific slides. Keep in mind that if you choose to include thumbnail images, the MadCap|slideThumbnail style will be used instead.	"Slideshows" on page 362
MadCap|slideshowCaption	Modifies the look of the caption at the bottom of the slide.	"Slideshows" on page 362
MadCap|slideThumbnail	Modifies the look of the thumbnail image area at the bottom of the slide.	"Slideshows" on page 362
MadCap|snippetBlock	Modifies the look of block snippets that have been inserted in the XML Editor. If you insert a snippet on a blank line in a topic, it is inserted as a block snippet (as opposed to a text snippet) and takes up all of the room so that no other content can be added. For example, if you want all of your block snippets to stand out with a blue font—making it easier to identify these snippets as you work—you can use this style. This style does not affect the output. If you want to make changes to a snippet that affect the output, you can open the snippet and modify it in the XML Editor, just as you would edit a regular topic.	For more information see the online Help.

Tag	Description	See These Topics
MadCap|snippetText	Modifies the look of text snippets that have been inserted in the XML Editor. If you insert a snippet on a line where other content exists, it is inserted as a text snippet, as opposed to a block snippet. For example, if you want all of your block snippets to stand out with a blue font—making it easier to identify these snippets as you work—you can use this style. This style does not affect the output. If you want to make changes to a snippet that affect the output, you can open the snippet and modify it in the XML Editor, just as you would edit a regular topic.	For more information see the online Help.
MadCap|tocProxy	Modifies the look of the "container" holding a generated TOC for print-based output.	"Using Styles to Determine the Look of a Print TOC" on page 405
MadCap|toggler	Modifies the look (e.g., font, color) of a toggler hotspot. When you do this, the style changes for all toggler hotspots in any topics in your project.	"Togglers" on page 460
MadCap|topicToolbar Proxy	Modifies the look of the "container" holding a generated topic toolbar. The topic toolbar proxy will use whatever settings are specified on the Topic Toolbar tab in the Skin Editor (for Standard and Mobile skins only). However, the settings in the individual proxy have precedence. Therefore, if you select some buttons in the proxy and others in the skin, those in the proxy will be displayed in the output.	"Topic Toolbars" on page 465

Tag	Description	See These Topics
MadCap|variable	Modifies the look of variables that have been inserted in the XML Editor. For example, if you want all of your variables to stand out with a blue font—making it easier to identify them as you work—you can use this style. This style does not affect the output.	For more information see the online Help.
MadCap|xref	Modifies the look and format used in cross-references.	"Editing Cross-Reference Style Formats" on page 88

APPENDIX B

MadCap-Specific Properties

In addition to the many standard properties from W3C, you might notice several unique-looking ones that always start with "mc" (e.g., mc-footnote-format, mc-hyphenate).

These special properties have been added to the Flare user interface in order to support some of the unique features available only in MadCap Software products.

Following is a list of MadCap-specific tag properties.

Property	Description	See These Topics
mc-autonumber-class	Determines the span class for the generated autonumber.	"Autonumbers" on page 68
mc-autonumber-format	Opens the autonumber format dialog, which lets you enter an autonumber format or select an existing one.	"Autonumbers" on page 68
mc-autonumber-offset	Determines the offset distance from the margin.	"Autonumbers" on page 68
mc-autonumber-position	Determines where the autonumber will be positioned in relation to the paragraph.	"Autonumbers" on page 68
mc-breadcrumbs-count	Determines the number of breadcrumbs to show (i.e., how many levels of file and folder names you wish to display from the TOC). For example, the default setting is 3, so 3 breadcrumbs would appear in the following manner: You are here: First Topic > Second Topic > Third Topic.	"Breadcrumbs" on page 84
mc-breadcrumbs-divider	Determines the text or characters that appear between breadcrumbs.	"Breadcrumbs" on page 84
mc-breadcrumbs-prefix	Determines the text or characters that appear before the breadcrumbs.	"Breadcrumbs" on page 84
mc-closed-image	Lets you select an image to be shown next to the following types of links when they are in a "closed" state: drop-down text, expanding text, glossary term links, togglers.	"Drop-Down Text" on page 104 "Expanding Text" on page 111 "Editing the Style of Glossary Term Links" on page 135 "Togglers" on page 460

Property	Description	See These Topics
mc-closed-image-alt-text	Lets you set alternate text on the following types of links when they are in a "closed" state: drop-down text, expanding text, glossary term links, togglers.	"Drop-Down Text" on page 104 "Expanding Text" on page 111 "Editing the Style of Glossary Term Links" on page 135 "Togglers" on page 460
mc-column-count	Lets you select the number of columns to be used for indexes in Adobe FrameMaker and Microsoft Word output. This is the default setting for the column count, but it can be overridden on a specific index proxy. For other print-based outputs, you can set the number of columns for an index in a page layout instead.	"Indexes" on page 168
mc-concepts-list-headings	If a concept proxy has been inserted into the topic, this property allows you to choose whether the style to which it is applied will display headings in the list of concepts.	"Lists of Concepts" on page 178
mc-disable-glossary-terms	Lets you choose whether glossary terms are converted to links automatically when they are found in topics. By default, the setting is turned on for <h1> through <h6> tags and all hyperlink tags. Setting the property to "True" disables the conversion of glossary terms to links. Setting the property to "False" enables the conversion of glossary terms to links.	"Ignoring Glossary Terms in Styles" on page 136
mc-dita-type	Lets you select the tag used for exporting the style in DITA. By default, this property is either not set or set to the style to which this property is applied (e.g., <p> for <p>). However, using this property, you can override the default settings. For example, you can set a <p> tag to a <table> tag for DITA export.	"DITA" on page 97
mc-expandable	Determines whether the glossary entries to which the designated style is applied are expandable.	"Glossaries" on page 129

Property	Description	See These Topics
mc-feader-type	This property is used with the MadCap|pageFooter and MadCap|pageHeader styles when building Adobe FrameMaker and Microsoft Word output. This property specifies which types of pages a page footer or header is displayed on (all, even pages, first page, odd pages). You can always override the page type used at the spot where a particular page footer or header proxy is inserted. This setting simply lets you control the default setting.	"Page Footers and Headers" on page 248
mc-float	Determines where the text to which the style is applied will be displayed in relation to the paragraph.	"Positioning Paragraphs" on page 313
mc-footnote-comment-format	Determines the footnote format for the numbers in the comment. The default is the setting used in mc-footnote-format.	"Editing Footnote Number Formats" on page 124
mc-footnote-format	Determines the footnote format for numbers in the text. For example, you can change the format to uppercase alpha (e.g., A, B, C) or lowercase Roman (e.g., i, ii, iii). You can also replace the number with a symbol, such as an asterisk.	"Editing Footnote Number Formats" on page 124
mc-footnote-number	Determines where you can restart the footnote numbering at a certain location in the output (e.g., at the end of the next chapter or section).	"Restarting Footnote Numbering" on page 128
mc-footnote-position	Determines the location where the footnote comments are placed in the output (e.g., end of page, document, chapter, section, book).	"Editing Footnote Comment Position" on page 120
mc-footnote-style	Determines the span class for the footnote number.	"Editing the Look of Footnote Numbers" on page 126

Property	Description	See These Topics
mc-format	Determines the style format for cross-references.	"Editing Cross-Reference Style Formats" on page 88
mc-heading-format	Determines the style format for index headings.	"Glossaries" on page 129 "Indexes" on page 168
mc-heading-level	Determines which topic headings will be displayed at which level in the generated TOC. The higher the number, the lower in the hierarchy the heading will be displayed in the print TOC. If you select 0, the heading will not be included in the print TOC.	"Tables of Contents" on page 402
mc-help-control-display	Lets you specify whether the default setting for Help control links should be "list" or "popup". Therefore, this property is used for the following styles: MadCap|conceptLink, MadCap|keywordLink, and MadCap|relatedTopics. This can also be specified at the spot where you insert the Help control, but if you want all Help controls to automatically use the same display, you can edit this style property instead.	"Using Styles to Determine the Display for Help Control Links" on page 147
mc-hide-bottom-ruling	Lets you hide the bottom border on tables when crossing page breaks. By default, if you have a table that crosses multiple pages in print-based output, the bottom border is shown before the table continues on the next page. However, you also have the option to hide the bottom border when the table continues on another page.	"Hiding the Bottom Border on Tables when Crossing Page Breaks" on page 392
mc-hyphenate	Determines the hyphenation rules on the selected style.	"Setting Hyphenation" on page 284
mc-hyphenate-maximum-adjacent-line-count	Determines the maximum number of lines next to each other that are allowed to end with a hyphenated word.	"Setting Hyphenation" on page 284

Property	Description	See These Topics
mc-hyphen-ate-shortest-prefix	Determines the minimum number of characters that must remain on the initial line when a word is hyphenated.	"Setting Hyphenation" on page 284
mc-hyphen-ate-shortest-suffix	Determines the minimum number of characters that must be carried over to the second line when a word is hyphenated.	"Setting Hyphenation" on page 284
mc-hyphen-ate-shortest-word	Determines the minimum number of characters that a word must have in order to be hyphenated.	"Setting Hyphenation" on page 284
mc-image	Determines the image used for the selected style. These are used most often with help controls (i.e., concept links or related topic links) and navigation links (i.e., drop-down text, expanding text, or togglers).	"Drop-Down Text" on page 104 "Expanding Text" on page 111 "Togglers" on page 460 "Relationship Links" on page 349

Property	Description	See These Topics
mc-image-alt-text	Lets you set alternate text on images for related topic links.	"Drop-Down Text" on page 104 "Expanding Text" on page 111 "Editing the Style of Glossary Term Links" on page 135 "Togglers" on page 460
mc-image-position	Determines how the image to which the style is applied is positioned, (i.e., right, left, center).	"Drop-Down Text" on page 104 "Expanding Text" on page 111 "Togglers" on page 460 "Relationship Links" on page 349
mc-index-headings	This property is used with the MadCap|indexProxy style when building print-based output that includes a generated index (i.e., an index proxy). This property specifies whether the generated index should include headings above the alphabetical groups of entries. The default setting is "True," meaning that index headings will be included. However, you can always override this setting at the spot where a particular index proxy is inserted. If you want all index proxies to not include headings by default, you can edit this style property, setting it to "False."	"Using Styles to Include or Exclude Index Headings" on page 177

Property	Description	See These Topics
mc-label	Determines the text labels for links. For example, the default setting for the MadCap|relationshipsHeading style is "Related Information", which is the text that appears in the output when you insert a concept link. However, you can use this property to change that text.	"Editing Keyword Links" on page 142 "Relationship Links" on page 349
mc-leader-align	Determines how the page numbers are aligned at the end of the leader. The default setting is right alignment.	"Relationship Links" on page 349 "Lists of Concepts" on page 178 " Lists of Elements" on page 182 "Mini-TOCs" on page 239 "Using Styles to Determine the Look of a Print TOC" on page 405

Property	Description	See These Topics
mc-leader-format	Determines the material that is shown between a topic name and the page number where it can be found. The default setting is a series of dots.	"Relationship Links" on page 349 "Lists of Concepts" on page 178 " Lists of Elements" on page 182 "Mini-TOCs" on page 239 "Using Styles to Determine the Look of a Print TOC" on page 405
mc-leader-indent	Determines the amount of space from the end of the list entry to the start of the leader.	"Relationship Links" on page 349 "Lists of Concepts" on page 178 " Lists of Elements" on page 182 "Mini-TOCs" on page 239 "Using Styles to Determine the Look of a Print TOC" on page 405

Property	Description	See These Topics
mc-leader-offset	Determines the amount of space from the end of the leader to the page number following it.	"Relationship Links" on page 349 "Lists of Concepts" on page 178 " Lists of Elements" on page 182 "Mini-TOCs" on page 239 "Using Styles to Determine the Look of a Print TOC" on page 405
mc-multiline-indent	Determines the amount of indentation for all lines of text following the initial indentation.	"Creating Multiline Indentation" on page 289

Property	Description	See These Topics
mc-open-image	Lets you select an image to be shown next to the following types of links when they are in an "open" state: drop-down text, expanding text, glossary term links, togglers.	"Drop-Down Text" on page 104 "Expanding Text" on page 111 "Editing the Style of Glossary Term Links" on page 135 "Togglers" on page 460
mc-open-image-alt-text	Lets you set alternate text for related topic links.	"Editing Related Topics Links" on page 145

Property	Description	See These Topics
mc-output-support	For some proxies, you can specify which output types should support them. If an output type supports a particular proxy, the generated content is displayed in the output where the proxy was inserted. If an output type does not support a particular proxy, it is simply ignored when the output is generated. You can use this proxy to change which output types support a proxy. Following are the different proxies involved with this style property and the default setting for each. » Concepts proxy (all) » Endnotes proxy (all) » Glossary proxy (all) » Index proxy (all-print) » List of proxy (all) » Mini-TOC proxy (all) » Relationships proxy (all) » TOC proxy (all) You can change the setting to any of the following: » **all** The proxy will be supported in all output types, both online and print-based. » **all-online** The proxy will be supported in all online output types (DotNet Help, Eclipse Help, Microsoft HTML Help, HTML5, WebHelp, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus). » **all-print** The proxy will be supported in all print-based output types (Adobe FrameMaker, Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Microsoft XPS, XHTML). » **all-webhelp** The proxy will be supported in all of the WebHelp output types (WebHelp, HTML5, WebHelp AIR, WebHelp Mobile, WebHelp Plus). » **dotnethelp** The proxy will be supported in DotNet Help. » **eclipsehelp** The proxy will be supported in Eclipse Help. » **framemaker** The proxy will be supported in Adobe FrameMaker. » **htmlhelp** The proxy will be supported in Microsoft HTML Help. » **pdf** The proxy will be supported in Adobe PDF.	"Proxies" on page 336

Property	Description	See These Topics
	» **webhelp** The proxy will be supported in WebHelp. » **webhelpair** The proxy will be supported in WebHelp AIR. » **webhelpmobile** The proxy will be supported in WebHelp Mobile. » **webhelpplus** The proxy will be supported in WebHelp Plus. » **word** The proxy will be supported in Microsoft Word. » **xhtmlbook** The proxy will be supported in XHTML. » **xps** The proxy will be supported in Microsoft XPS.	
mc-pagenum-display	Determines how page numbers are displayed in TOC entries for print output.	"Suppressing Page Numbers in a Print TOC" on page 412 "Suppressing Page Numbers in a Print Mini-TOC" on page 244
mc-popup-height	Determines the initial height of the popup window.	"Customizing the Size of Topic Popups" on page 463
mc-popup-width	Determines the initial width of the popup window.	"Customizing the Size of Topic Popups" on page 463

Property	Description	See These Topics
mc-redacted	This property allows you to set redaction on a specific style. Redaction occurs when content is permanently eliminated from a printed or electronic document. In place of that content, end users will see black rectangles that indicate where the original content was found. The property can be set in the following ways. » **inherit** The style inherits the redaction setting from the type of tag in which it is placed. » **none** The style is not redacted. » **redacted** The style is redacted.	"Setting Redacted Text on Content" on page 434
mc-short-line	Specifies the length at which a line is considered "short," and therefore the short line settings come into play. If you do not select a length, a line is considered short if it has 10 or fewer characters.	"Setting Short Line Elimination" on page 325
mc-short-line-loosen-end-length	Specifies the length (number of characters) at which a line is considered "long enough." For example, let's say you have specified 8 characters as the length of a short line (mc-short-line), and you have specified 15 characters as the length of a long line (in this field). In that case, Flare will not allow the final line in a paragraph to have only 8 characters, and when you type content so that the text wraps around to a new line, the paragraph is automatically adjusted so that the new line always starts at a minimum of 15 characters.	"Setting Short Line Elimination" on page 325
mc-short-line-loosen-maximum	Specifies the maximum number of pixels to loosen during short line elimination.	"Setting Short Line Elimination" on page 325
mc-short-line-method	Determines the method by which short line elimination will function.	"Setting Short Line Elimination" on page 325
mc-short-line-step	Specifies the number of pixels of kerning that should be used incrementally on the entire paragraph until the desired effect is achieved. For example, if you enter .5, the kerning will occur in increments of .5 pixels.	"Setting Short Line Elimination" on page 325

Property	Description	See These Topics
mc-short-line-tighten-maximum	Specifies the maximum number of pixels to tighten during short line elimination.	"Setting Short Line Elimination" on page 325
mc-thumbnail	Determines the manner in which the user can switch from the thumbnail size to the image in its full size.	"Showing Images as Thumbnails in Output" on page 166
mc-thumbnail-max-height	Sets the maximum height for thumbnail images.	"Showing Images as Thumbnails in Output" on page 166
mc-thumbnail-max-width	Sets the maximum width for thumbnail images.	"Showing Images as Thumbnails in Output" on page 166
mc-toc-depth	Changes the number of levels of topic links that are shown in the mini-TOC. The default setting is 3.	"Mini-TOCs" on page 239

APPENDIX C

PDF Guides

The following PDF guides are available for download from the online Help.

Accessibility Guide
Analyzer Guide
Autonumbers Guide
Condition Tags Guide
Context-sensitive Help Guide
DotNet Help Guide
Eclipse Help Guide
Getting Started Guide
Global Project Linking Guide
HTML Help Guide
HTML5 Guide
Images Guide
Importing Guide
Index Guide
Key Features Guide
Language Support Guide
Movies Guide
Navigation Links Guide
Print-based Output Guide
Project Creation Guide
Pulse Guide
QR Codes Guide
Reports Guide
Reviews & Contributions Guide
Search Guide
SharePoint Guide
Shortcuts Guide
Skins Guide

Snippets Guide

Source Control Guide

Styles Guide

Tables Guide

Tables of Contents Guide

Targets Guide

Templates Guide

Topics Guide

Touring the Workspace Guide

Transition From FrameMaker Guide

Variables Guide

WebHelp Outputs Guide

What's New Guide

INDEX

A

Absolute measurements 511
Accessibility
    alternate text 736, 749, 752, 795
Accordions 625, 742
    output window 641, 711
Alignment
    lists 187, 195
    paragraphs 249, 251
    tables 539
Assorted relevant properties 60, 98
Autocomplete
    Internal Text Editor 63
    stylesheets 63
Autonumbers 71
    CH 77
    chapters 77
    examples of formats 77
    figure captions 82
    file commands 70
    float left 76
    float right 76
    format commands 70
    formats 68
    GH 77
    inside head 76
    inside tail 76
    offset 75
    outside frame 76
    outside head 76
    outside tail 76
    page commands 70
    paragraphs 249
    positioning 76
    span class 75
    styles 40
    table headings 82
    text commands 70
    volumes 77

B

Background
    color 150-151, 207, 252, 340, 417, 422, 445, 469, 668, 682, 722, 729, 763, 775, 780, 783
    gradient 644, 722, 763, 775
    image 150-151, 153, 764, 775
    images 644, 723, 767, 780
    lists 187, 207
    paragraphs 249, 252
    QR code 340
    styles 252
    tables 540
    text boxes 444-445
    topics 150, 469
BMP file 591

Bold 417, 419
fonts 419
Text 419
Books
tables of contents 736
Borders 84, 465, 645, 682, 723, 749, 764, 775, 781
color 108, 156, 200, 254, 342, 351, 447, 528
editing 115
equations 107
footnotes 115
images 150, 155
lists 187, 200
paragraphs 249, 254, 256
QR code 341
rounded 249, 256, 368
styles 254, 256
tables 256, 368, 392, 527
text boxes 106, 444, 446
Breadcrumbs 708
proxy 84
skins 701
styles 84, 701
Breaks
column 294
frames 249, 298
line 306
page 294
Browse sequences 774
home page row 774
selecting styles 495
styles 495
Bulleted lists See *Lists*
Buttons
home 756
styles 766, 782

C

Capitalize 417, 421
Captions
auto-numbers 82
table 369
tables 398
Cascading style sheets 6, 11-12, 14, 16, 19, 52, 55, 58, 256, 476, 478, 489, 501, 520, 527
Case 417, 421
styles 421
Cells
padding 527
styles 371
Centimeter 511
CH 77
Chapnum 77
Chapters
auto-numbers 77
Characters
styles 41
CHM See *HTML Help*
Classes See *Styles*
Color
background 150-151, 207, 252, 340, 417, 422, 445, 469
border 108, 156, 200, 254, 342, 351, 447, 528
font 417, 423, 538
highlighted search terms 359, 502
rulers 538
search terms 359, 502
selecting 729
separator 539
Columns
breaks 187, 203, 249, 294
lists 203
tables 369
Comments
labels 682
styles 490
Concepts
editing 137

inserting 702
links 708
list of 178, 336
styles 147
Content
editing and formatting 34
Controls 627
styles 44, 649
type 749, 792
Converting
glossary terms to links 136
Cross-references 703
above and below 708
editing 87-88, 96
formats 708
language support 96
printed output 708
styles 88, 92
stylesheets 92
CSS file 11-12, 17, 28, 52, 489
Custom list formats 210, 229

D

DITA
editing 97
styles 40, 97, 508
DIV tag
glossaries 131
indenting 198, 288
DotNet Help
styles 711, 740
Drop-down text
editing 104
Drop caps 249, 275
Dynamic effects
styles 43

E

Effects
overline 433
strikethrough 437
Elements
list of 182
styles 182
Em 510
Endnotes 113, 118, 120, 122, 124, 126, 128
editing 118, 120, 122
numbers 113, 124, 126
proxies 336
restart numbering 128
styles 128
Equations 106
borders 107
editing 106
margins 109
padding 110
Expanding text
editing 111
Extensible Markup Language See *XML*

F

Figure captions
auto-numbers 82
Firefox 85, 109-110, 157-158, 198, 205, 243, 288, 333, 343-344, 358, 450-451, 467
Fixed measurements 511
Floating
images 150, 159
paragraphs 313
text boxes 161, 452, 454
Fonts
background color 417, 422, 669, 727, 731, 737, 750, 793
background gradient 750, 793

bold 417, 419
case 417, 421
color 417, 423, 538, 645, 668, 684, 724, 728, 732, 737, 751, 764, 767, 770, 776, 783, 793
editing 417
font family 85, 180, 185, 242, 408, 417, 424, 645, 668, 684, 724, 728, 732, 737, 751, 764, 768, 771, 776, 784, 793
hover 733
italic 417, 426-427
overline 417, 433
size 85, 180, 185, 242, 408, 418, 435, 645, 669, 684, 724, 728, 732, 738, 751, 764, 768, 771, 776, 784, 793
smallcaps 418, 436
spacing 417-418, 427, 430, 441
strikethrough 418, 437
styles 424, 429, 435, 645, 669, 685, 724, 728, 732, 738, 751, 765, 768, 771, 776, 784, 794
subscript 418, 438
superscript 418, 439
underline 418, 440
weight 646, 669, 685, 724, 728, 732, 738, 752, 765, 768, 771, 776, 784, 794

Footers
master pages 248
styles 248
tables 530

Footnotes 113, 118, 120, 122, 124, 126, 128
borders 113, 115
comments 113
editing 118, 120, 122
indentation 122
numbers 113, 124, 126
proxies 336
restart numbering 128
styles 40, 126, 128

Formatting
auto-numbers 68
fonts 417
inline 34
lists 187, 187, 195-196, 199-200, 202-203, 205, 207, 209
local 34
paragraph 331
paragraphs 249-252, 254, 256, 275, 278, 284, 286, 289, 294, 298, 306, 325, 328, 334
topic content 34

Forms
styles 44

Frames
breaks 249, 298
page layouts 249, 298
styles 711

G

GH 77

GIF file 591

Glossaries
converting terms 136
definitions 129
div 131
expanding text links 130
glossary term links 130, 135
heading 774
headings 129
home page row 774
hyperlinks 130
margins 131
padding 131
page definition 774
page entry 774
popup links 130
proxies 336
styles 129
terms 129

Graphics See *Images*

Groups (tags) 288

H

Hanging punctuation 249, 278

Headers
HTML5 skin 578, 586
master pages 248
mobile skin 755
styles 248, 762
tables 530
Heading
positioning 317
side 313, 317
text boxes 317
Heading levels 402-403
Headings 402-403
Highlighted
search terms 359, 502
Horizontal rules
color 538
editing 148
HTML Help
image links 500
patching style sheets 500
styles 500, 649, 678, 692, 711, 735, 740
HTML5
navigation pane 592
search 581, 612
skins 558
styles 583, 586, 592, 604, 612, 619
Hyperlinks
editing 457
Hyphenation 249, 284
styles 284, 448
text boxes 448

I

Icons 646, 671, 752, 777, 794
tables of contents 737
Images
background 150-152, 340, 445
borders 150, 155
floating 150, 159
list bullets 187, 199
list of 182, 336
margins 150, 157
padding 150, 158
patching links for HTML Help 500
positioning 150, 159
resizing 150, 163
styles 43, 150, 153, 159, 163, 166
thumbnails 150, 166
topic background 153
watermarks 153
wraparound text 150, 159
Importing
style sheets 501
styles 502
Inch 511
Indent
div tag 198, 288
footnotes 122
indexes 289
leaders 180, 185, 242, 408
lists 187, 196
mini-TOC 239
mini-TOCs 289
paragraphs 249, 286, 289
tables of contents 405
TOCs 289
Indexes
entries 636, 726
entry popups 637, 730
heading 774
indentation 289
index links 729, 777-778
page 774
page numbers 176
page row 774
proxies 168, 177, 336
styles 168, 177
Inheritance 25
Initial caps 249, 275
Inline formatting See *Local formatting*

Internal Text Editor
autocomplete 63
stylesheets 63
Internet Explorer 85, 109-110, 157-158, 198, 205, 243, 288, 333, 343-344, 358, 450-451, 467
Italic 417, 426
correction 417, 427, 429
fonts 426
styles 426, 429
text 426
Item counts 757
styles 769

J

JPEG file 591

K

Keyword links 709
editing 142
inserting 705
styles 147

L

Labels 646, 671, 694, 725, 752, 768, 777, 784, 794
gender 685
Language support
cross-references 96
skins 96
Layouts See *Page layouts*
Leaders 180, 185, 242, 408
Letter spacing 417, 430
Line breaks 306, 310-311
Line spacing 187, 202, 249, 328
Lines See *Horizontal rules*
Linking
pseudo classes 45
style sheets 478, 503
styles 42
Lists
alignment 187, 195
background 187, 207
borders 187, 200
columns 203
custom format 210, 229
formatting 203, 209
images 187, 199
indentation 187, 196
line spacing 202
margins 187, 205
page and column breaks 187, 203
proxies 178, 182, 336
spacing 187, 202, 205
styles 42, 187, 196, 199-200, 202-203, 205, 207, 209
types 187, 209
Local formatting 34
Localization See *Language support*
Logo 578, 586
Lowercase 417, 421

M

MadCap Feedback 582, 619, 641, 649, 678, 692, 711
MadCap Feedback 582, 619, 641, 649, 678, 692, 711
user profile items 582, 631, 692
Margins
equations 109
glossaries 131
images 150, 157
lists 187, 205
paragraph 331
paragraphs 250
QR code 343
styles 157, 180, 185, 243, 410

tables 527
text boxes 106, 444, 450
Master pages
headers and footers 248
Master stylesheets 37, 476
applying 476
MathML 106
Mediums 9, 502, 545
associating with targets 550
creating 550, 554
non-print 547
online 547
page layouts 548
print 547
responsive output 558
selecting 550-551
skins 558
styles 551
targets 505, 550, 555
Microsoft HTML Help See *HTML Help*
Millimeter 511
Mini-TOC
indentation 239, 289
proxies 239, 244, 336
styles 244

N

Navigation elements 758
styles 772
Navigation links
concept links 137
concepts 147, 702
cross-references 87-88, 96, 703
drop-down text 104
expanding text 111
keyword links 142, 147, 705
related topics links 145, 147, 706
text hyperlinks 457
togglers 460
topic popups 461
Navigation pane
HTML5 592
Next style 249, 292
Nonscrolling region 471
Numbered lists See *Lists*
Numbers
footnotes 128

O

Object positioning
floating 159, 313, 452
Objects
styles 43
Offset
auto-numbers 75
Orphans 250, 294, 334
Output
accordions 641, 711
DotNet Help 711, 740
HTML Help 649, 678, 692, 711, 735, 740
HTML5 583, 586, 592, 604, 612, 619
proxies 336
toolbars 740
WebHelp 641, 649, 678, 692, 699, 711, 726, 730, 735, 740
WebHelp Mobile 762, 766, 769, 772, 779, 782, 785
WebHelp Plus 641, 649, 678, 692, 699, 711, 726, 730, 735, 740
WebHelpAIR 641, 649, 699, 711, 726, 730, 735, 740
Overline 417, 433

P

Padding 85, 158, 466, 753, 765, 777, 795
equations 110
glossaries 131

images 150, 158
QR code 344
table styles 527
text boxes 106, 444, 451

Page breaks 294

lists 187, 203
paragraphs 249, 294
styles 294
tables 368, 375

Page layouts

frames 249, 298
mediums 548
styles 548

Page numbers 244, 412

aligning 180, 185, 242, 408
indexes 176
printed output 248, 402

Page row 774

Paragraphs

alignment 249, 251
auto-numbers 249
background 249, 252
borders 249, 254, 256
breaks 249, 294
drop caps 249, 275
floating 313
formatting 249, 254, 256, 325, 331, 334
hanging punctuation 249, 278
hyphenation 249, 284
indentation 249, 286, 289
initial caps 249, 275
margins 250, 331
orphans 250, 334
positioning 250, 313
psuedo class 276
short line elimination 250, 325
spacing 249-250, 328, 331
styles 40, 313, 333
white space 306
widows 250, 334

Patterns

table columns 530
table footer rows 530
table header rows 530
table rows 530
tables 540

Percentage measurement 510

Pica 511

Pictures See *Images*

Pixel 510

PNG file 591

Point 511

Popups

editing 459, 461, 463

Positioning

auto-numbers 76
headings 317
images 150, 159
paragraphs 250, 313
text boxes 161, 452, 454

Print-based output

endnotes 336
glossaries 336
indexes 168, 176-177, 336
leaders 180, 185, 242, 408
lists of concepts 178, 336
lists of elements 182, 336
page numbers 248, 402
proxies 168, 177-178, 182, 336
table styles 541
tables of contents 402-403, 405, 412
topic styles 504

Print mediums

Targets 505

Projects

master style sheets 37, 476

Properties

assorted relevant 60, 98
groups 60, 98
set 60, 98
set locally 60, 98
styles 809
tables 34

Proportional measurements 510

Proxies
breadcrumbs 84
endnotes 336
glossaries 336
indexes 168, 177, 336
lists 178, 182, 336
mini-TOC 239, 244, 336
output 336
relationship 336
styles 336
tables of contents 336
topic toolbars 465
Pseudo classes 45
active 45, 457
after 47
before 47
drop caps 46
first-child 46
first-letter 46
focus 45, 457
hover 45, 457
initial caps 46
link 45, 457
paragraphs 276
visited 45, 457

Q

QR codes
background 340
borders 341
margins 343
padding 344
resizing 345
size 345
styles 345

R

Redacted text 417, 434
styles 434
Related topics links 709
editing 145
inserting 706
styles 147
Relationship links 336
editing 349
Relationship tables 336
styles 349
Relative measurements 510
Resizing
images 150, 163
Responsive output
mediums 558
Rounded borders 249, 256, 368
RTL languages
table styles 518

S

Screen captures See *Images*
Search
bar 759, 779
button 760, 782
error string 777
highlighted terms 359, 502
HTML5 581, 612
results page 774
See Also links See *Concepts*
Selectors See *Styles*
Separator 748
Server
MadCap Feedback 582, 619, 641, 649, 678, 692, 711
Set properties 60, 98
Short line elimination 250, 325
Side headings 313, 317
Size
fonts 418, 435

images 150, 163, 166
QR code 345
text boxes 456

Skins

accordions 641, 711
breadcrumbs 701
DotNet Help 711, 740
HTML Help 649, 678, 692, 711, 735, 740
HTML5 558, 583, 586, 592, 604, 612, 619
language 96
mediums 558
Standard 625
styles 10, 557-558, 583, 586, 592, 604, 612, 619, 625, 641, 649, 678, 692, 699, 711, 726, 730, 735, 740, 755, 762, 766, 769, 772, 779, 782, 785
toolbars 740
WebHelp 641, 649, 678, 692, 699, 711, 726, 730, 735, 740
WebHelp AIR 641, 649, 699, 711, 726, 730, 735, 740
WebHelp Mobile 755, 762, 766, 769, 772, 779, 782, 785
WebHelp Plus 641, 649, 678, 692, 699, 711, 726, 730, 735, 740

Slideshows

styles 362

Smallcaps 418, 436

styles 436

Spacing

fonts 417-418, 427, 430, 441
letter 430
lines 328
lists 187, 202, 205
paragraph 331
paragraphs 249-250, 328
styles 443

Span class

auto-numbers 75

Standard skins 625

Strikethrough 418, 437

Styles 5-6, 11-12, 14-16, 19, 38, 51, 510, 797, 809

aligning lists 187, 195
aligning paragraphs 251
auto-numbers 40, 68, 75
background 252
borders 254, 256
breadcrumbs 84, 701
browse sequences 495
buttons 766, 782
CAPTION tag 369
case 421
character 41, 51, 485
classes 20, 55, 75, 506
COL tag 369
color 469
column breaks 187, 203, 294
comments 490
concept links 137, 147
controls and forms 44
correction 429
creating 55
cross-references 88, 92
deleting 496
dialogs 678
disabling 98, 497
DITA 40, 97, 508
DotNet Help 711, 740
drop-down text 104
dynamic effects 43
editing 58, 63, 527
expanding text 111
font family 424
fonts 417, 429, 435
footnotes 40, 113
frame breaks 249, 298
frames 711
generated content 43
glossaries 129, 135-136
hanging punctuation 249, 278
headers 762
heading 41
highlighted search terms 359, 502
HTML Help 500, 649, 678, 692, 711, 735, 740
HTML5 583, 586, 592, 604, 612, 619
hyphenation 284, 448
images 43, 150, 153, 159, 163, 166

importing 501-502
indenting 289
indenting lists 187, 196
indenting paragraphs 286
index headings 177
indexes 168, 177
inheritance 25, 139
Internal Text Editor 63
italic 426, 429
keyword links 142, 147
leaders 180, 185, 242, 408
letter 432
links 42
lists 42, 187, 196, 199-200, 202-203, 205, 207, 209
lists of concepts 178
lists of elements 182
master stylesheets 32, 37, 476
mediums 9, 545, 548, 551, 554
mini-TOCs 239, 244
next 249, 292
nonscrolling region 471
objects 43
opening style sheets 489
orphans 334
page breaks 187, 203, 294, 368, 375
page footers 248
page headers 248
page layouts 548
paragraph 40, 51, 313, 333, 485
properties 20
proxies 336
pseudo classes 33, 45
redacted text 417, 434
related topics links 145, 147
relationship links 349
renaming 506
renaming classes 506
reusable content 43
rulers 148
search bar 779
search terms 359, 502
short line elmination 325
skins 10, 557-558, 625, 755
slideshows 362
smallcaps 436
spacing 443
span 75
stylesheets 5-6, 11-12, 14-16, 19, 27, 34, 38, 51-52, 55, 58, 249, 256, 278, 292, 471, 476, 478, 482, 489-490, 501, 503, 508, 510, 513, 518, 520, 523, 527, 541, 797, 809
subscript 438
superscript 439
tables 41, 367, 369, 371, 482, 523, 527, 530
tables of contents 405, 412, 507, 592, 735
tag groups 288
tags 20
TBODY tag 369
TD tag 369
text boxes 448, 456
text hyperlinks 457
text popups 459
TFOOT tag 370
TH tag 370
THEAD tag 370
TOC headings 402-403
togglers 460
toolbars 740
topic popups 461, 463
topic toolbars 465
topics 40, 468, 482, 504, 508
TR tag 370
types 39
values 20
WebHelp 641, 649, 678, 692, 699, 711, 726, 730, 735, 740
WebHelp Mobile 762, 766, 769, 772, 779, 782, 785
WebHelp Plus 641, 649, 678, 692, 699, 711, 726, 730, 735, 740
WebHelpAIR 641, 649, 699, 711, 726, 730, 735, 740
widows 334

Stylesheet Editor 29, 39

Stylesheets
applying 478
autocomplete 63
Internal Text Editor 63
multiple topics 480
single topic 479

syntax coloring 67
Subscript 418, 438
styles 438
Superscript 418, 439
styles 439
Syntax coloring
stylesheets 67

T

Table styles 34, 513
Editor 517
page layout breaks 389
RTL 518
Tables
alignment 539
auto-numbers 82
background 540
borders 256, 368, 392, 527
captions 369, 398
cells 527
COL tag 369
COLGROUP tag 369
columns 369, 530
editing 34, 367, 369
footer rows 530
footers 370
header rows 530
headers 370
list of 182, 336
margins 527
padding 527
page breaks 368, 375
patterns 540
properties 34
relationship 336, 349
rows 530
styles 41, 367, 369, 371, 375, 482, 523, 527
stylesheets 34, 489, 513, 518, 520, 541
summary 674
TABLE tag 369
TBODY tag 369
TD tag 369
TFOOT tag 370
TH tag 370
THEAD tag 370
TR tag 370
Tables of contents
depth 402
entries 638
heading levels 402-403
home page row 774
indentation 289, 405
page numbers 412
pages 775
printed output 402-403, 405, 412
proxies 336
selecting styles 507
styles 402-403, 405, 412, 507, 592, 735
Tabs 288
Tags 38, 797, 809
Targets
master style sheets 37, 476
mediums 555
print mediums 505
Templates
factory 53, 520
Text
background color 422
bold 419
case 421
font family 424
italic 426
overline 433
redacted 417, 434
smallcaps 436
strikethrough 437
styles 440
subscript 438
superscript 439
underline 440
wraparound 150, 159
Text-only popups See *Popups*
Text boxes 444
background 444-445
borders 106, 444, 446

floating 161, 452, 454
headings 317
hyphenation 448
margins 106, 444, 450
padding 106, 444, 451
positioning 161, 452, 454
size 456
styles 444, 448, 451, 456
wraparound text 161, 452, 454
Text Editor See *Internal Text Editor*
Text hyperlinks
editing 457
Text popups
editing 459
Thumbnails
images 150, 166
TIF file 591
TIFF file 591
Time stamp 675
TOCs See *Tables of contents*
Togglers
editing 460
Tool tip 676, 754
Toolbars 580, 639
items 761
styles 465, 740, 785
topic 465, 740
WebHelp 740
WebHelp Plus 740
Topic popups
editing 461, 463
size 463
Topics
background 150, 469
background image 153
mediums 504
styles 40, 367, 468, 482, 504, 508
stylesheets 476, 478, 508
Transformation process 38

U

Underline 418, 440
Unit of measurement 510
UOM See *Unit of measurement*
Uppercase 417, 421

V

Volnum 77
Volumes
auto-numbers 77

W

W3C 6, 11-12
Watermarks 153
WebHelp
styles 641, 649, 678, 692, 699, 711, 726, 730, 735, 740
toolbars 740
WebHelp 2.0 See *HTML5*
WebHelp AIR
styles 641, 649, 699, 711, 726, 730, 735, 740
WebHelp Mobile
skins 755
styles 762, 766, 769, 772, 779, 782, 785
WebHelp Plus
styles 641, 649, 678, 692, 699, 711, 726, 730, 735, 740
toolbars 740
Widows 250, 294, 334
Word spacing 418, 441
World Wide Web Consortium See *W3C*
Wraparound text
images 150, 159
text boxes 161, 452, 454

X

X-height 510
XML
    transformation process 38